



**JUNOS® Software**

## **System Basics Configuration Guide**

*Release 9.5*

**Juniper Networks, Inc.**

1194 North Mathilda Avenue  
Sunnyvale, California 94089  
USA

408-745-2000

**[www.juniper.net](http://www.juniper.net)**

Part Number: 530-029316-01, Revision 1

This product includes the Envoy SNMP Engine, developed by Epilogue Technology, an Integrated Systems Company. Copyright © 1986-1997, Epilogue Technology Corporation. All rights reserved. This program and its documentation were developed at private expense, and no part of them is in the public domain.

This product includes memory allocation software developed by Mark Moraes, copyright © 1988, 1989, 1993, University of Toronto.

This product includes FreeBSD software developed by the University of California, Berkeley, and its contributors. All of the documentation and software included in the 4.4BSD and 4.4BSD-Lite Releases is copyrighted by the Regents of the University of California. Copyright © 1979, 1980, 1983, 1986, 1988, 1989, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994. The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

GateD software copyright © 1995, the Regents of the University. All rights reserved. Gate Daemon was originated and developed through release 3.0 by Cornell University and its collaborators. Gated is based on Kirton's EGP, UC Berkeley's routing daemon (routed), and DCN's HELLO routing protocol. Development of Gated has been supported in part by the National Science Foundation. Portions of the GateD software copyright © 1988, Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. Portions of the GateD software copyright © 1991, D. L. S. Associates.

This product includes software developed by Maker Communications, Inc., copyright © 1996, 1997, Maker Communications, Inc.

Juniper Networks, the Juniper Networks logo, JUNOS, NetScreen, ScreenOS, and Steel-Belted Radius are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. in the United States and other countries. JUNOSe is a trademark of Juniper Networks, Inc. All other trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Products made or sold by Juniper Networks or components thereof might be covered by one or more of the following patents that are owned by or licensed to Juniper Networks: U.S. Patent Nos. 5,473,599, 5,905,725, 5,909,440, 6,192,051, 6,333,650, 6,359,479, 6,406,312, 6,429,706, 6,459,579, 6,493,347, 6,538,518, 6,538,899, 6,552,918, 6,567,902, 6,578,186, and 6,590,785.

#### *JUNOS® Software System Basics Configuration Guide*

Release 9.5

Copyright © 2009, Juniper Networks, Inc.

All rights reserved. Printed in USA.

Writing: Lisa Kelly, Bruce Gillham, Stephen Meiers, Michael Scruggs, Joanne McClintock, and Mahesh Anantharaman

Editing: Stella Hackell, Nancy Kurahashi, Sonia Saruba, and Joanne McClintock

Illustration: Faith Bradford

Cover Design: Edmonds Design

#### Revision History

13 April 2009—530-029316-01 Revision 1

The information in this document is current as of the date listed in the revision history.

#### YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. The JUNOS software has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

**READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT") BEFORE DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE.** BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE OR OTHERWISE EXPRESSING YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, YOU (AS CUSTOMER OR IF YOU ARE NOT THE CUSTOMER, AS A REPRESENTATIVE/AGENT AUTHORIZED TO BIND THE CUSTOMER) CONSENT TO BE BOUND BY THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT OR CANNOT AGREE TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, THEN (A) DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, OR USE THE SOFTWARE, AND (B) YOU MAY CONTACT JUNIPER NETWORKS REGARDING LICENSE TERMS.

1. **The Parties.** The parties to this Agreement are (i) Juniper Networks, Inc. (if the Customer's principal office is located in the Americas) or Juniper Networks (Cayman) Limited (if the Customer's principal office is located outside the Americas) (such applicable entity being referred to herein as "Juniper"), and (ii) the person or organization that originally purchased from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller the applicable license(s) for use of the Software ("Customer") (collectively, the "Parties").

2. **The Software.** In this Agreement, "Software" means the program modules and features of the Juniper or Juniper-supplied software, for which Customer has paid the applicable license or support fees to Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller, or which was embedded by Juniper in equipment which Customer purchased from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller. "Software" also includes updates, upgrades and new releases of such software. "Embedded Software" means Software which Juniper has embedded in or loaded onto the Juniper equipment and any updates, upgrades, additions or replacements which are subsequently embedded in or loaded onto the equipment.

3. **License Grant.** Subject to payment of the applicable fees and the limitations and restrictions set forth herein, Juniper grants to Customer a non-exclusive and non-transferable license, without right to sublicense, to use the Software, in executable form only, subject to the following use restrictions:

a. Customer shall use Embedded Software solely as embedded in, and for execution on, Juniper equipment originally purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.

b. Customer shall use the Software on a single hardware chassis having a single processing unit, or as many chassis or processing units for which Customer has paid the applicable license fees; provided, however, with respect to the Steel-Belted Radius or Odyssey Access Client software only, Customer shall use such Software on a single computer containing a single physical random access memory space and containing any number of processors. Use of the Steel-Belted Radius or IMS AAA software on multiple computers or virtual machines (e.g., Solaris zones) requires multiple licenses, regardless of whether such computers or virtualizations are physically contained on a single chassis.

c. Product purchase documents, paper or electronic user documentation, and/or the particular licenses purchased by Customer may specify limits to Customer's use of the Software. Such limits may restrict use to a maximum number of seats, registered endpoints, concurrent users, sessions, calls, connections, subscribers, clusters, nodes, realms, devices, links, ports or transactions, or require the purchase of separate licenses to use particular features, functionalities, services, applications, operations, or capabilities, or provide throughput, performance, configuration, bandwidth, interface, processing, temporal, or geographical limits. In addition, such limits may restrict the use of the Software to managing certain kinds of networks or require the Software to be used only in conjunction with other specific Software. Customer's use of the Software shall be subject to all such limitations and purchase of all applicable licenses.

d. For any trial copy of the Software, Customer's right to use the Software expires 30 days after download, installation or use of the Software. Customer may operate the Software after the 30-day trial period only if Customer pays for a license to do so. Customer may not extend or create an additional trial period by re-installing the Software after the 30-day trial period.

e. The Global Enterprise Edition of the Steel-Belted Radius software may be used by Customer only to manage access to Customer's enterprise network. Specifically, service provider customers are expressly prohibited from using the Global Enterprise Edition of the Steel-Belted Radius software to support any commercial network access services.

The foregoing license is not transferable or assignable by Customer. No license is granted herein to any user who did not originally purchase the applicable license(s) for the Software from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.

4. **Use Prohibitions.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, the license provided herein does not permit the Customer to, and Customer agrees not to and shall not: (a) modify, unbundle, reverse engineer, or create derivative works based on the Software; (b) make unauthorized copies of the Software (except as necessary for backup purposes); (c) rent, sell, transfer, or grant any rights in and to any copy of the Software, in any form, to any third party; (d) remove any proprietary notices, labels, or marks on or in any copy of the Software or any product in which the Software is embedded; (e) distribute any copy of the Software to any third party, including as may be embedded in Juniper equipment sold in the secondhand market; (f) use any 'locked' or key-restricted feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability without first purchasing the applicable license(s) and obtaining a valid key from Juniper, even if such feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability is enabled without a key; (g) distribute any key for the Software provided by Juniper to any third party; (h) use the Software in any manner that extends or is broader than the uses purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (i) use Embedded Software on non-Juniper equipment; (j) use Embedded Software (or make it available for use) on Juniper equipment that the Customer did not originally purchase from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (k) disclose the results of testing or benchmarking of the Software to any third party without the prior written consent of Juniper; or (l) use the Software in any manner other than as expressly provided herein.

5. **Audit.** Customer shall maintain accurate records as necessary to verify compliance with this Agreement. Upon request by Juniper, Customer shall furnish such records to Juniper and certify its compliance with this Agreement.

6. **Confidentiality.** The Parties agree that aspects of the Software and associated documentation are the confidential property of Juniper. As such, Customer shall exercise all reasonable commercial efforts to maintain the Software and associated documentation in confidence, which at a minimum includes restricting access to the Software to Customer employees and contractors having a need to use the Software for Customer's internal business purposes.

7. **Ownership.** Juniper and Juniper's licensors, respectively, retain ownership of all right, title, and interest (including copyright) in and to the Software, associated documentation, and all copies of the Software. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes a transfer or conveyance of any right, title, or interest in the Software or associated documentation, or a sale of the Software, associated documentation, or copies of the Software.

8. **Warranty, Limitation of Liability, Disclaimer of Warranty.** The warranty applicable to the Software shall be as set forth in the warranty statement that accompanies the Software (the "Warranty Statement"). Nothing in this Agreement shall give rise to any obligation to support the Software. Support services may be purchased separately. Any such support shall be governed by a separate, written support services agreement. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF DATA, OR COSTS OR PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES, OR FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT, THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE. IN NO EVENT SHALL JUNIPER BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING FROM UNAUTHORIZED OR IMPROPER USE OF ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PROVIDED IN THE WARRANTY STATEMENT TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES IN AND TO THE SOFTWARE (WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY, OR OTHERWISE), INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT DOES JUNIPER WARRANT THAT THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY EQUIPMENT OR NETWORK RUNNING THE SOFTWARE, WILL OPERATE WITHOUT ERROR OR INTERRUPTION, OR WILL BE FREE OF VULNERABILITY TO INTRUSION OR ATTACK. In no event shall Juniper's or its suppliers' or licensors' liability to Customer, whether in contract, tort (including negligence), breach of warranty, or otherwise, exceed the price paid by Customer for the Software that gave rise to the claim, or if the Software is embedded in another Juniper product, the price paid by Customer for such other product. Customer acknowledges and agrees that Juniper has set its prices and entered into this Agreement in reliance upon the disclaimers of warranty and the limitations of liability set forth herein, that the same reflect an allocation of risk between the Parties (including the risk that a contract remedy may fail of its essential purpose and cause consequential loss), and that the same form an essential basis of the bargain between the Parties.

9. **Termination.** Any breach of this Agreement or failure by Customer to pay any applicable fees due shall result in automatic termination of the license granted herein. Upon such termination, Customer shall destroy or return to Juniper all copies of the Software and related documentation in Customer's possession or control.

10. **Taxes.** All license fees payable under this agreement are exclusive of tax. Customer shall be responsible for paying Taxes arising from the purchase of the license, or importation or use of the Software. If applicable, valid exemption documentation for each taxing jurisdiction shall be provided to Juniper prior to invoicing, and Customer shall promptly notify Juniper if their exemption is revoked or modified. All payments made by Customer shall be net of any applicable withholding tax. Customer will provide reasonable assistance to Juniper in connection with such withholding taxes by promptly: providing Juniper with valid tax receipts and other required documentation showing Customer's payment of any withholding taxes; completing appropriate applications that would reduce the amount of withholding tax to be paid; and notifying and assisting Juniper in any audit or tax proceeding related to transactions hereunder. Customer shall comply with all applicable tax laws and regulations, and Customer will promptly pay or reimburse Juniper for all costs and damages related to any liability incurred by Juniper as a result of Customer's non-compliance or delay with its responsibilities herein. Customer's obligations under this Section shall survive termination or expiration of this Agreement.

11. **Export.** Customer agrees to comply with all applicable export laws and restrictions and regulations of any United States and any applicable foreign agency or authority, and not to export or re-export the Software or any direct product thereof in violation of any such restrictions, laws or regulations, or without all necessary approvals. Customer shall be liable for any such violations. The version of the Software supplied to Customer may contain encryption or other capabilities restricting Customer's ability to export the Software without an export license.

12. **Commercial Computer Software.** The Software is "commercial computer software" and is provided with restricted rights. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the United States government is subject to restrictions set forth in this Agreement and as provided in DFARS 227.7201 through 227.7202-4, FAR 12.212, FAR 27.405(b)(2), FAR 52.227-19, or FAR 52.227-14(ALT III) as applicable.

13. **Interface Information.** To the extent required by applicable law, and at Customer's written request, Juniper shall provide Customer with the interface information needed to achieve interoperability between the Software and another independently created program, on payment of applicable fee, if any. Customer shall observe strict obligations of confidentiality with respect to such information and shall use such information in compliance with any applicable terms and conditions upon which Juniper makes such information available.

14. **Third Party Software.** Any licensor of Juniper whose software is embedded in the Software and any supplier of Juniper whose products or technology are embedded in (or services are accessed by) the Software shall be a third party beneficiary with respect to this Agreement, and such licensor or vendor shall have the right to enforce this Agreement in its own name as if it were Juniper. In addition, certain third party software may be provided with the Software and is subject to the accompanying license(s), if any, of its respective owner(s). To the extent portions of the Software are distributed under and subject to open source licenses obligating Juniper to make the source code for such portions publicly available (such as the GNU General Public License ("GPL") or the GNU Library General Public License ("LGPL")), Juniper will make such source code portions (including Juniper modifications, as appropriate) available upon request for a period of up to three years from the date of distribution. Such request can be made in writing to Juniper Networks, Inc., 1194 N. Mathilda Ave., Sunnyvale, CA 94089, ATTN: General Counsel. You may obtain a copy of the GPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>, and a copy of the LGPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html>.

15. **Miscellaneous.** This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California without reference to its conflicts of laws principles. The provisions of the U.N. Convention for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply to this Agreement. For any disputes arising under this Agreement, the Parties hereby consent to the personal and exclusive jurisdiction of, and venue in, the state and federal courts within Santa Clara County, California. This Agreement constitutes the entire and sole agreement between Juniper and the Customer with respect to the Software, and supersedes all prior and contemporaneous

agreements relating to the Software, whether oral or written (including any inconsistent terms contained in a purchase order), except that the terms of a separate written agreement executed by an authorized Juniper representative and Customer shall govern to the extent such terms are inconsistent or conflict with terms contained herein. No modification to this Agreement nor any waiver of any rights hereunder shall be effective unless expressly assented to in writing by the party to be charged. If any portion of this Agreement is held invalid, the Parties agree that such invalidity shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this Agreement. This Agreement and associated documentation has been written in the English language, and the Parties agree that the English version will govern. (For Canada: Les parties aux présentes confirment leur volonté que cette convention de même que tous les documents y compris tout avis qui s'y rattache, soient rédigés en langue anglaise. (Translation: The parties confirm that this Agreement and all related documentation is and will be in the English language)).



# Abbreviated Table of Contents

	About This Guide	xli
<b>Part 1</b>	<b>Overview</b>	
Chapter 1	Introduction to JUNOS Software	3
Chapter 2	JUNOS Configuration Basics	17
<b>Part 2</b>	<b>System Management</b>	
Chapter 3	System Management Overview	35
Chapter 4	System Management Configuration Statements	43
Chapter 5	Configuring Basic System Management	51
Chapter 6	Configuring User Access	65
Chapter 7	Configuring System Authentication	83
Chapter 8	Configuring Time	105
Chapter 9	Configuring System Log Messages	117
Chapter 10	Configuring Miscellaneous System Management Features	153
Chapter 11	Security Configuration Example	223
Chapter 12	Summary of System Management Configuration Statements	251
<b>Part 3</b>	<b>Access</b>	
Chapter 13	Configuring Access	419
Chapter 14	Summary of Access Configuration Statements	483
<b>Part 4</b>	<b>Security Services</b>	
Chapter 15	Security Services Overview	549
Chapter 16	Security Services Configuration Guidelines	551
Chapter 17	Summary of Security Services Configuration Statements	607
<b>Part 5</b>	<b>Router Chassis</b>	
Chapter 18	Router Chassis Configuration Guidelines	663
Chapter 19	Summary of Router Chassis Configuration Statements	743
<b>Part 6</b>	<b>Index</b>	
	Index	785

**Index of Statements and Commands**

**803**



# Table of Contents

## About This Guide xli

---

JUNOS Documentation and Release Notes .....	xli
Objectives .....	xl ii
Audience .....	xl iii
Supported Platforms .....	xl iii
Using the Indexes .....	xl iii
Using the Examples in This Manual .....	xl iii
Merging a Full Example .....	xl iv
Merging a Snippet .....	xl iv
Documentation Conventions .....	xl v
Documentation Feedback .....	xl vii
Requesting Technical Support .....	xl vii

## Part 1

## Overview

---

### Chapter 1

## Introduction to JUNOS Software 3

---

JUNOS Software Overview .....	3
JUNOS Software Architecture Overview .....	4
Product Architecture .....	5
Routing Process Architecture .....	5
Packet Forwarding Engine .....	6
Routing Engine .....	6
Routing Platform Hardware Components .....	7
JUNOS Software Commit Model for Router Configuration .....	8
JUNOS Software Routing Engine Components and Processes .....	9
Routing Engine Kernel .....	9
Initialization Process .....	10
Management Process .....	10
Process Limits .....	10
Routing Protocol Process .....	10
Interface Process .....	10
Chassis Process .....	11
SNMP and MIB II Processes .....	11
JUNOS Software Support for IPv4 Routing Protocols .....	11
JUNOS Software Support for IPv6 Routing Protocols .....	13
JUNOS Software Routing and Forwarding Tables .....	13
Routing Policy Overview .....	14
JUNOS Software Support for VPNs .....	15

## Chapter 2 **JUNOS Configuration Basics** **17**

JUNOS Software Configuration Basics .....	17
JUNOS Software Configuration from External Devices .....	17
Methods for Configuring the JUNOS Software .....	18
JUNOS Command-Line Interface (CLI) .....	19
ASCII File .....	19
J-Web Package .....	19
JUNOScript API Software .....	20
NETCONF API Software .....	20
Configuration Commit Scripts .....	20
Configuring a Router for the First Time .....	21
Initial Router Configuration Using the JUNOS Software .....	21
Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with a Single Routing Engine .....	22
Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with Dual Routing Engines .....	25
JUNOS Software Default Settings for Router Security .....	27
JUNOS Software Configuration Using the CLI .....	27
Activation of the JUNOS Software Candidate Configuration .....	28
Disk Space Management for JUNOS Software Installation .....	28
JUNOS Software Tools for Monitoring the Router .....	28
JUNOS Software Features for Router Security .....	29
Methods of Remote Access for Router Management .....	29
JUNOS Software Supported Protocols and Methods for User Authentication .....	30
JUNOS Software Plain-Text Password Requirements .....	31
JUNOS Software Support for Routing Protocol Security Features and IPSec .....	31
JUNOS Software Support for Firewall Filters .....	32
JUNOS Software Auditing Support for Security .....	32

## Part 2 **System Management**

### Chapter 3 **System Management Overview** **35**

Format for Specifying IP Addresses, Network Masks, and Prefixes in JUNOS Configuration Statements .....	35
Format for Specifying Filenames and URLs in JUNOS CLI Commands .....	36
Default Directories for JUNOS Software File Storage on the Router .....	37
Directories on the Logical System .....	38
JUNOS Software Tracing and Logging Operations .....	38
JUNOS Software Authentication Methods for Routing Protocols .....	40
JUNOS Software User Authentication Methods .....	40

<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>System Management Configuration Statements</b>	<b>43</b>
	System Management Complete Configuration Statements .....	43
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Configuring Basic System Management</b>	<b>51</b>
	Configuring the Basic Router Properties .....	52
	Configuring the Router's Hostname .....	52
	Mapping the Router's Name to IP Addresses .....	52
	Configuring an ISO System Identifier for the Router .....	53
	Example: Configuring a Router's Name, IP Address, and System ID .....	53
	Configuring the Router's Domain Name .....	54
	Example: Configuring the Router's Domain Name .....	54
	Configuring the Domains to Search When a Router Is Included in Multiple Domains .....	54
	Configuring a DNS Name Server for Resolving a Router's Hostname into Addresses .....	55
	Configuring a Backup Router .....	55
	Configuring a Backup Router Running IPv4 .....	56
	Configuring a Backup Router Running IPv6 .....	56
	Configuring Automatic Mirroring of the CompactFlash Card on the Hard Disk Drive .....	57
	Configuring the Physical Location of the Router .....	57
	Configuring the Root Password .....	58
	Example: Configuring the Root Password .....	59
	Example: Configuring a Plain-Text Password for Root Logins .....	60
	Example: Configuring SSH Authentication for Root Logins .....	60
	Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords .....	60
	Changing the Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords .....	62
	Example: Changing the Requirements for JUNOS software Plain-Text Passwords .....	63
	Configuring Multiple Routing Engines to Synchronize Committed Configurations Automatically .....	63
	Compressing the Current Configuration File .....	63
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Configuring User Access</b>	<b>65</b>
	JUNOS Software Login Classes Overview .....	66
	Defining JUNOS Software Login Classes .....	67
	JUNOS Software User Accounts Overview .....	67
	Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts .....	69
	Example: Configuring User Accounts .....	69
	Limiting the Number of User Login Attempts for SSH and Telnet Sessions .....	70
	Example: Limiting the Number of Login Attempts for SSH and Telnet Sessions .....	71

JUNOS-FIPS Crypto Officer and User Accounts Overview .....	71
Crypto Officer User Configuration .....	71
FIPS User Configuration .....	72
JUNOS Software Access Privilege Levels Overview .....	72
JUNOS Software Login Class Permission Flags .....	72
Allowing or Denying Individual Commands for JUNOS Software Login Classes .....	74
Configuring Access Privilege Levels .....	75
Example: Configuring Access Privilege Levels .....	75
Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands .....	76
Example 1: Defining Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands .....	76
Example 2: Configuring Access Privileges to Individual Operational Mode Commands .....	77
Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Operational Mode Commands .....	77
Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Configuration Mode Commands .....	78
Example 1: Defining Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands .....	79
Example 2: Configuring Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands .....	80
Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Configuration Mode Commands .....	80
Configuring the Timeout Value for Idle Login Sessions .....	81
Configuring CLI Tips .....	82

## Chapter 7

## Configuring System Authentication **83**

Configuring RADIUS Authentication .....	83
Configuring RADIUS Server Details .....	83
Configuring MS-CHAPv2 for Password-Change Support .....	84
Specifying a Source Address for the JUNOS Software to Access External RADIUS Servers .....	85
Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes .....	86
Configuring TACACS+ Authentication .....	87
Configuring TACACS+ Server Details .....	88
Specifying a Source Address for the JUNOS Software to Access External TACACS+ Servers .....	89

Configuring the Same Authentication Service for Multiple TACACS + Servers .....	89
Configuring Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS + Attributes .....	90
Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS + Attributes .....	90
Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS + Authentication .....	91
Configuring Remote Template Accounts for User Authentication .....	92
Configuring Local User Template Accounts for User Authentication .....	92
Using Regular Expressions on a TACACS + or RADIUS Server to Allow or Deny Access to Commands .....	94
JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS + , and Password Authentication .....	95
Using RADIUS or TACACS + Authentication .....	95
Using Local Password Authentication .....	96
Order of Authentication Attempts .....	96
Configuring the JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS + , and Local Password Authentication .....	99
Example: Configuring System Authentication for RADIUS, TACACS + , and Password Authentication .....	100
Recovering the Root Password .....	102

## Chapter 8

### Configuring Time

**105**

Modifying the Default Time Zone for a Router Running JUNOS Software .....	105
NTP Overview .....	106
Synchronizing and Coordinating Time Distribution Using NTP .....	106
Configuring NTP .....	107
Configuring the NTP Boot Server .....	107
Specifying a Source Address for an NTP Server .....	107
NTP Time Server and Time Services Overview .....	108
Configuring the NTP Time Server and Time Services .....	109
Configuring the Router to Operate in Client Mode .....	109
Configuring the Router to Operate in Symmetric Active Mode .....	110
Configuring the Router to Operate in Broadcast Mode .....	110
Configuring the Router to Operate in Server Mode .....	111
Configuring NTP Authentication Keys .....	112
Configuring the Router to Listen for Broadcast Messages Using NTP .....	112
Configuring the Router to Listen for Multicast Messages Using NTP .....	113
Setting a Custom Time Zone on Routers Running JUNOS Software .....	113
Importing and Installing Time Zone Files .....	113
Configuring a Custom Time Zone .....	114

## Chapter 9 **Configuring System Log Messages** **117**

JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Overview .....	117
JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Statements .....	117
JUNOS Software Minimum and Default System Logging Configuration .....	118
JUNOS Software Minimum System Logging Configuration .....	119
JUNOS Software Default System Log Settings .....	119
JUNOS Software Platform-Specific Default System Log Messages .....	121
Single-Chassis System Logging Configuration .....	121
Single-Chassis System Logging Configuration Overview .....	122
Specifying the Facility and Severity of Messages to Include in the Log .....	123
JUNOS System Logging Facilities and Message Severity Levels .....	124
Directing System Log Messages to a Log File .....	125
Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format .....	126
Directing System Log Messages to a User Terminal .....	126
Directing System Log Messages to the Console .....	127
System Logging on a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine .....	127
Directing System Log Messages to a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine .....	127
Specifying an Alternative Source Address for System Log Messages .....	128
Changing the Alternative Facility Name for Remote System Log Messages .....	129
System Log Default Facilities for Messages Directed to a Remote Destination .....	131
JUNOS System Log Alternate Facilities for Remote Logging .....	131
Examples: Assigning an Alternative Facility .....	132
Adding a Text String to System Log Messages .....	133
Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties .....	133
Including Priority Information in System Log Messages .....	135
System Log Facility Codes and Numerical Codes Reported in Priority Information .....	136
Including the Year or Millisecond in Timestamps .....	137

Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages .....	138
JUNOS System Log Regular Expression Operators for the match Statement .....	139
Disabling the System Logging of a Facility .....	140
Examples: Configuring System Logging .....	141
Routing Matrix System Logging Configuration .....	142
Configuring System Logging for a Routing Matrix .....	143
Configuring Message Forwarding in the Routing Matrix .....	144
Impact of Different Local and Forwarded Severity Levels on System Log Messages .....	145
Messages Logged When Local and Forwarded Severity Levels Are the Same .....	145
Messages Logged When Local Severity Level Is Lower .....	146
Messages Logged When Local Severity Level Is Higher .....	147
Configuring Optional Features for Forwarded Messages .....	147
Including Priority Information in Forwarded Messages .....	148
Adding a Text String to Forwarded Messages .....	149
Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Forwarded Messages .....	149
Directing Messages to a Remote Destination from the Routing Matrix .....	149
Configuring System Logging Differently on Each Platform .....	150

## Chapter 10

## Configuring Miscellaneous System Management Features 153

Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set Console and Auxiliary Port Properties on a Router's Craft Interface .....	154
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable Protocol Redirect Messages on the Router .....	155
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Select a Fixed Source Address for Locally Generated TCP/IP Packets .....	156
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make the Router or Interface Act as a DHCP or BOOTP Relay Agent .....	156
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Routing Engine Response to Multicast Ping Packets .....	157
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Reporting of IP Address and Timestamps in Ping Responses .....	157
Configuring System Services for Remote Router Access .....	158
System Services Overview .....	159
Configuring clear-text or SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications .....	159
Configuring clear-text Service for JUNOScript Client Applications .....	159
Configuring SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications .....	160
Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers .....	160
DHCP Access Service Overview .....	162
Network Address Assignments (Allocating a New Address) .....	162
Network Address Assignments (Reusing a Previously Assigned Address) .....	164

Static and Dynamic Bindings .....	164
Compatibility with Autoinstallation .....	165
Conflict Detection and Resolution .....	165
DHCP Statement Hierarchy and Inheritance .....	165
Configuring Address Pools for DHCP Dynamic Bindings .....	167
Configuring Manual (Static) DHCP Bindings Between a Fixed IP Address and a Client's MAC Address .....	168
Specifying DHCP Lease Times for IP Address Assignments .....	169
Configuring a DHCP Boot File and DHCP Boot Server .....	170
Configuring a Static IP Address as DHCP Server Identifier .....	171
Configuring a Domain Name and Domain Search List for a DHCP Server Host .....	171
Configuring Routers Available to the DHCP Client .....	172
Creating User-Defined DHCP Options Not Included in the Default JUNOS Implementation of the DHCP Server .....	173
Example: Complete DHCP Server Configuration .....	174
Example: Viewing DHCP Bindings .....	175
Example: Viewing DHCP Address Pools .....	176
Example: Viewing and Clearing DHCP Conflicts .....	176
Configuring Tracing Operations for DHCP Processes .....	176
Configuring the DHCP Processes Log Filename .....	177
Configuring the Number and Size of DHCP Processes Log Files .....	177
Configuring Access to the DHCP Log File .....	178
Configuring a Regular Expression for Refining the Output of DHCP Logged Events .....	178
Configuring DHCP Trace Operation Events .....	178
DHCP Processes Tracing Flags .....	179
Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server .....	180
Interaction Among the DHCP Client, Extended DHCP Local Server, and Address-Assignment Pools .....	182
Extended DHCP Local Server and Address-Assignment Pools .....	182
Methods Used by the Extended DHCP Local Server to Determine Which Address-Assignment Pool to Use .....	183
Matching the Client IP Address to the Address-Assignment Pool ....	183
Matching Option 82 Information to Named Address Ranges .....	183
Default Options Provided by the Extended DHCP Server for the DHCP Client .....	183
Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients .....	184
Configuring Authentication Support for an Extended DHCP Application .....	184
Grouping Interfaces with Common DHCP Configurations .....	186
Configuring Passwords for Usernames the DHCP Application Presents to the External AAA Authentication Service .....	187
Creating Unique Usernames the Extended DHCP Application Passes to the External AAA Authentication Service .....	187
Client Configuration Information Exchanged Between the External Authentication Server, DHCP Application, and DHCP Client .....	188



Tracing Extended DHCP Local Server Operations .....	189
Configuring the Filename of the Extended DHCP Local Server	
Processes Log .....	190
Configuring the Number and Size of Extended DHCP Local Server	
Processes Log Files .....	190
Configuring Access to the Log File .....	191
Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged .....	191
Configuring Trace Option Flags .....	191
Example: Configuring Minimum Extended DHCP Local Server	
Configuration .....	192
Example: Extended DHCP Local Server Configuration with Optional Pool	
Matching .....	192
Verifying and Managing DHCP Local Server Configuration .....	193
Configuring DTCP-over-SSH Service for the Flow-Tap Application .....	193
Configuring Finger Service for Remote Access to the Router .....	194
Configuring FTP Service for Remote Access to the Router .....	195
Configuring SSH Service for Remote Access to the Router .....	195
Configuring the Root Login Through SSH .....	196
Configuring the SSH Protocol Version .....	196
Configuring Outbound SSH Service .....	197
Configuring the Router's Device Identifier for Outbound SSH	
Connections .....	198
Sending the Router's Public SSH Host Key to the Outbound SSH	
Client .....	198
Configuring Keepalive Messages for Outbound SSH	
Connections .....	199
Configuring a New Outbound SSH Connection .....	200
Configuring the Outbound SSH Client to Accept NETCONF as an	
Available Service .....	200
Configuring Outbound SSH Clients .....	200
Configuring Telnet Service for Remote Access to a Router .....	201
Configuring Password Authentication for Console Access to PICs .....	201
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Message .....	202
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login	
Announcement .....	203
Disabling JUNOS Software Processes .....	203
Configuring Failover to Backup Media if a JUNOS Software Process Fails ....	204
Configuring Password Authentication for the Diagnostics Port .....	204
Viewing Core Files from JUNOS Software Processes .....	205
Saving Core Files from JUNOS Software Processes .....	205
Using JUNOS Software to Configure Logical System Administrators .....	205
Using JUNOS Software to Configure a Router to Transfer Its Configuration	
to an Archive Site .....	207
Configuring the Router to Transfer Its Currently Active Configuration to	
an Archive .....	207
Configuring the Transfer Interval for Periodic Transfer of the Active	
Configuration to an Archive Site .....	207
Configuring Transfer of the Current Active Configuration When a	
Configuration Is Committed .....	208
Configuring Archive Sites for Transfer of Active Configuration Files .....	208

Using JUNOS Software to Specify the Number of Configurations Stored on the CompactFlash Card .....	209
Configuring RADIUS System Accounting .....	209
Configuring Auditing of User Events on a RADIUS Server .....	209
Specifying RADIUS Server Accounting and Auditing Events .....	210
Configuring RADIUS Server Accounting .....	210
Example: Configuring RADIUS System Accounting .....	211
Configuring TACACS+ System Accounting .....	212
Specifying TACACS+ Auditing and Accounting Events .....	212
Configuring TACACS+ Server Accounting .....	212
Configuring TACACS+ Accounting on a TX Matrix Platform .....	213
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Work with SRC Software .....	214
Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv4 Rate Limit for ICMPv4 Routing Engine Messages .....	214
Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv6 Rate Limit for ICMPv6 Routing Engine Messages .....	215
Configuring the JUNOS Software for IP-IP Path MTU Discovery on IP-IP Tunnel Connections .....	215
Configuring TCP MSS for Session Negotiation .....	215
Configuring TCP MSS on T-series and M-series Routing Platforms .....	216
Configuring TCP MSS on J-series Services Routers .....	216
Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Path MTU Discovery .....	216
Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Duplicate Address Detection Attempts .....	217
Configuring the JUNOS Software for Acceptance of IPv6 Packets with a Zero Hop-Limit .....	217
Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing GRE Tunnel Connections .....	217
Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing TCP Connections .....	218
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Ignore ICMP Source Quench Messages .....	218
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the Router to Drop Packets with the SYN and FIN Bits Set .....	218
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable TCP RFC 1323 Extensions .....	218
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the TCP RFC 1323 PAWS Extension .....	219
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Extend the Default Port Address Range .....	219
Configuring the JUNOS Software ARP Learning and Aging Options for Mapping IPv4 Network Addresses to MAC Addresses .....	219
Configuring Passive ARP Learning for Backup VRRP Routers .....	219
Adjusting the ARP Aging Timer .....	220
Using JUNOS Software to Configure System Alarms to Appear Automatically on J-series Routers .....	221
System Alarms on J-series Routers .....	221

<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Security Configuration Example</b>	<b>223</b>
	Example: Configuring a Router's Name and Domain Name .....	223
	Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication .....	223
	Example: Creating Login Classes .....	224
	Example: Defining User Login Accounts .....	225
	Example: Defining RADIUS Template Accounts .....	225
	Example: Enabling SSH Connection Services .....	226
	Example: Configuring System Logging .....	226
	Example: Configuring NTP as a Single Time Source for Router Clock Synchronization .....	227
	Example: Configuring ATM, SONET, Loopback, and Out-of-band Management Interfaces .....	227
	Example: Configuring SNMPv3 .....	229
	Examples: Configuring Protocol-Independent Routing Properties .....	232
	Example: Configuring the Router ID and Autonomous System Number for BGP .....	232
	Example: Configuring Martian Addresses .....	232
	Example: Viewing Reserved IRI IP Addresses .....	233
	Example: Configuring the BGP and IS-IS Routing Protocols .....	233
	Configuring BGP .....	234
	Configuring IS-IS .....	235
	Configuring Firewall Policies and Filters .....	235
	Example: Configuring Firewall Filters .....	236
	Example: Configuring Firewall Policies .....	239
	Example: Consolidated Security Configuration .....	240
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Summary of System Management Configuration Statements</b>	<b>251</b>
	accounting .....	252
	accounting-port .....	253
	allow-commands .....	253
	allow-configuration .....	254
	allow-transients .....	254
	announcement .....	255
	archival .....	255
	archive .....	256
	archive (All System Log Files) .....	256
	archive (Individual System Log File) .....	256
	archive-sites .....	257
	archive-sites (Configuration) .....	257
	archive-sites (System Log) .....	258
	arp .....	259
	authentication .....	260
	authentication (Login) .....	260
	authentication (Subscriber Access Management) .....	261
	authentication-key .....	262
	authentication-order .....	263
	autoinstallation .....	264

auxiliary .....	265
backup-router .....	265
boot-file .....	266
boot-server .....	267
boot-server (DHCP) .....	267
boot-server (NTP) .....	268
broadcast .....	269
broadcast-client .....	270
bucket-size .....	270
change-type .....	271
circuit-type .....	272
class .....	273
class (Define Login Classes) .....	273
class (Assign a Class to an Individual User) .....	273
client-identifier .....	274
commit .....	275
commit synchronize .....	276
compress-configuration-files .....	277
configuration .....	278
configuration-servers .....	278
connection-limit .....	279
console .....	280
console (Physical Port) .....	280
console (System Logging) .....	281
default-address-selection .....	281
default-lease-time .....	282
delimiter .....	283
deny-commands .....	284
deny-configuration .....	285
destination .....	286
destination-override .....	287
dhcp .....	288
dhcp-local-server .....	290
diag-port-authentication .....	292
domain-name .....	293
domain-name (DHCP) .....	293
domain-name (Subscriber Access Management) .....	294
domain-name (Router) .....	295
domain-search .....	295
dump-device .....	296
events .....	297
explicit-priority .....	297
facility-override .....	298
file .....	299
file (Commit Scripts) .....	299
file (System Logging) .....	300
files .....	301
finger .....	301
flow-tap-dtcp .....	302
format .....	303
ftp .....	303

full-name .....	304
gre-path-mtu-discovery .....	304
group .....	305
host .....	306
host-name .....	307
http .....	307
https .....	308
icmpv4-rate-limit .....	309
icmpv6-rate-limit .....	309
idle-timeout .....	310
inet6-backup-router .....	310
interface .....	311
interface (ARP Aging Timer) .....	311
interface (DHCP Local Server) .....	312
interfaces .....	313
internet-options .....	314
ip-address-first .....	315
ipip-path-mtu-discovery .....	315
ipv6-duplicate-addr-detection-transmits .....	316
ipv6-path-mtu-discovery .....	316
ipv6-path-mtu-discovery-timeout .....	317
ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit .....	317
limits .....	318
load-key-file .....	318
local-certificate .....	319
location .....	320
log-prefix .....	321
logical-system-name .....	322
login .....	323
login-alarms .....	324
login-tip .....	324
mac-address .....	325
match .....	326
max-configurations-on-flash .....	326
maximum-lease-time .....	327
maximum-length .....	327
message .....	328
minimum-changes .....	328
minimum-length .....	329
mirror-flash-on-disk .....	330
multicast-client .....	331
name-server .....	331
no-compress-configuration-files .....	331
no-gre-path-mtu-discovery .....	332
no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery .....	332
no-ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit .....	332
no-multicast-echo .....	332
no-path-mtu-discovery .....	332
no-ping-record-route .....	333
no-ping-time-stamp .....	333
no-redirects .....	334

no-remote-trace .....	334
no-saved-core-context .....	334
no-source-quench .....	334
no-tcp-rfc1323 .....	335
no-tcp-rfc1323-paws .....	335
no-world-readable .....	335
ntp .....	336
option-60 .....	337
option-82 .....	338
option-82 (Extended DHCP Local Server) .....	338
option-82 (Subscriber Access Management) .....	339
optional .....	340
outbound-ssh .....	341
packet-rate .....	343
password .....	344
password (Login) .....	344
password (Subscriber Access Management) .....	345
path-mtu-discovery .....	346
peer .....	347
permissions .....	348
pic-console-authentication .....	349
pool .....	350
pool-match-order .....	351
port .....	352
port (HTTP/HTTPS) .....	352
port (RADIUS Server) .....	352
port (SRC Server) .....	353
port (TACACS + Server) .....	353
ports .....	354
processes .....	355
protocol-version .....	356
radius .....	356
radius-options .....	357
radius-server .....	358
rate-limit .....	359
refresh .....	359
refresh-from .....	360
retry .....	360
retry-options .....	361
root-authentication .....	362
root-login .....	363
router .....	363
routing-instance-name .....	364
saved-core-context .....	365
saved-core-files .....	365
scripts .....	366
secret .....	367
server .....	368
server (NTP) .....	368
server (RADIUS Accounting) .....	369
server (TACACS + Accounting) .....	369

server-identifier .....	370
servers .....	371
service-deployment .....	371
services .....	372
session .....	373
single-connection .....	374
size .....	374
source .....	375
source-address .....	376
source-address (NTP, RADIUS, System Logging, or TACACS+) .....	376
source-address (SRC Software) .....	377
source-port .....	377
source-quench .....	378
ssh .....	378
start-time .....	379
static-binding .....	380
static-host-mapping .....	381
structured-data .....	382
syslog .....	383
system .....	384
tacplus .....	384
tacplus-options .....	385
tacplus-server .....	386
tcp-drop-synfin-set .....	386
tcp-mss .....	387
telnet .....	388
time-format .....	389
timeout .....	390
time-zone .....	391
traceoptions .....	394
traceoptions (Address-Assignment Pool) .....	395
traceoptions (Commit Scripts) .....	397
traceoptions (DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers) .....	399
traceoptions (Extended DHCP Local Server) .....	402
traceoptions (SBC Configuration Process) .....	404
tracing .....	406
transfer-interval .....	407
transfer-interval (Configuration) .....	407
transfer-interval (System Log) .....	407
transfer-on-commit .....	408
trusted-key .....	408
uid .....	409
user .....	410
user (Access) .....	410
user (System Logging) .....	411
username-include .....	412
user-prefix .....	413
web-management .....	414
wins-server .....	415
world-readable .....	415

xnm-clear-text .....	416
xnm-ssl .....	416

## Part 3

## Access

### Chapter 13

### Configuring Access 419

Access Configuration Complete Statements .....	420
Configuring the PPP Authentication Protocol .....	423
Example: Configuring PPP CHAP .....	424
Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS .....	425
Configuring Tracing Operations for Access Processes .....	427
Configuring the Access Processes Log Filename .....	428
Configuring the Number and Size of Access Processes Log Files .....	428
Configuring Access to the Log File .....	429
Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged .....	429
Configuring the Trace Operations to be Logged .....	429
Configuring L2TP for Enabling PPP Tunneling Within a Network .....	430
Defining Minimum L2TP Configuration .....	431
Configuring the Address Pool for L2TP Network Server IP Address Allocation .....	432
Configuring the Group Profile for Defining L2TP Attributes .....	433
Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile .....	433
Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile .....	434
Example: Group Profile Configuration .....	435
Configuring Access Profiles for L2TP or PPP Parameters .....	436
Configuring the Access Profile .....	436
Configuring the L2TP Properties for a Profile .....	436
Configuring the PPP Properties for a Profile .....	437
Configuring the Authentication Order .....	437
Configuring the Accounting Order .....	438
Configuring the L2TP Client .....	439
Example: Defining the Default Tunnel Client .....	439
Example: Defining the User Group Profile .....	439
Configuring the CHAP Secret for an L2TP Profile .....	440
Example: Configuring L2TP PPP CHAP .....	440
Referencing the Group Profile from the L2TP Profile .....	441
Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile .....	441
Example: PPP MP for L2TP .....	442
Example: L2TP Multilink PPP Support on Shared Interfaces .....	443
Configuring the PAP Password for an L2TP Profile .....	444
Example: Configuring PAP for an L2TP Profile .....	444
Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile .....	445
Applying a Configured PPP Group Profile to a Tunnel .....	446
Example: Applying a User Group Profile on the M7i or M10i Router .....	446
Example: Configuring the Access Profile .....	447
Example: Configuring L2TP .....	448



Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP .....	450
RADIUS Attributes for L2TP .....	451
Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP .....	454
Configuring the RADIUS Disconnect Server for L2TP .....	455
Configuring RADIUS Authentication for an L2TP Client and Profile .....	456
Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication for an L2TP Profile .....	457
Configuring an IKE Access Profile .....	457
Subscriber Access Management .....	459
Subscriber Access Management Overview .....	459
AAA Service Framework Overview .....	459
RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview .....	460
Configuring Router Interactions with RADIUS Servers for Subscriber Access .....	460
Configuring Authentication and Accounting Parameters for Subscriber Access .....	461
Specifying the Authentication and Accounting Methods .....	461
Configuring How Accounting Statistics Are Collected .....	462
Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management .....	463
Specifying the RADIUS Authentication and Accounting Servers to Use for Subscriber Access Management .....	463
Configuring Options for RADIUS Servers .....	463
Configuring How RADIUS Attributes Are Used .....	464
Example: Configuring RADIUS-Based Subscriber Authentication and Accounting .....	466
RADIUS Attributes and Juniper Networks VSAs Supported by the AAA Service Framework .....	468
RADIUS IETF Attributes Supported by the AAA Service Framework .....	468
Juniper Networks VSAs Supported by the AAA Service Framework .....	471
Attaching Access Profiles with the Routing Instance .....	473
Verifying and Managing Subscriber Access Information .....	474
Overview of Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management .....	474
License Requirements for Address-Assignment Pools .....	475
Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management .....	475
Configuring an Address-Assignment Pool Name and Network Address .....	476
Configuring a Named Address Range for Dynamic Address Assignment .....	476
Configuring Static Address Assignment .....	477
Configuring DHCP Client-Specific Attributes .....	477
DHCP Client-Specific Attributes .....	478
Example: Configuring an Address-Assignment Pool .....	478
Tracing Address-Assignment Pool Processes .....	479
Configuring the Address-Assignment Pool Trace Log Filename .....	480
Configuring the Number and Size of Address-Assignment Pool Processes Log Files .....	480
Configuring Access to the Log File .....	481

Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged .....	481
Configuring the Trace .....	481

**Chapter 14****Summary of Access Configuration Statements****483**

accounting .....	483
accounting-order .....	484
accounting-port .....	484
accounting-server .....	485
accounting-session-id-format .....	485
accounting-stop-on-access-deny .....	486
accounting-stop-on-failure .....	486
address .....	487
address-assignment .....	488
address-pool .....	489
address-range .....	489
allowed-proxy-pair .....	490
attributes .....	491
authentication-order .....	492
authentication-server .....	492
boot-file .....	493
boot-server .....	493
cell-overhead .....	494
chap-secret .....	494
circuit-id .....	495
client .....	496
dhcp-attributes .....	497
domain-name .....	498
drop-timeout .....	498
encapsulation-overhead .....	499
ethernet-port-type-virtual .....	499
exclude .....	500
fragmentation-threshold .....	502
framed-ip-address .....	502
framed-pool .....	503
grace-period .....	503
group-profile .....	504
group-profile (Group Profile) .....	504
group-profile (Profile) .....	505
hardware-address .....	505
host .....	506
idle-timeout .....	506
ignore .....	507
ike .....	508
ike-policy .....	508
immediate-update .....	509
initiate-dead-peer-detection .....	509
interface-description-format .....	510
interface-id .....	510
ip-address .....	511

keepalive .....	511
l2tp .....	512
l2tp (Group Profile) .....	512
l2tp (Profile) .....	513
lcp-renegotiation .....	513
local-chap .....	514
maximum-lease-time .....	514
maximum-sessions-per-tunnel .....	515
multilink .....	515
name-server .....	516
nas-identifier .....	516
nas-port-extended-format .....	517
netbios-node-type .....	518
network .....	518
option .....	519
options .....	520
option-82 .....	521
option-match .....	521
order .....	522
override-nas-information .....	523
pap-password .....	523
pool .....	524
port .....	524
ppp .....	525
ppp (Group Profile) .....	525
ppp (Profile) .....	526
ppp-authentication .....	526
ppp-profile .....	527
pre-shared-key .....	527
primary-dns .....	528
primary-wins .....	528
profile .....	529
radius .....	532
radius-disconnect .....	533
radius-disconnect-port .....	534
radius-server .....	535
range .....	536
remote-id .....	536
retry .....	537
revert-interval .....	537
router .....	538
routing-instance .....	538
secondary-dns .....	539
secondary-wins .....	539
secret .....	540
shared-secret .....	540
source-address .....	541
statistics .....	541
tftp-server .....	542
timeout .....	542
traceoptions .....	543

update-interval .....	544
user-group-profile .....	545
vlan-nas-port-stacked-format .....	545
wins-server .....	546

## Part 4

## Security Services

---

### Chapter 15

### Security Services Overview 549

---

IPSec Overview .....	549
Security Associations Overview .....	549
IKE Key Management Protocol Overview .....	550
IPSec Requirements for JUNOS-FIPS Overview .....	550

### Chapter 16

### Security Services Configuration Guidelines 551

---

Security Services Complete Configuration Statements .....	551
Configuring IPSec for an ES PIC .....	554
IPSec Configuration for an ES PIC Overview .....	554
Configuring Minimum Manual Security Associations for IPSec on an ES PIC .....	555
Configuring Minimum IKE Requirements for IPSec on an ES PIC .....	555
Configuring Minimum Digital Certificates Requirements for IKE on an ES PIC .....	555
Configuring Security Associations for IPSec on an ES PIC .....	556
Configuring the Description for an SA .....	557
Configuring IPSec Transport Mode .....	557
Configuring IPSec Tunnel Mode .....	558
Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC .....	558
Configuring Dynamic IPSec Security Associations .....	563
Enabling Dynamic IPSec Security Associations .....	563
Configuring an IKE Proposal for Dynamic SAs .....	563
Configuring the Authentication Algorithm for an IKE Proposal .....	564
Configuring the Authentication Method for an IKE Proposal .....	564
Configuring the Description for an IKE Proposal .....	565
Configuring the Diffie-Hellman Group for an IKE Proposal .....	565
Configuring the Encryption Algorithm for an IKE Proposal .....	565
Configuring the Lifetime for an IKE SA .....	566
Example: Configuring an IKE Proposal .....	566
Configuring an IKE Policy for Preshared Keys .....	566
Configuring the Description for an IKE Policy .....	567
Configuring the Mode for an IKE Policy .....	567
Configuring the Preshared Key for an IKE Policy .....	567
Associating Proposals with an IKE Policy .....	568
Example: Configuring an IKE Policy .....	568
Configuring an IPSec Proposal for an ES PIC .....	569
Configuring the Authentication Algorithm for an IPSec Proposal .....	569
Configuring the Description for an IPSec Proposal .....	570

Configuring the Encryption Algorithm for an IPSec Proposal .....	570
Configuring the Lifetime for an IPSec SA .....	570
Configuring the Protocol for a Dynamic IPSec SA .....	571
Configuring the IPSec Policy for an ES PIC .....	571
Configuring Perfect Forward Secrecy .....	572
Example: Configuring an IPSec Policy .....	572
Using Digital Certificates for ES and AS PICs .....	573
Complete Configuration Statements for Configuring Digital Certificates for an ES PIC .....	573
Digital Certificates Overview .....	574
Obtaining a Certificate from a Certificate Authority for an ES PIC .....	575
Requesting a CA Digital Certificate for an ES PIC on an M-series or T-series Routing Platform .....	575
Example: Requesting a CA Digital Certificate .....	576
Generating a Private and Public Key Pair for Digital Certificates for an ES PIC .....	576
Configuring Digital Certificates for an ES PIC .....	576
Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties for an ES PIC .....	577
Configuring the Cache Size .....	579
Configuring the Negative Cache .....	580
Configuring the Number of Enrollment Retries .....	580
Configuring the Maximum Number of Peer Certificates .....	580
Configuring the Path Length for the Certificate Hierarchy .....	581
Configuring an IKE Policy for Digital Certificates for an ES PIC .....	581
Configuring the Type of Encoding Your CA Supports .....	582
Configuring the Identity to Define the Remote Certificate Name .....	582
Specifying the Certificate Filename .....	582
Specifying the Private and Public Key File .....	582
Obtaining a Signed Certificate from the CA for an ES PIC .....	583
Associating the Configured Security Association with a Logical Interface .....	584
Configuring Digital Certificates for Adaptive Services Interfaces .....	584
Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties .....	586
Configuring the Certificate Revocation List .....	587
Managing Digital Certificates .....	589
Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA .....	591
Configuring IPSec Tunnel Traffic .....	593
IPSec Tunnel Traffic Configuration Overview .....	594
Example: Configuring an Outbound Traffic Filter .....	595
Example: Applying an Outbound Traffic Filter .....	596

Example: Configuring an Inbound Traffic Filter for Policy Check .....	596
Example: Applying an Inbound Traffic Filter to an ES PIC for Policy Check .....	597
ES Tunnel Interface Configuration for a Layer 3 VPN .....	598
Configuring Tracing Operations for Security Services .....	598
Configuring Tracing Operations for IPSec Events for Adaptive Services PICs .....	598
Configuring the Authentication Key Update Mechanism for BGP and LDP Routing Protocols .....	599
Configuring Authentication Key Updates .....	600
Configuring BGP and LDP for Authentication Key Updates .....	600
Configuring SSH Host Keys for Secure Copying of Data .....	601
Configuring SSH Known Hosts .....	601
Configuring Support for SCP File Transfer .....	602
Updating SSH Host Key Information .....	602
Retrieving Host Key Information Manually .....	602
Importing Host Key Information from a File .....	603
Importing SSL Certificates for JUNOScript Support .....	603
Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS .....	604
Configuring the SA Direction .....	604
Configuring the IPSec SPI .....	605
Configuring the IPSec Key .....	605
Example: Configuring Internal IPSec .....	606

## Chapter 17

## Summary of Security Services Configuration Statements 607

algorithm .....	607
authentication .....	608
authentication-algorithm .....	609
authentication-algorithm (IKE) .....	609
authentication-algorithm (IPSec) .....	609
authentication-key-chains .....	610
authentication-method .....	611
auto-re-enrollment .....	612
auxiliary-spi .....	613
ca-identity .....	613
ca-name .....	614
ca-profile .....	615
cache-size .....	616
cache-timeout-negative .....	616
certificate-id .....	617
certificates .....	618
certification-authority .....	619
challenge-password .....	619
crl .....	620
crl (Encryption Interface on M-series and T-series Routing Platforms Only) .....	620
crl (Adaptive Services Interfaces Only) .....	621
description .....	622
dh-group .....	622

direction .....	623
direction (JUNOS Software) .....	623
direction (JUNOS-FIPS Software) .....	624
dynamic .....	625
encoding .....	625
encryption .....	626
encryption (JUNOS Software) .....	626
encryption (JUNOS-FIPS Software) .....	627
encryption-algorithm .....	627
enrollment .....	628
enrollment-retry .....	629
enrollment-url .....	629
file .....	630
identity .....	630
ike .....	631
internal .....	632
ipsec .....	633
key .....	634
ldap-url .....	635
lifetime-seconds .....	635
local .....	636
local-certificate .....	636
local-key-pair .....	637
manual .....	638
manual (JUNOS Software) .....	638
manual (JUNOS-FIPS Software) .....	639
maximum-certificates .....	639
mode .....	640
mode (IKE) .....	640
mode (IPSec) .....	641
path-length .....	642
perfect-forward-secrecy .....	642
pki .....	643
policy .....	644
policy (IKE) .....	644
policy (IPSec) .....	645
pre-shared-key .....	645
proposal .....	646
proposal (IKE) .....	646
proposal (IPSec) .....	647
proposals .....	647
protocol .....	648
protocol (JUNOS Software) .....	648
protocol (JUNOS-FIPS Software) .....	648
re-enroll-trigger-time .....	649
re-generate-keypair .....	649
refresh-interval .....	650
retry .....	650
retry-interval .....	651
revocation-check .....	652

security-association .....	653
security-association (JUNOS Software) .....	653
security-association (JUNOS-FIPS Software) .....	654
spi .....	655
spi (JUNOS Software) .....	655
spi (JUNOS-FIPS Software) .....	655
ssh-known-hosts .....	656
traceoptions .....	657
url .....	658
validity-period .....	659

## Part 5

## Router Chassis

### Chapter 18

### Router Chassis Configuration Guidelines

**663**

Router Chassis Complete Configuration Statements .....	664
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make a Flexible PIC Concentrator Stay Offline .....	667
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make an SFM Stay Offline .....	668
Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices .....	669
Configuring Virtual Links for Aggregated Devices .....	669
Configuring LACP Link Protection at the Chassis Level .....	669
Enabling LACP Link Protection .....	670
Configuring System Priority .....	671
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Use ATM Cell-Relay Accumulation Mode on an ATM1 PIC .....	671
Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances .....	671
Port-Mirroring Instances Overview .....	672
Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on MX-series Routers .....	672
Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances at the DPC Level .....	672
Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances at the PIC Level .....	673
Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on M320 Routers .....	673
Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on M120 Routers .....	674
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Determine the Conditions That Trigger Alarms .....	674
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Determine Conditions That Trigger Alarms on Different Interface Types .....	675
System-Wide Alarms and Alarms for Each Interface Type .....	675
Chassis Conditions That Trigger Alarms .....	677
Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M5 or M10 Router .....	677
.....	680
Chassis Components Alarm Conditions for an M20 Router .....	683
Chassis Component alarm Conditions for an M120 Router .....	686
Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40 Router .....	690
Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40e or M160 Router .....	694
Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M320 Router .....	698



Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an MX240, MX480, or MX960 Router .....	702
Backup Routing Engine Alarms .....	706
Silencing External Devices Connected to the Alarm Relay Contacts .....	707
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Physical Operation of the Craft Interface .....	707
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Service Packages on Adaptive Services Interfaces .....	708
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs .....	709
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support an External Clock Synchronization Interface for the M320, M40e, and M120 Routing Platforms .....	710
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the Sparse DLCI Mode on Channelized STM1 or Channelized DS3 PICs .....	712
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a SONET PIC to Operate in the Channelized (Multiplexed) Mode .....	712
Configuring Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming .....	713
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots .....	713
Ranges for Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Configuration .....	715
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Eight Queues on IQ Interfaces for T-Series and M320 Routing Platforms .....	715
Configuring Channel Groups and Time Slots for a Channelized E1 Interface .....	716
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channel Groups and Time Slots for Channelized E1 PICs .....	716
Ranges for Channelized E1 Configuration .....	717
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized STM1 Interface Virtual Tributary Mapping .....	718
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable ATM2 Intelligent Queuing Layer 2 Circuit Transport Mode .....	718
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support ILMI for Cell Relay Encapsulation on an ATM2 IQ PIC .....	719
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Tunnel Interfaces on MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers .....	720
Example: Configuring Tunnel Interfaces on a Gigabit Ethernet 40-Port DPC .....	721
Example: Configuring Tunnel Interfaces on a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-Port DPC .....	721
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable an M160 Router to Operate in Packet Scheduling Mode .....	722
Configuring the Link Services PIC for Multilink Protocol Support .....	722
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the Link Services PIC Multiclass Extension for Multiple Classes of Service Using MLPPP (RFC 2686) .....	723
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Idle Cell Format and Payload Patterns for ATM Devices .....	723
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable MTU Path Check for a Routing Instance on M-series Routers .....	724
Enabling MTU Check for a Routing Instance .....	725
Assigning an IP Address to an Interface in the Routing Instance .....	725

Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Redundancy on Routers Having Multiple Routing Engines or Switching Boards .....	725
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support FPC to FEB Connectivity on M120 Routers .....	726
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a Routing Engine to Reboot on Hard Disk Errors .....	728
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Prevent the Resetting of the Factory Default or Rescue Configuration During Current Configuration Failure on J-Series Routers .....	728
Configuring Larger Delay Buffers to Prevent Congestion And Packet Dropping .....	729
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Larger Delay Buffers for T1, E1, and DS0 Interfaces Configured on Channelized IQ PICs .....	729
Maximum Delay Buffer with q-pic-large-buffer Statement Enabled .....	730
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Entry-Level Configuration on an M320 Router With a Minimum Number of SIBs and PIMs .....	731
Configuring the uPIM Mode to Run in the Switching or Routing Modes on J-Series Routes .....	732
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the uPIM Mode on J-series Routers .....	732
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set a PIM Offline on J-Series Routers .....	732
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable Power Management on the J-series Chassis .....	733
Configuring the IP and Ethernet Services Mode in MX-series Routers .....	733
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Run in the IP and Ethernet Services Mode in MX-series Routers .....	733
Restrictions on JUNOS Features for MX-series Routers .....	734
Configuring J-series Services Router Switching Interfaces .....	734
Example: Configuring J-series Services Router Switching Interfaces .....	735
TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Guidelines .....	735
TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview .....	735
Routing Matrix Overview .....	736
Running Different JUNOS Software Releases on the TX Matrix Platform and the T640 Routing Nodes .....	737
TX Matrix Platform Software Upgrades and Reinstallation .....	737
TX Matrix Platform Rebooting Process .....	737
Committing Configurations on the TX Matrix Platform .....	737
Routing Matrix Configuration Groups .....	738
Routing Matrix System Log Messages .....	738
Using the JUNOS software to Configure a T640 Routing Node Within a Routing Matrix .....	738
TX Matrix Platform Chassis and Interface Names .....	739
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Upgrade and Downgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform .....	741
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Upgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform .....	741
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Downgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform .....	742
Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the TX Matrix Platform to Generate an Alarm if a T640 Routing Node Stays Offline .....	742

**Chapter 19****Summary of Router Chassis Configuration Statements****743**

adaptive-services .....	743
aggregate-ports .....	744
aggregated-devices .....	744
alarm .....	745
atm-cell-relay-accumulation .....	746
atm-l2circuit-mode .....	747
bandwidth .....	748
cel .....	749
channel-group .....	749
chassis .....	750
config-button .....	750
craft-lockout .....	751
ct3 .....	751
device-count .....	752
disk-failure-action .....	752
e1 .....	753
ethernet .....	753
fabric upgrade-mode .....	754
fpc .....	755
fpc (M320, T320, T640 Routing Platforms) .....	756
fpc (MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers) .....	757
fpc (TX Matrix Platform) .....	758
fpc-feb-connectivity .....	759
framing .....	759
idle-cell-format .....	760
lACP .....	760
lcc .....	761
link-protection .....	762
max-queues-per-interface .....	762
mlfr-uni-nni-bundles .....	763
network-services .....	763
no-concatenate .....	764
non-revertive .....	765
offline .....	765
on-disk-failure .....	766
online-expected .....	766
packet-scheduling .....	767
pem .....	768
pic .....	769
pic (M-series and T-series Routing Platforms) .....	769
pic (TX Matrix Platform) .....	770
port .....	770
power .....	771
q-pic-large-buffer .....	772
red-buffer-occupancy .....	773
routing-engine .....	774
sfm .....	775

service-package .....	775
sib .....	776
sonet .....	776
sparse-dlcis .....	777
synchronization .....	778
system-priority .....	779
t1 .....	779
timeslots .....	780
traffic-manager .....	780
tunnel-services .....	781
vrf-mtu-check .....	781
vtmapping .....	782

## Part 6

## Index

---

Index .....	785
Index of Statements and Commands .....	803

# List of Figures

<b>Part 1</b>	<b>Overview</b>	
Chapter 1	Introduction to JUNOS Software	3
	Figure 1: Product Architecture .....	6
<b>Part 2</b>	<b>System Management</b>	
Chapter 7	Configuring System Authentication	83
	Figure 2: Connecting to the Console Port on the J2300 Services Router .....	103
Chapter 10	Configuring Miscellaneous System Management Features	153
	Figure 3: DHCP Discover .....	163
	Figure 4: DHCP Offer .....	163
	Figure 5: DHCP Request .....	163
	Figure 6: DHCP ACK .....	164
	Figure 7: DHCP Release .....	164
<b>Part 4</b>	<b>Security Services</b>	
Chapter 16	Security Services Configuration Guidelines	551
	Figure 8: Example: IPSec Tunnel Connecting Security Gateways .....	594
<b>Part 5</b>	<b>Router Chassis</b>	
Chapter 18	Router Chassis Configuration Guidelines	663
	Figure 9: Routing Matrix .....	736



# List of Tables

<b>About This Guide</b>	<b>xli</b>
Table 1: Additional Books Available Through http://www.juniper.net/books .....	xli
Table 2: Notice Icons .....	xlvi
Table 3: Text and Syntax Conventions .....	xlvi

## Part 1

### Overview

<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Introduction to JUNOS Software</b>	<b>3</b>
	Table 4: Major Router Hardware Components .....	7
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>JUNOS Configuration Basics</b>	<b>17</b>
	Table 5: Methods for Configuring JUNOS Software .....	18

## Part 2

### System Management

<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Configuring Basic System Management</b>	<b>51</b>
	Table 6: Special Requirements for Plain-Text Passwords .....	60
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Configuring User Access</b>	<b>65</b>
	Table 7: Default System Login Classes .....	66
	Table 8: Login Class Permission Flags .....	72
	Table 9: Common Regular Expression Operators to Allow or Deny Operational Mode Commands .....	78
	Table 10: Configuration Mode Commands—Common Regular Expression Operators .....	81
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Configuring System Authentication</b>	<b>83</b>
	Table 11: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes .....	86
	Table 12: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes .....	90
	Table 13: Order of Authentication Attempts .....	97
<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Configuring System Log Messages</b>	<b>117</b>
	Table 14: Minimum Configuration Statements for System Logging .....	119
	Table 15: Default System Logging Settings .....	120
	Table 16: JUNOS System Logging Facilities .....	124
	Table 17: System Log Message Severity Levels .....	124
	Table 18: Default Facilities for Messages Directed to a Remote Destination .....	131
	Table 19: Facilities for the facility-override Statement .....	131
	Table 20: Facility Codes Reported in Priority Information .....	136
	Table 21: Numerical Codes for Severity Levels Reported in Priority Information .....	137
	Table 22: Regular Expression Operators for the match Statement .....	139

Table 23: Example: Local and Forwarded Severity Level Are Both info .....	146
Table 24: Example: Local Severity Is notice, Forwarded Severity Is critical .....	146
Table 25: Example: Local Severity Is critical, Forwarded Severity Is notice .....	147
<b>Chapter 10    Configuring Miscellaneous System Management Features</b>	<b>153</b>
Table 26: Pool and Binding Statements .....	166
Table 27: Common Configuration Statements .....	167
Table 28: DHCP Processes Tracing Flags .....	179
Table 29: System Alarms on J-series Routers .....	221

## Part 3

### Access

<b>Chapter 13    Configuring Access</b>	<b>419</b>
Table 30: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes for L2TP ....	451
Table 31: Supported IETF RADIUS Attributes for L2TP .....	452
Table 32: Supported RADIUS Accounting Start Attributes for L2TP .....	453
Table 33: Supported RADIUS Accounting Stop Attributes for L2TP .....	453
Table 34: Supported RADIUS IETF Attributes .....	468
Table 35: Supported Juniper Networks VSAs .....	471
Table 36: DHCP-Attributes Statements .....	478

## Part 5

### Router Chassis

<b>Chapter 18    Router Chassis Configuration Guidelines</b>	<b>663</b>
Table 37: Configurable PIC Alarm Conditions .....	676
Table 38: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M5 or M10 Router .....	677
Table 39: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M7i or M10i Router .....	680
Table 40: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions for an M20 Router .....	683
Table 41: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M120 Router .....	686
Table 42: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40 Router .....	690
Table 43: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40e or M160 Router .....	694
Table 44: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M320 Router .....	698
Table 45: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an MX240, MX480, or MX960 Router .....	702
Table 46: Backup Routing Engine Alarms .....	706
Table 47: Ranges for Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Configuration .....	715
Table 48: Ranges for Channelized E1 Configuration .....	718
Table 49: Maximum Delay Buffer with q-pic-large-buffer Statement Enabled .....	730
Table 50: Restricted Software Features in Ethernet Services Mode .....	734
Table 51: T640 to Routing Matrix FPC Conversion Chart .....	740



# About This Guide

This preface provides the following guidelines for using the *JUNOS® Software System Basics Configuration Guide*:

- JUNOS Documentation and Release Notes on page xli
- Objectives on page xlii
- Audience on page xliii
- Supported Platforms on page xliii
- Using the Indexes on page xliii
- Using the Examples in This Manual on page xliii
- Documentation Conventions on page xlv
- Documentation Feedback on page xlvii
- Requesting Technical Support on page xlvii

## JUNOS Documentation and Release Notes

---

For a list of related JUNOS documentation, see <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/software/junos/>.

If the information in the latest *JUNOS Release Notes* differs from the information in the documentation, follow the *JUNOS Release Notes*.

To obtain the most current version of all Juniper Networks technical documentation, see the product documentation page on the Juniper Networks Web site at <http://www.juniper.net/>.

Table 1 on page xli lists additional books on Juniper Networks solutions that you can order through your bookstore. A complete list of such books is available at <http://www.juniper.net/books>.

**Table 1: Additional Books Available Through <http://www.juniper.net/books>**

Book	Description
<i>Interdomain Multicast Routing</i>	Provides background and in-depth analysis of multicast routing using Protocol Independent Multicast sparse mode (PIM SM) and Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP); details any-source and source-specific multicast delivery models; explores multiprotocol BGP (MBGP) and multicast IS-IS; explains Internet Gateway Management Protocol (IGMP) versions 1, 2, and 3; lists packet formats for IGMP, PIM, and MSDP; and provides a complete glossary of multicast terms.

**Table 1: Additional Books Available Through <http://www.juniper.net/books> (continued)**

Book	Description
<i>JUNOS Cookbook</i>	Provides detailed examples of common JUNOS software configuration tasks, such as basic router configuration and file management, security and access control, logging, routing policy, firewalls, routing protocols, MPLS, and VPNs.
<i>MPLS-Enabled Applications</i>	Provides an overview of Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) applications (such as Layer 3 virtual private networks [VPNs], Layer 2 VPNs, virtual private LAN service [VPLS], and pseudowires), explains how to apply MPLS, examines the scaling requirements of equipment at different points in the network, and covers the following topics: point-to-multipoint label switched paths (LSPs), DiffServ-aware traffic engineering, class of service, interdomain traffic engineering, path computation, route target filtering, multicast support for Layer 3 VPNs, and management and troubleshooting of MPLS networks.
<i>OSPF and IS-IS: Choosing an IGP for Large-Scale Networks</i>	Explores the full range of characteristics and capabilities for the two major link-state routing protocols: Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) and IS-IS. Explains architecture, packet types, and addressing; demonstrates how to improve scalability; shows how to design large-scale networks for maximum security and reliability; details protocol extensions for MPLS-based traffic engineering, IPv6, and multipoint-to-multipoint routing; and covers troubleshooting for OSPF and IS-IS networks.
<i>Routing Policy and Protocols for Multivendor IP Networks</i>	Provides a brief history of the Internet, explains IP addressing and routing (Routing Information Protocol [RIP], OSPF, IS-IS, and Border Gateway Protocol [BGP]), explores ISP peering and routing policies, and displays configurations for both Juniper Networks and other vendors' routers.
<i>The Complete IS-IS Protocol</i>	Provides the insight and practical solutions necessary to understand the IS-IS protocol and how it works by using a multivendor, real-world approach.

## Objectives

This guide describes Juniper Networks routing platforms, and provides information about how to configure basic system parameters, supported protocols and software processes, authentication, and a variety of utilities for managing your router.

This guide is designed for network administrators who are configuring and monitoring a Juniper Networks M-series, MX-series, T-series, EX-series, or J-series router or switch.



**NOTE:** This guide documents Release 9.5 of the JUNOS software. For additional information about JUNOS software—either corrections to or information that might have been omitted from this guide—see the software release notes at <http://www.juniper.net>.

## Audience

---

To use this guide, you need a broad understanding of networks in general, the Internet in particular, networking principles, and network configuration. You must also be familiar with one or more of the following Internet routing protocols:

- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)
- Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol (DVMRP)
- Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS)
- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) router discovery
- Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)
- Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS)
- Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
- Protocol-Independent Multicast (PIM)
- Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)
- Routing Information Protocol (RIP)
- Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)

Personnel operating the equipment must be trained and competent; must not conduct themselves in a careless, willfully negligent, or hostile manner; and must abide by the instructions provided by the documentation.

## Supported Platforms

---

For the features described in this manual, the JUNOS software currently supports the following platforms:

- J-series
- M-series
- MX-series
- T-series
- EX-series

## Using the Indexes

---

This reference contains two indexes: a standard index with topic entries, and an index of commands.

## Using the Examples in This Manual

---

If you want to use the examples in this manual, you can use the `load merge` or the `load merge relative` command. These commands cause the software to merge the

incoming configuration into the current candidate configuration. If the example configuration contains the top level of the hierarchy (or multiple hierarchies), the example is a *full example*. In this case, use the **load merge** command.

If the example configuration does not start at the top level of the hierarchy, the example is a *snippet*. In this case, use the **load merge relative** command. These procedures are described in the following sections.

## Merging a Full Example

To merge a full example, follow these steps:

1. From the HTML or PDF version of the manual, copy a configuration example into a text file, save the file with a name, and copy the file to a directory on your routing platform.

For example, copy the following configuration to a file and name the file **ex-script.conf**. Copy the **ex-script.conf** file to the **/var/tmp** directory on your routing platform.

```
system {
  scripts {
    commit {
      file ex-script.xml;
    }
  }
}
interfaces {
  fxp0 {
    disable;
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.0.0.1/24;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

2. Merge the contents of the file into your routing platform configuration by issuing the **load merge** configuration mode command:

```
[edit]
user@host# load merge /var/tmp/ex-script.conf
load complete
```

## Merging a Snippet

To merge a snippet, follow these steps:

1. From the HTML or PDF version of the manual, copy a configuration snippet into a text file, save the file with a name, and copy the file to a directory on your routing platform.

For example, copy the following snippet to a file and name the file `ex-script-snippet.conf`. Copy the `ex-script-snippet.conf` file to the `/var/tmp` directory on your routing platform.

```
commit {
  file ex-script-snippet.xsl; }
```

2. Move to the hierarchy level that is relevant for this snippet by issuing the following configuration mode command:

```
[edit]
user@host# edit system scripts
[edit system scripts]
```

3. Merge the contents of the file into your routing platform configuration by issuing the `load merge relative` configuration mode command:

```
[edit system scripts]
user@host# load merge relative /var/tmp/ex-script-snippet.conf
load complete
```

For more information about the `load` command, see the *JUNOS CLI User Guide*.

## Documentation Conventions

Table 2 on page xlv defines notice icons used in this guide.

**Table 2: Notice Icons**





Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.
	Laser warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury from a laser.

Table 3 on page xlv defines the text and syntax conventions used in this guide.

**Table 3: Text and Syntax Conventions**

Convention	Description	Examples
Bold text like this	Represents text that you type.	To enter configuration mode, type the <code>configure</code> command:  user@host> <b>configure</b>
Fixed-width text like this	Represents output that appears on the terminal screen.	user@host> <b>show chassis alarms</b> No alarms currently active
<i>Italic text like this</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Introduces important new terms.</li> <li>Identifies book names.</li> <li>Identifies RFC and Internet draft titles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A policy <i>term</i> is a named structure that defines match conditions and actions.</li> <li><i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>RFC 1997, <i>BGP Communities Attribute</i></li> </ul>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	Represents variables (options for which you substitute a value) in commands or configuration statements.	Configure the machine's domain name:  [edit] root@# <b>set system domain-name</b> domain-name
Plain text like this	Represents names of configuration statements, commands, files, and directories; IP addresses; configuration hierarchy levels; or labels on routing platform components.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To configure a stub area, include the <code>stub</code> statement at the [edit <code>protocols ospf area area-id</code>] hierarchy level.</li> <li>The console port is labeled <code>CONSOLE</code>.</li> </ul>
< > (angle brackets)	Enclose optional keywords or variables.	stub <default-metric <i>metric</i> >;
(pipe symbol)	Indicates a choice between the mutually exclusive keywords or variables on either side of the symbol. The set of choices is often enclosed in parentheses for clarity.	broadcast   multicast  (string1   string2   string3)
# (pound sign)	Indicates a comment specified on the same line as the configuration statement to which it applies.	rsvp { # Required for dynamic MPLS only
[ ] (square brackets)	Enclose a variable for which you can substitute one or more values.	community name members [ <i>community-ids</i> ]
Indentation and braces ( { } )	Identify a level in the configuration hierarchy.	[edit] routing-options { static { route default { nexthop address; retain; } } }
;(semicolon)	Identifies a leaf statement at a configuration hierarchy level.	

**Table 3: Text and Syntax Conventions** (*continued*)

Convention	Description	Examples
<b>J-Web GUI Conventions</b>		
Bold text like this	Represents J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) items you click or select.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ In the Logical Interfaces box, select <b>All Interfaces</b>.</li> <li>■ To cancel the configuration, click <b>Cancel</b>.</li> </ul>
> (bold right angle bracket)	Separates levels in a hierarchy of J-Web selections.	In the configuration editor hierarchy, select <b>Protocols &gt; Ospf</b> .

## Documentation Feedback

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation. You can send your comments to [techpubs-comments@juniper.net](mailto:techpubs-comments@juniper.net), or fill out the documentation feedback form at <https://www.juniper.net/cgi-bin/docbugreport/>. If you are using e-mail, be sure to include the following information with your comments:

- Document name
- Document part number
- Page number
- Software release version (not required for *Network Operations Guides [NOGs]*)

## Requesting Technical Support

Technical product support is available through the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). If you are a customer with an active J-Care or JNASC support contract, or are covered under warranty, and need postsales technical support, you can access our tools and resources online or open a case with JTAC.

- JTAC policies—For a complete understanding of our JTAC procedures and policies, review the JTAC User Guide located at <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/downloads/710059.pdf>.
- Product warranties—For product warranty information, visit <http://www.juniper.net/support/warranty/>.
- JTAC Hours of Operation —The JTAC centers have resources available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

### Self-Help Online Tools and Resources

For quick and easy problem resolution, Juniper Networks has designed an online self-service portal called the Customer Support Center (CSC) that provides you with the following features:

- Find CSC offerings: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>
- Search for known bugs: <http://www2.juniper.net/kb/>
- Find product documentation: <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>
- Find solutions and answer questions using our Knowledge Base:  
<http://kb.juniper.net/>
- Download the latest versions of software and review release notes:  
<http://www.juniper.net/customers/csc/software/>
- Search technical bulletins for relevant hardware and software notifications:  
<https://www.juniper.net/alerts/>
- Join and participate in the Juniper Networks Community Forum:  
<http://www.juniper.net/company/communities/>
- Open a case online in the CSC Case Management tool: <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>

To verify service entitlement by product serial number, use our Serial Number Entitlement (SNE) Tool located at <https://tools.juniper.net/SerialNumberEntitlementSearch/>.

### Opening a Case with JTAC

You can open a case with JTAC on the Web or by telephone.

- Use the Case Management tool in the CSC at <http://www.juniper.net/cm/> .
- Call 1-888-314-JTAC (1-888-314-5822 toll-free in the USA, Canada, and Mexico).

For international or direct-dial options in countries without toll-free numbers, visit us at <http://www.juniper.net/support/requesting-support.html>.



## **Part 1**

# **Overview**

- Introduction to JUNOS Software on page 3
- JUNOS Configuration Basics on page 17



## Chapter 1

# Introduction to JUNOS Software

- JUNOS Software Overview on page 3
- JUNOS Software Architecture Overview on page 4
- Routing Platform Hardware Components on page 7
- JUNOS Software Commit Model for Router Configuration on page 8
- JUNOS Software Routing Engine Components and Processes on page 9
- JUNOS Software Support for IPv4 Routing Protocols on page 11
- JUNOS Software Support for IPv6 Routing Protocols on page 13
- JUNOS Software Routing and Forwarding Tables on page 13
- Routing Policy Overview on page 14
- JUNOS Software Support for VPNs on page 15

## JUNOS Software Overview

---

Juniper Networks provides high-performance network routing platforms that create a responsive and trusted environment for accelerating the deployment of services and applications over a single network. JUNOS software is the foundation of these high-performance networks. Unlike other complex, monolithic software architectures, JUNOS software incorporates key design and developmental differences to deliver increased network availability, operational efficiency, and flexibility. These key advantages are:

- One operating system
- One software release
- One modular software architecture

### One Operating System

Unlike other network operating systems that share a common name but splinter into many different programs, JUNOS software is a single, cohesive operating system that is shared across all routers and product lines. This allows Juniper Network engineers to develop software features once and share the features across all product lines simultaneously. Because features are common to a single source, generally these features are implemented the same way for all the product lines, thus reducing the training required to learn different tools and methods for each product.

Furthermore, because all Juniper Networks products use the same code base, interoperability among products is not an issue.

### One Software Release

Each new version of JUNOS software is released concurrently for all product lines following a preset quarterly schedule. Each new version of software must include all working features released in previous releases of the software and must achieve zero critical regression errors. This discipline ensures reliable operations for the entire release.

### One Modular Software Architecture

Although individual modules of the JUNOS software communicate through well-defined interfaces, each module runs in its own protected memory space, preventing one module from disrupting another. It also allows the independent restart of each module as necessary. This is in contrast to monolithic operating systems for which a malfunction in one module can ripple to others and cause a full system crash or restart. This modular architecture then provides for a high level of performance, high availability, security, and device scalability not found in other operating systems.

The JUNOS software is pre-installed on your Juniper Networks router when you receive it from the factory. Thus, when you first power on the router, all software starts automatically. You simply need to configure the software so that the router can participate in the network.

You can upgrade the router software as new features are added or software problems are fixed. You normally obtain new software by downloading the images from the Juniper Networks Support Web page onto your router or onto another system on your local network. Then you install the software upgrade onto the router.

Juniper Networks routing platforms run only binaries supplied by Juniper Networks. Each JUNOS software image includes a digitally signed manifest of executables, which are registered with the system only if the signature can be validated. JUNOS software will not execute any binary without a registered fingerprint. This feature protects the system against unauthorized software and activity that might compromise the integrity of your router.

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS Software Architecture Overview on page 4

## JUNOS Software Architecture Overview

---

This topic provides an overview of the JUNOS software product and routing process architecture:

- Product Architecture on page 5
- Routing Process Architecture on page 5

## Product Architecture

The JUNOS software provides IP routing protocol software as well as software for interface, network, and chassis management. The JUNOS software runs on all Juniper Networks J-series, M-series, MX-series, and T-series routing platforms.

- J-series Services Routers (J2300, J4300, and J6300) are deployed at the remote edge of distributed networks.
- Most M-series routers are deployed in small and medium cores in peering, route reflector, data center applications; or at the IP or Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) edge to support high-performance Layer 2 and Layer 3 services. All M-series routers have redundant power and cooling and the M10i, M20, M40e, M120, M160, and M320 routers have fully redundant hardware, including Routing Engines, switch interface components, and packet forwarding components. The M120 router also supports Forwarding Engine Board (FEB) failover. In the event of a FEB failure, a backup FEB can quickly take over packet forwarding.
- The MX-series Ethernet Services Routers are Ethernet-optimized edge routers that provide both switching and carrier-class Ethernet routing. The MX-series routers support two types of Dense Port Concentrators (DPCs) with built-in Ethernet ports: Gigabit Ethernet 40-port and 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port.
- T-series routing platforms (T320 router, T640 router, and TX Matrix platform) are deployed at the core of provider networks. These routing platforms have fully redundant hardware, including power and cooling, Routing Engines, and Switch Interface Boards.

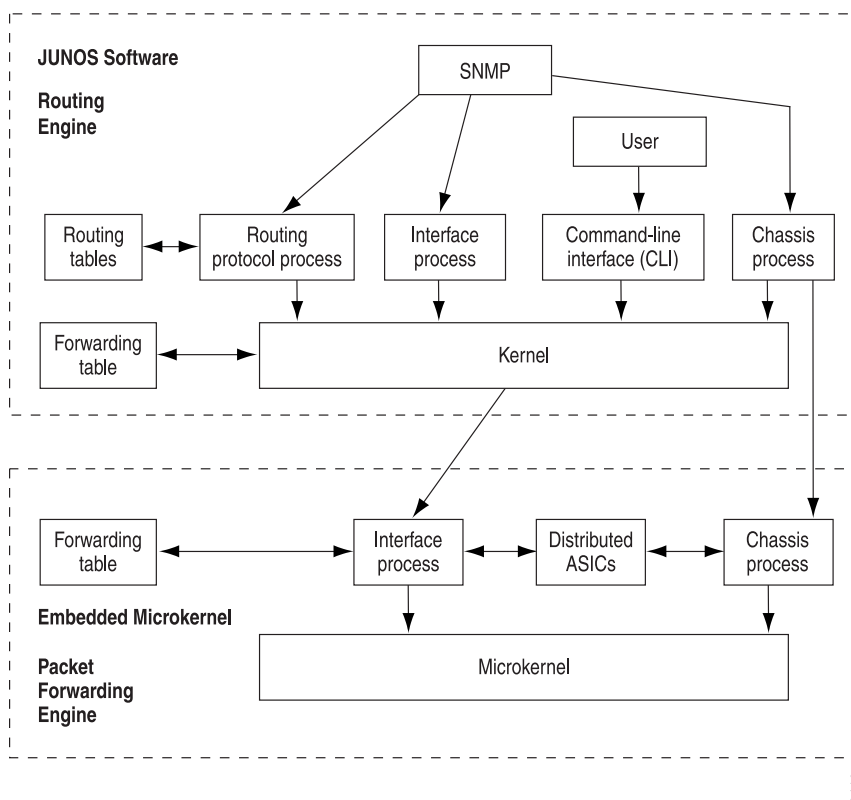
A *routing matrix* is a multichassis architecture composed of one TX Matrix platform and from one to four T640 routing nodes. From the perspective of the user interface, the routing matrix appears as a single router. The TX Matrix platform controls all the T640 routing nodes on the routing matrix.

## Routing Process Architecture

The routing process is handled by the following two components (see Figure 1 on page 6):

- Routing Engine
- Packet Forwarding Engine

Because this architecture separates control operations such as routing updates and system management from packet forwarding, the router can deliver superior performance and highly reliable Internet operation.

**Figure 1: Product Architecture**

## Packet Forwarding Engine

The Packet Forwarding Engine uses application-specific integrated circuits (ASICs) to perform Layer 2 and Layer 3 packet switching, route lookups, and packet forwarding. The Packet Forwarding Engine forwards packets between input and output interfaces. The M-series routers (except the M7i, M40, and M320 routers) have redundant Packet Forwarding Engines. The J-series Services Routers have a software-based Packet Forwarding Engine.

## Routing Engine

The Routing Engine controls the routing updates and system management. The Routing Engine consists of routing protocol software processes running inside a protected memory environment on a general-purpose computer platform. The Routing Engine handles all the routing protocol processes and other software processes that control the routing platform's interfaces, some of the chassis components, system management, and user access to the routing platform. These routing platform and software processes run on top of a kernel that interacts with the Packet Forwarding Engine. All M-series (except the M7i and M40) routing platforms and T-series routing platforms have redundant Routing Engines.

The Routing Engine has these features:

- Routing protocol packets processing—All routing protocol packets from the network are directed to the Routing Engine, and therefore do not delay the Packet Forwarding Engine unnecessarily.
- Software modularity—Software functions have been divided into separate processes, so a failure of one process has little or no effect on other software processes.
- In-depth IP functionality—Each routing protocol is implemented with a complete set of IP features and provides full flexibility for advertising, filtering, and modifying routes. Routing policies are set according to route parameters, such as prefix, prefix lengths, and Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) attributes.
- Scalability—The JUNOS routing tables are designed to hold all the routes used in current and near-future networks. Additionally, the JUNOS software can efficiently support large numbers of interfaces and virtual circuits.
- Management interfaces—System management is possible with a command-line interface (CLI), a craft interface, and Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).
- Storage and change management—Configuration files, system images, and microcode can be held and maintained in one primary and two secondary storage systems, permitting local or remote upgrades.
- Monitoring efficiency and flexibility—Alarms can be generated and packets can be counted without adversely affecting packet forwarding performance.

The Routing Engine constructs and maintains one or more routing tables. From the routing tables, the Routing Engine derives a table of active routes, called the *forwarding table*, which is then copied into the Packet Forwarding Engine. The forwarding table in the Packet Forwarding Engine can be updated without interrupting the routing platform's forwarding.

In a JUNOS-FIPS environment, hardware configurations with two Routing Engines must use IPsec and a private routing instance for all communications between the Routing Engines. IPsec communication between the Routing Engines and Adaptive Services (AS) II FIPS PICs is also required.

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS Software Overview on page 3

## Routing Platform Hardware Components

The JUNOS software runs on four types of Juniper Networks routing platforms: J-series, M-series, MX-series, and T-series. The routing platforms consist of the major hardware components as shown in Table 4 on page 7. One or more of the major hardware components shown is used in each system.

**Table 4: Major Router Hardware Components**

	M-series	MX-series	T-series	J-series
<b>Routing Engines (RE)</b>	X	X	X	X

**Table 4: Major Router Hardware Components** *(continued)*

	M-series	MX-series	T-series	J-series
<b>Control Board</b>	X		X	
<b>Switch Interface Board (SIB)</b>	X		X	
<b>Forwarding Engine Board (FEB)</b>	X			
<b>Power Supply</b>	X	X	X	X
<b>Cooling System</b>	X	X	X	X
<b>Dense Port Concentrators (DPC)</b>		X		
<b>Switch Control Board (SCB)</b>		X		
<b>Flexible PIC Concentrators (FPC)</b>	X		X	
<b>Physical Interface Module (PIM)</b>				X
<b>Physical Interface Card (PIC)</b>	X		X	

Flexible PIC Concentrators (FPCs) are each populated by PICs for various interface types. On some routing platforms, the PICs are installed directly in the chassis.

For information about specific components in your routing platform, see the hardware guide for your routing platform.

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS Software Architecture Overview on page 4

## JUNOS Software Commit Model for Router Configuration

The router configuration is saved using a commit model: a candidate configuration is modified as desired and then committed to the system. Once committed, the router checks the configuration for syntax errors and if no errors are found, the configuration is saved as `juniper.conf.gz` and activated. The former active configuration file is saved as the first rollback configuration file (`juniper.conf.1.gz`) and all other rollback configuration files are incremented by 1. For example, `juniper.conf.1.gz` is incremented to `juniper.conf.2.gz`, making it the second rollback configuration file. The router can have a maximum of 49 rollback configurations (1–49) saved on the system.

On the router, the active configuration file and the first three rollback files (`juniper.conf.gz.1`, `juniper.conf.gz.2`, `juniper.conf.gz.3`) are located in the `/config` directory. If the recommended rescue file `rescue.conf.gz` is saved on the system, this file should also be saved in the `/config` directory. The factory default files are located in the `/etc/config` directory.

There are two mechanisms used to propagate the configurations between Routing Engines within a routing platform:



- Synchronization—Propagates a configuration from one Routing Engine to a second Routing Engine within the same router chassis.

To synchronize a router's configurations, use the **commit synchronize** CLI command. If one of the Routing Engines is locked, the synchronization fails. If synchronization fails because of a locked configuration file, you can use the **commit synchronize force** command. This command overrides the lock and synchronizes the configuration files.

- Distribution—Propagates a configuration across the routing plane on a multichassis routing platform. Distribution occurs automatically. There is no user command available to control the distribution process. If a configuration is locked during a distribution of a configuration, the locked configuration does not receive the distributed configuration file, so the synchronization fails. You need to clear the lock before the configuration and resynchronize the routing planes.



**NOTE:** When you use the **commit synchronize force** CLI command on a multichassis platform, the forced synchronization of the configuration files does not affect the distribution of the configuration file across the routing plane. If a configuration file is locked on a router remote from the router where the command was issued, the synchronization fails on the remote router. You need to clear the lock and reissue the **synchronize** command.

---

## JUNOS Software Routing Engine Components and Processes

---

The JUNOS system software runs on the Routing Engine. The JUNOS system software consists of software processes that support Internet routing protocols, control router interfaces and the router chassis, and allow router system management. The JUNOS software processes run on top of a kernel, which enables communication between processes and provides a direct link to the Packet Forwarding Engine software. The JUNOS software can be used to configure routing protocols and router interface properties, as well as to monitor and troubleshoot protocol and network connectivity problems.

The Routing Engine software consists of several software processes that control router functionality and a kernel that provides the communication among all the processes:

### ***Routing Engine Kernel***

The Routing Engine kernel provides the underlying infrastructure for all JUNOS software processes. In addition, it provides the link between the routing tables and the Routing Engine's forwarding table. It is also responsible for all communication with the Packet Forwarding Engine, which includes keeping the Packet Forwarding Engine's copy of the forwarding table synchronized with the master copy in the Routing Engine.

## **Initialization Process**

Within the JUNOS software, an initialization process (init) starts and monitors all the other software processes when the router boots.

If a software process terminates or fails to start when called, the init process attempts to restart it a limited number of times and logs any failure information for further investigation.

## **Management Process**

The management process (mgd) manages the configuration of the router and all user commands. The management process is responsible for notifying other daemons when a new configuration is committed. A dedicated management process handles JUNOScript XML requests from its client, which may be the command-line interface (CLI) or any JUNOScript client.

## **Process Limits**

There are limits to the total number of JUNOS software processes that can run simultaneously on a system. There are also limits set for the maximum number iterations of any single process. The limit for iterations of any single process can only be reached if the limit of overall system processes is not exceeded.

There are limits to the total number of JUNOS software processes that can run simultaneously on a system. There are also limits set for the maximum number iterations of any single process. The limit for iterations of any single process can only be reached if the limit of overall system processes is not exceeded.

Access methods such as telnet and SSH spawn multiple system processes for each session created. For this reason, it might not be possible to simultaneously support the maximum number of access sessions for multiple services.

## **Routing Protocol Process**

Within the JUNOS software, the routing protocol process (rpd) controls the routing protocols that run on the router. This process starts all configured routing protocols and handles all routing messages. It maintains one or more routing tables, which consolidate the routing information learned from all routing protocols. From this routing information, the routing protocol process determines the active routes to network destinations and installs these routes into the Routing Engine's forwarding table. Finally, it implements routing policy, which allows you to control the routing information that is transferred between the routing protocols and the routing table. Using routing policy, you can filter and limit the transfer of information as well as set properties associated with specific routes.

## **Interface Process**

The JUNOS interface process allows you to configure and control the physical interface devices and logical interfaces present in a router. You can configure interface

properties such as the interface location (which slot the Flexible PIC Concentrator [FPC] is installed in and which location on the FPC the Physical Interface Card [PIC] is installed in), the interface encapsulation, and interface-specific properties. You can configure the interfaces currently present in the router, as well as interfaces that are not present but that you might add later.

The JUNOS interface process communicates through the JUNOS kernel with the interface process in the Packet Forwarding Engine, enabling the JUNOS software to track the status and condition of the router's interfaces.

## **Chassis Process**

The JUNOS chassis process allows you to configure and control the properties of the router, including conditions that trigger alarms. The chassis process (chassisd) on the Routing Engine communicates directly with its peer processes running on the Packet Forwarding Engine.

## **SNMP and MIB II Processes**

The JUNOS software supports the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), which helps administrators monitor the state of a router. The software supports SNMP version 1 (SNMPv1), version 2 (SNMPv2, also known as version 2c, or v2c), and version 3 (SNMPv3). The JUNOS implementation of SNMP does not include any of the security features that were originally included in the IETF SNMP drafts but were later dropped. The SNMP software is controlled by the JUNOS SNMP and Management Information Base II (MIB II) processes, which consist of an SNMP master agent and various subagents.

## **JUNOS Software Support for IPv4 Routing Protocols**

---

JUNOS system software implements full IP routing functionality, providing support for IP version 4 (IPv4). The routing protocols are fully interoperable with existing IP routing protocols, and they have been developed to provide the scale and control necessary for the Internet core.

JUNOS software provides the following routing and Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) applications protocols:

- Unicast routing protocols:
  - BGP—Border Gateway Protocol, version 4, is an exterior gateway protocol (EGP) that guarantees loop-free exchange of routing information between routing domains (also called autonomous systems). BGP, in conjunction with JUNOS routing policy, provides a system of administrative checks and balances that can be used to implement peering and transit agreements.
  - ICMP—Internet Control Message Protocol router discovery allows hosts to discover the addresses of operational routers on the subnet.
  - IS-IS—Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System is a link-state interior gateway protocol (IGP) for IP networks that uses the shortest-path-first (SPF) algorithm, which also is referred to as the Dijkstra algorithm, to determine

routes. The JUNOS IS-IS software is a new and complete implementation of the protocol, addressing issues of scale, convergence, and resilience.

- OSPF—Open Shortest Path First, version 2, is an IGP that was developed for IP networks by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF). OSPF is a link-state protocol that makes routing decisions based on the SPF algorithm. The JUNOS OSPF software is a new and complete implementation of the protocol, addressing issues of scale, convergence, and resilience.
- RIP—Routing Information Protocol, version 2, is an IGP for IP networks based on the Bellman-Ford algorithm. RIP is a distance-vector protocol. RIP dynamically routes packets between a subscriber and a service provider without the subscriber having to configure BGP or participate in the service provider's IGP discovery process.
- Multicast routing protocols:
  - DVMRP—Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol is a dense-mode (flood-and-prune) multicast routing protocol.
  - IGMP—Internet Group Management Protocol, versions 1 and 2, is used to manage membership in multicast groups.
  - MSDP—Multicast Source Discovery Protocol allows multiple Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) sparse mode domains to be joined. A rendezvous point (RP) in a PIM sparse mode domain has a peer relationship with an RP in another domain, enabling it to discover multicast sources from other domains.
  - PIM sparse mode and dense mode—Protocol-Independent Multicast is a multicast routing protocol. PIM sparse mode routes to multicast groups that might span wide-area and interdomain internets. PIM dense mode is a flood-and-prune protocol.
  - SAP/SDP—Session Announcement Protocol and Session Description Protocol handle conference session announcements.
- MPLS applications protocols:
  - LDP—The Label Distribution Protocol provides a mechanism for distributing labels in nontraffic-engineered applications. LDP allows routers to establish label-switched paths (LSPs) through a network by mapping network-layer routing information directly to data-link layer switched paths. LSPs created by LDP can also traverse LSPs created by the Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP).
  - MPLS—Multiprotocol Label Switching, formerly known as tag switching, allows you to manually or dynamically configure LSPs through a network. It lets you direct traffic through particular paths rather than rely on the IGP's least-cost algorithm to choose a path.
  - RSVP—The Resource Reservation Protocol, version 1, provides a mechanism for engineering network traffic patterns that is independent of the shortest path decided upon by a routing protocol. RSVP itself is not a routing protocol; it operates with current and future unicast and multicast routing protocols. The primary purpose of the JUNOS RSVP software is to support dynamic signaling for MPLS LSPs.

## JUNOS Software Support for IPv6 Routing Protocols

---

The JUNOS software implements IP routing functionality, providing support for IP version 6 (IPv6). The routing protocols have been developed to provide the scale and control necessary for the Internet core.

The software supports the following unicast routing protocols:

- BGP—Border Gateway Protocol version 4, is an EGP that guarantees loop-free exchange of routing information between routing domains (also called autonomous systems). BGP, in conjunction with JUNOS routing policies, provides a system of administrative checks and balances that can be used to implement peering and transit agreements.
- ICMP—Internet Control Message Protocol router discovery allows hosts to discover the addresses of operational routers on the subnet.
- IS-IS—Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System is a link-state IGP for IP networks that uses the SPF algorithm, which also is referred to as the Dijkstra algorithm, to determine routes. The JUNOS software supports a new and complete implementation of the protocol, addressing issues of scale, convergence, and resilience.
- OSPF version 3 (OSPFv3) supports IPv6. The fundamental mechanisms of OSPF such as flooding, designated router (DR) election, area-based topologies, and the SPF calculations remain unchanged. Some differences exist either because of changes in protocol semantics between IPv4 and IPv6, or because of the need to handle the increased address size of IPv6.
- RIP—Routing Information Protocol version 2 is an IGP for IP networks based on the Bellman-Ford algorithm. RIP is a distance-vector protocol. RIP dynamically routes packets between a subscriber and a service provider without the subscriber having to configure BGP or to participate in the service provider's IGP discovery process.

## JUNOS Software Routing and Forwarding Tables

---

A major function of the JUNOS routing protocol process is to maintain the Routing Engine's routing tables and from these tables determine the active routes to network destinations. The routing protocol process then installs these routes into the Routing Engine's forwarding table. The JUNOS kernel then copies this forwarding table to the Packet Forwarding Engine.

The routing protocol process maintains multiple routing tables. By default, it maintains the following three routing tables. You can configure additional routing tables to suit your requirements.

- Unicast routing table—Stores routing information for all unicast routing protocols running on the router. BGP, IS-IS, OSPF, and RIP all store their routing information in this routing table. You can configure additional routes, such as static routes, to be included in this routing table. BGP, IS-IS, OSPF, and RIP use the routes in this routing table when advertising routing information to their neighbors.

- Multicast routing table (cache)—Stores routing information for all the running multicast protocols. DVMRP and PIM both store their routing information in this routing table, and you can configure additional routes to be included in this routing table.
- MPLS routing table—Stores MPLS path and label information.

With each routing table, the routing protocol process uses the collected routing information to determine active routes to network destinations.

For unicast routes, the routing protocol process determines active routes by choosing the most preferred route, which is the route with the lowest preference value. By default, the route's preference value is simply a function of how the routing protocol process learned about the route. You can modify the default preference value using routing policy and with software configuration parameters.

For multicast traffic, the routing protocol process determines active routes based on traffic flow and other parameters specified by the multicast routing protocol algorithms. The routing protocol process then installs one or more active routes to each network destination into the Routing Engine's forwarding table.

## Routing Policy Overview

---

By default, all routing protocols place their routes into the routing table. When advertising routes, the routing protocols by default advertise only a limited set of routes from the routing table. Specifically, each routing protocol exports only the active routes that were learned by that protocol. In addition, the interior gateway protocols (IS-IS, OSPF, and RIP) export the direct (interface) routes for the interfaces on which they are explicitly configured.

You can control the routes that a protocol places into each table and the routes from that table that the protocol advertises. You do this by defining one or more routing policies and then applying them to the specific routing protocol.

Routing policies applied when the routing protocol places routes into the routing table are referred to as *import policies* because the routes are being imported into the routing table. Policies applied when the routing protocol is advertising routes that are in the routing table are referred to as *export policies* because the routes are being exported from the routing table. In other words, the terms *import* and *export* are used with respect to the routing table.

A routing policy allows you to control (filter) which routes a routing protocol imports into the routing table and which routes a routing protocol exports from the routing table. A routing policy also allows you to set the information associated with a route as it is being imported into or exported from the routing table. Filtering imported routes allows you to control the routes used to determine active routes. Filtering routes being exported from the routing table allows you to control the routes that a protocol advertises to its neighbors.

You implement routing policy by defining policies. A policy specifies the conditions to use to match a route and the action to perform on the route when a match occurs. For example, when a routing table imports routing information from a routing protocol, a routing policy might modify the route's preference, mark the route with

a color to identify it and allow it to be manipulated later, or prevent the route from even being installed in a routing table. When a routing table exports routes into a routing protocol, a policy might assign metric values, modify the BGP community information, tag the route with additional information, or prevent the route from being exported altogether. You also can define policies for redistributing the routes learned from one protocol into another protocol.

## **JUNOS Software Support for VPNs**

---

The JUNOS software supports several types of virtual private networks (VPNs):

- **Layer 2 VPNs**—A Layer 2 VPN links a set of sites that share routing information, and whose connectivity is controlled by a collection of policies. A Layer 2 VPN is not aware of routes within a customer's network. It simply provides private links between a customer's sites over the service provider's existing public Internet backbone.
- **Layer 3 VPNs**—A Layer 3 VPN is the same thing as a Layer 2 VPN, but it is aware of routes within a customer's network, requiring more configuration on the part of the service provider than a Layer 2 VPN. The sites that make up a Layer 3 VPN are connected over a service provider's existing public Internet backbone.
- **Interprovider VPNs**—An interprovider VPN supplies connectivity between two VPNs in separate autonomous systems (ASs). This functionality can be used by a VPN customer with connections to several Internet service providers (ISPs), or different connections to the same ISP in various geographic regions.
- **Carrier-of-carrier VPNs**—Carrier-of-carrier VPNs allow a VPN service provider to supply VPN service to a customer who is also a service provider. The latter service provider supplies Internet or VPN service to an end customer.





## Chapter 2

# JUNOS Configuration Basics

This chapter covers the following topics:

- JUNOS Software Configuration Basics on page 17
- JUNOS Software Configuration from External Devices on page 17
- Methods for Configuring the JUNOS Software on page 18
- Configuring a Router for the First Time on page 21
- JUNOS Software Tools for Monitoring the Router on page 28
- JUNOS Software Features for Router Security on page 29

## JUNOS Software Configuration Basics

---

Your routing platform comes with JUNOS software installed on it. When you power on the router, all software starts automatically. You simply need to configure the software so that the router will be ready to participate in the network.

To configure the JUNOS software, you must specify a hierarchy of configuration statements that define the preferred software properties. You can configure all properties of the JUNOS software, including interfaces, general routing information, routing protocols, and user access, as well as some system hardware properties. After you have created a candidate configuration, you commit the configuration to be evaluated and activated by the JUNOS software.

## JUNOS Software Configuration from External Devices

---

You can configure the router from a system console connected to the routing platform's console port or by using Telnet to access the router remotely. The router provides three ports on the craft interface for connecting external management devices to the Routing Engine and the JUNOS software:

- Console port—Connects a system console using an RS-232 serial cable.
- Auxiliary port—Connects a laptop or modem using an RS-232 serial cable.
- Ethernet management port—Connects the Routing Engine to a management LAN (or any other device that plugs into an Ethernet connection) for remote management through a PC or other client device. The Ethernet port is 10/100 megabits per second (Mbps) autosensing and requires an RJ-45 connector.

## Methods for Configuring the JUNOS Software

You can use any of the methods shown in Table 5 on page 18 to configure JUNOS system software:

**Table 5: Methods for Configuring JUNOS Software**

Method	Description
Command-line interface (CLI)	Create the configuration for the router using the CLI. You can enter commands from a single command line, and scroll through recently executed commands.
ASCII file	Load an ASCII file containing a router configuration that you created earlier, either on this system or on another system. You can then activate and run the configuration file, or you can edit it using the CLI and then activate it.
J-Web graphical user interface (GUI)	Use the J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) to configure the router. J-Web enables you to monitor, configure, troubleshoot, and manage the router on a client by means of a Web browser. The J-Web GUI is preinstalled on J-series Services Routers and is an optional software package that can be installed on M-series and T-series routers.
JUNOScript application programming interface (API)	Use JUNOScript Perl client modules to develop custom applications for configuring information on routing platforms that run JUNOS software. Client applications use the JUNOScript API to request and change configuration information on Juniper Networks J-series, M-series, and T-series routing platforms. The JUNOScript API is customized for JUNOS software and operations in the API are equivalent to JUNOS CLI.
NETCONF application programming interface (API)	Use NETCONF Perl client modules to develop custom applications for configuring information on routing platforms that run JUNOS software. Client applications use the NETCONF API to request and change configuration information on Juniper Networks J-series, M-series, and T-series routing platforms. The NETCONF API includes features that accommodate the configuration data models of multiple vendors.
Configuration commit scripts	Create scripts that run at commit time to enforce custom configuration rules. Commit scripts are written in Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT).

The following sections contain complete descriptions of the methods you can use to configure JUNOS system software:

- JUNOS Command-Line Interface (CLI) on page 19
- ASCII File on page 19
- J-Web Package on page 19
- JUNOScript API Software on page 20

- NETCONF API Software on page 20
- Configuration Commit Scripts on page 20

## ***JUNOS Command-Line Interface (CLI)***

The JUNOS CLI is a straightforward command interface. You use Emacs-style keyboard sequences to move around on a command line and scroll through a buffer that contains recently executed commands. You type commands on a single line, and the commands are executed when you press the Enter key. The CLI also provides command help and command completion. For more information about the CLI, see the *JUNOS CLI User Guide* and *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

## ***ASCII File***

You can load an ASCII file containing a router configuration that you created earlier, either on this system or another system. You can then activate and run the configuration file as is, or you can edit it using the CLI and then activate it.

## ***J-Web Package***

As an alternative to entering CLI commands, the JUNOS software supports a J-Web graphical user interface (GUI). The J-Web user interface enables you to monitor, configure, troubleshoot, and manage the router on a client by means of a Web browser with Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or HTTP over Secure Sockets Layer (HTTPS) enabled.

The J-Web user interface is preinstalled on J-series Services Routers. It is provided as an optional, licensed software package (**jweb** package) on M-series and T-series routing platforms. The **jweb** package is not included in **jinstall** and **jbundle** software bundles. It must be installed separately. To install the package on M-series and T-series routing platforms, follow the procedure described in the *JUNOS Software Installation and Upgrade Guide*.

J-Web supports weak (56-bit) encryption by default. This enables international customers to install J-Web and use HTTPS connections for J-Web access. Domestic customers can also install the **jcrypto** strong encryption package. This package automatically overrides the weak encryption. For more information about the J-Web GUI, see the *J-Web Interface User Guide*.



**NOTE:** Because the J-Web package is bundled separately from other packages, it is possible to have a version mismatch between J-Web and other JUNOS software packages you have installed.

To check for a version mismatch, use the **show system alarms** CLI command. If the version number does not match exactly, a system alarm appears. For example, if you install the 7.4R1.2 **jroute** package and the 7.4R1.1 **jweb** package, an alarm is activated. For more information on the **show system alarms** command, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

---

## **JUNOScript API Software**

The JUNOScript API is an Extensible Markup Language (XML) application that client applications use to request and change configuration information on Juniper Networks J-series, M-series, MX-series, and T-series routing platforms. This API is customized for JUNOS software, and operations in the API are equivalent to JUNOS CLI configuration mode commands. The JUNOScript API includes a set of Perl modules that enable client applications to communicate with a JUNOScript server on the router. The Perl modules are used to develop custom applications for configuring and monitoring JUNOS software.

For a complete description of how to use JUNOS XML and JUNOScript API software, see the *JUNOScript API Guide*.

## **NETCONF API Software**

The NETCONF API is an Extensible Markup Language (XML) application that client applications can use to request and change configuration information on Juniper Networks J-series, M-series, MX-series, and T-series routing platforms. This API is customized for JUNOS software, and includes features that accommodate the configuration data models of multiple vendors. The NETCONF API includes a set of Perl modules that enable client applications to communicate with a NETCONF server on the router. The Perl modules are used to develop custom applications for configuring and monitoring JUNOS software.

For a complete description of how to use JUNOS XML and NETCONF API software, see the *NETCONF API Guide*.

## **Configuration Commit Scripts**

You can create and use scripts that run at commit time to enforce custom configuration rules. If a configuration breaks the custom rules, the script can generate actions that the JUNOS software performs. These actions include:

- Generating custom error messages
- Generating custom warning messages
- Generating custom system log messages
- Making changes to the configuration

Configuration commit scripts also enable you to create macros, which expand simplified custom aliases for frequently used configuration statements into standard JUNOS configuration statements. Commit scripts are written in Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT). For more information, see the *JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide*.

## Configuring a Router for the First Time

---

This section covers the following topics:

- Initial Router Configuration Using the JUNOS Software on page 21
- Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with a Single Routing Engine on page 22
- Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with Dual Routing Engines on page 25
- JUNOS Software Default Settings for Router Security on page 27
- JUNOS Software Configuration Using the CLI on page 27
- Activation of the JUNOS Software Candidate Configuration on page 28
- Disk Space Management for JUNOS Software Installation on page 28

### ***Initial Router Configuration Using the JUNOS Software***

This topic provides an overview of initial router configuration tasks using the JUNOS Software.

On most JUNOS routing platforms, the JUNOS software is installed on the CompactFlash card and on the hard disk. When you first turn on a routing platform, it runs the version of the JUNOS software installed on the CompactFlash card. The copy of JUNOS software on the hard disk is a backup. Another backup copy of the JUNOS software is available on removable media, such as a PC Card or a CompactFlash card. Be sure to put the backup JUNOS software (on removable media) in a safe place.

When you turn on a routing platform the first time, the JUNOS software automatically boots and starts. You must enter basic configuration information so that the routing platform is on the network and you can log in to it over the network.

To configure the routing platform initially, you must connect a terminal or laptop computer to the routing platform through the console port—a serial port on the front of the routing platform. Only console access to the routing platform is enabled by default. Remote management access to the routing platform and all management access protocols, including Telnet, FTP, and SSH, are disabled by default.

When you first connect to the routing platform console, you must log in as the user **root**. At first, the root account requires no password. You see that you are the user **root**, because the routing platform command prompt shows the username **root@#**.

You must start the JUNOS software command-line interface (CLI) using the command **cli**. The command prompt **root@>** indicates that you are the user **root** and that you are in the JUNOS software operational mode. Enter the JUNOS software configuration mode by typing the command **configure**. The command prompt **root@#** indicates that you are in the JUNOS software configuration mode.

When you first configure a routing platform, you must configure the following basic properties:

- Routing platform hostname
- Domain name
- IP address of the routing platform Ethernet management interface—fxp0
- IP address of a backup router
- IP address of one or more DNS name servers on your network
- Password for the root account

## **Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with a Single Routing Engine**

When you turn on a routing platform the first time, the JUNOS software automatically boots and starts. You must enter basic configuration information so that the routing platform is on the network and you can log in to it over the network.

To configure the routing platform initially, you must connect a terminal or laptop computer to the routing platform through the console port—a serial port on the front of the routing platform. Only console access to the routing platform is enabled by default. Remote management access to the routing platform and all management access protocols, including Telnet, FTP, and SSH, are disabled by default.

To configure the JUNOS software for the first time on a router with a single Routing Engine, follow these steps:

1. Connect a terminal or laptop computer to the routing platform through the console port—a serial port on the front of the routing platform. Only console access to the routing platform is enabled by default.
2. Power on the routing platform and wait for it to boot.

The JUNOS software boots automatically. The boot process is complete when you see the **login:** prompt on the console.

3. Log in as the user **root**.

Initially, the **root** user account requires no password. You can see that you are the **root** user, because the prompt on the routing platform shows the username **root@#**.

4. Start the JUNOS software command-line interface (CLI):

```
root@# cli
root@>
```

5. Enter JUNOS software configuration mode:

```
cli> configure
[edit]
root@#
```

6. Configure the name of the routing platform (the routing platform hostname). We do not recommend spaces in the routing platform name. However, if the name does include spaces, enclose the entire name in quotation marks (" ").

```
[edit]
```

```
root@# set system host-name hostname
```

7. Configure the routing platform's domain name:

```
[edit]
root@# set system domain-name domain-name
```

8. Configure the IP address and prefix length for the router management Ethernet interface, **fxp0**. **fxp0** is an Ethernet management interface that provides a separate out-of-band management network for the router.

```
[edit]
root@# set interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address address/prefix-length
```

9. Configure the IP address of a backup or default routing platform. This device is called the backup router, because it is used only while the routing protocol process is not running. Choose a router that is directly connected to the local routing platform by way of the management interface. The routing platform uses this backup router only when it is booting and only or when the JUNOS routing software (the routing protocol process, **rpd**) is not running.

For routing platforms with two Routing Engines, the backup Routing Engine, **RE1**, uses the backup router as a default gateway after the routing platform boots. This enables you to access the backup Routing Engine. (**RE0** is the default master Routing Engine.)

```
[edit]
root@# set system backup-router address
```

10. Configure the IP address of a DNS server. The routing platform uses the DNS name server to translate hostnames into IP addresses.

```
[edit]
root@# set system name-server address
```

11. Set the root password, entering either a clear-text password that the system will encrypt, a password that is already encrypted, or an SSH public key string.

Choose one of the following:

- a. To enter a clear-text password, use the following command:

```
[edit]
root@# set system root-authentication plain-text-password
New password: type password
Retype new password: retype password
```

- b. To enter a password that is already encrypted, use the following command:

```
[edit]
root@# set system root-authentication encrypted-password
encrypted-password
```

- c. To enter an SSH public key, use the following command:

```
[edit]
```

```
root@# set system root-authentication ssh-rsa key
```

12. Optionally, display the configuration statements:

```
[edit]
root@ show
system {
  host-name hostname;
  domain-name domain.name;
  backup-router address ;
  root-authentication {
    (encrypted-password "password" | public-key);
    ssh-rsa "public-key";
    ssh-dsa "public-key";
  }
  name-server {
    address;
  }
  interfaces {
    fxp0 {
      unit 0 {
        family inet {
          address address ;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

13. Commit the configuration, which activates the configuration on the routing platform:

```
[edit]
root@# commit
```

After committing the configuration, you see the newly configured hostname appear after the username in the prompt—for example, `user@host#`.

JUNOS software defaults are now set on the routing platform.

If you want to configure additional JUNOS software properties at this time, remain in the CLI configuration mode and add the necessary configuration statements. You need to commit your configuration changes to activate them on the routing platform.

14. Exit from the CLI configuration mode.

```
[edit]
root@ hostname# exit
root@hostname>
```

15. Back up the configuration on the hard drive.

After you have installed the software on the routing platform, committed the configuration, and are satisfied that the new configuration is successfully running, you should issue the `request system snapshot` command to back up the new



software to the `/altconfig` file system. If you do not issue the `request system snapshot` command, the configuration on the alternate boot device will be out of sync with the configuration on the primary boot device.

The `request system snapshot` command causes the root file system to be backed up to `/altroot`, and `/config` to be backed up to `/altconfig`. The root and `/config` file systems are on the routing platform's CompactFlash card, and the `/altroot` and `/altconfig` file systems are on the routing platform's hard disk.



**NOTE:** After you issue the `request system snapshot` command, you cannot return to the previous version of the software, because the running copy and the backup copy of the software are identical.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with Dual Routing Engines

If a routing platform has dual Routing Engines, you must initially configure each routing platform independently. The sequence is irrelevant.

Configure the hostnames and addresses of the two Routing Engines using configuration groups at the `[edit groups]` hierarchy level. Use the reserved configuration group `re0` for the Routing Engine in slot 0 and `re1` for the Routing Engine in slot 1 to define properties specific to the individual Routing Engines. Configuring `re0` and `re1` groups enables both Routing Engines to use the same configuration file.

Use the `apply-groups` statement to reproduce the configuration group information in the main part of the configuration.

The `commit synchronize` command commits the same configuration on both Routing Engines. The command makes the active or applied configuration the same for both Routing Engines with the exception of the groups, `re0` being applied to only `RE0` and `re1` being applied only to `RE1`. If you do not synchronize the configurations between two Routing Engines and one of them fails, the routing platform may not forward traffic correctly, because the backup Routing Engine may have a different configuration.

To initially configure a routing platform with dual Routing Engines, follow these steps:

1. Go to “Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with a Single Routing Engine” on page 22 and follow Step 1 through Step 5 to initially configure the backup Routing Engine.
2. Instead of Step 6 and Step 8 in “Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with a Single Routing Engine” on page 22, configure a hostname for each Routing Engine and an IP address for each `fxp0` management Ethernet interface, as follows:

```
[edit]
root@# edit groups
[edit groups]
root@# set re0 system host-name router1
root@# set re0 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.10.10.1/24
```

```
root@# set re0 system host-name router2
root@# set re1 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.10.10.2/24
```

3. Configure the routing platform's domain name:

```
[edit]
root@# set system domain-name domain-name
```

4. Set the loopback interface address for each Routing Engine.

```
[edit groups]
root@# set re0 interfaces lo0 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.1/32
root@# set re1 interfaces lo0 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.2/32
```

5. Configure the `apply-groups` statement to reproduce the configuration group information to the main part of the configuration.

```
[edit groups]
root@# top
[edit]
root@# set apply-groups [re0 re1]
```

6. Configure Routing Engine redundancy:

```
[edit]
root@# set chassis redundancy routing-engine 0 master
root@# set chassis redundancy routing-engine 1 backup
root@# set chassis redundancy routing-engine graceful-switchover
```

7. Save the configuration change on both Routing Engines:

```
[edit]
user@host> commit synchronize
root@#
```

8. Continue with Step 9 through Step 12 in “Configuring the JUNOS Software the First Time on a Router with a Single Routing Engine” on page 22.
9. After you have installed the new software and are satisfied that it is successfully running, issue the `request system snapshot` command to back up the new software on both master and backup Routing Engines.

```
{master}
user@host> request system snapshot
```

The root file system is backed up to `/altroot`, and `/config` is backed up to `/altconfig`. The root and `/config` file systems are on the routing platform's CompactFlash card, and the `/altroot` and `/altconfig` file systems are on the routing platform's hard disk.



**NOTE:** After you issue the `request system snapshot` command, you cannot return to the previous version of the software, because the running copy and backup copy of the software are identical.

---

## ***JUNOS Software Default Settings for Router Security***

The JUNOS software protects against common router security weaknesses with the following default settings:

- The JUNOS software does not forward directed broadcast messages. Directed broadcast services send ping requests from a spoofed source address to a broadcast address and can be used to attack other Internet users. For example, if broadcast ping messages were allowed on the 200.0.0.0/24 network, a single ping request could result in up to 254 responses to the supposed source of the ping. The source would actually become the victim of a denial-of-service (DoS) attack.
- Only console access to the router is enabled by default. Remote management access to the router and all management access protocols, including Telnet, FTP, and SSH (Secure Shell), are disabled by default.
- The JUNOS software does not support the SNMP set capability for editing configuration data. Although the software supports the SNMP set capability for monitoring and troubleshooting the network, this support exposes no known security issues. (You can configure the software to disable this SNMP set capability.)
- The JUNOS software ignores martian addresses that contain the following prefixes: 0.0.0.0/8, 127.0.0.0/8, 128.0.0.0/16, 191.255.0.0/16, 192.0.0.0/24, 223.255.55.0/24, and 240.0.0.0/4. Martian addresses are reserved host or network addresses about which all routing information should be ignored.

## ***JUNOS Software Configuration Using the CLI***

You configure the JUNOS software using the JUNOS Command Line Interface (CLI). The CLI is described in detail in the *JUNOS CLI User Guide*.

After completing the initial minimal configuration, you can configure software properties. If you configure the software interactively using the CLI, you enter software configuration statements to create a candidate configuration that contains a hierarchy of statements. At any hierarchy level, you generally can enter statements in any order. While you are configuring the software, you can display all or portions of the candidate configuration, and you can insert or delete statements. Any changes you make affect only the candidate configuration, not the active configuration that is running on the router.

The configuration hierarchy logically groups related functions, which results in configuration statements that have a regular, consistent syntax. For example, you configure routing protocols, routing policies, interfaces, and SNMP management in their own separate portions of the configuration hierarchy.

At each level of the hierarchy, you can display a list of the statements available at that level, along with short descriptions of the statements' functions. To have the CLI complete the statement name if it is unambiguous or to provide a list of possible completions, you can type a partial statement name followed by a space or tab.

More than one user can edit a router's configuration simultaneously. All changes made by all users are visible to everyone editing the configuration.

## **Activation of the JUNOS Software Candidate Configuration**

You enter software configuration statements using the CLI to create a candidate configuration that contains a hierarchy of statements. To have a candidate configuration take effect, you commit the changes. At this point, the candidate file is checked for proper syntax, activated, and marked as the current, operational software configuration file. If multiple users are editing the configuration, when you commit the candidate configuration, all changes made by all the users take effect.

The CLI always maintains a copy of previously committed versions of the software configuration. If you need to return to a previous configuration, you can do this from within the CLI.

## **Disk Space Management for JUNOS Software Installation**

A JUNOS software installation or upgrade may fail if your router has a shortage of disk space. If a disk space error occurs, use one or more of the following options to complete the installation:

- Use the **request system storage cleanup** command to delete unnecessary files and increase storage space on the router.
- Specify the **unlink** option when you use the **request system software add** command to install the JUNOS software:
  - On the J-series platform, the **unlink** option removes the software package at the earliest opportunity to create enough disk space for the installation to finish.
  - On the M-series, MX-series, and T-series platforms, the **unlink** option removes the software package after a successful upgrade.
- Download the software packages you need from the Juniper Networks Support Web site, <http://www.juniper.net/support/>. The download program provides intelligent disk space management to enable installation.



**NOTE:** If you are upgrading the J-series router from a remote location, the installation program automatically checks for enough disk space for the process to finish.

---

## **JUNOS Software Tools for Monitoring the Router**

The primary method of monitoring and troubleshooting the JUNOS software, routing protocols, network connectivity, and the router hardware is to enter commands from the CLI. The CLI enables you to display information in the routing tables and routing protocol-specific data, and to check network connectivity using **ping** and **traceroute** commands.

The J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) is a Web-based alternative to using CLI commands to monitor, troubleshoot, and manage the router.

The JUNOS software includes SNMP software, which allows you to manage routers. The SNMP software consists of an SNMP master agent and a MIB II agent, and supports MIB II SNMP version 1 traps and version 2 notifications, SNMP version 1 **Get** and **GetNext** requests, and version 2 **GetBulk** requests.

The software also supports tracing and logging operations so that you can track events that occur in the router—both normal router operations and error conditions—and track the packets that are generated by or pass through the router. Logging operations use a syslog-like mechanism to record system-wide, high-level operations, such as interfaces going up or down and users logging in to or out of the router. Tracing operations record more detailed messages about the operation of routing protocols, such as the various types of routing protocol packets sent and received, and routing policy actions.

## **JUNOS Software Features for Router Security**

---

Router security consists of three major elements: physical security of the router, operating system security, and security that can be effected through configuration. Physical security involves restricting access to the router. Exploits that can easily be prevented from remote locations are extremely difficult or impossible to prevent if an attacker can gain access to the router's management port or console. The inherent security of the JUNOS operating system also plays an important role in router security. The JUNOS software is extremely stable and robust. The JUNOS software also provides features to protect against attacks, allowing you to configure the router to minimize vulnerabilities.

The following are JUNOS software features available to improve router security:

- Methods of Remote Access for Router Management on page 29
- JUNOS Software Supported Protocols and Methods for User Authentication on page 30
- JUNOS Software Plain-Text Password Requirements on page 31
- JUNOS Software Support for Routing Protocol Security Features and IPSec on page 31
- JUNOS Software Support for Firewall Filters on page 32
- JUNOS Software Auditing Support for Security on page 32

### ***Methods of Remote Access for Router Management***

When you first install the JUNOS software, all remote access to the router is disabled, thereby ensuring that remote access is possible only if deliberately enabled by an authorized user. You can establish remote communication with a router in one of the following ways:

- Out-of-band management—Allows connection to the router through an interface dedicated to router management. Juniper Networks routing platforms support out-of-band management with a dedicated management Ethernet interface (fxp0), as well as EIA-232 console and auxiliary ports. The management Ethernet

interface connects directly to the Routing Engine. No transit traffic is allowed through this interface, providing complete separation of customer and management traffic and ensuring that congestion or failures in the transit network do not affect the management of the router.

- Inband management—Allows connection to the routers using the same interfaces through which customer traffic flows. Although this approach is simple and requires no dedicated management resources, it has some disadvantages:
  - Management flows and transit traffic flows are mixed together. Any attack traffic that is mixed with the normal traffic can affect the communication with the router.
  - The links between router components might not be totally trustworthy, leading to the possibility of wiretapping and replay attacks.

For management access to the router, the standard ways to communicate with the router from a remote console are with Telnet and SSH. SSH provides secure encrypted communications and is therefore useful for inband router management. Telnet provides unencrypted, and therefore less secure, access to the router.

### ***JUNOS Software Supported Protocols and Methods for User Authentication***

On a router, you can create local user login accounts to control who can log in to the router and the access privileges they have. A password, either an SSH key or a Message Digest 5 (MD5) password, is associated with each login account. To define access privileges, you create login classes into which you group users with similar jobs or job functions. You use these classes to explicitly define what commands their users are and are not allowed to issue while logged in to the router.

The management of multiple routers by many different personnel can create a user account management problem. One solution is to use a central authentication service to simplify account management, creating and deleting user accounts only on a single, central server. A central authentication system also simplifies the use of one-time password systems such as SecureID, which offer protection against password sniffing and password replay attacks (attacks in which someone uses a captured password to pose as a router administrator).

The JUNOS software supports two protocols for central authentication of users on multiple routers:

- Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) and Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+).
- RADIUS, a multivendor IETF standard whose features are more widely accepted than those of TACACS+ or other proprietary systems. All one-time-password system vendors support RADIUS.

The JUNOS software also supports the following authentication methods:

- Internet Protocol Security (IPSec). IPSec architecture provides a security suite for the IPv4 and IPv6 network layers. The suite provides such functionality as authentication of origin, data integrity, confidentiality, replay protection, and nonrepudiation of source. In addition to IPSec, the JUNOS software also supports

the Internet Key Exchange (IKE), which defines mechanisms for key generation and exchange, and manages security associations (SAs).

- MD5 authentication of MSDP peering sessions. This authentication provides protection against spoofed packets being introduced into a peering session.
- SNMPv3 authentication and encryption. SNMPv3 uses the user-based security model (USM) for message security and the view-based access control model (VACM) for access control. USM specifies authentication and encryption. VACM specifies access-control rules.

### ***JUNOS Software Plain-Text Password Requirements***

The JUNOS software has special requirements when you create plain-text passwords on a routing platform. The default requirements for plain-text passwords are as follows:

- The password must be between 6 and 128 characters long.
- You can include uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and any of the following special characters:  
! @ # \$ % ^ & \* , + = < > : ;  
Control characters are not recommended.
- The password must contain at least one change of case or character class.

You can change the requirements for plain-text passwords.

You can include the `plain-text-password` statement at the following hierarchy levels:

- [edit system diag-port-authentication]
- [edit system pic-console-authentication]
- [edit system root-authentication]
- [edit system login *username* authentication]

### ***JUNOS Software Support for Routing Protocol Security Features and IPSec***

The main task of a router is to forward user traffic toward its intended destination based on the information in the router's routing and forwarding tables. You can configure routing policies that define the flows of routing information through the network, controlling which routes the routing protocols place in the routing tables and which routes they advertise from the tables. You can also use routing policies to change specific route characteristics, change the BGP route flap-damping values, perform per-packet load balancing, and enable class of service (CoS).

Attackers can send forged protocol packets to a router with the intent of changing or corrupting the contents of its routing table or other databases, which can degrade the functionality of the router. To prevent such attacks, you must ensure that routers form routing protocol peering or neighboring relationships with trusted peers. One way to do this is by authenticating routing protocol messages. The JUNOS BGP, IS-IS, OSPF, RIP, and RSVP protocols support HMAC-MD5 authentication, which uses a secret key combined with the data being protected to compute a hash. When the

protocols send messages, the computed hash is transmitted with the data. The receiver uses the matching key to validate the message hash.

The JUNOS software supports the IPSec security suite for the IPv4 and IPv6 network layers. The suite provides such functionality as authentication of origin, data integrity, confidentiality, replay protection, and nonrepudiation of source. The JUNOS software also supports IKE, which defines mechanisms for key generation and exchange, and manages SAs.

## ***JUNOS Software Support for Firewall Filters***

Firewall filters allow you to control packets transiting the router to a network destination and packets destined for and sent by the router. You can configure firewall filters to control which data packets are accepted on and transmitted from the physical interfaces, and which local packets are transmitted from the physical interfaces and the Routing Engine. Firewall filters provide a means of protecting your router from excessive traffic. Firewall filters that control local packets can also protect your router from external aggressions, such as DoS attacks.

To protect the Routing Engine, you can configure a firewall filter only on the router's loopback interface. Adding or modifying filters for each interface on the router is not necessary. You can design firewall filters to protect against ICMP and Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) connection request (SYN) floods and to rate-limit traffic being sent to the Routing Engine.

## ***JUNOS Software Auditing Support for Security***

The JUNOS software logs significant events that occur on the router and within the network. Although logging itself does not increase security, you can use the system logs to monitor the effectiveness of your security policies and router configurations. You can also use the logs when reacting to a continued and deliberate attack as a means of identifying the source address, router, or port of the attacker's traffic. You can configure the logging of different levels of events, from only critical events to all events, including informational events. You can then inspect the contents of the system log files either in real time or later.

Debugging and troubleshooting are much easier when the timestamps in the system log files of all routers are synchronized, because events that span the network might be correlated with synchronous entries in multiple logs. The JUNOS software supports the Network Time Protocol (NTP), which you can enable on the router to synchronize the system clocks of routers and other networking equipment. By default, NTP operates in an unauthenticated mode. You can configure various types of authentication, including an HMAC-MD5 scheme.



## **Part 2**

# **System Management**

This chapter covers the following topics:

- System Management Overview on page 35
- System Management Configuration Statements on page 43
- Configuring Basic System Management on page 51
- Configuring User Access on page 65
- Configuring System Authentication on page 83
- Configuring Time on page 105
- Configuring System Log Messages on page 117
- Configuring Miscellaneous System Management Features on page 153
- Security Configuration Example on page 223
- Summary of System Management Configuration Statements on page 251



## Chapter 3

# System Management Overview

The JUNOS software provides a variety of parameters that allow you to configure system management functions, including the router's hostname, address, and domain name; the addresses of Domain Name System (DNS) servers; user login accounts, including user authentication and the root-level user account; time zones and Network Time Protocol (NTP) properties; and properties of the router's auxiliary and console ports.

This chapter provides you an overview of system management functions and features:

- Format for Specifying IP Addresses, Network Masks, and Prefixes in JUNOS Configuration Statements on page 35
- Format for Specifying Filenames and URLs in JUNOS CLI Commands on page 36
- Default Directories for JUNOS Software File Storage on the Router on page 37
- JUNOS Software Tracing and Logging Operations on page 38
- JUNOS Software Authentication Methods for Routing Protocols on page 40
- JUNOS Software User Authentication Methods on page 40

## Format for Specifying IP Addresses, Network Masks, and Prefixes in JUNOS Configuration Statements

---

Many statements in the JUNOS software configuration include an option to specify an IP address or route prefix. In this manual, this option is represented in one of the following ways:

- *network/prefix-length*—Network portion of the IP address, followed by a slash and the destination prefix length (previously called the subnet mask). For example, `10.0.0.1/8`.
- *network*—IP address. For example, `10.0.0.2`.
- *destination-prefix/prefix-length*—Route prefix, followed by a slash and the destination prefix length. For example, `192.168.1.10/32`.

You enter all IP addresses in classless mode. You can enter the IP address with or without a prefix length, in standard dotted notation (for example, `1.2.3.4`), or hexadecimal notation as a 32-bit number in network-byte order (for example, `0x01020304`). If you omit any octets, they are assumed to be zero. Specify the prefix length as a decimal number in the range from 1 through 32.

## Format for Specifying Filenames and URLs in JUNOS CLI Commands

In some command-line interface (CLI) commands and configuration statements—including file copy, file archive, load, save, set system login user *username* authentication *load-key-file*, and request system software add—you can include a filename. On a routing matrix, you can include chassis information; for example, *lcc0*, *lcc0-re0*, or *lcc0-re1*, as part of the filename. A routing matrix is a multichassis architecture composed of one TX Matrix platform, to which you can connect from one to four T640 routing nodes.

You can specify a filename or URL in one of the following ways:

- *filename*—File in the user's current directory on the local CompactFlash card. You can use wildcards to specify multiple source files or a single destination file. Wildcards are not supported in Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or FTP.



**NOTE:** Wildcards are supported only by the file (compare | copy | delete | list | rename | show) commands. When you issue the file show command with a wildcard, it must resolve to one filename.

- *path/filename*—File on the local flash disk.
- */var/filename* or */var/path/filename*—File on the local hard disk. You can also specify a file on a local Routing Engine for a specific T640 routing node on a routing matrix:

```
user@host> file delete lcc0-re0:/var/tmp/junk
```

- *a:filename* or *a:path/filename*—File on the local. The default path is / (the root-level directory). The removable media can be in MS-DOS or UNIX (UFS) format.
- *hostname:/path/filename*, *hostname:filename*, *hostname:path/filename*, or "*scp://hostname/path/filename*"—File on an scp/ssh client. This form is not available in the worldwide version of the JUNOS software. The default path is the user's home directory on the remote system. You can also specify *hostname* as *username@hostname*.
- *ftp://hostname/path/filename*—File on an FTP server. You can also specify *hostname* as *username@hostname* or *username:password@hostname*. The default path is the user's home directory. To specify an absolute path, the path must start with %2F; for example, *ftp://hostname/%2Fpath/filename*. To have the system prompt you for the password, specify *prompt* in place of the password. If a password is required, and you do not specify the password or *prompt*, an error message is displayed:

```
user@host> file copy ftp://username@ftp.hostname.net//filename
```

```
file copy ftp.hostname.net: Not logged in.
```

```
user@host> file copy ftp://username:prompt@ftp.hostname.net//filename
```

Password for `username@ftp.hostname.net`:

- `http://hostname/path/filename`—File on an HTTP server. You can also specify *hostname* as `username@hostname` or `username:password@hostname`. If a password is required and you omit it, you are prompted for it.
- `re0:/path/filename` or `re1:/path/filename`—File on a local Routing Engine. You can also specify a file on a local Routing Engine for a specific T640 routing node on a routing matrix:

```
user@host> show log 1cc0-re1:chassisd
```

## Default Directories for JUNOS Software File Storage on the Router

---

JUNOS software files are stored in the following directories on the router:

- `/altconfig`—When you back up the currently running and active file system partitions on the router to standby partitions using the `request system snapshot` command, the `/config` directory is backed up to `/altconfig`. Normally, the `/config` directory is on the CompactFlash card and `/altconfig` is on the hard disk.
- `/altroot`—When you back up the currently running and active file system partitions on the router to standby partitions using the `request system snapshot` command, the root file system (`/`) is backed up to `/altroot`. Normally, the root directory is on the CompactFlash card and `/altroot` is on the hard disk.
- `/config`—This directory is located on the primary boot device, that is, on the device from which the router booted (generally the CompactFlash card, device `wd0`). This directory contains the current operational router configuration and the last three committed configurations, in the files `juniper.conf`, `juniper.conf.1`, `juniper.conf.2`, and `juniper.conf.3`, respectively.
- `/var`—This directory is always located on the hard disk (device `wd2`). It contains the following subdirectories:
  - `/var/home`—Contains users' home directories, which are created when you create user access accounts. For users using SSH authentication, their `.ssh` file, which contains their SSH key, is placed in their home directory. When a user saves or loads a configuration file, that file is loaded from the user's home directory unless the user specifies a full pathname.
  - `/var/db/config`—Contains up to six additional previous versions of committed configurations, which are stored in the files `juniper.conf.4` through `juniper.conf.9`.
  - `/var/log`—Contains system log and tracing files.
  - `/var/tmp`—Contains core files. The software saves up to five core files, numbered from 0 through 4. File number 0 is the oldest core file and file number 4 is the newest core file. To preserve the oldest core files, the software overwrites the newest core file, number 4, with any subsequent core file.

Each router ships with removable media (device `wfd0`) that contains a backup copy of the JUNOS software.

## Directories on the Logical System

Beginning with JUNOS Release 9.5, logical systems have their individual directory structure created in the `/var/logical-system/logical-system-name` directory. It contains the following subdirectories:

- `/config`—Contains the current operational configuration specific to the logical system.
- `/log`—Contains system log and tracing files specific to the logical system.

To maintain backward compatibility for the log files with previous versions of JUNOS software, a symbolic link (symlink) from the `/var/logs/logical-system-name` directory to the `/var/logical-systems/logical-system-name` directory is created when a logical system is configured.

- `/tmp`—Contains temporary files specific to the logical system.

The new file system for each logical system enables logical system users to view trace logs and modify logical system files. Logical system administrators have full access to view and modify all files specific to the logical system.

Logical system users and administrators can now save and load configuration files at the logical-system level using the `save` and `load` configuration mode commands. In addition, they can also issue the `show log`, `monitor`, and `file` operational mode commands at the logical-system level.

## JUNOS Software Tracing and Logging Operations

---

Tracing and logging operations allow you to track events that occur in the router—both normal router operations and error conditions—and to track the packets that are generated by or passed through the router. The results of tracing and logging operations are placed in files in the `/var/log` directory on the router.

The JUNOS software provides an option to do remote tracing for specific processes, which greatly reduces use of the router's internal storage for tracing and is analogous to remote syslogging. You configure remote tracing system-wide using the `tracing` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level. By default, remote tracing is not configured. You can disable remote tracing for specific processes using the `no-remote-trace` statement at the `[edit <process-name> traceoptions]` hierarchy level. This feature does not alter local tracing functionality in any way, and logging files are stored on the router.

The JUNOS software supports remote tracing for the following processes:

- `chassisd`—chassis-control process
- `eventd`—event-processing process
- `cosd`—class-of-service process
- `spd`—adaptive-services process

Logging operations use a system logging mechanism similar to the UNIX **syslogd** utility to record systemwide, high-level operations, such as interfaces going up or down and users logging in to or out of the router. You configure these operations by using the **syslog** statement at the **[edit system]** hierarchy level, as described in “JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Overview” on page 117, and by using the **options** statement at the **[edit routing-options]** hierarchy level, as described in the *JUNOS Routing Protocols Configuration Guide*.

Tracing operations record more detailed messages about the operation of routing protocols, such as the various types of routing protocol packets sent and received, and routing policy actions. You configure tracing operations using the **traceoptions** statement. You can define tracing operations in different portions of the router configuration:

- Global tracing operations—Define tracing for all routing protocols. You define these tracing operations at the **[edit routing-options]** hierarchy level of the configuration.
- Protocol-specific tracing operations—Define tracing for a specific routing protocol. You define these tracing operations in the **[edit protocol]** hierarchy when configuring the individual routing protocol. Protocol-specific tracing operations override any equivalent operations that you specify in the global **traceoptions** statement. If there are no equivalent operations, they supplement the global tracing options. If you do not specify any protocol-specific tracing, the routing protocol inherits all the global tracing operations.
- Tracing operations within individual routing protocol entities—Some protocols allow you to define more granular tracing operations. For example, in Border Gateway Protocol (BGP), you can configure peer-specific tracing operations. These operations override any equivalent BGP-wide operations or, if there are no equivalents, supplement them. If you do not specify any peer-specific tracing operations, the peers inherit, first, all the BGP-wide tracing operations and, second, the global tracing operations.
- Interface tracing operations—Define tracing for individual router interfaces and for the interface process itself. You define these tracing operations at the **[edit interfaces]** hierarchy level of the configuration as described in the *JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide*.
- Remote tracing—To enable system-wide remote tracing, include the **destination-override syslog host** statement at the **[edit system tracing]** hierarchy level. This specifies the remote host running the system log process (**syslogd**), which collects the traces. Traces are written to file(s) on the remote host per the **syslogd** configuration in */etc/syslog.conf*. By default remote tracing is *not* configured.

To override the system-wide remote tracing configuration for a particular process, include the **no-remote-trace** statement at the **[edit <process-name> traceoptions]** hierarchy. When **no-remote-trace** is enabled, the process does local tracing.

To collect traces, use the *local0* facility as the selector in */etc/syslog.conf* on the remote host. To separate traces from various processes into different files, include the process name or trace-file name if it is specified at the **[edit <process-name> traceoptions file]** hierarchy level, in the *program* field in */etc/syslog.conf*. If your

syslog server supports parsing hostname and program-name, then you can separate traces from the various processes.

## JUNOS Software Authentication Methods for Routing Protocols

---

Some interior gateway protocols (IGPs)—Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS), Open Shortest Path First (OSPF), and Routing Information Protocol (RIP)—and Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) allow you to configure an authentication method and password. Neighboring routers use the password to verify the authenticity of packets sent by the protocol from the router or from a router interface. The following authentication methods are supported:

- Simple authentication (IS-IS, OSPF, and RIP)—Uses a simple text password. The receiving router uses an authentication key (password) to verify the packet. Because the password is included in the transmitted packet, this method of authentication is relatively insecure. We recommend that you not use this authentication method.
- MD5 and HMAC-MD5 (IS-IS, OSPF, RIP, and RSVP)—Message Digest 5 (MD5) creates an encoded checksum that is included in the transmitted packet. HMAC-MD5, which combines HMAC authentication with MD5, adds the use of an iterated cryptographic hash function. With both types of authentication, the receiving router uses an authentication key (password) to verify the packet. HMAC-MD5 authentication is defined in RFC 2104, *HMAC: Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication*.

In general, authentication passwords are text strings consisting of a maximum of 16 or 255 letters and digits. Characters can include any ASCII strings. If you include spaces in a password, enclose all characters in quotation marks (“ ”).

JUNOS-FIPS has special password requirements. FIPS passwords must be between 10 and 20 characters in length. Passwords must use at least three of the five defined character sets (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, punctuation marks, and other special characters). If JUNOS-FIPS is installed on the router, you cannot configure passwords unless they meet this standard.

## JUNOS Software User Authentication Methods

---

The JUNOS software supports three methods of user authentication: local password authentication, Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS), and Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+).

With local password authentication, you configure a password for each user allowed to log in to the router.

RADIUS and TACACS+ are authentication methods for validating users who attempt to access the router using telnet. They are both distributed client-server systems—the RADIUS and TACACS+ clients run on the router, and the server runs on a remote network system.

You can configure the router to be both a RADIUS and TACACS+ client, and you can also configure authentication passwords in the JUNOS configuration file. You



can prioritize the methods to configure the order in which the software tries the different authentication methods when verifying user access.



## Chapter 4

# System Management Configuration Statements

This chapter covers the following topics:

- System Management Complete Configuration Statements on page 43

## System Management Complete Configuration Statements

---

This topic lists all the configuration statements that you can include at the [edit system] hierarchy level to configure system management features:

```
system {
  accounting {
    events [ login change-log interactive-commands ];
    destination {
      radius {
        server {
          server-address {
            accounting-port port-number;
            retry number;
            secret password;
            source-address address;
            timeout seconds;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
  tacplus {
    server {
      server-address {
        port port-number;
        secret password;
        single-connection;
        timeout seconds;
      }
    }
  }
}
archival {
  configuration {
    archive-sites {
      ftp://<username>:<password>@<host>:<port>/<url-path>;
    }
  }
}
```

```

        ftp://<username>:<password>@<host>:<port>/<url-path>;
    }
    transfer-interval interval;
    transfer-on-commit;
}
}
arp {
    passive-learning;
    aging-timer minutes;
}
authentication-order [ authentication-methods ];
backup-router address <destination destination-address>;
commit synchronize;
(compress-configuration-files | no-compress-configuration-files);
default-address-selection;
dump-device (compact-flash | remove-compact | usb);
diag-port-authentication (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);
domain-name domain-name;
domain-search [ domain-list ];
host-name hostname;
inet6-backup-router address <destination destination-address>;
internet-options {
    tcp-mss mss-value;
    (gre-path-mtu-discovery | no-gre-path-mtu-discovery);
    icmpv4-rate-limit {
        bucket-size bucket-size;
        packet-rate packet-rate;
    }
    icmpv6-rate-limit {
        bucket-size bucket-size;
        packet-rate packet-rate;
    }
    (ipip-path-mtu-discovery | no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery);
    (ipv6-path-mtu-discovery | no-ipv6-path-mtu-discovery);
    ipv6-path-mtu-discovery-timeout;
    no-tcp-rfc1323;
    no-tcp-rfc1323-paws;
    (path-mtu-discovery | no-path-mtu-discovery);
    source-port upper-limit <upper-limit>;
    (source-quench | no-source-quench);
    tcp-drop-synfin-set;
}
location {
    altitude feet;
    building name;
    country-code code;
    floor number;
    hcoord horizontal-coordinate;
    lata service-area;
    latitude degrees;
    longitude degrees;
    npa-nxx number;
    postal-code postal-code;
    rack number;
    vcoord vertical-coordinate;
}

```

```

login {
    announcement text;
    class class-name {
        allow-commands "regular-expression";
        allow-configuration "regular-expression";
        deny-commands "regular-expression";
        deny-configuration "regular-expression";
        idle-timeout minutes;
        login-tip;
        permissions [ permissions ];
    }
    message text;
    password (Login) {
        change-type (set-transitions | character-set);
        format (md5 | sha1 | des);
        maximum-length length;
        minimum-changes number;
        minimum-length length;
    }
    retry-options {
        backoff-threshold number;
        backoff-factor seconds;
        minimum-time seconds;
        tries-before-disconnect number;
    }
    user username {
        full-name complete-name;
        uid uid-value;
        class class-name;
        authentication {
            (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);
            ssh-rsa "public-key";
            ssh-dsa "public-key";
        }
    }
}
login-tip number;
mirror-flash-on-disk;
name-server {
    address;
}
no-multicast-echo;
no-redirects;
no-ping-record-route;
no-ping-time-stamp;
ntp {
    authentication-key key-number type type value password;
    boot-server (NTP) address;
    broadcast <address> <key key-number> <version value> <ttl value>;
    broadcast-client;
    multicast-client <address>;
    peer address <key key-number> <version value> <prefer>;
    source-address source-address;
    server address <key key-number> <version value> <prefer>;
    trusted-key [ key-numbers ];
}

```

```

ports {
  auxiliary {
    type terminal-type;
  }
  pic-console-authentication {
    encrypted-password encrypted-password;
    plain-text-password;
    console {
      insecure;
      log-out-on-disconnect;
      type terminal-type;
      disable;
    }
  }
  processes {
    process-name (enable | disable) failover (alternate-media | other-routing-engine);
    timeout seconds;
  }
}
radius-server server-address {
  port port-number;
  retry number;
  secret password;
  source-address source-address;
  timeout seconds;
}
radius-options {
  password-protocol mschap-v2;
}
attributes {
  nas-ip-address ip-address;
}
root-authentication {
  (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);
  ssh-rsa "public-key";
  ssh-dsa "public-key";
}
(saved-core-context | no-saved-core-context);
saved-core-files saved-core-files;
scripts {
  commit {
    allow-transients;
    file filename.xml {
      optional;
      refresh;
      refresh-from url;
      source url;
    }
  }
  traceoptions {
    file filename <files number> <size size> <match regular-expression>;
    flag flag;
  }
}
services {
  finger {
    <connection-limit limit>;
    <rate-limit limit>;
  }
}

```

```

}
flow-tap-dtcp {
  ssh {
    <connection-limit limit>;
    <rate-limit limit>;
  }
}
ftp {
  <connection-limit limit>;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
service-deployment {
  servers server-address {
    port port-number;
  }
  source-address source-address;
}
ssh {
  root-login (allow | deny | deny-password);
  protocol-version [v1 v2];
  <connection-limit limit>;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
telnet {
  <connection-limit limit>;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
web-management {
  http {
    interfaces [ interface-names ];
    port port;
  }
  https {
    interfaces [ interface-names ];
    local-certificate name;
    port port;
  }
  limits {
    active-child-process [ process-limit ];
  }
  session {
    idle-timeout [ minutes ];
    session-limit [ session-limit ];
  }
}
xnm-clear-text {
  <connection-limit limit>;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
xnm-ssl {
  <connection-limit limit>;
  local-certificate name;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
}
static-host-mapping {

```

```

    hostname {
        alias [ alias ];
        inet [ address ];
        sysid system-identifier;
    }
}
syslog {
    archive {
        files number;
        size size;
        (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
    console {
        facility severity;
    }
    file filename {
        facility severity;
        explicit-priority;
        match "regular-expression";
        structured-data;
        archive {
            files number;
            size size;
            (world-readable | no-world-readable);
        }
    }
    host (hostname | other-routing-engine | scc-master) {
        facility severity;
        explicit-priority;
        facility-override facility;
        log-prefix string;
        match "regular-expression";
    }
    source-address source-address;
    time-format (year | millisecond | year millisecond);
    user (username | *) {
        facility severity;
        match "regular-expression";
    }
}
tacplus-options {
    service-name service-name;
    (no-cmd-attribute-value | exclude-cmd-attribute);
}
tacplus-server server-address {
    secret password;
    single-connection;
    source-address source-address;
    timeout seconds;
}
time-zone (GMThour-offset | time-zone);
}
tracing{
    destination-override {
        syslog host ;
    }
}

```



}



## Chapter 5

# Configuring Basic System Management

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Configuring the Basic Router Properties on page 52
- Configuring the Router's Hostname on page 52
- Mapping the Router's Name to IP Addresses on page 52
- Configuring an ISO System Identifier for the Router on page 53
- Example: Configuring a Router's Name, IP Address, and System ID on page 53
- Configuring the Router's Domain Name on page 54
- Example: Configuring the Router's Domain Name on page 54
- Configuring the Domains to Search When a Router Is Included in Multiple Domains on page 54
- Configuring a DNS Name Server for Resolving a Router's Hostname into Addresses on page 55
- Configuring a Backup Router on page 55
- Configuring Automatic Mirroring of the CompactFlash Card on the Hard Disk Drive on page 57
- Configuring the Physical Location of the Router on page 57
- Configuring the Root Password on page 58
- Example: Configuring the Root Password on page 59
- Example: Configuring a Plain-Text Password for Root Logins on page 60
- Example: Configuring SSH Authentication for Root Logins on page 60
- Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords on page 60
- Changing the Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords on page 62
- Example: Changing the Requirements for JUNOS software Plain-Text Passwords on page 63
- Configuring Multiple Routing Engines to Synchronize Committed Configurations Automatically on page 63
- Compressing the Current Configuration File on page 63

## Configuring the Basic Router Properties

---

When you configure the router initially, you must configure the basic properties of a router, such as the router's hostname, IP addresses, and the name the domain in which the router is located.

To configure basic router properties:

1. Configuring the router's hostname.

See "Configuring the Router's Hostname" on page 52

2. Map the router's hostname to IP addresses.

See "Mapping the Router's Name to IP Addresses" on page 52.

3. Configure an ISO system identifier for the router.

See "Configuring an ISO System Identifier for the Router" on page 53.

4. Configure the router's domain name.

See "Configuring the Router's Domain Name" on page 54.

## Configuring the Router's Hostname

---

To configure the router's name, include the `host-name` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
host-name hostname;
```

The router's name value must be less than 256 characters.

## Mapping the Router's Name to IP Addresses

---

To map a router's hostname to one or more IP addresses, include the `inet` statement at the `[edit system static-host-mapping hostname]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
static-host-mapping {
  hostname {
    inet [ addresses ];
    alias [ aliases ];
  }
}
```

*hostname* is the name specified by the `host-name` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level.

For each host, you can specify one or more aliases.

## Configuring an ISO System Identifier for the Router

---

For IS-IS to operate on the router, you must configure a system identifier (system ID). The system identifier is commonly the media access control (MAC) address or the IP address expressed in binary-coded decimal (BCD).

To configure an International Organization for Standardization (ISO) system ID, include the `sysid` statement at the `[edit system static-host-mapping hostname]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
static-host-mapping {
  hostname {
    sysid system-identifier;
  }
}
```

*hostname* is the name specified by the `host-name` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level.

*system-identifier* is the ISO system identifier. It is the 6-byte system ID portion of the IS-IS network service access point (NSAP). We recommend that you use the host's IP address represented in BCD format. For example, the IP address 192.168.1.77 is 1921.6800.1077 in BCD.

## Example: Configuring a Router's Name, IP Address, and System ID

---

The following example shows how to configure the router's name, map the name to an IP address and alias, and configure a system identifier:

```
[edit]
user@host# set system host-name router-sj1
[edit]
user@host# set system static-host-mapping router-sj1 inet 192.168.1.77
[edit]
user@host# set system static-host-mapping router-sj1 alias sj1
[edit]
user@host# set system static-host-mapping router-sj1 sysid 1921.6800.1077
[edit]
user@host# show
system {
  host-name router-sj1;
  static-host-mapping {
    router-sj1 {
      inet 192.168.1.77;
      alias sj1;
      sysid 1921.6800.1077;
    }
  }
}
```

## Configuring the Router's Domain Name

---

For each router, you should configure the name of the domain in which the router is located. This is the default domain name that is appended to hostnames that are not fully qualified.

To configure the domain name, include the `domain-name` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
domain-name domain-name;
```

The following example shows how to configure the router's domain name:

```
[edit]
user@host# set system domain-name company.net
[edit]
user@host# show
system {
    domain-name company.net;
}
```

## Example: Configuring the Router's Domain Name

---

The following example shows how to configure the router's domain name:

```
[edit]
user@host# set system domain-name company.net
[edit]
user@host# show
system {
    domain-name company.net;
}
```

## Configuring the Domains to Search When a Router Is Included in Multiple Domains

---

If your router is included in several different domains, you can configure those domain names to be searched.

To configure more than one domain to be searched, include the `domain-search` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
domain-search [ domain-list ];
```

The domain list can contain up to 6 domain names, with a total of up to 256 characters.

The following example shows how to configure two domains to be searched:

```
[edit system]
domain-search [ domainone.net domainonealternate.com ]
```

## Configuring a DNS Name Server for Resolving a Router's Hostname into Addresses

To have the router resolve hostnames into addresses, you must configure one or more Domain Name System (DNS) name servers by including the `name-server` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
name-server {
  address;
}
```

The following example shows how to configure two DNS name servers:

```
[edit]
user@host# set system name-server 192.168.1.253
[edit]
user@host# set system name-server 192.168.1.254
[edit]
user@host# show
system {
  name server {
    192.168.1.253;
    192.168.1.254;
  }
}
```

## Configuring a Backup Router

When a router is booting, the routing protocol process (rpd) is not running; therefore, the router has no static or default routes. To allow the router to boot and to ensure that the router is reachable over the network if the routing protocol process fails to start properly, you configure a backup router (running IP version 4 [IPv4] or IP version 6 [IPv6]), which is a router that is directly connected to the local router (that is, on the same subnet).

To achieve network reachability while loading, configuring, and recovering the router, but without the risk of installing a default route in the forwarding table, include the `destination` option. Specify the address in the format *network/mask-length* so that the entire network is reachable through the backup router.

When the routing protocols start, the address of the backup router is removed from the local routing and forwarding tables. To have the address remain in these tables, configure a static route for that address by including the `static` statement at the `[edit routing-options]` hierarchy level.

The following topics describe how to configure a backup router running IPv4 and IPv6, respectively:

1. Configuring a Backup Router Running IPv4 on page 56
2. Configuring a Backup Router Running IPv6 on page 56

## Configuring a Backup Router Running IPv4

To configure a backup router running IPv4, include the `backup-router` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
  backup-router address <destination destination-address>;
```

The following example shows how to configure a backup router running IPv4 and have its address remain in the routing and forwarding tables:

```
[edit]
system {
  backup-router 192.168.1.254 destination 208.197.1.0/24;
}
routing-options {
  static {
    route 208.197.1.0/24 {
      next-hop 192.168.1.254;
      retain;
    }
  }
}
```

## Configuring a Backup Router Running IPv6

To configure a backup router running IPv6, include the `inet6-backup-router` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
  inet6-backup-router "address <destination destination-address>";
```

The following example shows how to configure a backup router running IPv6 and have its address remain in the routing and forwarding tables:

```
[edit]
system {
  backup-router 8:3::1 destination abcd::/48;
}
routing-options {
  rib inet6.0 {
    static {
      route abcd::/48 {
        next-hop 8:3::1;
        retain;
      }
    }
  }
}
```



## Configuring Automatic Mirroring of the CompactFlash Card on the Hard Disk Drive

You can direct the hard disk to automatically mirror the contents of the CompactFlash card. When you include the `mirror-flash-on-disk` statement, the hard disk maintains a synchronized mirror copy of the CompactFlash card contents. Data written to the CompactFlash card is simultaneously updated in the mirrored copy of the hard disk. If the CompactFlash card fails to read data, the hard disk automatically retrieves its mirrored copy of the CompactFlash card. This feature is not available on the J-series routers.



**CAUTION:** We recommend that you disable flash-to-disk mirroring when you upgrade or downgrade the router.

You cannot issue the `request system snapshot` command while flash-to-disk mirroring is enabled.

To configure the mirroring of the CompactFlash card to the hard disk, include the `mirror-flash-on-disk` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
mirror-flash-on-disk;
```



**NOTE:** After you have enabled or disabled the `mirror-flash-on-disk` statement, you must reboot the router for your changes to take effect. To reboot, issue the `request system reboot` command.

## Configuring the Physical Location of the Router

To configure the physical location of the router, you can configure the following options for the `location` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

- `altitude feet`—Number of feet above sea level.
- `building name`—Name of the building, 1 to 28 characters in length. If the string contains spaces, enclose it in quotation marks (" ").
- `country-code code`—Two-letter country code.
- `floor number`—Floor in the building.
- `hcoord horizontal-coordinate`—Bellcore Horizontal Coordinate.
- `lata service-area`—Long-distance service area.
- `latitude degrees`—Latitude in degree format.
- `longitude degrees`—Longitude in degree format.
- `npa-nxx number`—First six digits of the phone number (area code and exchange).
- `postal-code postal-code`—Postal code.

- *rack number*—Rack number.
- *vcoord vertical-coordinate*—Bellcore Vertical Coordinate.

The following example shows how to configure the physical location of the router:

```
[edit system]
location {
  altitude feet;
  building name;
  country-code code;
  floor number;
  hcoord horizontal-coordinate;
  lata service-area;
  latitude degrees;
  longitude degrees;
  npa-nxx number;
  postal-code postal-code;
  rack number;
  vcoord vertical-coordinate;
}
```

## Configuring the Root Password

---

The JUNOS software is preinstalled on the router. When the router is powered on, it is ready to be configured. Initially, you log in to the router as the user “root” with no password.



**NOTE:** If you configure a blank password using the `encrypted-password` statement at the `[edit system root-authentication]` hierarchy level for root authentication, you will be able to commit a configuration, but you will *not* be able to login as superuser and get root level access to the router.

---

After you log in, you should configure the root (superuser) password by including the `root-authentication` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
root-authentication {
  (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);
  ssh-dsa "public-key";
  ssh-rsa "public-key";
}
```

If you configure the `plain-text-password` option, you are prompted to enter and confirm the password:

```
[edit system]
user@host# set root-authentication plain-text-password
New password: type password here
Retype new password: retype password here
```

To load an SSH key file, enter the **load-key-file** command. This command loads RSA (SSH version 1 and SSH version 2) and DSA (SSH version 2) public keys.

You can also configure SSH RSA keys and SSH DSA keys to authenticate root logins. You can configure more than one public RSA or DSA key for SSH authentication of root logins as well as for user accounts. When a user logs in as root, the public keys are referenced to determine whether the private key matches any of them.

If you load the SSH keys file, the contents of the file are copied into the configuration immediately after you enter the **load-key-file** statement. To view the SSH keys entries, use the configuration mode **show** command. For example:

```
[edit system]
user@host# set root-authentication load-key-file my-host:.ssh/identity.pub
.file.19692 | 0 KB | 0.3 kB/s | ETA: 00:00:00 | 100%
[edit system]
user@host# show
root-authentication {
  ssh-rsa "1024 35 9727638204084251055468226757249864241630322
20740496252839038203869014158453496417001961060835872296
15634757491827360336127644187426594689320773910834481012
68312595772262546166799927831612350043866091586628382248
97467326056611921489539813965561563786211940327687806538
16960202749164163735913269396344008443 boojum@juniper.net"; #
  SECRET-DATA
}
```

JUNOS-FIPS has special password requirements. FIPS passwords must be between 10 and 20 characters in length. Passwords must use at least three of the five defined character sets (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, punctuation marks, and other special characters). If JUNOS-FIPS is installed on the router, you cannot configure passwords unless they meet this standard. If you use the **encrypted-password** option, then a null-password (empty) is not permitted.

You cannot configure a blank password for **encrypted-password** using blank quotation marks (" "). You must configure a password whose number of characters range from 1 through 128 characters and enclose the password in quotation marks.

**Related Topics** ■ Recovering the Root Password on page 102

## Example: Configuring the Root Password

The following example shows how to configure the root password:

```
[edit]
user@host# set system root-authentication encrypted-password
"$1$14c5.$sBopasddsdfs0"
[edit]
user@host# show
system {
  root-authentication {
    encrypted-password "$1$14c5.$sBopasddsdfs0";
  }
}
```

## Example: Configuring a Plain-Text Password for Root Logins

The following example shows how to set a plain-text password for root logins:

```
[edit]
user@host# set system root-authentication plain-text-password
New password: type root password
Retype new password: retype root password
[edit]
user@host# show
system {
  root-authentication {
    encrypted-password "$1$14c5.$sBopasddsd0";
  }
}
```

## Example: Configuring SSH Authentication for Root Logins

The following example shows how to configure two public DSA keys for SSH authentication of root logins:

```
[edit system]
root-authentication {
  encrypted-password "$1$1wp5tqMX$uy/u5H7OdXTwfWTmeJWXe/";
  ## SECRET-DATA;
  ssh-dsa "2354 95 9304@boojum.per";
  ssh-dsa "0483 02 8362@ecbatana.per";
}
```

## Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords

The JUNOS software has special requirements when you create plain-text passwords on a routing platform. Table 6 on page 60 shows the default requirements.

**Table 6: Special Requirements for Plain-Text Passwords**

JUNOS Software	JUNOS-FIPS
The password must be between 6 and 128 characters long.	FIPS passwords must be between 10 and 20 characters in length
You can include most character classes in a password (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other special characters). Control characters are not recommended.	You can include most character classes in a password (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other special characters). Control characters are not recommended.
Valid passwords must contain at least one change of case or character class.	Passwords must use at least three of the five defined character classes (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other special characters).

You can change the requirements for plain-text passwords.

JUNOS software supports the following five character classes for plain-text passwords:

- Lowercase letters
- Uppercase letters
- Numbers
- Punctuation
- Special characters: ! @ # \$ % ^ & \* , + < > : ;

Control characters are not recommended.

You can include the `plain-text-password` statement at the following hierarchy levels:

- [edit system diag-port-authentication]
- [edit system pic-console-authentication]
- [edit system root-authentication]
- [edit system login userusername authentication]

The `change-type` statement specifies whether the password is checked for the following:

- The total number of character sets used (`character-set`)
- The total number of character set changes (`set-transitions`)

For example, the following password:

MyPassWd@2

has four character sets (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, special characters, and numbers) and seven character set changes (M–y, y–P, P–a, s–W, W–d, d–@, and @–2).

The `change-type` statement is optional. If `change-type` is omitted, JUNOS-FIPS plain-text passwords are checked for character sets and JUNOS plain-text passwords are checked for character set changes.

The `minimum-changes` statement specifies how many character sets or character set changes are required for the password. This statement is optional. If `minimum-changes` is not specified, character sets are not checked for JUNOS software. If the `change-type` statement is configured for `character-set`, then `minimum-changes` must be 5 or less because JUNOS software only supports 5 character sets.

The `format` statement specifies the hash algorithm (`md5`, `sha1` or `des`) for authenticating plain-text passwords. This statement is optional. For JUNOS software, the default format is `md5`. For JUNOS-FIPS, only `sha1` is supported.

The `maximum-length` statement specifies the maximum number of characters allowed in a password. This statement is optional. By default JUNOS passwords

have no maximum; however, only the first 128 characters are significant. JUNOS-FIPS passwords must be 20 characters or less. The range for JUNOS software maximum-length passwords is from 20 to 128 characters.

The **minimum-length** statement specifies the minimum number of characters required for a password. This statement is optional. By default JUNOS passwords must be at least 6 characters long, and JUNOS-FIPS passwords must be at least 10 characters long. The range is from 6 to 20 characters.

Changes to password requirements do not take effect until the configuration is committed. When requirements change, only newly created, plain-text passwords are checked; existing passwords are not checked against the new requirements.

The default configuration for JUNOS plain-text passwords is:

```
[edit system login]
passwords {
  change-type character-sets;
  format md5;
  minimum-changes 1;
  minimum-length 6;
}
```

The default configuration for JUNOS-FIPS plain-text passwords is:

```
[edit system login]
passwords {
  change-type set-transitions;
  format sha1;
  maximum-length 20;
  minimum-changes 3;
  minimum-length 10;
}
```

**Related Topics** ■ Changing the Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords on page 62

## Changing the Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords

To change the requirements for plain-text passwords, include the **password** statement at the [edit system login] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login]
password {
  change-type (set-transitions | character-set);
  format (md5 | sha1 | des);
  maximum-length length;
  minimum-changes number;
  minimum-length length;
}
```



**NOTE:** These statements apply to plain-text passwords only, not encrypted passwords.

**Related Topics** ■ Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords on page 60

## Example: Changing the Requirements for JUNOS software Plain-Text Passwords

The following example shows how to set the minimum password length to 12 characters and the maximum length to 22 characters:

```
[edit system login]
passwords {
  minimum-length 12;
  maximum-length 22;
}
```

## Configuring Multiple Routing Engines to Synchronize Committed Configurations Automatically

If your router has multiple Routing Engines, you can manually direct one Routing Engine to synchronize its configuration with the others by issuing the `commit synchronize` command.

To make the Routing Engines synchronize automatically whenever a configuration is committed, include the `commit synchronize` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
commit synchronize;
```

The Routing Engine on which you execute the `commit` command (requesting Routing Engine) copies and loads its candidate configuration to the other (responding) Routing Engines. All Routing Engines then perform a syntax check on the candidate configuration file being committed. If no errors are found, the configuration is activated and becomes the current operational configuration on all Routing Engines.

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS Software Commit Model for Router Configuration on page 8

## Compressing the Current Configuration File

By default, the current operational configuration file is compressed, and is stored in the file `juniper.conf.gz`, in the `/config` file system, along with the last three committed versions of the configuration. If you have large networks, the current configuration file might exceed the available space in the `/config` file system. Compressing the current configuration file allows the file to fit in the file system, typically reducing the size of the file by 90 percent. You might want to compress your current operation configuration files when they reach 3 megabytes (MB) in size.

When you compress the current configuration file, the names of the router's configuration files change. To determine the size of the files in the `/config` file system, issue the file list `/config detail` command.



**NOTE:** We recommend that you use the default setting (compress the router configuration files) to minimize the amount of disk space that they require.

---

To compress the current configuration file, include the `compress-configuration-files` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
compress-configuration-files;
```

Commit the current configuration file to include the `compression-configuration-files` statement. Commit the configuration again to compress the current configuration file:

```
[edit system]
user@host# set compress-configuration-files
user@host# commit
commit complete
user@host# commit
commit complete
```

If you do not want to compress the current operational configuration file, include the `no-compress-configuration-files` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
no-compress-configuration-files;
```

Commit the current configuration file to include the `no-compress-configuration-files` statement. Commit the configuration again to uncompress the current configuration file:

```
[edit system]
user@host#
user@host# commit
commit complete
user@host# commit
commit complete
```



## Chapter 6

# Configuring User Access

This chapter covers the following topics:

- JUNOS Software Login Classes Overview on page 66
- Defining JUNOS Software Login Classes on page 67
- JUNOS Software User Accounts Overview on page 67
- Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts on page 69
- Example: Configuring User Accounts on page 69
- Limiting the Number of User Login Attempts for SSH and Telnet Sessions on page 70
- Example: Limiting the Number of Login Attempts for SSH and Telnet Sessions on page 71
- JUNOS-FIPS Crypto Officer and User Accounts Overview on page 71
- JUNOS Software Access Privilege Levels Overview on page 72
- Configuring Access Privilege Levels on page 75
- Example: Configuring Access Privilege Levels on page 75
- Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands on page 76
- Example 1: Defining Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands on page 76
- Example 2: Configuring Access Privileges to Individual Operational Mode Commands on page 77
- Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Operational Mode Commands on page 77
- Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Configuration Mode Commands on page 78
- Example 1: Defining Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands on page 79
- Example 2: Configuring Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands on page 80
- Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Configuration Mode Commands on page 80
- Configuring the Timeout Value for Idle Login Sessions on page 81
- Configuring CLI Tips on page 82

## JUNOS Software Login Classes Overview

All users who can log in to the router must be in a login class. With login classes, you define the following:

- Access privileges users have when they are logged in to the router
- Commands and statements that users can and cannot specify
- How long a login session can be idle before it times out and the user is logged out

You can define any number of login classes and then apply one login class to an individual user account

The JUNOS software contains a few predefined login classes, which are listed in Table 7 on page 66. The predefined login classes cannot be modified.

**Table 7: Default System Login Classes**

Login Class	Permission Flag Set
operator	clear, network, reset, trace, view
read-only	view
super-user	all
unauthorized	None



**NOTE:** You cannot modify a predefined login class name. If you issue the **set** command on a predefined class name, the JUNOS software will append **-local** to the login class name. The following message also appears:

warning: '<class-name>' is a predefined class name; changing to '<class-name>-local'



**NOTE:** You cannot issue the **rename** or **copy** command on a predefined login class. Doing so results in the following error message:

error: target '<class-name>' is a predefined class

**Related Topics** ■ Defining JUNOS Software Login Classes on page 67

## Defining JUNOS Software Login Classes

---

To define a login class and its access privileges, include the `class` statement at the `[edit system login]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login]
class class-name {
  allow-commands "regular-expression";
  allow-configuration "regular-expression";
  deny-commands "regular-expression";
  deny-configuration "regular-expression";
  idle-timeout minutes;
  permissions [ permissions ];
}
```

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS Software Login Classes Overview on page 66

## JUNOS Software User Accounts Overview

---

User accounts provide one way for users to access the router. (Users can access the router without accounts if you configured RADIUS or TACACS+ servers, as described in “JUNOS Software User Authentication Methods” on page 40.) For each account, you define the login name for the user and, optionally, information that identifies the user. After you have created an account, the software creates a home directory for the user.

For each user account, you can define the following:

- Username—(Optional) Name that identifies the user. It must be unique within the router. Do not include spaces, colons, or commas in the username. The username can be up to 64 characters long.
- User’s full name—(Optional) If the full name contains spaces, enclose it in quotation marks. Do not include colons or commas.
- User identifier (UID)—(Optional) Numeric identifier that is associated with the user account name. The identifier must be in the range from 100 through 64,000 and must be unique within the router. If you do not assign a UID to a username, the software assigns one when you commit the configuration, preferring the lowest available number.

You must ensure that the UID is unique. However, it is possible to assign the same UID to different users. If you do this, the CLI displays a warning when you commit the configuration and then assigns the duplicate UID.

- User’s access privilege—(Required) One of the login classes you defined in the `class` statement at the `[edit system login]` hierarchy level, or one of the default classes listed in Table 10 on page 81.
- Authentication method or methods and passwords that the user can use to access the router—(Optional) You can use SSH or a Message Digest 5 (MD5) password,

or you can enter a plain-text password that the JUNOS software encrypts using MD5-style encryption before entering it in the password database. For each method, you can specify the user's password. If you configure the **plain-text-password** option, you are prompted to enter and confirm the password:

```
[edit system login user router-name]
user@host# set authentication plain-text-password
New password: type password here
Retype new password: retype password here
```

The default requirements for plain-text passwords are:

- The password must be between 6 and 128 characters long
  - You can include most character classes in a password (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other special characters). Control characters are not recommended.
  - Valid passwords must contain at least one change of case or character class.

For each user account and for root logins, you can configure more than one public RSA or DSA key for user authentication. When a user logs in using a user account or as root, the configured public keys are referenced to determine whether the private key matches any of them.

For SSH authentication, you can also copy the contents of an SSH keys file into the configuration.

To load an SSH key file, use the **load-key-file** command. This command loads RSA (SSH version 1 and SSH version 2) and DSA (SSH version 2) public keys.

If you load the SSH keys file, the contents of the file are copied into the configuration immediately after you enter the **load-key-file** statement. To view the SSH keys entries, use the configuration mode **show** command. For example:

```
[edit system login user boojum]
user@host# set authentication load-key-file my-host:.ssh/identity.pub
.file.19692 | 0 KB | 0.3 kB/s | ETA: 00:00:00 | 100%
[edit system]
user@host# show
root-authentication {
  ssh-rsa "1024 35 9727638204084251055468226757249864241630322
207404962528390382038690141584534964170019610608358722961563
475784918273603361276441874265946893207739108344813125957722
625461667999278316123500438660915866283822489746732605661192
181489539813862940327687806538169602027491641637359132693963
44008443 boojum@juniper.net"; # SECRET-DATA
}
```

An account for the user **root** is always present in the configuration. You configure the password for **root** using the **root-authentication** statement, as described in “Configuring the Root Password” on page 58.

JUNOS-FIPS and Common Criteria have special password requirements. FIPS and Common Criteria passwords must be between 10 and 20 characters in length. Passwords must use at least three of the five defined character sets (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, punctuation marks, and other special characters). If JUNOS-FIPS is installed on the router, you cannot configure passwords unless they meet this standard.

**Related Topics** ■ Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts on page 69

## Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts

---

User accounts provide one way for users to access the router. For each account, you define the login name for the user and, optionally, information that identifies the user. After you have created an account, the software creates a home directory for the user.

To create user accounts, include the `user` statement at the `[edit system login]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login]
user username {
  full-name complete-name;
  uid uid-value;
  class class-name;
  authentication {
    (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);
    ssh-rsa "public-key";
    ssh-dsa "public-key";
  }
}
```

## Example: Configuring User Accounts

---

The following example shows how to create accounts for four router users, and create an account for the template user “remote.” All users use one of the default system login classes. User `alexander` also has two DSA public keys configured for SSH authentication.

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    user philip {
      full-name "Philip of Macedonia";
      uid 1001;
      class super-user;
      authentication {
        encrypted-password "$1$poPPeY";
      }
    }
    user alexander {
      full-name "Alexander the Great";
      uid 1002;
      class view;
      authentication {
```

```

        encrypted-password "$1$14c5.$sBopasdFFdssdFFdssdfs0";
        ssh-dsa "8924 37 5678 5678@gaugamela.per";
        ssh-dsa "6273 94 9283@boojum.per";
    }
}
user darius {
    full-name "Darius King of Persia";
    uid 1003;
    class operator;
    authentication {
        ssh-rsa "1024 37 12341234@ecbatana.per";
    }
}
user anonymous {
    class unauthorized;
}
user remote {
    full-name "All remote users";
    uid 9999;
    class read-only;
}
}
}

```

## Limiting the Number of User Login Attempts for SSH and Telnet Sessions

Beginning with JUNOS Release 8.0, you can limit the number of times a user can attempt to enter a password while logging in through SSH or Telnet. The connection is terminated if a user fails to log in after the number of attempts specified. You can also specify a delay, in seconds, before a user can try to enter a password after a failed attempt. In addition, you can specify the threshold for the number of failed attempts before the user experiences a delay in being able to enter a password again.

To specify the number of times a user can attempt to enter a password while logging in, include the `retry-options` statement at the `[edit system login]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit system login]
retry-options {
    tries-before-disconnect number;
    backoff-threshold number;
    backoff-factor seconds;
    minimum-time seconds;
}
password {
}

```

You can configure the following options.

- **tries-before-disconnect**—Number of times a user can attempt to enter a password when logging in. The connection closes if a user fails to log in after the number specified. The range is from 1 through 10, and the default is 10.
- **backoff-threshold**—Threshold for the number of failed login attempts before the user experiences a delay in being able to enter a password again. Use the

**backoff-factor** option to specify the length of the delay in seconds. The range is from 1 through 3, and the default is 2.

- **backoff-factor**—Length of time, in seconds, before a user can attempt to log in after a failed attempt. The delay increases by the value specified for each subsequent attempt after the threshold. The range is from 5 through 10, and the default is 5 seconds.
- **minimum-time**—Minimum length of time, in seconds, that a connection remains open while a user is attempting to enter a correct password. The range is from 20 through 60, and the default is 40.

**Related Topics** ■ Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts on page 69

### Example: Limiting the Number of Login Attempts for SSH and Telnet Sessions

---

The following example shows how to limit the user to four attempts when the user enters a password while logging in through SSH or Telnet. Set the **backoff-threshold** to 2, the **back-off-factor** to 5 seconds, and the **minimum-time** to 40 seconds. The user experiences a delay of 5 seconds after the second attempt to enter a correct password fails. After each subsequent failed attempt, the delay increases by 5 seconds. After the fourth and final failed attempt to enter a correct password, the user experiences an additional 10-second delay, and the connection closes after a total of 40 seconds.

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    retry-options {
      tries-before-disconnect 4;
      backoff-threshold 2;
      backoff-factor 5;
      minimum-time 40;
    }
    password {
    }
  }
}
```

### JUNOS-FIPS Crypto Officer and User Accounts Overview

---

JUNOS-FIPS defines a restricted set of user roles. Unlike the JUNOS software, which allows a wide range of capabilities to users, FIPS 140-2 defines specific types of users (Crypto Officer, User, and Maintenance). Crypto Officers and FIPS Users perform all FIPS-related configuration tasks and issue all FIPS-related commands. Crypto Officer and FIPS User configurations must follow FIPS 140-2 guidelines. Typically, no user besides a Crypto Officer can perform FIPS-related tasks.

#### Crypto Officer User Configuration

JUNOS-FIPS offers finer control of user permissions than those mandated by FIPS 140-2. For FIPS 140-2 conformance, any JUNOS-FIPS user with the **secret**, **security**, and **maintenance** permission bits set is a Crypto Officer. In most cases, the **super-user**

class should be reserved for a Crypto Officer. A FIPS User can be defined as any JUNOS-FIPS user that does not have the **secret**, **security**, and **maintenance** bits set.

## FIPS User Configuration

A Crypto Officer sets up FIPS Users. FIPS Users can be granted permissions normally reserved for a Crypto Officer; for example, permission to zeroize the system and individual AS-II FIPS PICs.

## JUNOS Software Access Privilege Levels Overview

Each top-level command-line interface (CLI) command and each configuration statement have an access privilege level associated with it. Users can execute only those commands and configure and view only those statements for which they have access privileges. The access privileges for each login class are defined by one or more *permission flags*.

For each login class, you can explicitly deny or allow the use of operational and configuration mode commands that would otherwise be permitted or not allowed by a privilege level specified in the **permissions** statement.

The following sections provide additional information:

- JUNOS Software Login Class Permission Flags on page 72
- Allowing or Denying Individual Commands for JUNOS Software Login Classes on page 74

## JUNOS Software Login Class Permission Flags

The **permissions** statement specifies one or more of the permission flags listed in Table 8 on page 72. Permission flags are not cumulative, so for each class you must list all the permission flags needed, including **view** to display information and **configure** to enter configuration mode. Two forms for the permissions control the individual parts of the configuration:

- “Plain” form—Provides read-only capability for that permission type. An example is **interface**.
- Form that ends in **-control**—Provides read and write capability for that permission type. An example is **interface-control**.

Table 8 on page 72 lists the JUNOS software login class permission flags that you can configure by including the **permissions** statement at the [edit system login class *class-name*] hierarchy level:

**Table 8: Login Class Permission Flags**

Permission Flag	Description
access	Can view the access configuration in configuration mode using the <b>show configuration</b> operational mode command.



**Table 8: Login Class Permission Flags** (continued)

Permission Flag	Description
access-control	Can view and configure access information at the [edit access] hierarchy level.
admin	Can view user account information in configuration mode and with the <code>show configuration</code> command.
admin-control	Can view user accounts and configure them at the [edit system login] hierarchy level.
all	Has all permissions.
clear	Can clear (delete) information learned from the network that is stored in various network databases using the <code>clear</code> commands.
configure	Can enter configuration mode using the <code>configure</code> command.
control	Can perform all control-level operations—all operations configured with the <code>-control</code> permission flags.
field	Reserved for field (debugging) support.
firewall	Can view the firewall filter configuration in configuration mode.
firewall-control	Can view and configure firewall filter information at the [edit firewall] hierarchy level.
floppy	Can read from and write to the removable media.
flow-tap	Can view the flow-tap configuration in configuration mode.
flow-tap control	Can view the flow-tap configuration in configuration mode and can configure flow-tap configuration information at the [edit services flow-tap] hierarchy level.
flow-tap-operation	Can make flow-tap requests to the router. For example, a Dynamic Tasking Control Protocol (DTCP) client must authenticate itself to JUNOS as an administrative user. That account must have <code>flow-tap-operation</code> permission.  <b>NOTE:</b> <code>flow-tap operation</code> is not included in the <code>all</code> permission.
interface	Can view the interface configuration in configuration mode and with the <code>show configuration operational mode</code> command.
interface-control	Can view the interface configuration in configuration mode and with the <code>show configuration operational mode</code> command.
maintenance	Can perform system maintenance, including starting a local shell on the router and becoming the superuser in the shell using the <code>su root</code> command, and can halt and reboot the router using the <code>request system</code> commands.
network	Can access the network by entering the <code>ping</code> , <code>SSH</code> , <code>telnet</code> , and <code>traceroute</code> commands.
reset	Can restart software processes using the <code>restart</code> command and can configure whether software processes are enabled or disabled at the [edit system processes] hierarchy level.
rollback	Can use the <code>rollback</code> command to return to a previously committed configuration other than the most recently committed one.

**Table 8: Login Class Permission Flags** (continued)

Permission Flag	Description
routing	Can view general routing, routing protocol, and routing policy configuration information in configuration and operational modes.
routing-control	Can view general routing, routing protocol, and routing policy configuration information and configure general routing at the [edit routing-options] hierarchy level, routing protocols at the [edit protocols] hierarchy level, and routing policy at the [edit policy-options] hierarchy level.
secret	Can view passwords and other authentication keys in the configuration.
secret-control	Can view passwords and other authentication keys in the configuration and can modify them in configuration mode.
security	Can view security configuration in configuration mode and with the <b>show configuration</b> operational mode command.
security-control	Can view and configure security information at the [edit security] hierarchy level.
shell	Can start a local shell on the router by entering the <b>start shell</b> command.
snmp	Can view Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) configuration information in configuration and operational modes.
snmp-control	Can view SNMP configuration information and modify SNMP configuration at the [edit snmp] hierarchy level.
system	Can view system-level information in configuration and operational modes.
system-control	Can view system-level configuration information and configure it at the [edit system] hierarchy level.
trace	Can view trace file settings in configuration and operational modes.
trace-control	Can view trace file settings and configure trace file properties.
view	Can use various commands to display current systemwide, routing table, and protocol-specific values and statistics. Cannot view secret configuration.

### Allowing or Denying Individual Commands for JUNOS Software Login Classes

By default, all top-level CLI commands have associated access privilege levels. Users can execute only those commands and view only those statements for which they have access privileges. For each login class, you can explicitly deny or allow the use of operational and configuration mode commands that would otherwise be permitted or not allowed by a privilege level specified in the **permissions** statement.



**NOTE:** The all login class permission bits take precedence over extended regular expressions when a user with `rollback` permission issues the `rollback` command.

Expressions used to allow and deny commands for users on RADIUS/TACACS+ servers have been simplified. Instead of a single, long expression with multiple commands (`allow-commands=cmd1 cmd2 cmdn`) you can specify each command as a separate expression. This new syntax is valid for `allow-configuration` and `deny-configuration`, `allow-command` and `deny-command`, and `user-permissions`.

Users cannot issue the `load override` command when specifying an extended regular expression. Users can only issue the `merge`, `replace`, and `patch` configuration commands.

---

**Related Topics** ■ Configuring Access Privilege Levels on page 75

## Configuring Access Privilege Levels

---

Each top-level command-line interface (CLI) command and each configuration statement has an access privilege level associated with it. Users can execute only those commands and configure and view only those statements for which they have access privileges.

To configure access privilege levels, include the `permissions` statement at the `[edit system login class class-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class class-name]  
permissions [ permissions ];
```

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS Software Access Privilege Levels Overview on page 72

■ Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands on page 76

## Example: Configuring Access Privilege Levels

---

Create two access privilege classes on the router, one for configuring and viewing user accounts only and the second for configuring and viewing SNMP parameters only:

```
[edit]  
system {  
  login {  
    class user-accounts {  
      permissions [ configure admin admin-control ];  
    }  
    class network-mgmt {  
      permissions [ configure snmp snmp-control ];  
    }  
  }  
}
```

## Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands

---

You can specify extended regular expressions with the `allow-commands` and `deny-commands` statements to define a user's access privileges to individual operational commands. Doing so takes precedence over login class permission bits set for a user. You can include one `deny-commands` and one `allow-commands` statement in each login class.

To explicitly allow an individual operational mode command that would otherwise be denied, include the `allow-commands` statement at the `[edit system login class class-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
  allow-commands "regular-expression";
```

To explicitly deny an individual operational mode command that would otherwise be allowed, include the `deny-commands` statement at the `[edit system login class class-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
  deny-commands "regular-expression";
```

If the regular expression contains any spaces, operators, or wildcard characters, enclose it in quotation marks. Regular expressions are not case-sensitive.



**NOTE:** Modifiers are not supported within the regular expression string to be matched. If a modifier is used, then nothing is matched.

For example, the deny command `set protocols` does not match anything whereas `protocols` matches *protocols*.

---

```
  allow-commands "show interfaces";
```

- Related Topics**
- Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Operational Mode Commands on page 77
  - Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Configuration Mode Commands on page 80

## Example 1: Defining Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands

---

The following examples show how to configure access privileges for individual configuration mode commands.

If the following statement is included in the configuration and the user's login class permission bit is set to `all`, the user cannot configure telnet parameters:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
user@host# set deny-configuration "system services telnet"
```

If the following statement is included in the configuration and the user's login class permission bit is set to all, the user cannot issue login class commands within any login class whose name begins with "m":

```
[edit system login class class-name]
user@host# set deny-configuration "system login class m.*"
```

If the following statement is included in the configuration and the user's login class permission bit is set to all, the user cannot issue configuration mode commands at the login class or system services hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
user@host# set deny-configuration "(system login class) | (system services)"
```

## Example 2: Configuring Access Privileges to Individual Operational Mode Commands

The following example shows how to configure access privileges for different login classes for individual operational mode commands:

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    # This login class has operator privileges and the additional ability to reboot the
    # router.
    class operator-and-boot {
      permissions [ clear network reset trace view ];
      allow-commands "request system reboot";
    }
    # This login class has operator privileges but can't use any commands beginning
    # with "set" .
    class operator-no-set {
      permissions [ clear network reset trace view ];
      deny-commands "^set";
    }
    # This login class has operator privileges and can install software but not view
    # BGP information, and can issue the show route command, without specifying
    # commands or arguments under it.
    class operator-and-install-but-no-bgp {
      permissions [ clear network reset trace view ];
      allow-commands "(request system software add)|(show route$)";
      deny-commands "show bgp";
    }
  }
}
```

## Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Operational Mode Commands

Use extended regular expressions to specify which operational mode commands are denied or allowed. Table 9 on page 78 lists common regular expression operators

that can be used in the operational mode commands. Command regular expressions implement the extended (modern) regular expressions as defined in POSIX 1003.2.

**Table 9: Common Regular Expression Operators to Allow or Deny Operational Mode Commands**

Operator	Match
	One of two or more terms separated by the pipe ( ) symbol. Each term must be a complete standalone expression enclosed in parentheses ( ), with no spaces between the pipe and the adjacent parentheses. For example, (show system alarms) (show system software).
^	At the beginning of an expression, used to denote where the command begins, and where there might be some ambiguity.
\$	Character at the end of a command. Used to denote a command that must be matched exactly up to that point. For example, allow-commands "show interfaces\$" means that the user can issue the show interfaces command but cannot issue the show interfaces detail or show interfaces extensive command.
[ ]	Range of letters or digits. To separate the start and end of a range, use a hyphen (-).
( )	A group of commands, indicating a complete, standalone expression to be evaluated; the result is then evaluated as part of the overall expression. Parentheses must always be used in conjunction with pipe operators as explained above.

If a regular expression contains a syntax error, it becomes invalid, and although the user can log in, the permission granted or denied by the regular expression does not take effect. When regular expressions configured on TACACS+ or RADIUS servers merge with regular expressions configured on the router, if the final expression has a syntax error, the overall result is an invalid regular expression. If a regular expression does not contain any operators, all varieties of the command are allowed. For example, if the following statement is included in the configuration, the user can issue the commands show interfaces detail and show interfaces extensive in addition to showing an individual interface:

```
allow-commands "show interfaces";
```

**Related Topics** ■ Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands on page 76

## Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Configuration Mode Commands

You can specify extended regular expressions with the allow-configuration and deny-configuration attributes to define user access privileges to parts of the configuration hierarchy or individual configuration mode commands. Doing so overrides login class permission bits set for a user. You can also use wildcards to

restrict access. When you define access privileges to parts of the configuration hierarchy or individual configuration mode commands, do the following:

- Specify the full paths in the extended regular expressions with the `allow-configuration` and `deny-configuration` attributes.
- Enclose parentheses around an extended regular expression that connects two or more expressions with the pipe `|` symbol. For example:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
user@host# set deny-configuration "(system login class) | (system services)"
```



**NOTE:** Each expression separated by a pipe (`|`) symbol must be a complete standalone expression, and must be enclosed in parentheses (`()`). Do not use spaces between regular expressions separated with parentheses and connected with the pipe (`|`) symbol. You cannot define access to keywords such as `set`, `edit`, or `activate`.

To explicitly allow an individual configuration mode command that would otherwise be denied, include the `allow-configuration` statement at the `[edit system login class class-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
allow-configuration "regular-expression";
```

To explicitly deny an individual configuration mode command that would otherwise be allowed, include the `deny-configuration` statement at the `[edit system login class class-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
deny-configuration "regular-expression";
```

You can include one `deny-configuration` and one `allow-configuration` statement in each login class.

#### Related Topics

- Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Configuration Mode Commands on page 80
- Configuring Access Privilege Levels on page 75

## Example 1: Defining Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands

The following examples show how to configure access privileges for individual configuration mode commands.

If the following statement is included in the configuration and the user's login class permission bit is set to `all`, the user cannot configure telnet parameters:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
user@host# set deny-configuration "system services telnet"
```

If the following statement is included in the configuration and the user's login class permission bit is set to **all**, the user cannot issue login class commands within any login class whose name begins with "m":

```
[edit system login class class-name]
user@host# set deny-configuration "system login class m.*"
```

If the following statement is included in the configuration and the user's login class permission bit is set to **all**, the user cannot issue configuration mode commands at the login class or system services hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
user@host# set deny-configuration "(system login class) | (system services)"
```

## Example 2: Configuring Access Privileges to Individual Configuration Mode Commands

---

The following example shows how to configure permissions for individual configuration mode commands:

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    # This login class has operator privileges and the additional ability to issue
    # commands at the system services hierarchy level.
    class only-system-services {
      permissions [ configure ];
      allow-configuration "system services";
    }
    # This login class has operator privileges but cannot issue any system
    # services commands.
    class all-except-system-services {
      permissions [ all ];
      deny-configuration "system services";
    }
  }
}
```

## Regular Expressions in Allow and Deny Commands for JUNOS Software Configuration Mode Commands

---

Use extended regular expressions to specify which configuration mode commands are denied or allowed. You specify these regular expressions in the **allow-configuration** and **deny-configuration** statements at the **[edit system login class]** hierarchy level, or by specifying Juniper Networks vendor-specific TACACS+ or RADIUS attributes in your authentication server's configuration. If regular expressions are received during TACACS+ or RADIUS authentication, they merge with any regular expressions configured on the local router.

Table 10 on page 81 lists common regular expression operators that you can use for allowing or denying commands for configuration mode commands.



Command regular expressions implement the extended (modern) regular expressions, as defined in POSIX 1003.2.

**Table 10: Configuration Mode Commands—Common Regular Expression Operators**

Operator	Match
	One of two or more terms separated by the pipe. Each term must be a complete standalone expression enclosed in parentheses ( ), with no spaces between the pipe and the adjacent parentheses. For example, (show system alarms) (show system software).
^	At the beginning of an expression, used to denote where the command begins, where there might be some ambiguity.
\$	Character at the end of a command. Used to denote a command that must be matched exactly up to that point. For example, allow-commands "show interfaces\$" means that the user can issue the <b>show interfaces</b> command but cannot issue <b>show interfaces detail</b> or <b>show interfaces extensive</b> .
[ ]	Range of letters or digits. To separate the start and end of a range, use a hyphen ( - ).
( )	A group of commands, indicating a complete, standalone expression to be evaluated; the result is then evaluated as part of the overall expression. Parentheses must always be used in conjunction with pipe operators as explained above.
*	Zero or more terms.
+	One or more terms.
.	Any character except for a space " ".

**Related Topics** ■ Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Configuration Mode Commands on page 78

## Configuring the Timeout Value for Idle Login Sessions

An idle login session is one in which the CLI operational mode prompt is displayed but there is no input from the keyboard. By default, a login session remains established until a user logs out of the router, even if that session is idle. To close idle sessions automatically, you configure a time limit for each login class. If a session established by a user in that class remains idle for the configured time limit, the session automatically closes.

To define the timeout value for idle login sessions, include the **idle-timeout** statement at the [edit system login class *class-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class class-name]
idle-timeout minutes;
```

Specify the number of minutes that a session can be idle before it is automatically closed.

If you have configured a timeout value, the CLI displays messages similar to the following when timing out an idle user. It starts displaying these messages 5 minutes before timing out the user.

```
user@host# Session will be closed in 5 minutes if there is no activity.  
Warning: session will be closed in 1 minute if there is no activity  
Warning: session will be closed in 10 seconds if there is no activity  
Idle timeout exceeded: closing session
```

If you configure a timeout value, the session closes after the specified time has elapsed except if the user is running telnet or monitoring interfaces using the **monitor interface** or **monitor traffic** command.

**Related Topics** ■ Defining JUNOS Software Login Classes on page 67

## Configuring CLI Tips

---

The JUNOS CLI provides the option of configuring CLI tips for the user. By default, the **tip** command is not enabled when a user logs in. To enable tips, include the **login-tip** statement at the **[edit system login class *class-name*]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class class-name]  
login-tip;
```

Adding this statement enables the **tip** command for the class specified, provided the user logs in using the CLI.

**Related Topics** ■ Defining JUNOS Software Login Classes on page 67

## Chapter 7

# Configuring System Authentication

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Configuring RADIUS Authentication on page 83
- Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes on page 86
- Configuring TACACS+ Authentication on page 87
- Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes on page 90
- Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS+ Authentication on page 91
- Configuring Remote Template Accounts for User Authentication on page 92
- Configuring Local User Template Accounts for User Authentication on page 92
- Using Regular Expressions on a TACACS+ or RADIUS Server to Allow or Deny Access to Commands on page 94
- JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS+, and Password Authentication on page 95
- Configuring the JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS+, and Local Password Authentication on page 99
- Example: Configuring System Authentication for RADIUS, TACACS+, and Password Authentication on page 100
- Recovering the Root Password on page 102

## Configuring RADIUS Authentication

---

RADIUS authentication is a method of authenticating users who attempt to access the router. Tasks to configure RADIUS authentication are:

- Configuring RADIUS Server Details on page 83
- Configuring MS-CHAPv2 for Password-Change Support on page 84
- Specifying a Source Address for the JUNOS Software to Access External RADIUS Servers on page 85

## Configuring RADIUS Server Details

To use RADIUS authentication on the router, configure information about one or more RADIUS servers on the network by including one **radius-server** statement at the [edit system] hierarchy level for each RADIUS server:

```
[edit system]
radius-server server-address {
  accounting-port port-number;
  port port-number;
  retry number;
  secret password;
  source-address source-address;
  timeout seconds;
}
```

*server-address* is the address of the RADIUS server.

You can specify a port on which to contact the RADIUS server. By default, port number **1812** is used (as specified in RFC 2865). You can also specify an accounting port to send accounting packets. The default is **1813** (as specified in RFC 2866).

You must specify a password in the **secret password** statement. If the password contains spaces, enclose it in quotation marks. The secret used by the local router must match that used by the server.

Optionally, you can specify the amount of time that the local router waits to receive a response from a RADIUS server (in the **timeout** statement) and the number of times that the router attempts to contact a RADIUS authentication server (in the **retry** statement). By default, the router waits 3 seconds. You can configure this to be a value in the range from 1 through 90 seconds. By default, the router retries connecting to the server 3 times. You can configure this to be a value in the range from 1 through 10 times.

You can use the **source-address** statement to specify a logical address for individual or multiple RADIUS servers.

To configure multiple RADIUS servers, include multiple **radius-server** statements.

To configure a set of users that share a single account for authorization purposes, you create a template user. To do this, include the **user** statement at the **[edit system login]** hierarchy level, as described in “Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS+ Authentication” on page 91.

You can also configure RADIUS authentication at the **[edit access]** and **[edit access profile]** hierarchy level. The JUNOS software uses the following search order to determine which set of servers are used for authentication:

```
[edit access profile profile-name radius-server server-address],
[edit access radius-server server-address],
[edit system radius-server server-address]
```

## Configuring MS-CHAPv2 for Password-Change Support

The JUNOS software enables you to configure the Microsoft implementation of the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol version 2 (MS-CHAPv2) on the router to support changing of passwords. This feature provides users accessing a router the option of changing the password when the password expires, is reset, or is configured to be changed at next logon.

Before you configure MS-CHAPv2 for password-change support, ensure that you have done the following:

- Configured RADIUS server authentication parameters.
- Set the first tried option in the authentication order to RADIUS server.

To configure MS-CHAP-v2, include the following statements at the [edit system radius-options] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system radius-options]
password-protocol mschap-v2;
```

The following example shows statements for configuring the MS-CHAPv2 password protocol, password authentication order, and user accounts:

```
[edit]
system {
  authentication-order [ radius password ];
  radius-server {
    192.168.69.149 secret "$9$G-j.5Qz6tpBk.1hrlXxUjiq5Qn/C"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
  radius-options {
    password-protocol mschap-v2;
  }
  login {
    user bob {
      class operator;
    }
  }
}
```

### **Specifying a Source Address for the JUNOS Software to Access External RADIUS Servers**

You can specify which source address the JUNOS software uses when accessing your network to contact an external RADIUS server for authentication. You can also specify which source address the JUNOS software uses when contacting a RADIUS server for sending accounting information.

To specify a source address for a RADIUS + server, include the `source-address` statement at the [edit system radius-server *server-address*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system radius-server server-address]
source-address source-address;
```

*source-address* is a valid IP address configured on one of the router interfaces.



**NOTE:** You can configure the JUNOS software to select a fixed address as the source address for locally generated IP packets.

---

## Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes

The JUNOS software supports the configuration of Juniper Networks RADIUS vendor-specific attributes (VSAs). These VSAs are encapsulated in a RADIUS vendor-specific attribute with the vendor ID set to the Juniper Networks ID number, 2636. Table 11 on page 86 lists the Juniper Networks VSAs you can configure.

**Table 11: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes**

Name	Description	Type	Length	String
Juniper-Local-User-Name	Indicates the name of the user template used by this user when logging in to a device. This attribute is used only in Access-Accept packets.	1	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters.
Juniper-Allow-Commands	Contains an extended regular expression that allows the user to run operational mode commands in addition to the commands authorized by the user's login class permission bits. This attribute is used only in Access-Accept packets.	2	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters, in the form of an extended regular expression. See Table 9 on page 78.
Juniper-Deny-Commands	Contains an extended regular expression that denies the user permission to run operation mode commands authorized by the user's login class permission bits. This attribute is used only in Access-Accept packets.	3	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters, in the form of an extended regular expression. See Table 9 on page 78.
Juniper-Allow-Configuration	Contains an extended regular expression that allows the user to run configuration mode commands in addition to the commands authorized by the user's login class permission bits. This attribute is used only in Access-Accept packets.	4	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters, in the form of an extended regular expression. See Table 10 on page 81.
Juniper-Deny-Configuration	Contains an extended regular expression that denies the user permission to run configuration commands authorized by the user's login class permission bits. This attribute is used only in Access-Accept packets.	5	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters, in the form of an extended regular expression. See Table 10 on page 81.
Juniper-Interactive-Command	Indicates the interactive command entered by the user. This attribute is used only in Accounting-Request packets.	8	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters.

**Table 11: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes** (continued)

Name	Description	Type	Length	String
Juniper-Configuration-Change	Indicates the interactive command that results in a configuration (database) change. This attribute is used only in Accounting-Request packets.	9	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters.
Juniper-User-Permissions	<p>Contains information the server uses to specify user permissions. This attribute is used only in Access-Accept packets.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the Juniper-User-Permissions attribute is configured to grant the JUNOS <i>maintenance</i> or all permissions on a RADIUS server, the UNIX wheel group membership is not automatically added to a user's list of group memberships . Some operations such as running the <b>su root</b> command from a local shell require wheel group membership permissions. However, when a user is configured locally with permissions <i>maintenance</i> or <i>all</i>, the user is automatically granted membership to the UNIX wheel group. Therefore, we recommend that you create a template user account with the required permissions and associate individual user accounts with the template user account.</p>	10	≥3	<p>One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters.</p> <p>The string is a list of permission flags separated by a space. The exact name of each flag must be specified in its entirety. See Table 8 on page 72.</p>

For more information about the VSAs, see RFC 2138, *Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)*.

## Configuring TACACS+ Authentication

TACACS + authentication is a method of authenticating users who attempt to access the router. Tasks to configure TACACS + configuration are:

- Configuring TACACS + Server Details on page 88
- Specifying a Source Address for the JUNOS Software to Access External TACACS + Servers on page 89

- Configuring the Same Authentication Service for Multiple TACACS + Servers on page 89
- Configuring Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS + Attributes on page 90

## Configuring TACACS+ Server Details

To use TACACS + authentication on the router, configure information about one or more TACACS + servers on the network by including the **tacplus-server** statement at the **[edit system]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
tacplus-server server-address {
  port port-number;
  secret password;
  single-connection;
  timeout seconds;
}
```

*server-address* is the address of the TACACS + server.

*port-number* is the TACACS + server port number.

You must specify a secret (password) that the local router passes to the TACACS + client by including the **secret** statement. If the password included spaces, enclose the password in quotation marks. The secret used by the local router must match that used by the server.

Optionally, you can specify the length of time that the local router waits to receive a response from a TACACS + server by including the **timeout** statement. By default, the router waits 3 seconds. You can configure this to be a value in the range from 1 through 90 seconds.

Optionally, you can have the software maintain one open Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) connection to the server for multiple requests, rather than opening a connection for each connection attempt by including the **single-connection** statement.



**NOTE:** Early versions of the TACACS + server do not support the **single-connection** option. If you specify this option and the server does not support it, the JUNOS software will be unable to communicate with that TACACS + server.

---

To configure multiple TACACS + servers, include multiple **tacplus-server** statements.

On a TX Matrix platform, TACACS + accounting should be configured only under the groups **re0** and **re1**.



**NOTE:** Accounting should not be configured at the **[edit system]** hierarchy level; on a TX Matrix platform, control is done under the switch-card chassis only.

---



To configure a set of users that share a single account for authorization purposes, you create a template user. To do this, include the `user` statement at the `[edit system login]` hierarchy level, as described in “Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS+ Authentication” on page 91.

### **Specifying a Source Address for the JUNOS Software to Access External TACACS+ Servers**

You can specify which source address the JUNOS software uses when accessing your network to contact an external TACACS+ server for authentication. You can also specify which source address the JUNOS software uses when contacting a TACACS+ server for sending accounting information.

To specify a source address for a TACACS+ server for authentication, include the `source-address` statement at the `[edit system tacplus-server server-address]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system tacplus-server server-address]
source-address source-address;
```

`source-address` is a valid IP address configured on one of the router interfaces.

To specify a source address for a TACACS+ server for system accounting, include the `source-address` statement at the `[edit system accounting destination tacplus server server-address]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system accounting destination tacplus server server-address]
source-address source-address;
```

`source-address` is a valid IP address configured on one of the router interfaces.

### **Configuring the Same Authentication Service for Multiple TACACS+ Servers**

To configure the same authentication service for multiple TACACS+ servers, include statements at the `[edit system tacplus-server]` and `[edit system tacplus-options]` hierarchy levels. For information about how to configure a TACACS+ server at the `[edit system tacplus-server]` hierarchy level, see “Configuring TACACS+ Authentication” on page 87.

To assign the same authentication service to multiple TACACS+ servers, include the `service-name` statement at the `[edit system tacplus-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system tacplus-options]
service-name service-name;
```

`service-name` is the name of the authentication service. By default, the service name is set to `junos-exec`.

The following example shows how to configure the same authentication service for multiple TACACS+ servers:

```
[edit system]
tacplus-server {
  10.2.2.2 secret "$9$2dgoJGDiqP5ZG9A"; ## SECRET-DATA
```

```

10.3.3.3 secret "$9$2dgoJGDiqP5ZG9A";## SECRET-DATA
}
tacplus-options {
  service-name bob;
}

```

## Configuring Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes

The Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes enable you to configure access privileges for users on a TACACS+ server. They are specified in the TACACS+ server configuration file on a per-user basis. The JUNOS software retrieves these attributes through an authorization request of the TACACS+ server after authenticating a user. You do not need to configure these attributes to run the JUNOS software with TACACS+.

To specify these attributes, include a **service** statement of the following form in the TACACS+ server configuration file:

```

service = junos-exec {
  local-user-name = <username-local-to-router>
  allow-commands = "<allow-commands-regex>"
  allow-configuration = "<allow-configuration-regex>"
  deny-commands = "<deny-commands-regex>"
  deny-configuration = "<deny-configuration-regex>"
}

```

This service statement can appear in a **user** or **group** statement.

## Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes

The JUNOS software supports the configuration of Juniper Networks TACACS+ vendor-specific attributes (VSAs). These VSAs are encapsulated in a TACACS+ vendor-specific attribute with the vendor ID set to the Juniper Networks ID number, 2636. Table 12 on page 90 lists the Juniper Networks VSAs you can configure.

**Table 12: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes**

Name	Description	Length	String
local-user-name	Indicates the name of the user template used by this user when logging in to a device.	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters.
allow-commands	Contains an extended regular expression that allows the user to run operational mode commands in addition to those commands authorized by the user's login class permission bits.	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters, in the form of an extended regular expression. See Table 9 on page 78.

**Table 12: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes** (continued)

Name	Description	Length	String
allow-configuration	Contains an extended regular expression that allows the user to run configuration mode commands in addition to those commands authorized by the user's login class permission bits.	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters, in the form of an extended regular expression. See Table 10 on page 81.
deny-commands	Contains an extended regular expression that denies the user permission to run operational mode commands authorized by the user's login class permission bits.	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters, in the form of an extended regular expression. See Table 9 on page 78.
deny-configuration	Contains an extended regular expression that denies the user permission to run configuration mode commands authorized by the user's login class permission bits.	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters, in the form of an extended regular expression. See Table 10 on page 81.
user-permissions	<p>Contains information the server uses to specify user permissions.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the <code>user-permissions</code> attribute is configured to grant the JUNOS <code>maintenance</code> or <code>all</code> permissions on a TACACS+ server, the UNIX wheel group membership is not automatically added to a user's list of group memberships. Some operations such as running the <code>su root</code> command from a local shell require wheel group membership permissions. However, when a user is configured locally with permissions <code>maintenance</code> or <code>all</code>, the user is automatically granted membership to the UNIX wheel group. Therefore, we recommend that you create a template user account with the required permissions and associate individual user accounts with the template user account.</p>	≥3	One or more octets containing printable ASCII characters. See Table 8 on page 72.

**Related Topics** ■ Configuring Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes on page 90

## Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS+ Authentication

When you use local password authentication, you must create a local user account for every user who wants to access the system. However, when you are using RADIUS

or TACACS+ authentication, you can create single accounts (for authorization purposes) that are shared by a set of users. You create these accounts using the remote and local user template accounts. When a user is using a template account, the command-line interface (CLI) username is the login name; however, the privileges, file ownership, and effective user ID are inherited from the template account.

- Related Topics**
- Configuring Remote Template Accounts for User Authentication on page 92
  - Configuring Local User Template Accounts for User Authentication on page 92

## Configuring Remote Template Accounts for User Authentication

---

By default, the JUNOS software uses the remote template accounts when:

- The authenticated user does not exist locally on the router
- The authenticated user's record in the authentication server specifies local user, or the specified local user does not exist locally on the router

To configure the remote template account, include the `user remote` statement at the `[edit system login]` hierarchy level and specify the privileges you want to grant to remote users:

```
[edit system login]
user remote {
  full-name "All remote users";
  uid uid-value;
  class class-name;
}
```

To configure different access privileges for users who share the remote template account, include the `allow-commands` and `deny-commands` commands in the authentication server configuration file.

- Related Topics**
- Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS+ Authentication on page 91

## Configuring Local User Template Accounts for User Authentication

---

You use local user template accounts when you need different types of templates. Each template can define a different set of permissions appropriate for the group of users who use that template. These templates are defined locally on the router and referenced by the TACACS+ and RADIUS authentication servers.

When you configure local user templates and a user logs in, the JUNOS software issues a request to the authentication server to authenticate the user's login name. If a user is authenticated, the server returns the local username to the JUNOS software, which then determines whether a local username is specified for that login name (`local-username` for TACACS+, `Juniper-Local-User` for RADIUS). If so, the JUNOS software selects the appropriate local user template locally configured on the router. If a local user template does not exist for the authenticated user, the router defaults to the remote template.

To configure different access privileges for users who share the local user template account, include the `allow-commands` and `deny-commands` commands in the authentication server configuration file.

To configure a local user template, include the `user local-username` statement at the `[edit system login]` hierarchy level and specify the privileges you want to grant to the local users to whom the template applies:

```
[edit system login]
user local-username {
    full-name "Local user account";
    uid uid-value;
    class class-name;
}
```

In this example, you configure the `sales` and `engineering` local user templates:

```
[edit]
system {
    login {
        user sales {
            uid uid-value;
            class class-name;
        }
        user engineering {
            uid uid-value;
            class class-name;
        }
    }
}

user = simon {
    ...
    service = junos-exec {
        local-user-name = sales
        allow-commands = "configure"
        deny-commands = "shutdown"
    }
}

user = rob {
    ...
    service = junos-exec {
        local-user-name = sales
        allow-commands = "(request system) | (show rip neighbor)"
        deny-commands = "<^clear"
    }
}

user = harold {
    ...
    service = junos-exec {
        local-user-name = engineering
        allow-commands = "monitor | help | show | ping | traceroute"
        deny-commands = "configure"
    }
}

user = jim {
```

```

...
service = junos-exec {
    local-user-name = engineering
    allow-commands = "show bgp neighbor"
    deny-commands = "telnet | ssh"
}
}

```

When the login users Simon and Rob are authenticated, they use the sales local user template. When login users Harold and Jim are authenticated, they use the engineering local user template.

**Related Topics** ■ Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS+ Authentication on page 91

## Using Regular Expressions on a TACACS+ or RADIUS Server to Allow or Deny Access to Commands

---

Use regular expressions to specify which operational or configuration mode commands are allowed or denied when using a RADIUS or TACACS+ server for user authentication. You can specify the regular expressions using the appropriate Juniper Networks vendor-specific TACACS+ or RADIUS attributes in your authentication server configuration.

You can specify the **allow**, **deny** configuration or operational mode commands, or **user-permissions** in a single extended regular expression, enclosing the multiple commands in parentheses and separating them using the pipe symbol:  
 allow-commands= (cmd1 | cmd2 | cmdn).

On a TACACS+ or RADIUS server, you can also use a simplified version for regular expressions, where you specify each command as a separate expression. The simplified version is valid for the **Juniper-Allow-Commands**, **Juniper-Deny-Commands**, **Juniper-Allow-Configuration**, **Juniper-Deny-Configuration**, and **Juniper-User-Permissions** vendor-specific attributes:

```

Juniper-Allow-Commands = "cmd1"
Juniper-Allow-Commands = "cmd2"
Juniper-Allow-Commands = "cmd n"
Juniper-Deny-Commands = "cmd1"
Juniper-Deny-Commands = "cmd2"
Juniper-Deny-Commands = "cmd n"
Juniper-Allow-Configuration = "cmd1"
Juniper-Allow-Configuration = "cmd2"
Juniper-Allow-Configuration = "cmd n"
Juniper-Deny-Configuration = "cmd1"
Juniper-Deny-Configuration = "cmd2"
Juniper-Deny-Configuration = "cmd n"
Juniper-User-Permissions = "cmd1"
Juniper-User-Permissions = "cmd2"
Juniper-User-Permissions = "cmd n"

```

For more information about Juniper Networks vendor-specific RADIUS and TACACS+ attributes, see “Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes” on page 86

and “Configuring Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific TACACS+ Attributes” on page 90.



**NOTE:** When TACACS+ or RADIUS authentication is configured for a router, regular expressions configured on the RADIUS or TACACS+ server merge with any regular expressions configured on the local router at the [edit system login class] hierarchy level for the **allow**, **deny**, or **permissions** commands. If the final expression has a syntax error, the overall result is an invalid regular expression.

## JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS+, and Password Authentication

Using the `authentication-order` statement, you can prioritize the order in which the JUNOS software tries the different authentication methods when verifying user access to a router.

For each login attempt, the JUNOS software tries the configured authentication methods in order until the password is accepted. If the username and password are accepted, the login attempt succeeds and no other authentication methods are tried. The next method in the authentication order is consulted if the previous authentication method fails to respond or if the method returns a reject response to the login attempt because of an incorrect username or password.

If none of the configured authentication methods accept the login credentials and if a reject response is received, the login attempt fails. If no response is received from any configured authentication method, the JUNOS software consults local password authentication as a last resort.

### Using RADIUS or TACACS+ Authentication

You can configure the JUNOS software to be both a RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication client.

If an authentication method included in the `[authentication-order]` statement is not available, or if the authentication is available but returns a reject response, the JUNOS software tries the next authentication method included in the `authentication-order` statement.

The RADIUS or TACACS+ server authentication might fail because of the following reasons:

- The authentication method is configured, but the corresponding authentication servers are not configured. For instance, the RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication methods are included in the `authentication-order` statement, but the corresponding RADIUS or TACACS+ servers are not configured at the respective `[edit system radius-server]` and `[edit system tacplus-server]` hierarchy levels.
- The RADIUS or TACACS+ server does not respond within the timeout period configured at the `[edit system radius-server]` or `[edit system tacplus-server]` hierarchy levels.

- The RADIUS or TACACS + server is not reachable because of a network problem.

The RADIUS or TACACS + server authentication might return a reject response because of the following reasons:

- The user profiles of users accessing a router might not be configured on the RADIUS or TACACS + server.
- The user enters incorrect logon credentials.

## **Using Local Password Authentication**

You can explicitly configure the password authentication method or use this method as a fallback mechanism when remote authentication servers fail. The password authentication method consults the local user profiles configured at the [edit system login] hierarchy level. Users can log in to a router using their local username and password in the following scenarios:

- The password authentication method (password) is explicitly configured as one of the authentication methods in the [authentication-order *authentication-methods*] statement. In this case, the password authentication is consulted if no previous authentication accepts the logon credentials. This is true whether the previous authentication method fails to respond or returns a reject response because of an incorrect username or password.
- The password authentication method is not explicitly configured as one of the authentication methods in the authentication-order *authentication-methods* statement. In this case, the password authentication method is consulted only if all configured authentication methods fail to respond. It is not consulted if any configured authentication method returns a reject response because of an incorrect username or password.

## **Order of Authentication Attempts**

Table 13 on page 97 describes how the authentication-order statement at the [edit system] hierarchy level determines the procedure that the JUNOS software uses to authenticate users for access to a routing platform:



**Table 13: Order of Authentication Attempts**

Syntax	Order of Authentication Attempts
authentication-order radius;	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try configured RADIUS authentication servers.</li> <li>2. If RADIUS server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>3. If RADIUS server is available but authentication is rejected, deny access.</li> <li>4. If RADIUS servers are not available, try password authentication.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If a RADIUS server is available, password authentication is not attempted, because it is not explicitly configured in the authentication order.</p>
authentication-order [ radius password ];	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try configured RADIUS authentication servers.</li> <li>2. If RADIUS servers fail to respond or return a reject response, try password authentication, because it is explicitly configured in the authentication order.</li> </ol>
authentication-order [ radius tacplus ];	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try configured RADIUS authentication servers.</li> <li>2. If RADIUS server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>3. If RADIUS servers fail to respond or return a reject response, try configured TACACS+ servers.</li> <li>4. If TACACS+ server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>5. If TACACS+ server is available but authentication is rejected, deny access.</li> <li>6. If both RADIUS and TACACS+ servers are not available, try password authentication.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If either RADIUS or TACACS+ servers are available, password authentication is not attempted, because it is not explicitly configured in the authentication order.</p>
authentication-order [ radius tacplus password ];	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try configured RADIUS authentication servers.</li> <li>2. If RADIUS server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>3. If RADIUS servers fail to respond or return a reject response, try configured TACACS+ servers.</li> <li>4. If TACACS+ server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>5. If TACACS+ servers fail to respond or return a reject response, try password authentication, because it is explicitly configured in the authentication order.</li> </ol>

**Table 13: Order of Authentication Attempts** *(continued)*

Syntax	Order of Authentication Attempts
authentication-order tacplus;	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try configured TACACS+ authentication servers.</li> <li>2. If TACACS+ server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>3. If TACACS+ server is available but authentication is rejected, deny access.</li> <li>4. If TACACS+ servers are not available, try password authentication.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If a TACACS+ server is available, password authentication is not attempted, because it is not explicitly configured in the authentication order.</p>
authentication-order [ tacplus password ];	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try configured TACACS+ authentication servers.</li> <li>2. If TACACS+ servers fail to respond or return a reject response, try password authentication, because it is explicitly configured in the authentication order.</li> </ol>
authentication-order [ tacplus radius ];	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try configured TACACS+ authentication servers.</li> <li>2. If TACACS+ server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>3. If TACACS+ servers fail to respond or return a reject response, try configured RADIUS servers.</li> <li>4. If RADIUS server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>5. If RADIUS server is available but authentication is rejected, deny access.</li> <li>6. If both TACACS+ and RADIUS servers are not available, try password authentication.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If either TACACS+ or RADIUS servers are available, password authentication is not attempted, because it is not explicitly configured in the authentication order.</p>
authentication-order [ tacplus radius password ];	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try configured TACACS+ authentication servers.</li> <li>2. If TACACS+ server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>3. If TACACS+ servers fail to respond or return a reject response, try configured RADIUS servers.</li> <li>4. If RADIUS server is available and authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>5. If RADIUS servers fail to respond or return a reject response try password authentication, because it is explicitly configured in the authentication order.</li> </ol>

**Table 13: Order of Authentication Attempts** (*continued*)

Syntax	Order of Authentication Attempts
authentication-order password;	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Try to authenticate the user, using the password configured at the [edit system login] hierarchy level.</li> <li>2. If the authentication is accepted, grant access.</li> <li>3. If the authentication is rejected, deny access.</li> </ol>



**NOTE:** If SSH public keys are configured, SSH user authentication first tries to perform public key authentication before using the authentication methods configured in the authentication-order statement. If you want SSH logins to use the authentication methods configured in the authentication-order statement without first trying to perform public key authentication, do not configure SSH public keys.

- Related Topics**
- Configuring the JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS + , and Local Password Authentication on page 99
  - Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS + Authentication on page 91

## Configuring the JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS+, and Local Password Authentication

Using the authentication-order statement, you can prioritize the order in which the JUNOS software tries the different authentication methods when verifying user access to a router.

To configure the authentication order, include the authentication-order statement at the [edit system] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
authentication-order [authentication-methods ];
```

Specify one or more of the following authentication methods in the preferred order, from first tried to last tried:

- radius—Verify the user using RADIUS authentication services
- tacplus—Verify the user using TACACS + authentication services.
- password—Verify the user using the username and password configured locally by including the authentication statement at the [edit system login user] hierarchy level.

The CHAP authentication sequence cannot take more than 30 seconds. If it takes longer to authenticate a client, the authentication is abandoned and a new sequence is initiated.

For example, if you configure three RADIUS servers so that the router attempts to contact each server three times, and with each retry the server times out after 3 seconds, then the maximum time given to the RADIUS authentication method before CHAP considers it a failure is 27 seconds. If you add more RADIUS servers to this configuration, they might not be contacted because the authentication process might be abandoned before these servers are tried.

The JUNOS software enforces a limit to the number of standing authentication server requests that the CHAP authentication can have at one time. Thus, an authentication server method—RADIUS, for example—may fail to authenticate a client when this limit is exceeded. In the above example, any authentication method following this method is tried. If it fails, the authentication sequence is reinitiated by the router until authentication succeeds and the link is brought up.

The following example shows how to configure **radius** and **password** authentication:

```
[edit system]
authentication-order [ radius password ];
```

The following example shows how to delete the **radius** statement from the authentication order:

```
[edit system]
user@host# delete authentication-order radius
```

The following example shows how to insert the **tacplus** statement after the **radius** statement:

```
[edit system]
user@host# insert authentication-order tacplus after radius
```



**NOTE:** You can also configure the authentication order by including the **authentication-order** statement at the **[edit access profile *name*]** hierarchy level:

- **[edit access profile *profile-name*]**  
**authentication-order [ *authentication-methods* ];**
- For Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP), RADIUS authentication servers are configured at the **[edit access radius-server]** hierarchy level.
- When you configure the authentication methods for L2TP, only the first configured authentication method is used.

---

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS + , and Password Authentication on page 95

## Example: Configuring System Authentication for RADIUS, TACACS+, and Password Authentication

---

The following example shows how to configure system authentication for RADIUS, TACACS, and Password Authentication.

The example allows logins only by the individual user Philip, and by users who have been authenticated by a remote RADIUS server. If a user logs in and is not authenticated by the RADIUS server, the user is denied access to the router. However, if the RADIUS server is not available, the user's login name has a local password, and the user enters that password, the user is authenticated (using the **password** authentication method) and allowed access to the router. For more information about the password authentication method, see “Using Local Password Authentication” on page 96.

When Philip tries to log in to the system, if the RADIUS server authenticates him, he is given access and privileges for the **super-user** class. Local accounts are not configured for other users. When they log in to the system and the RADIUS server authenticates them, they are given access using the same user ID (UID) 9999 and the same privileges for the **operator** class.

```
[edit]
system {
  authentication-order radius;
  login {
    user philip {
      full-name "Philip";
      uid 1001;
      class super-user;
    }
    user remote {
      full-name "All remote users";
      uid 9999;
      class operator;
    }
  }
}
```



**NOTE:** For authorization purposes, you can use a template account to create a single account that can be shared by a set of users at the same time. For example, when you create a remote template account, a set of remote users can concurrently share a single UID. For more information about template accounts, see “Overview of Template Accounts for RADIUS and TACACS+ Authentication” on page 91.

Configuring a single remote user template account requires that all users without individual configuration entries share the same class and UID. When you are using RADIUS and telnet or RADIUS and SSH together, you can specify a different template user other than the remote user.

To configure an alternate template user, specify the **user-name** parameter returned in the RADIUS authentication response packet. Not all RADIUS servers allow you to change this parameter. The following shows a sample JUNOS configuration:

```
[edit]
system {
  authentication-order radius;
  login {
    user philip {
      full-name "Philip";
```

```

        uid 1001;
        class super-user;
    }
    user operator {
        full-name "All operators";
        uid 9990;
        class operator;
    }
    user remote {
        full-name "All remote users";
        uid 9999;
        class read-only;
    }
}

```

Assume your RADIUS server is configured with the following information:

- User Philip with password “olympia”
- User Alexander with password “bucephalus” and username “operator”
- User Darius with password “redhead” and username “operator”
- User Roxane with password “athena”

Philip would be given access as a superuser (super-user) because he has his own local user account. Alexander and Darius share UID 9990 and have access as operators. Roxane has no template-user override, so she shares access with all the other remote users, getting read-only access.

## Recovering the Root Password

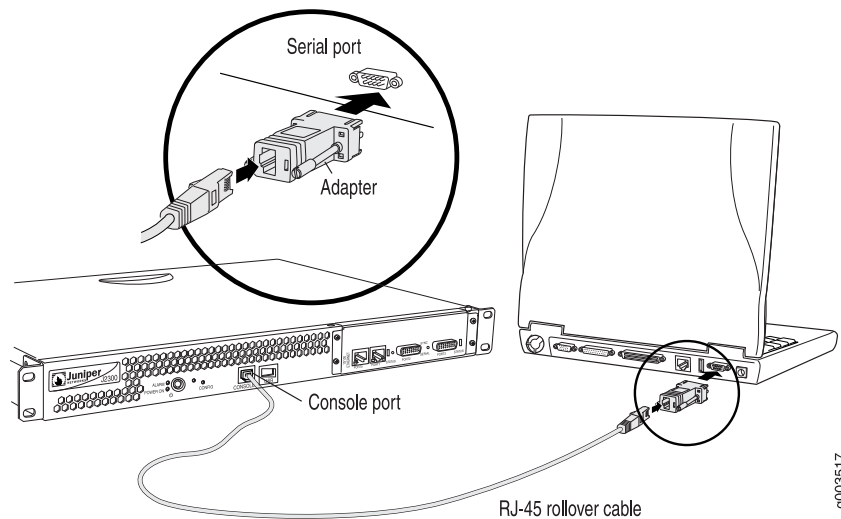
If you forget the root password for the router, you can use the password recovery procedure to reset the root password.



**NOTE:** You need console access to recover the root password.

To recover the root password:

1. Power off the router by pressing the power button on the front panel.
2. Turn off the power to the management device, such as a PC or laptop computer, that you want to use to access the CLI.
3. Plug one end of the Ethernet rollover cable supplied with the router into the RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter supplied with the router (see Figure 2 on page 103.)
4. Plug the RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter into the serial port on the management device (see Figure 2 on page 103).
5. Connect the other end of the Ethernet rollover cable to the console port on the router (see Figure 2 on page 103).

**Figure 2: Connecting to the Console Port on the J2300 Services Router**

**NOTE:** The J-series Services Router included in this figure is just an example. The physical location of the console port and serial port might vary on T-series or M-series routers.

6. Turn on the power to the management device.
7. On the management device, start your asynchronous terminal emulation application (such as Microsoft Windows Hyperterminal) and select the appropriate COM port to use (for example, COM1).
8. Configure the port settings as follows:
  - Bits per second: 9600
  - Data bits: 8
  - Parity: None
  - Stop bits: 1
  - Flow control: None
9. Power on the router by pressing the power button on the front panel. Verify that the **POWER LED** on the front panel turns green.  
  
The terminal emulation screen on your management device displays the router's boot sequence.
10. When the following prompt appears, press the Spacebar to access the router's bootstrap loader command prompt:

```
Hit [Enter] to boot immediately, or space bar for command prompt.
Booting [kernel] in 9 seconds...
```

11. At the following prompt, enter **boot -s** to start up the system in single-user mode.

```
ok boot -s
```

12. At the following prompt, enter **recovery** to start the root password recovery procedure.

```
Enter full pathname of shell or 'recovery' for root password recovery or
RETURN for /bin/sh: recovery
```

13. Enter configuration mode in the CLI.
14. Set the root password. For example:

```
user@host# set system root-authentication plain-text-password
```

15. At the following prompt, enter the new root password. For example:

```
New password: juniper1
```

```
Retype new password:
```

16. At the second prompt, reenter the new root password.
17. After you have finished configuring the password, commit the configuration.

```
root@host# commit
```

```
commit complete
```

18. Exit configuration mode in the CLI.
19. Exit operational mode in the CLI.
20. At the prompt, enter **y** to reboot the router.

```
Reboot the system? [y/n] y
```

**Related Topics** ■ Configuring the Root Password on page 58



## Chapter 8

# Configuring Time

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Modifying the Default Time Zone for a Router Running JUNOS Software on page 105
- NTP Overview on page 106
- Synchronizing and Coordinating Time Distribution Using NTP on page 106
- NTP Time Server and Time Services Overview on page 108
- Configuring the NTP Time Server and Time Services on page 109
- Configuring NTP Authentication Keys on page 112
- Configuring the Router to Listen for Broadcast Messages Using NTP on page 112
- Configuring the Router to Listen for Multicast Messages Using NTP on page 113
- Setting a Custom Time Zone on Routers Running JUNOS Software on page 113

### Modifying the Default Time Zone for a Router Running JUNOS Software

---

The default local time zone on the router is UTC (Coordinated Universal Time, formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time, or GMT). To modify the local time zone, include the `time-zone` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
time-zone (GMThour-offset | time-zone);
```

You can use the `GMT hour-offset` option to set the time zone relative to UTC (GMT) time. By default, *hour-offset* is 0. You can configure this to be a value in the range from -14 to +12.

You can also specify *time-zone* as a string such as PDT (Pacific Daylight Time) or WET (Western European Time), or specify the continent and major city.

For the time zone change to take effect for all processes running on the router, you must reboot the router.

The following example shows how to change the current time zone to `America/New_York`:

```
[edit]
user@host# set system time-zone America/New_York
[edit]
user@host# show
```

```
system {
    time-zone America/New_York;
}
```

## NTP Overview

---

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) provides the mechanisms to synchronize time and coordinate time distribution in a large, diverse network. NTP uses a returnable-time design in which a distributed subnet of time servers operating in a self-organizing, hierarchical primary-secondary configuration synchronizes local clocks within the subnet and to national time standards by means of wire or radio. The servers also can redistribute reference time using local routing algorithms and time daemons.

NTP is defined in RFC 1305, *Network Time Protocol (Version 3) Specification, Implementation and Analysis*.

For Common Criteria compliance, configure NTP to provide accurate timestamps for system log messages.



**NOTE:** NTP does not support VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) requests. The router cannot process these requests properly because NTP uses the `inet.0` route table for route resolution to the requestor and thus cannot propagate routes using the `routing-instance-name.inet.0` VRF table for the VPN.

When configuring NTP, you do not actively configure time servers. Rather, all clients also are servers. An NTP server is not believed unless it, in turn, is synchronized to another NTP server—which itself must be synchronized to something upstream, eventually terminating in a high-precision clock.

By default, if the time difference between the local router clock and the NTP server clock is more than 128 milliseconds, the clocks are slowly stepped into synchronization. However, if the difference is more than 1000 seconds, the clocks are not synchronized. On the local router, you set the date and time using the `set date` command. To set the time automatically, use the `boot-server` statement at the `[edit system ntp]` hierarchy level, specifying the address of an NTP server.

**Related Topics** ■ Synchronizing and Coordinating Time Distribution Using NTP on page 106

## Synchronizing and Coordinating Time Distribution Using NTP

---

Using NTP to synchronize and coordinate time distribution in a large network involves these tasks:

1. Configuring NTP on page 107
2. Configuring the NTP Boot Server on page 107
3. Specifying a Source Address for an NTP Server on page 107

## Configuring NTP

To configure NTP on the router, include the `ntp` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
ntp {
  authentication-key number type type value password;
  boot-server address;
  broadcast <address> <key key-number> <version value> <ttl value>;
  broadcast-client;
  multicast-client <address>;
  peer address <key key-number> <version value> <prefer>;
  server address <key key-number> <version value> <prefer>;
  source-address source-address;
  trusted-key [ key-numbers ];
}
```

## Configuring the NTP Boot Server

When you boot the router, it issues an `ntpdate` request, which polls a network server to determine the local date and time. You need to configure a server that the router uses to determine the time when the router boots. Otherwise, NTP will not be able to synchronize to a time server if the server's time appears to be very far off of the local router's time.

To configure the NTP boot server, include the `boot-server` statement at the `[edit system ntp]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
boot-server address;
```

Specify the address of the network server. You must specify an address, not a hostname.

## Specifying a Source Address for an NTP Server

For IP version 4 (IPv4), you can specify that if the NTP server configured at the `[edit system ntp]` hierarchy level is contacted on one of the loopback interface addresses, the reply always uses a specific source address. This is useful for controlling which source address NTP will use to access your network when it is either responding to an NTP client request from your network or when it itself is sending NTP requests to your network.

To configure the specific source address that the reply will always use, and the source address that requests initiated by NTP server will use, include the `source-address` statement at the `[edit system ntp]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
source-address source-address;
```

*source-address* is a valid IP address configured on one of the router interfaces.



**NOTE:** If a firewall filter is applied on the loopback interface, ensure that the **source-address** specified for the NTP server at the [edit system ntp] hierarchy level is explicitly included as one of the match criteria in the firewall filter. This enables the JUNOS software to accept traffic on the loopback interface from the specified source address.

The following example shows a firewall filter with the source address 10.0.10.100 specified in the **from** statement included at the [edit firewall filter *firewall-filter-name*] hierarchy:

```
[edit firewall filter Loopback-Interface-Firewall-Filter]
term Allow-NTP {
  from {
    source-address {
      172.17.27.46/32; // IP address of the NTP server
      10.0.10.100/32; // Source address specified for the NTP server
    }
  }
  then accept;
}
```

If no **source-address** is configured for the NTP server, include the primary address of the loopback interface in the firewall filter.

---

**Related Topics**   NTP Overview on page 106

---

## NTP Time Server and Time Services Overview

---

When configuring the Network Time Protocol (NTP), you can specify which system on the network is the authoritative time source, or time server, and how time is synchronized between systems on the network. To do this, you configure the router to operate in one of the following modes:

- Client mode—In this mode, the local router can be synchronized with the remote system, but the remote system can never be synchronized with the local router.
- Symmetric active mode—In this mode, the local router and the remote system can synchronize with each other. You use this mode in a network in which either the local router or the remote system might be a better source of time.



**NOTE:** Symmetric active mode can be initiated by either the local or the remote system. Only one system needs to be configured to do so. This means that the local system can synchronize with any system that offers symmetric active mode without any configuration whatsoever. However, we strongly encourage you to configure authentication to ensure that the local system synchronizes only with known time servers.

- 
- Broadcast mode—In this mode, the local router sends periodic broadcast messages to a client population at the specified broadcast or multicast **address**.

Normally, you include this statement only when the local router is operating as a transmitter.

- Server mode—In this mode, the local router operates as an NTP server.



**NOTE:** In NTP server mode, the JUNOS software does not support authentication.

---

**Related Topics** ■ Configuring the NTP Time Server and Time Services on page 109

## Configuring the NTP Time Server and Time Services

---

When you use NTP, configure the router to operate in one of the following modes:

- Client mode
- Symmetric active mode
- Broadcast mode
- Server mode

The following topics describe how to configure these modes of operation:

1. Configuring the Router to Operate in Client Mode on page 109
2. Configuring the Router to Operate in Symmetric Active Mode on page 110
3. Configuring the Router to Operate in Broadcast Mode on page 110
4. Configuring the Router to Operate in Server Mode on page 111

### Configuring the Router to Operate in Client Mode

To configure the local router to operate in client mode, include the **server** statement and other optional statements at the [edit system ntp] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
server address <key key-number> <version value> <prefer>;
authentication-key key-number type type value password;
boot-server address;
trusted-key [ key-numbers ];
```

Specify the address of the system acting as the time server. You must specify an address, not a hostname.

To include an authentication key in all messages sent to the time server, include the **key** option. The key corresponds to the key number you specify in the **authentication-key** statement, as described in “Configuring NTP Authentication Keys” on page 112.

By default, the router sends NTP version 4 packets to the time server. To set the NTP version level to 1, 2, or 3 include the **version** option.

If you configure more than one time server, you can mark one server preferred by including the **prefer** option.

For information about how to configure trusted keys, see “Configuring NTP Authentication Keys” on page 112. For information about how to configure an NTP boot server, see “Configuring the NTP Boot Server” on page 107. For information about how to configure the router to operate in server mode, see “Configuring the Router to Operate in Server Mode” on page 111.

The following example shows how to configure the router to operate in client mode:

```
[edit system ntp]
authentication-key 1 type md5 value "$9$EgfcvX7VY4ZEcwgoHjkP5Q3CuREyv87";
boot-server 10.1.1.1;
server 10.1.1.1 key 1 prefer;
trusted-key 1;
```

### **Configuring the Router to Operate in Symmetric Active Mode**

To configure the local router to operate in symmetric active mode, include the **peer** statement at the [edit system ntp] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
peer address <key key-number> <version value> <prefer>;
```

Specify the address of the remote system. You must specify an address, not a hostname.

To include an authentication key in all messages sent to the remote system, include the **key** option. The key corresponds to the key number you specify in the **authentication-key** statement, as described in “Configuring NTP Authentication Keys” on page 112.

By default, the router sends NTP version 4 packets to the remote system. To set the NTP version level to 1, 2 or 3, include the **version** option.

If you configure more than one remote system, you can mark one system preferred by including the **prefer** option:

```
peer address <key key-number> <version value> prefer;
```

### **Configuring the Router to Operate in Broadcast Mode**

To configure the local router to operate in broadcast mode, include the **broadcast** statement at the [edit system ntp] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
broadcast address <key key-number> <version value> <ttl value>;
```

Specify the broadcast address on one of the local networks or a multicast address assigned to NTP. You must specify an address, not a hostname. If the multicast address is used, it must be 224.0.1.1.

To include an authentication key in all messages sent to the remote system, include the **key** option. The key corresponds to the key number you specify in the **authentication-key** statement, as described in “Configuring NTP Authentication Keys” on page 112.

By default, the router sends NTP version 4 packets to the remote system. To set the NTP version level to 1, 2, or 3, include the **version** option.

## Configuring the Router to Operate in Server Mode

In server mode, the router acts as an NTP server for clients when the clients are configured appropriately. The only prerequisite for “server mode” is that the router must be receiving time from another NTP peer or server. No other configuration is necessary on the router.

To configure the local router to operate as an NTP server, include the following statements at the **[edit system ntp]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
authentication-key key-number type type value password;
server address <key key-number> <version value> <prefer>;
trusted-key [ key-numbers ];
```

Specify the address of the system acting as the time server. You must specify an address, not a hostname.

To include an authentication key in all messages sent to the time server, include the **key** option. The key corresponds to the key number you specify in the **authentication-key** statement, as described in “Configuring NTP Authentication Keys” on page 112.

By default, the router sends NTP version 4 packets to the time server. To set the NTP version level to 1, or 2, or 3, include the **version** option.

If you configure more than one time server, you can mark one server preferred by including the **prefer** option.

For information about how to configure trusted keys, see “Configuring NTP Authentication Keys” on page 112. For information about how to configure the router to operate in client mode, see “Configuring the Router to Operate in Client Mode” on page 109.

The following example shows how to configure the router to operate in server mode:

```
[edit system ntp]
authentication-key 1 type md5 value "$9$tXERuBEreWx-wtuLNdboaUjH.T3AtOESe";
server 172.17.27.46 prefer;
trusted-key 1;
```

**Related Topics** ■ NTP Time Server and Time Services Overview on page 108

## Configuring NTP Authentication Keys

---

Time synchronization can be authenticated to ensure that the local router obtains its time services only from known sources. By default, network time synchronization is unauthenticated. The system will synchronize to whatever system appears to have the most accurate time. We strongly encourage you to configure authentication of network time services.

To authenticate other time servers, include the **trusted-key** statement at the **[edit system ntp]** hierarchy level. Only time servers transmitting network time packets that contain one of the specified key numbers and whose key matches the value configured for that key number are eligible to be synchronized to. Other systems can synchronize to the local router without being authenticated.

```
[edit system ntp]
trusted-key [ key-numbers ];
```

Each key can be any 32-bit unsigned integer except 0. Include the **key** option in the **peer**, **server**, or **broadcast** statements to transmit the specified authentication key when transmitting packets. The key is necessary if the remote system has authentication enabled so that it can synchronize to the local system.

To define the authentication keys, include the **authentication-key** statement at the **[edit system ntp]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
authentication-key key-number type value password;
```

*number* is the key number, *type* is the authentication type (only Message Digest 5 [MD5] is supported), and *password* is the password for this key. The key number, type, and password must match on all systems using that particular key for authentication.

## Configuring the Router to Listen for Broadcast Messages Using NTP

---

When you are using NTP, you can configure the local router to listen for broadcast messages on the local network to discover other servers on the same subnet by including the **broadcast-client** statement at the **[edit system ntp]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
broadcast-client;
```

When the router hears a broadcast message for the first time, it measures the nominal network delay using a brief client-server exchange with the remote server. It then enters *broadcast client* mode, in which it listens for, and synchronizes to, succeeding broadcast messages.

To avoid accidental or malicious disruption in this mode, both the local and remote systems must use authentication and the same trusted key and key identifier.



## Configuring the Router to Listen for Multicast Messages Using NTP

---

When you are using NTP, you can configure the local router to listen for multicast messages on the local network to discover other servers on the same subnet by including the `multicast-client` statement at the `[edit system ntp]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system ntp]
multicast-client <address>;
```

When the router hears a multicast message for the first time, it measures the nominal network delay using a brief client-server exchange with the remote server. It then enters *multicast client* mode, in which it listens for, and synchronizes to, succeeding multicast messages.

You can specify one or more IP addresses. (You must specify an address, not a hostname.) If you do, the route joins those multicast groups. If you do not specify any addresses, the software uses 224.0.1.1.

To avoid accidental or malicious disruption in this mode, both the local and remote systems must use authentication and the same trusted key and key identifier.

## Setting a Custom Time Zone on Routers Running JUNOS Software

---

You can update the time zone database information on routers running the JUNOS software, independently of the JUNOS operating system. This feature simplifies time zone management in JUNOS systems by allowing for future unforeseen time zone database adjustments. You can configure your router to use a custom time zone database file that you create to meet your requirements by editing an existing time zone database file.

Tasks for setting a custom time zone are:

1. Importing and Installing Time Zone Files on page 113
2. Configuring a Custom Time Zone on page 114

### Importing and Installing Time Zone Files

To import and install time zone files, follow these steps:

1. Download the time zone files archive and untar them to a temporary directory such as `/var/tmp`:

```
# mkdir -p /var/tmp/tz && cd /var/tmp/tz && rm *
# wget 'ftp://elsie.nci.nih.gov/pub/tzdata*.tar.gz'
# tar xvfz tzdata*.gz
africa
antarctica
asia
australasia
europe
northamerica
southamerica
```

```

pacificnew
etcetera
factory
backward
systemv
solar87
solar88
solar89
iso3166.tab
zone.tab
leapseconds
yearistype.sh

```



**NOTE:** If needed, you can edit the above untarred files to create or modify time zones.

---

2. Select the names of time zone files to compile and feed them to the following script.

For example, to generate northamerica and asia tz files:

```
# /usr/libexec/ui/compile-tz northamerica asia
```

3. Enable the use of the generated tz files using the CLI:

```

[edit]
# set system use-imported-time-zones
[edit]
# set system time-zone ?

```

This should show the newly generated tz files in `/var/db/zoneinfo/`.

4. Set the time zone and commit:

```

[edit]
# set system time-zone <your-time-zone>
# commit

```

5. Verify that the time zone change has taken effect:

```

[edit]
# run show system uptime

```

## Configuring a Custom Time Zone

To use a custom time zone, follow these steps:

1. Download a time zones archive (from a known or designated source) to the router. Compile the time zone archive using the `zic` time zone compiler, which generates `tz` files.
2. Using the CLI, configure the router to enable the use of the generated `tz` files as follows:

```
[edit]  
user@host# set system use-imported-time-zones
```

3. Display the imported time zones (saved in the directory `/var/db/zoneinfo/`):

```
[edit]  
user@host# set system time-zone ?
```

If you do not configure the router to use imported time zones, the JUNOS default time zones are shown (saved in the directory `/usr/share/zoneinfo/`).

**Related Topics** ■ [Modifying the Default Time Zone for a Router Running JUNOS Software on page 105](#)



## Chapter 9

# Configuring System Log Messages

This chapter covers the following topics:

- JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Overview on page 117
- JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Statements on page 117
- JUNOS Software Minimum and Default System Logging Configuration on page 118
- Single-Chassis System Logging Configuration on page 121
- Routing Matrix System Logging Configuration on page 142

## JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Overview

---

The JUNOS software generates system log messages (also called *syslog messages*) to record events that occur on the routing platform, including the following:

- Routine operations, such as creation of an Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) protocol adjacency or a user login into the configuration database
- Failure and error conditions, such as failure to access a configuration file or unexpected closure of a connection to a peer process
- Emergency or critical conditions, such as routing platform power-down due to excessive temperature

Each system log message identifies the JUNOS software process that generated the message and briefly describes the operation or error that occurred. For detailed information about specific system log messages, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.



**NOTE:** This topic describes system log messages for JUNOS software processes and libraries and not the services on a Physical Interface Card (PIC) such as the Adaptive Services PIC. For information about configuring system logging for PIC services, see the *JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

---

## JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Statements

---

To configure the routing platform to log system messages, include the **syslog** statement at the [edit system] hierarchy level:

```

[edit system]
syslog {
  archive {
    files number;
    size size;
    (world-readable | no-world-readable);
  }
  console {
    facility severity;
  }
  file filename {
    facility severity;
    explicit-priority;
    match "regular-expression";
    structured-data {
      brief;
    }
    archive {
      archive-sites {
        site-name;
      }
      files number;
      size size;
      start-time date.time;
      transfer-interval interval;
      (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
  }
  host (hostname | other-routing-engine | scc-master) {
    facility severity;
    explicit-priority;
    facility-override facility;
    log-prefix string
    match "regular-expression";
  }
  source-address source-address;
  time-format (year | millisecond | year millisecond);
  user (username | *) {
    facility severity;
    match "regular-expression";
  }
}

```

## JUNOS Software Minimum and Default System Logging Configuration

---

For information about the minimum and default system log settings on routing platforms that run the JUNOS software, see the following topics:

- JUNOS Software Minimum System Logging Configuration on page 119
- JUNOS Software Default System Log Settings on page 119
- JUNOS Software Platform-Specific Default System Log Messages on page 121

## JUNOS Software Minimum System Logging Configuration

To record or view system log messages, you must include the `syslog` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level. Specify at least one destination for the messages, as described in Table 14 on page 119. For more information about the configuration statements, see “Single-Chassis System Logging Configuration Overview” on page 122.

**Table 14: Minimum Configuration Statements for System Logging**

Destination	Minimum Configuration Statements
File	<pre>[edit system syslog] file filename {     facility severity; }</pre>
Terminal session of one, several, or all users	<pre>[edit system syslog] user (username   *) {     facility severity; }</pre>
Routing platform console	<pre>[edit system syslog] console {     facility severity; }</pre>
Remote machine or the other Routing Engine on the routing platform	<pre>[edit system syslog] host (hostname   other-routing-engine) {     facility severity; }</pre>

## JUNOS Software Default System Log Settings

Table 15 on page 120 summarizes the default system log settings that apply to all platforms that run the JUNOS software, and specifies which statement to include in the configuration to override the default value.

**Table 15: Default System Logging Settings**

Setting	Default	Overriding Statement	Instructions
Alternative facility for message forwarded to a remote machine	For change-log: local6  For conflict-log: local5  For dfc: local1  For firewall: local3  For interactive-commands: local7  For pfe: local4	[edit system syslog] host <i>hostname</i> { facility-override <i>facility</i> ; }	“Changing the Alternative Facility Name for Remote System Log Messages” on page 129
Format of messages logged to a file	Standard JUNOS format, based on UNIX format	[edit system syslog] file <i>filename</i> { structured-data; }	“Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format” on page 126
Maximum number of files in the archived set	10	[edit system syslog] archive { files <i>number</i> ; } file <i>filename</i> { archive { files <i>number</i> ; } }	“Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133
Maximum size of log file	J-series: 128 kilobytes (KB)  M-series, MX-series, and T-series: 1 megabyte (MB)  TX Matrix: 10 MB	[edit system syslog] archive { size <i>size</i> ; } file <i>filename</i> { archive { size <i>size</i> ; } }	“Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133
Timestamp format	Month, date, hour, minute, second  For example: Aug 21 12:36:30	[edit system syslog] time-format <i>format</i> ;	“Including the Year or Millisecond in Timestamps” on page 137
Users who can read log files	root user and users with the JUNOS maintenance permission	[edit system syslog] archive { world-readable; } file <i>filename</i> { archive { world-readable; } }	“Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133



## JUNOS Software Platform-Specific Default System Log Messages

The following messages are generated by default on specific platforms. To view either type of message, you must configure at least one destination for messages as described in “JUNOS Software Minimum System Logging Configuration” on page 119.

- On J-series platforms, a message is logged when a process running in the kernel consumes 500 or more consecutive milliseconds of CPU time.
- To log the kernel process message on an M-series, MX-series, or T-series platform, include the `kernel info` statement at the appropriate hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog]
(console | file filename | host destination | user username) {
  kernel info;
}
```

- The master Routing Engine on each T640 routing node in a routing matrix forwards to the master Routing Engine on the TX Matrix platform all messages with a severity of `info` and higher. This is equivalent to the following configuration statement included on the TX Matrix platform:

```
[edit system syslog]
host scc-master {
  any info;
}
```

## Single-Chassis System Logging Configuration

---

This section includes the following topics:

- Single-Chassis System Logging Configuration Overview on page 122
- Specifying the Facility and Severity of Messages to Include in the Log on page 123
- JUNOS System Logging Facilities and Message Severity Levels on page 124
- Directing System Log Messages to a Log File on page 125
- Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format on page 126
- Directing System Log Messages to a User Terminal on page 126
- Directing System Log Messages to the Console on page 127
- System Logging on a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine on page 127
- Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties on page 133
- Including Priority Information in System Log Messages on page 135
- System Log Facility Codes and Numerical Codes Reported in Priority Information on page 136
- Including the Year or Millisecond in Timestamps on page 137
- Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages on page 138

- JUNOS System Log Regular Expression Operators for the match Statement on page 139
- Disabling the System Logging of a Facility on page 140
- Examples: Configuring System Logging on page 141

## Single-Chassis System Logging Configuration Overview

The JUNOS system logging utility is similar to the UNIX **syslogd** utility. This section describes how to configure system logging for a single-chassis system that runs the JUNOS software.

System logging configuration for the JUNOS-FIPS software and for Juniper Networks routing platforms in a Common Criteria environment is the same as for the JUNOS software. For more information, see the *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*.

For information about configuring system logging for a routing matrix, see “Configuring System Logging for a Routing Matrix” on page 143.

Each system log message belongs to a *facility*, which groups together related messages. Each message is also preassigned a *severity level*, which indicates how seriously the triggering event affects routing platform functions. You always specify the facility and severity of the messages to include in the log. For more information, see “Specifying the Facility and Severity of Messages to Include in the Log” on page 123.

You direct messages to one or more destinations by including the appropriate statement at the **[edit system syslog]** hierarchy level:

- To a named file in a local file system, by including the **file** statement. See “Directing System Log Messages to a Log File” on page 125.
- To the terminal session of one or more specific users (or all users) when they are logged in to the routing platform, by including the **user** statement. See “Directing System Log Messages to a User Terminal” on page 126.
- To the routing platform console, by including the **console** statement. See “Directing System Log Messages to the Console” on page 127.
- To a remote machine that is running the **syslogd** utility or to the other Routing Engine on the routing platform, by including the **host** statement. See “Directing System Log Messages to a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine” on page 127.

By default, messages are logged in a standard format, which is based on a UNIX system log format; for detailed information about message formatting, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*. You can alter the content and format of logged messages in the following ways:

- In JUNOS Release 8.3 and later, you can log messages to a file in structured-data format instead of the standard JUNOS format. Structured-data format provides more information without adding significant length, and makes it easier for automated applications to extract information from the message. For more information, see “Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format” on page 126.
- A message’s facility and severity level are together referred to as its *priority*. By default, the standard JUNOS format for messages does not include priority information (structured-data format includes a priority code by default.) To include priority information in standard-format messages directed to a file or a remote destination, include the **explicit-priority** statement. For more information, see “Including Priority Information in System Log Messages” on page 135.
- By default, the standard JUNOS format for messages specifies the month, date, hour, minute, and second when the message was logged. You can modify the timestamp on standard-format system log messages to include the year, the millisecond, or both. (Structured-data format specifies the year and millisecond by default.) For more information, see “Including the Year or Millisecond in Timestamps” on page 137.
- When directing messages to a remote machine, you can specify the IP address that is reported in messages as their source. You can also configure features that make it easier to separate messages generated by the JUNOS software or messages generated on particular routing platforms. For more information, see “Directing System Log Messages to a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine” on page 127.
- The predefined facilities group together related messages, but you can also use regular expressions to specify more exactly which messages from a facility are logged to a file, a user terminal, or a remote destination. For more information, see “Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages” on page 138.

## **Specifying the Facility and Severity of Messages to Include in the Log**

Each system log message belongs to a *facility*, which is a group of messages that are either generated by the same software process or concern a similar condition or activity (such as authentication attempts). Each message is also preassigned a *severity level*, which indicates how seriously the triggering event affects routing platform functions.

When you configure logging for a facility and destination, you specify a severity level for each facility. Messages from the facility that are rated at that level or higher are logged to the destination:

```
[edit system syslog]
(console | file filename | host destination | user username) {
    facility severity;
}
```

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS System Logging Facilities and Message Severity Levels on page 124

## ***JUNOS System Logging Facilities and Message Severity Levels***

Table 16 on page 124 lists the JUNOS system logging facilities that you can specify in configuration statements at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level.

**Table 16: JUNOS System Logging Facilities**

Facility	Type of Event or Error
any	All (messages from all facilities)
authorization	Authentication and authorization attempts
change-log	Changes to the JUNOS configuration
conflict-log	Specified configuration is invalid on the routing platform type
daemon	Actions performed or errors encountered by system processes
dfc	Events related to dynamic flow capture
firewall	Packet filtering actions performed by a firewall filter
ftp	Actions performed or errors encountered by the FTP process
interactive-commands	Commands issued at the JUNOS command-line interface (CLI) prompt or by a client application such as a JUNOScript or NETCONF client
kernel	Actions performed or errors encountered by the JUNOS kernel
pfe	Actions performed or errors encountered by the Packet Forwarding Engine
user	Actions performed or errors encountered by user-space processes

Table 17 on page 124 lists the severity levels that you can specify in configuration statements at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level. The levels from **emergency** through **info** are in order from highest severity (greatest effect on functioning) to lowest.

Unlike the other severity levels, the **none** level disables logging of a facility instead of indicating how seriously a triggering event affects routing functions. For more information, see “Disabling the System Logging of a Facility” on page 140.

**Table 17: System Log Message Severity Levels**

Severity Level	Description
any	Includes all severity levels

**Table 17: System Log Message Severity Levels** (*continued*)

Severity Level	Description
none	Disables logging of the associated facility to a destination
emergency	System panic or other condition that causes the routing platform to stop functioning
alert	Conditions that require immediate correction, such as a corrupted system database
critical	Critical conditions, such as hard errors
error	Error conditions that generally have less serious consequences than errors in the emergency, alert, and critical levels
warning	Conditions that warrant monitoring
notice	Conditions that are not errors but might warrant special handling
info	Events or nonerror conditions of interest

### Directing System Log Messages to a Log File

To direct system log messages to a file in the `/var/log` directory of the local Routing Engine, include the `file` statement at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog]
file filename {
    facility severity;
    explicit-priority;
    match "regular-expression";
    structured-data {
        brief;
    }
    archive {
        files number;
        size size;
        (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
}
```

For the list of facilities and severity levels, see “Specifying the Facility and Severity of Messages to Include in the Log” on page 123.

To prevent log files from growing too large, the JUNOS system logging utility by default writes messages to a sequence of files of a defined size. By including the `archive` statement, you can configure the number of files, their maximum size, and who can read them, for either all log files or a certain log file. For more information, see “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.

For information about the following statements, see the indicated sections:

- **explicit-priority**—See “Including Priority Information in System Log Messages” on page 135
- **match**—See “Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages” on page 138
- **structured-data**—See “Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format” on page 126

## Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format

In JUNOS Release 8.3 and later, you can log messages to a file in structured-data format instead of the standard JUNOS format. Structured-data format provides more information without adding significant length, and makes it easier for automated applications to extract information from a message.

The structured-data format complies with Internet draft draft-ietf-syslog-protocol-23, *The syslog Protocol*, which at the time of this writing is accessible at <http://tools.ietf.org/html/draft-ietf-syslog-protocol-23>. The draft establishes a standard message format regardless of the source or transport protocol for logged messages.

To output messages to a file in structured-data format, include the **structured-data** statement at the [edit system syslog file *filename*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog file filename]
  facility severity;
  structured-data {
    brief;
  }
```

The optional **brief** statement suppresses the English-language text that appears by default at the end of a message to describe the error or event. For information about the fields in a structured-data format message, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.

The structured format is used for all messages logged to the file that are generated by a JUNOS process or software library.



**NOTE:** If you include either or both of the **explicit-priority** and **time-format** statements along with the **structured-data** statement, they are ignored. These statements apply to the standard JUNOS system log format, not to structured-data format.

---

## Directing System Log Messages to a User Terminal

To direct system log messages to the terminal session of one or more specific users (or all users) when they are logged in to the local Routing Engine, include the **user** statement at the [edit system syslog] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog]
  user (username | *) {
    facility severity;
```

```
    match "regular-expression";
}
```

Specify one or more JUNOS usernames, separating multiple values with spaces, or use the asterisk (\*) to indicate all users who are logged in to the local Routing Engine.

For the list of logging facilities and severity levels, see “Specifying the Facility and Severity of Messages to Include in the Log” on page 123. For information about the `match` statement, see “Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages” on page 138.

## Directing System Log Messages to the Console

To direct system log messages to the console of the local Routing Engine, include the `console` statement at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog]
console {
    facility severity;
}
```

For the list of logging facilities and severity levels, see “Specifying the Facility and Severity of Messages to Include in the Log” on page 123.

## System Logging on a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine

This section includes the following topics:

- Directing System Log Messages to a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine on page 127
- Specifying an Alternative Source Address for System Log Messages on page 128
- Changing the Alternative Facility Name for Remote System Log Messages on page 129
- System Log Default Facilities for Messages Directed to a Remote Destination on page 131
- JUNOS System Log Alternate Facilities for Remote Logging on page 131
- Examples: Assigning an Alternative Facility on page 132
- Adding a Text String to System Log Messages on page 133

### Directing System Log Messages to a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine

To direct system log messages to a remote machine or to the other Routing Engine on the routing platform, include the `host` statement at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog]
host (hostname | other-routing-engine) {
    facility severity;
    explicit-priority;
```

```

    facility-override facility;
    log-prefix string;
    match "regular-expression";
}
source-address source-address;

```

To direct system log messages to a remote machine, include the **host** *hostname* statement to specify the remote machine's IP version 4 (IPv4) address, IP version 6 (IPv6) address, or fully qualified hostname. The remote machine must be running the standard **syslogd** utility. We do not recommend directing messages to another Juniper Networks routing platform. In each system log message directed to the remote machine, the hostname of the local Routing Engine appears after the timestamp to indicate that it is the source for the message.

To direct system log messages to the other Routing Engine on a routing platform with two Routing Engines installed and operational, include the **host other-routing-engine** statement. The statement is not automatically reciprocal, so you must include it in each Routing Engine's configuration if you want them to direct messages to each other. In each message directed to the other Routing Engine, the string **re0** or **re1** appears after the timestamp to indicate the source for the message.

For the list of logging facilities and severity levels to configure under the **host** statement, see "Specifying the Facility and Severity of Messages to Include in the Log" on page 123.

To record facility and severity level information in each message, include the **explicit-priority** statement. For more information, see "Including Priority Information in System Log Messages" on page 135.

For information about the **match** statement, see "Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages" on page 138.

When directing messages to remote machines, you can include the **source-address** statement to specify the IP address of the routing platform that is reported in the messages as their source. In each **host** statement, you can also include the **facility-override** statement to assign an alternative facility and the **log-prefix** statement to add a string to each message. For more information, see the following sections:

### Specifying an Alternative Source Address for System Log Messages

To specify the routing platform that is reported in system log messages as their source when they are directed to a remote machine, include the **source-address** statement at the **[edit system syslog]** hierarchy level:

```

[edit system syslog]
source-address source-address;

```

**source-address** is a valid IPv4 or IPv6 address configured on one of the routing platform interfaces. The address is reported in the messages directed to all remote machines specified in **host** *hostname* statements at the **[edit system syslog]** hierarchy level, but not in messages directed to the other Routing Engine.



## Changing the Alternative Facility Name for Remote System Log Messages

Some facilities assigned to messages logged on the local routing platform have the JUNOS software-specific names (see Table 16 on page 124). In the recommended configuration, a remote machine designated at the `[edit system syslog host hostname]` hierarchy level is not a Juniper Networks routing platform, so its `syslogd` utility cannot interpret the JUNOS software-specific names. To enable the standard `syslogd` utility to handle messages from these facilities when messages are directed to a remote machine, a standard `localX` facility name is used instead of the JUNOS software-specific facility name.

Table 18 on page 131 lists the default alternative facility name next to the JUNOS software-specific facility name it is used for.

The `syslogd` utility on a remote machine handles all messages that belong to a facility in the same way, regardless of the source of the message (the Juniper Networks routing platform or the remote machine itself). For example, the following statements in the configuration of the routing platform called `local-router` direct messages from the `authorization` facility to the remote machine `monitor.mycompany.com`:

```
[edit system syslog]
host monitor.mycompany.com {
  authorization info;
}
```

The default alternative facility for the local `authorization` facility is also `authorization`. If the `syslogd` utility on `monitor` is configured to write messages belonging to the `authorization` facility to the file `/var/log/auth-attempts`, the file contains both the messages generated when users log in to `local-router` and the messages generated when users log in to `monitor`. Although the name of the source machine appears in each system log message, the mixing of messages from multiple machines can make it more difficult to analyze the contents of the `auth-attempts` file.

To make it easier to separate the messages from each source, you can assign an alternative facility to all messages generated on `local-router` when they are directed to `monitor`. You can then configure the `syslogd` utility on `monitor` to write messages with the alternative facility to a different file from messages generated on `monitor` itself.

To change the facility used for all messages directed to a remote machine, include the `facility-override` statement at the `[edit system syslog host hostname]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog host hostname]
  facility severity;
  facility-override facility;
```

In general, it makes sense to specify an alternative facility that is not already in use on the remote machine, such as one of the `localX` facilities. On the remote machine, you must also configure the `syslogd` utility to handle the messages in the desired manner.

Table 19 on page 131 lists the facilities that you can specify in the **facility-override** statement.

We do not recommend including the **facility-override** statement at the **[edit system syslog host other-routing-engine]** hierarchy level. It is not necessary to use alternative facility names when directing messages to the other Routing Engine, because its JUNOS system logging utility can interpret the JUNOS software-specific names.

The following example shows how to log all messages generated on the local routing platform at the **error** level or higher to the **local0** facility on the remote machine called **monitor.mycompany.com**:

```
[edit system syslog]
host monitor.mycompany.com {
  any error;
  facility-override local0;
}
```

The following example shows how to configure routing platforms located in California and routing platforms located in New York to send messages to a single remote machine called **central-logger.mycompany.com**. The messages from California are assigned alternative facility **local0** and the messages from New York are assigned to alternative facility **local2**.

- Configure California routing platforms to aggregate messages in the **local0** facility:

```
[edit system syslog]
host central-logger.mycompany.com {
  change-log info;
  facility-override local0;
}
```

- Configure New York routing platforms to aggregate messages in the **local2** facility:

```
[edit system syslog]
host central-logger.mycompany.com {
  change-log info;
  facility-override local2;
}
```

On **central-logger**, you can then configure the system logging utility to write messages from the **local0** facility to the file **california-config** and the messages from the **local2** facility to the file **new-york-config**.

#### Related Topics

- Table 18 on page 131
- JUNOS System Log Alternate Facilities for Remote Logging on page 131

## System Log Default Facilities for Messages Directed to a Remote Destination

Table 18 on page 131 lists the default alternative facility name next to the JUNOS software-specific facility name it is used for. For facilities that are not listed, the default alternative name is the same as the local facility names.

**Table 18: Default Facilities for Messages Directed to a Remote Destination**

JUNOS Software-Specific Local Facility	Default Facility When Directed to Remote Destination
change-log	local6
conflict-log	local5
dfc	local1
firewall	local3
interactive-commands	local7
pfe	local4

## JUNOS System Log Alternate Facilities for Remote Logging

Table 19 on page 131 lists the facilities that you can specify in the facility-override statement.

**Table 19: Facilities for the facility-override Statement**

Facility	Description
authorization	Authentication and authorization attempts
daemon	Actions performed or errors encountered by system processes
ftp	Actions performed or errors encountered by the FTP process
kernel	Actions performed or errors encountered by the JUNOS kernel
local0	Local facility number 0
local1	Local facility number 1
local2	Local facility number 2
local3	Local facility number 3
local4	Local facility number 4
local5	Local facility number 5

**Table 19: Facilities for the facility-override Statement** *(continued)*

Facility	Description
local6	Local facility number 6
local7	Local facility number 7
user	Actions performed or errors encountered by user-space processes

We do not recommend including the `facility-override` statement at the `[edit system syslog host other-routing-engine]` hierarchy level. It is not necessary to use alternative facility names when directing messages to the other Routing Engine, because its JUNOS system logging utility can interpret the JUNOS software-specific names.

### Examples: Assigning an Alternative Facility

The following example shows how to configure the logging of all messages generated on the local routing platform at the error level or higher to the `local0` facility on the remote machine called `monitor.mycompany.com`:

```
[edit system syslog]
host monitor.mycompany.com {
  any error;
  facility-override local0;
}
```

Configure routing platforms located in and routing platforms located in New York to send messages to a single remote machine called `central-logger.mycompany.com`. The messages from California are assigned alternative facility `local0` and the messages from New York are assigned to alternative facility `local2`.

- Configure California routing platforms to aggregate messages in the `local0` facility:

```
[edit system syslog]
host central-logger.mycompany.com {
  change-log info;
  facility-override local0;
}
```

- Configure New York routing platforms to aggregate messages in the `local2` facility:

```
[edit system syslog]
host central-logger.mycompany.com {
  change-log info;
  facility-override local2;
}
```

On `central-logger`, you can then configure the system logging utility to write messages from the `local0` facility to the file `california-config` and the messages from the `local2` facility to the file `new-york-config`.

## Adding a Text String to System Log Messages

To add a text string to every system log message directed to a remote machine or to the other Routing Engine, include the `log-prefix` statement at the `[edit system syslog host]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog host (hostname | other-routing-engine)]
  facility severity;
  log-prefix string;
```

The string can contain any alphanumeric or special character except the equal sign ( = ) and the colon ( : ). It also cannot include the space character; do not enclose the string in quotation marks ( " ") in an attempt to include spaces in it.

The JUNOS system logging utility automatically appends a colon and a space to the specified string when the system log messages are written to the log. The string is inserted after the identifier for the Routing Engine that generated the message.

The following example shows how to add the string **M120** to all messages to indicate that the router is an M120 router, and direct the messages to the remote machine `hardware-logger.mycompany.com`:

```
[edit system syslog]
  host hardware-logger.mycompany.com {
    any info;
    log-prefix M120;
  }
```

When these configuration statements are included on an M120 router called `origin1`, a message in the system log on `hardware-logger.mycompany.com` looks like the following:

```
Mar 9 17:33:23 origin1 M120: mgd[477]: UI_CMDLINE_READ_LINE: user 'root',
  command 'run show version'
```

## Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties

To prevent log files from growing too large, the JUNOS system logging utility by default writes messages to a sequence of files of a defined size. The files in the sequence are referred to as *archive* files to distinguish them from the *active* file to which messages are currently being written. The default maximum size depends on the platform type:

- 128 kilobytes (KB) for J-series Services Routers
- 1 (MB) for M-series, MX-series, and T-series routing platforms
- 10 MB for TX Matrix platforms

When an active log file called *logfile* reaches the maximum size, the logging utility closes the file, compresses it, and names the compressed archive file *logfile.0.gz*. The logging utility then opens and writes to a new active file called *logfile*. When the new *logfile* reaches the configured maximum size, *logfile.0.gz* is renamed *logfile.1.gz*, and

the new *logfile* is closed, compressed, and renamed *logfile.0.gz*. By default, the logging utility creates up to 10 archive files in this manner. When the maximum number of archive files is reached, each time the active file reaches the maximum size the contents of the oldest archive file are overwritten by the next oldest file. The logging utility by default also limits the users who can read log files to the *root* user and users who have the JUNOS *maintenance* permission.

You can include the *archive* statement to change the maximum size of each file, how many archive files are created, and who can read log files.

To configure values that apply to all log files, include the *archive* statement at the [edit system syslog] hierarchy level:

```
archive size size files number (world-readable | no-world-readable);
```

To configure values that apply to a specific log file, include the *archive* statement at the [edit system syslog file *filename*] hierarchy level:

```
archive {
  archive-sites {
    site-name <password password>;
  }
  files number size size start-time date.time transfer-interval interval (world-readable
    | no-world-readable);
}
```

*archive-sites site-name* specifies a list of archive sites that you want to use for storing files. The *site-name* value is any valid FTP URL to a destination. If more than one site name is configured, a list of archive sites for the system log files is created. When a file is archived, the router attempts to transfer the file to the first URL in the list, moving to the next site only if the transfer does not succeed. The log file is stored at the archive site with the specified log file name. For information about how to specify valid FTP URLs, see “Format for Specifying Filenames and URLs in JUNOS CLI Commands” on page 36.

*files number* specifies the number of files to create before the oldest file is overwritten. The value can be from 1 through 1000.

*size size* specifies the maximum size of each file. The value can be from 64 KB (64k) through 1 gigabyte (1g); to represent megabytes, use the letter m after the integer. There is no space between the digits and the k, m, or g units letter.

*start-time date.time* defines the day and time at which you want the file transfer to occur. The format for *date.time* is yyyy-mm-dd.hh:mm. This is a one-time file transfer of the active log file to one of the specified archive sites.

*transfer-interval interval* defines the amount of time the current log file remains open (even if it has not reached the maximum possible size) and receives new statistics before it is closed and transferred to an archive site. This interval value can be from 5 through 2880 minutes.

*world-readable* enables all users to read log files. To restore the default permissions, include the *no-world-readable* statement.

## Including Priority Information in System Log Messages

A message's facility and severity level are together referred to as its *priority*. By default, messages logged in the standard JUNOS format do not include information about priority. To include priority information in standard-format messages directed to a file, include the **explicit-priority** statement at the `[edit system syslog file filename]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog file filename]
  facility severity;
  explicit-priority;
```



**NOTE:** Messages logged in structured-data format include priority information by default (structured-data format is available in JUNOS Release 8.3 and later and for file destinations only). If you include the **structured-data** statement at the `[edit system syslog file filename]` hierarchy level along with the **explicit-priority** statement, the **explicit-priority** statement is ignored and messages are logged in structured-data format.

For information about the **structured-data** statement, see “Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format” on page 126. For information about the contents of a structured-data message, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.

To include priority information in messages directed to a remote machine or the other Routing Engine, include the **explicit-priority** statement at the `[edit system syslog host (hostname | other-routing-engine)]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog host (hostname | other-routing-engine)]
  facility severity;
  explicit-priority;
```

The priority recorded in a message always indicates the original, local facility name. If the **facility-override** statement is included for messages directed to a remote destination, the JUNOS system logging utility still uses the alternative facility name for the messages themselves when directing them to the remote destination. For more information, see “Changing the Alternative Facility Name for Remote System Log Messages” on page 129.

When the **explicit-priority** statement is included, the JUNOS logging utility prepends codes for the facility name and severity level to the message tag name, if the message has one:

```
FACILITY-severity[-TAG]
```

(The tag is a unique identifier assigned to some JUNOS system log messages; for more information, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.)

In the following example, the **CHASSISD\_PARSE\_COMPLETE** message belongs to the **daemon** facility and is assigned severity **info** (6):

```
Aug 21 12:36:30 router1 chassisd[522]: %DAEMON-6-CHASSISD_PARSE_COMPLETE:
Using new configuration
```

When the `explicit-priority` statement is not included, the priority does not appear in the message:

```
Aug 21 12:36:30 router1 chassisd[522]: CHASSISD_PARSE_COMPLETE: Using new
configuration
```

For more information about message formatting, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.

## System Log Facility Codes and Numerical Codes Reported in Priority Information

Table 20 on page 136 lists the facility codes that can appear in system log messages and maps them to facility names.



**NOTE:** If the second column in Table 20 on page 136 does not include the JUNOS facility name for a code, the facility cannot be included in a statement at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level. The JUNOS software might use the facilities in Table 20 on page 136—and others that are not listed—when reporting on internal operations.

**Table 20: Facility Codes Reported in Priority Information**

Code	JUNOS Facility Name	Type of Event or Error
AUTH	authorization	Authentication and authorization attempts
AUTHPRIV		Authentication and authorization attempts that can be viewed by superusers only
CHANGE	change-log	Changes to the JUNOS configuration
CONFLICT	conflict-log	Specified configuration is invalid on the routing platform type
CONSOLE		Messages written to <code>/dev/console</code> by the kernel console output <code>r</code>
CRON		Actions performed or errors encountered by the cron process
DAEMON	daemon	Actions performed or errors encountered by system processes
DFC	dfc	Actions performed or errors encountered by the dynamic flow capture process
FIREWALL	firewall	Packet filtering actions performed by a firewall filter
FTP	ftp	Actions performed or errors encountered by the FTP process
INTERACT	interactive-commands	Commands issued at the JUNOS CLI prompt or invoked by a client application such as a JUNOScript or NETCONF client



**Table 20: Facility Codes Reported in Priority Information** (*continued*)

Code	JUNOS Facility Name	Type of Event or Error
KERN	kernel	Actions performed or errors encountered by the JUNOS kernel
NTP		Actions performed or errors encountered by the Network Time Protocol (NTP)
PFE	pfe	Actions performed or errors encountered by the Packet Forwarding Engine
SYSLOG		Actions performed or errors encountered by the JUNOS system logging utility
USER	user	Actions performed or errors encountered by user-space processes

Table 21 on page 137 lists the numerical severity codes that can appear in system log messages and maps them to severity levels.

**Table 21: Numerical Codes for Severity Levels Reported in Priority Information**

Numerical Code	Severity Level	Description
0	emergency	System panic or other condition that causes the routing platform to stop functioning
1	alert	Conditions that require immediate correction, such as a corrupted system database
2	critical	Critical conditions, such as hard errors
3	error	Error conditions that generally have less serious consequences than errors in the emergency, alert, and critical levels
4	warning	Conditions that warrant monitoring
5	notice	Conditions that are not errors but might warrant special handling
6	info	Events or nonerror conditions of interest
7	debug	Software debugging messages (these appear only if a technical support representative has instructed you to configure this severity level)

### ***Including the Year or Millisecond in Timestamps***

By default, the timestamp recorded in a standard-format system log message specifies the month, date, hour, minute, and second when the message was logged, as in the following example:

Aug 21 12:36:30

To include the year, the millisecond, or both in the timestamp, include the **time-format** statement at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system syslog]
time-format (year | millisecond | year millisecond);
```

The modified timestamp is used in messages directed to each destination configured by a **file**, **console**, or **user** statement at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level, but not to destinations configured by a **host** statement.

The following example illustrates the format for a timestamp that includes both the millisecond (401) and the year (2006):

Aug 21 12:36:30.401 2006



**NOTE:** Messages logged in structured-data format (available in JUNOS Release 8.3 and later for file destinations) include the year and millisecond by default. If you include the structured-data statement at the `[edit system syslog file filename]` hierarchy level along with the **time-format** statement, the **time-format** statement is ignored and messages are logged in structured-data format.

For information about the **structured-data** statement, see “Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format” on page 126. For information about the contents of a structured-data message, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.

---

## Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages

The predefined facilities group together related messages, but you can also use regular expression matching to specify more exactly which messages from a facility are logged to a file, a user terminal, or a remote destination.

To specify the text string that must (or must not) appear in a message for the message to be logged to a destination, include the **match** statement and specify the regular expression which the text string must match:

```
match "regular-expression";
```

You can include this statement at the following hierarchy levels:

- `[edit system syslog file filename]` (for a file)
- `[edit system syslog user (username | *)]` (for the terminal session of one or all users)
- `[edit system syslog host (hostname | other-routing-engine)]` (for a remote destination)

In specifying the regular expression, use the notation defined in POSIX Standard 1003.2 for extended (modern) UNIX regular expressions. Explaining regular expression syntax is beyond the scope of this document, but POSIX standards are

available from the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE, <http://www.ieee.org>).

Table 22 on page 139 specifies which character or characters are matched by some of the regular expression operators that you can use in the **match** statement. In the descriptions, the term *term* refers to either a single alphanumeric character or a set of characters enclosed in square brackets, parentheses, or braces.



**NOTE:** The match statement is not case-sensitive.

The following example shows how to filter messages that belong to the **interactive-commands** facility, directing those that include the string **configure** to the terminal of the **root** user:

```
[edit system syslog]
user root {
  interactive-commands any;
  match ".*configure.*";
}
```

Messages like the following appear on the **root** user's terminal when a user issues a **configure** command to enter configuration mode:

```
timestamp router-name mgd[PID]: UI_CMDLINE_READ_LINE: User 'user', command
'configure private'
```

The following example shows how to filter messages that belong to the **daemon** facility and have severity **error** or higher, directing them to the file **/var/log/process-errors**. Omit messages generated by the SNMP process (**snmpd**), instead directing them to the file **/var/log/snmpd-errors**:

```
[edit system syslog]
file process-errors {
  daemon error;
  match "!(.*snmpd.*)";
}
file snmpd-errors {
  daemon error;
  match ".*snmpd.*";
}
```

**Related Topics** ■ JUNOS System Log Regular Expression Operators for the match Statement on page 139

## JUNOS System Log Regular Expression Operators for the match Statement

**Table 22: Regular Expression Operators for the match Statement**

Operator	Matches
.	One instance of any character except the space.

**Table 22: Regular Expression Operators for the match Statement** (*continued*)

Operator	Matches
* (asterisk)	Zero or more instances of the immediately preceding term.
+ (plus sign)	One or more instances of the immediately preceding term.
? (question mark)	Zero or one instance of the immediately preceding term.
(pipe)	One of the terms that appear on either side of the pipe operator.
! (exclamation point)	Any string except the one specified by the expression, when the exclamation point appears at the start of the expression. Use of the exclamation point is JUNOS software-specific.
^ (caret)	The start of a line, when the caret appears outside square brackets.  One instance of any character that does not follow it within square brackets, when the caret is the first character inside square brackets.
\$ (dollar sign)	The end of a line.
[ ] (paired square brackets)	One instance of one of the enclosed alphanumeric characters. To indicate a range of characters, use a hyphen ( - ) to separate the beginning and ending characters of the range. For example, [a-z0-9] matches any letter or number.
( ) (paired parentheses)	One instance of the evaluated value of the enclosed term. Parentheses are used to indicate the order of evaluation in the regular expression.

## Disabling the System Logging of a Facility

To disable the logging of messages that belong to a particular facility, include the **facility none** statement in the configuration. This statement is useful when, for example, you want to log messages that have the same severity level and belong to all but a few facilities. Instead of including a statement for each facility you want to log, you can include the **any severity** statement and then a **facility none** statement for each facility that you do not want to log. For example, the following logs all messages at the **error** level or higher to the console, except for messages from the **daemon** and **kernel** facilities. Messages from those facilities are logged to the file `>/var/log/internals` instead:

```
[edit system syslog]
console {
  any error;
  daemon none;
  kernel none;
}
file internals {
  daemon info;
  kernel info;
}
```

## Examples: Configuring System Logging

The following example shows how to configure the logging of messages about all commands entered by users at the CLI prompt or invoked by client applications such as JUNOScript or NETCONF client applications, and all authentication or authorization attempts, both to the file `cli-commands` and to the terminal of any user who is logged in:

```
[edit system]
syslog {
  file cli-commands {
    interactive-commands info;
    authorization info;
  }
  user * {
    interactive-commands info;
    authorization info;
  }
}
```

The following example shows how to configure the logging of all changes in the state of alarms to the file `/var/log/alarms`:

```
[edit system]
syslog {
  file alarms {
    kernel warning;
  }
}
```

The following example shows how to configure the handling of messages of various types, as described in the comments. Information is logged to two files, to the terminal of user `alex`, to a remote machine, and to the console:

```
[edit system]
syslog {
  /* write all security-related messages to file /var/log/security */
  file security {
    authorization info;
    interactive-commands info;
  }
  /* write messages about potential problems to file /var/log/messages: */
  /* messages from "authorization" facility at level "notice" and above, */
  /* messages from all other facilities at level "warning" and above */
  file messages {
    authorization notice;
    any warning;
  }
  /* write all messages at level "critical" and above to terminal of user "alex" if */
  /* that user is logged in */
  user alex {
    any critical;
  }
  /* write all messages from the "daemon" facility at level "info" and above, and */
}
```

```

/* messages from all other facilities at level "warning" and above, to the */
/* machine monitor.mycompany.com */
host monitor.mycompany.com {
    daemon info;
    any warning;
}
/* write all messages at level "error" and above to the system console */
console {
    any error;
}
}

```

The following example shows how to configure the handling of messages generated when users issue JUNOS CLI commands, by specifying the `interactive-commands` facility at the following severity levels:

- **info**—Logs a message when users issue any command at the CLI operational or configuration mode prompt. The example writes the messages to the file `/var/log/user-actions`.
- **notice**—Logs a message when users issue the configuration mode commands `rollback` and `commit`. The example writes the messages to the terminal of user `philip`.
- **warning**—Logs a message when users issue a command that restarts a software process. The example writes the messages to the console.

```

[edit system]
syslog {
    file user-actions {
        interactive-commands info;
    }
    user philip {
        interactive-commands notice;
    }
    console {
        interactive-commands warning;
    }
}

```

## Routing Matrix System Logging Configuration

This section explains how to configure system logging for the T640 Internet routing nodes and TX Matrix platform in a routing matrix. It assumes you are familiar with system logging for single-chassis systems, as described in “Single-Chassis System Logging Configuration Overview” on page 122. For more information about routing matrixes, see *TX Matrix Platform Hardware Guide*.

- Configuring System Logging for a Routing Matrix on page 143
- Configuring Message Forwarding in the Routing Matrix on page 144
- Impact of Different Local and Forwarded Severity Levels on System Log Messages on page 145
- Configuring Optional Features for Forwarded Messages on page 147

- Directing Messages to a Remote Destination from the Routing Matrix on page 149
- Configuring System Logging Differently on Each Platform on page 150

## Configuring System Logging for a Routing Matrix

To configure system logging for all platforms in a routing matrix, include the `syslog` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level on the TX Matrix platform. The `syslog` statement applies to every platform in the routing matrix.

```
[edit system]
syslog {
  archive {
    files number;
    size size;
    (world-readable | no-world-readable);
  }
  console {
    facility severity;
  }
  file filename {
    facility severity;
    explicit-priority;
    match "regular-expression";
    structured-data {
      brief;
    }
    archive {
      files number;
      size size;
      (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
  }
}
host (hostname | other-routing-engine | scc-master) {
  facility severity;
  explicit-priority;
  facility-override facility;
  log-prefix string;
  match "regular-expression";
}
source-address source-address;
time-format (year | millisecond | year millisecond);
user (username | *) {
  facility severity;
  match "regular-expression";
}
}
```

When included in the configuration on the TX Matrix platform, the following configuration statements have the same effect as on a single-chassis system, except that they apply to every platform in the routing matrix:

- **archive**—Sets the size and number of log files on each platform in the routing matrix. See “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.
- **console**—Directs the specified messages to the console of each platform in the routing matrix. See “Directing System Log Messages to the Console” on page 127.
- **file**—Directs the specified messages to a file of the same name on each platform in the routing matrix. See “Directing System Log Messages to a Log File” on page 125.
- **match**—Limits the set of messages logged to a destination to those that contain (or do not contain) a text string matching a regular expression. See “Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages” on page 138.

The separate **match** statement at the `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level applies to messages forwarded from the T640 routing nodes to the TX Matrix platform. See “Configuring Optional Features for Forwarded Messages” on page 147.

- **source-address**—Sets the IP address of the routing platform to report in system log messages as the message source, when the messages are directed to the remote machines specified in all `host hostname` statements at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level, for each platform in the routing matrix. The address is not reported in messages directed to the other Routing Engine on each platform or to the TX Matrix platform by the T640 routing nodes. See “Specifying an Alternative Source Address for System Log Messages” on page 128.
- **structured-data**—Writes messages to a file in structured-data format. See “Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format” on page 126.
- **time-format**—Adds the millisecond, year, or both to the timestamp in each standard-format message. See “Including the Year or Millisecond in Timestamps” on page 137.
- **user**—Directs the specified messages to the terminal session of one or more specified users on each platform in the routing matrix that they are logged in to. See “Directing System Log Messages to a User Terminal” on page 126.

The effect of the other statements differs somewhat for a routing matrix than for a single-chassis system. For more information, see the following sections:

## Configuring Message Forwarding in the Routing Matrix

By default, the master Routing Engine on each T640 routing node forwards to the master Routing Engine on the TX Matrix platform all messages from all facilities with severity level of **info** and higher. To change the facility, the severity level, or both, include the **host scc-master** statement at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level on the TX Matrix platform:

```
[edit system syslog]
host scc-master {
    facility severity;
}
```



To disable message forwarding, set the facility to **any** and the severity level to **none**:

```
[edit system syslog]
host scc-master {
  any none;
}
```

In either case, the setting applies to all T640 routing nodes in the routing matrix.

To capture the messages forwarded by the T640 routing nodes (as well as messages generated on the TX Matrix platform itself), you must also configure system logging on the TX Matrix platform. Direct the messages to one or more destinations by including the appropriate statements at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level on the TX Matrix platform:

- To a file, as described in “Directing System Log Messages to a Log File” on page 125.
- To the terminal session of one or more specific users (or all users), as described in “Directing System Log Messages to a User Terminal” on page 126.
- To the console, as described in “Directing System Log Messages to the Console” on page 127.
- To a remote machine that is running the **syslogd** utility or to the other Routing Engine. For more information, see “Directing Messages to a Remote Destination from the Routing Matrix” on page 149.

As previously noted, the configuration statements included on the TX Matrix platform also configure the same destinations on each T640 routing node.

When specifying the severity level for local messages (at the `[edit system syslog (file | host | console | user)]` hierarchy level) and forwarded messages (at the `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level), you can set the same severity level for both, set a lower severity level for local messages, or set a higher severity level for local messages. The following examples describe the consequence of each configuration. (For simplicity, the examples use the **any** facility in every case. You can also specify different severities for different facilities, with more complex consequences.)

### ***Impact of Different Local and Forwarded Severity Levels on System Log Messages***

This topic describes the impact of different local and forwarded severity levels configured for system log messages:

- Messages Logged When Local and Forwarded Severity Levels Are the Same on page 145
- Messages Logged When Local Severity Level Is Lower on page 146
- Messages Logged When Local Severity Level Is Higher on page 147

#### **Messages Logged When Local and Forwarded Severity Levels Are the Same**

When the severity level is the same for local and forwarded messages, the log on the TX Matrix platform contains all messages from the logs on the T640 routing

nodes. For example, you can specify severity `info` for the `/var/log/messages` file, which is the default severity level for messages forwarded by T640 routing nodes:

```
[edit system syslog]
file messages {
  any info;
}
```

Table 23 on page 146 specifies which messages are included in the logs on the T640 routing nodes and the TX Matrix platform.

**Table 23: Example: Local and Forwarded Severity Level Are Both info**

Log Location	Source of Messages	Lowest Severity Included
T640 routing node	Local	info
TX Matrix platform	Local	info
	Forwarded from T640 routing nodes	info

### Messages Logged When Local Severity Level Is Lower

When the severity level is lower for local messages than for forwarded messages, the log on the TX Matrix platform includes fewer forwarded messages than when the severities are the same. Locally generated messages are still logged at the lower severity level, so their number in each log is the same as when the severities are the same.

For example, you can specify severity `notice` for the `/var/log/messages` file and severity `critical` for forwarded messages:

```
[edit system syslog]
file messages {
  any notice;
}
host scc-master {
  any critical;
}
```

Table 24 on page 146 specifies which messages are included in the logs on the T640 routing nodes and the TX Matrix platform. The T640 routing nodes forward only those messages with severity `critical` and higher, so the log on the TX Matrix platform does not include the messages with severity `error`, `warning`, or `notice` that the T640 routing nodes log locally.

**Table 24: Example: Local Severity Is notice, Forwarded Severity Is critical**

Log Location	Source of Messages	Lowest Severity Included
T640 routing node	Local	notice

**Table 24: Example: Local Severity Is notice, Forwarded Severity Is critical** (continued)

Log Location	Source of Messages	Lowest Severity Included
TX Matrix platform	Local	notice
	Forwarded from T640 routing nodes	critical

### Messages Logged When Local Severity Level Is Higher

When the severity level is higher for local messages than for forwarded messages, the log on the TX Matrix platform includes fewer forwarded messages than when the severities are the same, and all local logs contain fewer messages overall.

For example, you can specify severity **critical** for the `/var/log/messages` file and severity **notice** for forwarded messages:

```
[edit system syslog]
file messages {
    any critical;
}
host scc-master {
    any notice;
}
```

Table 25 on page 147 specifies which messages are included in the logs on the T640 routing nodes and the TX Matrix platform. Although the T640 routing nodes forward messages with severity **notice** and higher, the TX Matrix platform discards any of those messages with severity **critical** or lower (does not log forwarded messages with severity **error**, **warning**, or **notice**). None of the logs include messages with severity **error** or lower.

**Table 25: Example: Local Severity Is critical, Forwarded Severity Is notice**

Log Location	Source of Messages	Lowest Severity Included
T640 routing node	Local	critical
TX Matrix platform	Local	critical
	Forwarded from T640 routing nodes	critical

### Configuring Optional Features for Forwarded Messages

To configure additional optional features when specifying how the T640 routing nodes forward messages to the TX Matrix platform, include statements at the `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level. To include priority information (facility and severity level) in each forwarded message, include the **explicit-priority** statement. To insert a text string in each forwarded message, include the **log-prefix** statement. To use regular expression matching to specify more exactly which messages from a facility are forwarded, include the **match** statement.

```
[edit system syslog]
host scc-master {
  facility severity;
  explicit-priority;
  log-prefix string;
  match "regular-expression;
}
```

You can also include the `facility-override` statement at the `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level, but we do not recommend doing so. It is not necessary to use alternative facilities for messages forwarded to the TX Matrix platform, because it runs the JUNOS system logging utility and can interpret the JUNOS software-specific facilities. For more information about alternative facilities, see “Changing the Alternative Facility Name for Remote System Log Messages” on page 129.

1. Including Priority Information in Forwarded Messages on page 148
2. Adding a Text String to Forwarded Messages on page 149
3. Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Forwarded Messages on page 149

## Including Priority Information in Forwarded Messages

When you include the `explicit-priority` statement at the `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level, messages forwarded to the TX Matrix platform include priority information. For the information to appear in a log file on the TX Matrix platform, you must also include the `explicit-priority` statement at the `[edit system syslog file filename]` hierarchy level for the file on the TX Matrix platform. As a consequence, the log file with the same name on each platform in the routing matrix also includes priority information for locally generated messages.

To include priority information in messages directed to a remote machine from all platforms in the routing matrix, also include the `explicit-priority` statement at the `[edit system syslog host hostname]` hierarchy level for the remote machine. For more information, see “Directing Messages to a Remote Destination from the Routing Matrix” on page 149.

In the following example, the `/var/log/messages` file on all platforms includes priority information for messages with severity `notice` and higher from all facilities. The log on the TX Matrix platform also includes messages with those characteristics forwarded from the T640 routing nodes.

```
[edit system syslog]
host scc-master {
  any notice;
  explicit-priority;
}
file messages {
  any notice;
  explicit-priority;
}
```

## Adding a Text String to Forwarded Messages

When you include the `log-prefix` statement at the `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level, the string that you define appears in every message forwarded to the TX Matrix platform. For more information, see “Adding a Text String to System Log Messages” on page 133.

## Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Forwarded Messages

When you include the `match` statement `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level, the regular expression that you specify controls which messages from the T640 routing nodes are forwarded to the TX Matrix platform. The regular expression is not applied to messages from the T640 routing nodes that are directed to destinations other than the TX Matrix platform. For more information about regular expression matching, see “Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages” on page 138.

## Directing Messages to a Remote Destination from the Routing Matrix

You can configure a routing matrix to direct system logging messages to a remote machine or the other Routing Engine on each routing platform, just as on a single-chassis system. Include the `host` statement at the `[edit system syslog]` hierarchy level on the TX Matrix platform:

```
[edit system syslog]
host (hostname | other-routing-engine) {
    facility severity;
    explicit-priority;
    facility-override facility;
    log-prefix string;
    match "regular-expression";
}
source-address source-address;
```

The TX Matrix platform directs messages to a remote machine or the other Routing Engine in the same way as a single-chassis system, and the optional statements (`explicit-priority`, `facility-override`, `log-prefix`, `match`, and `source-address`) also have the same effect as on a single-chassis system. For more information, see “Directing System Log Messages to a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine” on page 127.

For the TX Matrix platform to include priority information when it directs messages that originated on a T640 routing node to the remote destination, you must also include the `explicit-priority` statement at the `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level.

The `other-routing-engine` statement does not interact with message forwarding from the T640 routing nodes to the TX Matrix platform. For example, if you include the statement in the configuration for the Routing Engine in slot 0 (`re0`), the `re0` Routing Engine on each T640 routing node sends messages to the `re1` Routing Engine on its

platform only. It does not also send messages directly to the **re1** Routing Engine on the TX Matrix platform.

Because the configuration on the TX Matrix platform applies to the T640 routing nodes, any T640 routing node that has interfaces for direct access to the Internet also directs messages to the remote machine. The consequences include the following:

- If the T640 routing nodes are configured to forward messages to the TX Matrix platform (as in the default configuration), the remote machine receives two copies of some messages: one directly from the T640 routing node and the other from the TX Matrix platform. Which messages are duplicated depends on whether the severities are the same for local logging and for forwarded messages. For more information, see “Configuring Message Forwarding in the Routing Matrix” on page 144.
- If the **source-address** statement is configured at the **[edit system syslog]** hierarchy level, all platforms in the routing matrix report the same source address in messages directed to the remote machine. This is appropriate, because the routing matrix functions as a single routing platform.
- If the **log-prefix** statement is included, the messages from all platforms in the routing matrix include the same text string. You cannot use the string to distinguish between the platforms in the routing matrix.

### **Configuring System Logging Differently on Each Platform**

We recommend that all platforms in a routing matrix use the same configuration, which implies that you include system logging configuration statements on the TX Matrix platform only. In rare circumstances, however, you might choose to log different messages on different platforms. For example, if one platform in the routing matrix is experiencing problems with authentication, a Juniper Networks support representative might instruct you to log messages from the **authorization** facility with severity **debug** on that platform.

To configure platforms separately, include configuration statements in the appropriate groups at the **[edit groups]** hierarchy level on the TX Matrix platform:

- To configure settings that apply to the TX Matrix platform but not the T640 routing nodes, include them in the **re0** and **re1** configuration groups.
- To configure settings that apply to particular T640 routing nodes, include them in the **lccn-re0** and **lccn-re1** configuration groups, where *n* is the line-card chassis (LCC) index number of the routing node.

When you use configuration groups, do not issue CLI configuration-mode commands to change statements at the **[edit system syslog]** hierarchy level on the TX Matrix platform. If you do, the resulting statements overwrite the statements defined in configuration groups and apply to the T640 routing nodes also. (We further recommend that you do not issue CLI configuration-mode commands on the T640 routing nodes at any time.)

For more information about the configuration groups for a routing matrix, see the chapter about configuration groups in the *JUNOS CLI User Guide*.

The following example shows how to configure the `/var/log/messages` files on three platforms to include different sets of messages:

- On the TX Matrix platform, local messages with severity **info** and higher from all facilities. The file does not include messages from the T640 routing nodes, because the **host scc-master** statement disables message forwarding.
- On the T640 routing node designated **LCC0**, messages from the **authorization** facility with severity **info** and higher.
- On the T640 routing node designated **LCC1**, messages with severity **notice** from all facilities.

```
[edit groups]
re0 {
  system {
    syslog {
      file messages {
        any info;
      }
      host scc-master {
        any none;
      }
    }
  }
}
re1 {
  ... same statements as for re0 ...
}
lcc0-re0 {
  system {
    syslog {
      file messages {
        authorization info;
      }
    }
  }
}
lcc0-re1 {
  ... same statements as for lcc0-re0 ...
}
lcc1-re0 {
  system {
    syslog {
      file messages {
        any notice;
      }
    }
  }
}
lcc1-re1 {
  ... same statements as for lcc1-re0 ...
}
```





## Chapter 10

# Configuring Miscellaneous System Management Features

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set Console and Auxiliary Port Properties on a Router's Craft Interface on page 154
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable Protocol Redirect Messages on the Router on page 155
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Select a Fixed Source Address for Locally Generated TCP/IP Packets on page 156
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make the Router or Interface Act as a DHCP or BOOTP Relay Agent on page 156
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Routing Engine Response to Multicast Ping Packets on page 157
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Reporting of IP Address and Timestamps in Ping Responses on page 157
- Configuring System Services for Remote Router Access on page 158
- Configuring Password Authentication for Console Access to PICs on page 201
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Message on page 202
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Announcement on page 203
- Disabling JUNOS Software Processes on page 203
- Configuring Failover to Backup Media if a JUNOS Software Process Fails on page 204
- Configuring Password Authentication for the Diagnostics Port on page 204
- Viewing Core Files from JUNOS Software Processes on page 205
- Saving Core Files from JUNOS Software Processes on page 205
- Using JUNOS Software to Configure Logical System Administrators on page 205
- Using JUNOS Software to Configure a Router to Transfer Its Configuration to an Archive Site on page 207
- Using JUNOS Software to Specify the Number of Configurations Stored on the CompactFlash Card on page 209
- Configuring RADIUS System Accounting on page 209

- Example: Configuring RADIUS System Accounting on page 211
- Configuring TACACS+ System Accounting on page 212
- Configuring TACACS+ Accounting on a TX Matrix Platform on page 213
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Work with SRC Software on page 214
- Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv4 Rate Limit for ICMPv4 Routing Engine Messages on page 214
- Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv6 Rate Limit for ICMPv6 Routing Engine Messages on page 215
- Configuring the JUNOS Software for IP-IP Path MTU Discovery on IP-IP Tunnel Connections on page 215
- Configuring TCP MSS for Session Negotiation on page 215
- Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Path MTU Discovery on page 216
- Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Duplicate Address Detection Attempts on page 217
- Configuring the JUNOS Software for Acceptance of IPv6 Packets with a Zero Hop-Limit on page 217
- Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing GRE Tunnel Connections on page 217
- Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing TCP Connections on page 218
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Ignore ICMP Source Quench Messages on page 218
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the Router to Drop Packets with the SYN and FIN Bits Set on page 218
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable TCP RFC 1323 Extensions on page 218
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the TCP RFC 1323 PAWS Extension on page 219
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Extend the Default Port Address Range on page 219
- Configuring the JUNOS Software ARP Learning and Aging Options for Mapping IPv4 Network Addresses to MAC Addresses on page 219
- Using JUNOS Software to Configure System Alarms to Appear Automatically on J-series Routers on page 221
- System Alarms on J-series Routers on page 221

## **Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set Console and Auxiliary Port Properties on a Router's Craft Interface**

---

The router's craft interface has two ports—a console port and an auxiliary port—for connecting terminals to the router. The console port is enabled by default, and its speed is 9600 baud. The auxiliary port is disabled by default.

To configure the properties for the console and auxiliary ports, include the **ports** statement at the **[edit system]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
ports {
  auxiliary {
    type terminal-type;
  }
  console {
    insecure;
    log-out-on-disconnect;
    type terminal-type;
    disable;
  }
}
```

By default, the terminal type is unknown, and the terminal speed is 9600 baud for both the console and auxiliary ports. To change the terminal type, include the **type** statement, specifying a *terminal-type* of **ansi**, **vt100**, **small-xterm**, or **xterm**. The first three terminal types set a screen size of 80 columns by 24 lines. The last type, **xterm**, sets the size to 80 columns by 65 rows.

By default, the console session is not logged out when the data carrier is lost on the console modem control lines. To log out the session when the data carrier on the console port is lost, include the **log-out-on-disconnect** statement.

By default, terminal connections to the console and auxiliary ports are secure. When you configure the console as insecure, root logins are not allowed to establish terminal connections. In addition, superusers and anyone with a user identifier (UID) of 0 are not allowed to establish terminal connections in multiuser mode when you configure the console as insecure. To disable root login connections to the console and auxiliary ports, include the **insecure** statement.

To disable console login, include the **disable** statement. By default, console login is enabled.

For Common Criteria compliance the console port must be disabled.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable Protocol Redirect Messages on the Router

---

By default, the router sends protocol redirect messages. To disable the sending of redirect messages by the router, include the **no-redirects** statement at the **[edit system]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
no-redirects;
```

To reenable the sending of redirect messages on the router, delete the **no-redirects** statement from the configuration.

To disable the sending of redirect messages on a per-interface basis, include the **no-redirects** statement at the **[edit interfaces *interface-name* unit *logical-unit-number* family *family*]** hierarchy level, as described in the *JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Select a Fixed Source Address for Locally Generated TCP/IP Packets

---

By default, the source address included in locally generated Transmission Control Protocol/IP (TCP/IP) packets, such as FTP traffic, and in User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and IP packets, such as Network Time Protocol (NTP) requests, is chosen as the local address for the interface on which the traffic is transmitted. This means that the local address chosen for packets to a particular destination might change from connection to connection based on the interface that the routing protocol has chosen to reach the destination when the connection is established. If multiple equal-cost next hops are present for a destination, locally generated packets use the `lo0` address as a source.

To configure the software to select a fixed address to use as the source for locally generated IP packets, include the `default-address-selection` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
default-address-selection;
```

If you include the `default-address-selection` statement in the configuration, the JUNOS software chooses the system default address as the source for most locally generated IP packets. The default address is usually an address configured on the `lo0` loopback interface. For example, if you specified that SSH and telnet use a particular address, but you also have `default-address selection` configured, the system default address is used.

For IP packets sent by IP routing protocols—including Open Shortest Path First (OSPF), Routing Information Protocol (RIP), Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP), and the multicast protocols, but not including Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS)—the local address selection is often constrained by the protocol specification so that the protocol operates correctly. When this constraint exists in the routing protocol, the packet's source address is unaffected by the presence of the `default-address-selection` statement in the configuration. For protocols in which the local address is unconstrained by the protocol specification, for example, internal Border Gateway Protocol (IBGP) and multihop external BGP (EBGP), if you do not configure a specific local address when configuring the protocol, the local address is chosen using the same method as other locally generated IP packets.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make the Router or Interface Act as a DHCP or BOOTP Relay Agent

---

To configure a router or interface to act as a bootstrap protocol (DHCP or BOOTP) relay agent, you include statements at the `[edit forwarding-options helpers]` hierarchy level.

For J-series Services Routers, you can configure a router or interface as a DHCP server by including statements at the `[edit system services]` hierarchy level.



**NOTE:** You cannot configure a router or interface as a DHCP server and a BOOTP relay agent at the same time.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Routing Engine Response to Multicast Ping Packets

By default, the Routing Engine responds to Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) echo requests sent to multicast group addresses. To disable the Routing Engine from responding to ICMP echo requests sent to multicast group addresses, include the `no-multicast-echo` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
no-multicast-echo;
```

By configuring the Routing Engine to ignore multicast ping packets, you can prevent unauthorized persons from discovering the list of provider edge (PE) routers in the network.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Reporting of IP Address and Timestamps in Ping Responses

By default, the Routing Engine displays the path of the ICMP echo request packets and timestamps in the ICMP echo responses when the `ping` command is issued with the `record-route` option.

You can configure the Routing Engine to disable the setting of the `record-route` option in the IP header of the ping request packets. Disabling the `record-route` option prevents the Routing Engine from recording and displaying the path of the ICMP echo request packets in the response.

To configure the Routing Engine to disable the setting of the `record route` option, include the `no-ping-record-route` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
no-ping-record-route;
```

To disable the reporting of timestamps in the ICMP echo responses, include the `no-ping-time-stamp` option at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
no-ping-time-stamp;
```

By configuring the `no-ping-record-route` and `no-ping-timestamp` options, you can prevent unauthorized persons from discovering information about the provider edge (PE) router and its loopback address.

## Configuring System Services for Remote Router Access

---

- System Services Overview on page 159
- Configuring clear-text or SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications on page 159
- Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers on page 160
- DHCP Access Service Overview on page 162
- DHCP Statement Hierarchy and Inheritance on page 165
- Configuring Address Pools for DHCP Dynamic Bindings on page 167
- Configuring Manual (Static) DHCP Bindings Between a Fixed IP Address and a Client's MAC Address on page 168
- Specifying DHCP Lease Times for IP Address Assignments on page 169
- Configuring a DHCP Boot File and DHCP Boot Server on page 170
- Configuring a Static IP Address as DHCP Server Identifier on page 171
- Configuring a Domain Name and Domain Search List for a DHCP Server Host on page 171
- Configuring Routers Available to the DHCP Client on page 172
- Creating User-Defined DHCP Options Not Included in the Default JUNOS Implementation of the DHCP Server on page 173
- Example: Complete DHCP Server Configuration on page 174
- Example: Viewing DHCP Bindings on page 175
- Example: Viewing DHCP Address Pools on page 176
- Example: Viewing and Clearing DHCP Conflicts on page 176
- Configuring Tracing Operations for DHCP Processes on page 176
- DHCP Processes Tracing Flags on page 179
- Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server on page 180
- Interaction Among the DHCP Client, Extended DHCP Local Server, and Address-Assignment Pools on page 182
- Extended DHCP Local Server and Address-Assignment Pools on page 182
- Methods Used by the Extended DHCP Local Server to Determine Which Address-Assignment Pool to Use on page 183
- Default Options Provided by the Extended DHCP Server for the DHCP Client on page 183
- Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients on page 184
- Client Configuration Information Exchanged Between the External Authentication Server, DHCP Application, and DHCP Client on page 188
- Tracing Extended DHCP Local Server Operations on page 189

- Example: Configuring Minimum Extended DHCP Local Server Configuration on page 192
- Example: Extended DHCP Local Server Configuration with Optional Pool Matching on page 192
- Verifying and Managing DHCP Local Server Configuration on page 193
- Configuring DTCP-over-SSH Service for the Flow-Tap Application on page 193
- Configuring Finger Service for Remote Access to the Router on page 194
- Configuring FTP Service for Remote Access to the Router on page 195
- Configuring SSH Service for Remote Access to the Router on page 195
- Configuring Outbound SSH Service on page 197
- Configuring Telnet Service for Remote Access to a Router on page 201

## System Services Overview

For security reasons, remote access to the router is disabled by default. You must configure the router explicitly so that users on remote systems can access it. The router can be accessed from a remote system by means of the DHCP, finger, FTP, rlogin, SSH, and Telnet services. In addition, JUNOScript client applications can use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) or the JUNOScript-specific clear-text service, among other services.



**NOTE:** To protect system resources, you can limit the number of simultaneous connections that a service accepts and the number of processes owned by a single user. If either limit is exceeded, connection attempts fail.

---

## Configuring clear-text or SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications

A JUNOScript client application can use one of four protocols to connect to the JUNOScript server on a router: clear-text (a JUNOScript-specific protocol for sending unencrypted text over a TCP connection), SSH, SSL, or Telnet. For clients to use the clear-text or SSL protocol, you must include JUNOScript-specific statements in the router configuration.

For more information, see the following topics:

1. Configuring clear-text Service for JUNOScript Client Applications on page 159
2. Configuring SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications on page 160

### Configuring clear-text Service for JUNOScript Client Applications

To configure the router to accept clear-text connections from JUNOScript client applications on port 3221, include the `xnm-clear-text` statement at the `[edit system services]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services]
xnm-clear-text {
    <connection-limit limit>;
```

```

    <rate-limit limit>;
}

```

By default, the JUNOScript server supports a limited number of simultaneous clear-text sessions and connection attempts per minute. Optionally, you can include either or both of the following statements to change the defaults:

- **connection-limit *limit***—Maximum number of simultaneous connections (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 75.
- **rate-limit *limit***—Maximum number of connection attempts accepted per minute (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 150.

You cannot include the **xnm-clear-text** statement on routers that run the JUNOS-FIPS software. We recommend that you do not use the clear-text protocol in a Common Criteria environment.

### Configuring SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications

To configure the router to accept SSL connections from JUNOScript client applications on port 3220, include the **xnm-ssl** statement at the [edit system services] hierarchy level:

```

[edit system services]
xnm-ssl {
    local-certificate name;
    <connection-limit limit>;
    <rate-limit limit>;
}

```

**local-certificate** is the name of the X.509 authentication certificate used to establish an SSL connection. You must obtain the certificate and copy it to the router before referencing it.

By default, the JUNOScript server supports a limited number of simultaneous SSL sessions and connection attempts per minute. Optionally, you can include either or both of the following statements to change the defaults:

- **connection-limit *limit***—Maximum number of simultaneous connections (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 75.
- **rate-limit *limit***—Maximum number of connection attempts accepted per minute (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 150.

### Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server provides a framework for passing configuration information to client hosts (such as PCs) on a TCP/IP network. A router or interface that acts as a DHCP server can allocate network IP addresses and deliver configuration settings to client hosts without user intervention. DHCP access service minimizes the overhead required to add clients to the network by providing a centralized, server-based setup. You do not have to manually create and maintain IP address assignments for clients. DHCP is defined in RFC 2131, *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*.





**NOTE:** The DHCP server is supported in J-series Services Routers and is compatible with the autoinstallation feature.

To configure a J-series Services Router to accept DHCP as an access service, include the `dhcp` statement at the `[edit system services]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services]
dhcp {
  boot-file filename;
  boot-server (address | hostname);
  domain-name domain-name;
  domain-search [domain-list];
  default-lease-time;
  maximum-lease-time;
  name-server {
    address;
  }
  option {
    [ (id-number option-type option-value) | (id-number array option-type option-value) ];
  }
  pool address/prefix-length {
    address-range {
      low address;
      high address;
    }
    exclude-address {
      address;
    }
  }
  router {
    address;
  }
  static-binding mac-address {
    fixed-address {
      address;
    }
    host hostname;
    client-identifier (ascii client-id | hexadecimal client-id);
  }
  server-identifier address;
  wins-server {
    address;
  }
}
```

## DHCP Access Service Overview

DHCP access service consists of two components: a protocol for delivering host-specific configuration information from a server to a client host and a method for allocating network addresses to a client host. The client sends a message to request configuration information. A DHCP server sends the configuration information back to the client.

With DHCP, clients can be assigned a network address for a fixed *lease*, enabling serial reassignment of network addresses to different clients. A DHCP server leases IP addresses for specific times to various clients. If a client does not use its assigned address for some period of time, the DHCP server can assign that IP address to another host. When assignments are made or changed, the DHCP server updates information in the DNS server. The DHCP server provides clients with their previous lease assignments whenever possible.

A DHCP server provides persistent storage of network parameters for clients. Because DHCP is an extension of BOOTP, DHCP servers can handle BOOTP requests.

The DHCP server includes IPv4 address assignment and commonly used DHCP options. The server is compatible with DHCP servers from other vendors on the network. The server does not support IPv6 address assignment, user class-specific configuration, DHCP failover protocol, dynamic DNS updates, or VPN connections. The JUNOS-FIPS software does not support the DHCP server.



**NOTE:** You cannot configure a router as a DHCP server and a BOOTP relay agent at the same time.

---

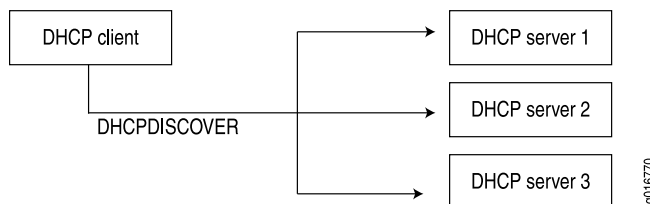
The following topics describe these concepts in detail:

- Network Address Assignments (Allocating a New Address) on page 162
- Network Address Assignments (Reusing a Previously Assigned Address) on page 164
- Static and Dynamic Bindings on page 164
- Compatibility with Autoinstallation on page 165
- Conflict Detection and Resolution on page 165

### Network Address Assignments (Allocating a New Address)

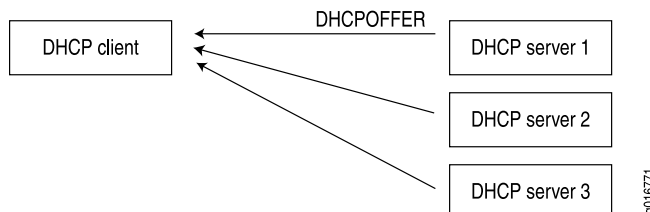
To receive configuration information and a network address assignment, a DHCP client negotiates with DHCP servers in a series of messages. The following steps show the messages exchanged between a DHCP client and servers to allocate a new network address. When allocating a new network address, the DHCP process can involve more than one server, but only one server is selected by the client.

1. When a client computer is started, it broadcasts a **DHCPDISCOVER** message on the local subnet, requesting a DHCP server. This request includes the hardware address of the requesting client.

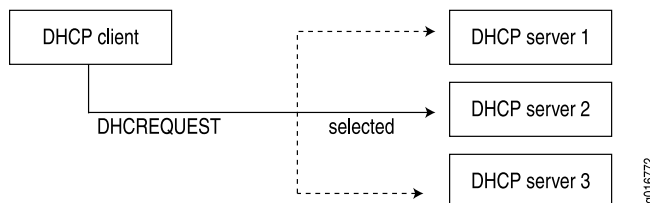
**Figure 3: DHCP Discover**

**NOTE:** For improved operation with DHCP clients that do not strictly conform to RFC 2131, the DHCP server accepts and processes **DHCPDISCOVER** messages even if the overload options in the messages are not properly terminated with an **end** statement.

2. Each DHCP server receiving the broadcast sends a **DHCPOFFER** message to the client, offering an IP address for a set period of time, known as the lease period.

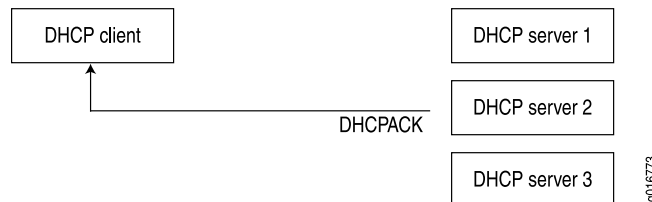
**Figure 4: DHCP Offer**

3. The client receives one or more **DHCPOFFER** messages from one or more servers and selects one of the offers received. Normally, a client looks for the longest lease period.
4. The client broadcasts a **DHCPREQUEST** message indicating the client has selected an offered leased IP address and identifies the selected server.

**Figure 5: DHCP Request**

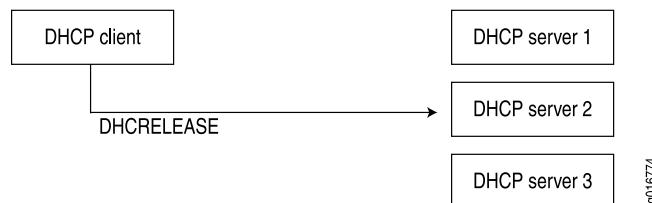
5. Those servers not selected by the **DHCPREQUEST** message return the unselected IP addresses to the pool of available addresses.

6. The selected DHCP server sends a **DHCPACK** acknowledgment that includes configuration information such as the IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and the lease period.

**Figure 6: DHCP ACK**

The information offered by the server is configurable.

7. The client receives the **DHCPACK** message with configuration information. The process is complete. The client is configured and has access to the network.
  - If the client receives a **DHCPNAK** message (for example, if the client has moved to a new subnet), the client restarts the negotiation process.
  - The client can relinquish its lease on a network address by sending a **DHCPRELEASE** message to the server (for example, when the client is restarted). When the server receives the **DHCPRELEASE** message, it marks the lease as free and the IP address becomes available again.

**Figure 7: DHCP Release**

### Network Address Assignments (Reusing a Previously Assigned Address)

To enable reuse of a previously allocated network address, the following events occur:

1. A client that previously had a lease broadcasts a **DHCPREQUEST** message on the local subnet.
2. The server with knowledge of the client's configuration responds with a **DHCPACK** message.
3. The client verifies the DHCP configuration information sent by the server and uses this information to reestablish the lease.

### Static and Dynamic Bindings

DHCP supports both dynamic and static bindings. For dynamic bindings, IP addresses are assigned to clients from a pool of addresses. Static bindings provide configuration

information for a specific client and can include one or more fixed IP addresses for the client. You can configure a DHCP server to include both address pools and static bindings. For any individual client, static bindings take priority over address pools.

### Compatibility with Autoinstallation

The DHCP server is compatible with the autoinstallation feature on J-series Services Routers. The server automatically checks autoinstallation settings for conflicts and gives autoinstallation settings priority over corresponding DHCP settings. For example, an IP address set by autoinstallation takes priority over an IP address set by the DHCP server.



**NOTE:** The autoinstallation feature includes a fixed address pool and a fixed lease time. With DHCP, you can create address pools and modify lease times.

---

### Conflict Detection and Resolution

When a client receives an IP address from the DHCP server, the client performs a series of ARP tests to verify that the IP address is available and no conflicts exist. If the client detects an address conflict, the client notifies the DHCP server about the conflict and may request another IP address from the DHCP server.

The DHCP server keeps a log of all conflicts and removes addresses with conflicts from the pool. These addresses remain excluded until you manually clear the conflicts list with the `clear system services dhcp conflict` command.

### DHCP Statement Hierarchy and Inheritance

DHCP configuration statements are organized hierarchically. Statements at the top of the hierarchy apply to the DHCP server and network, branches contain statements that apply to address pools in a subnetwork, and leaves contain statements that apply to static bindings for individual clients. See Table 26 on page 166.

The `pool` and `static-binding` statements appear at the `[edit system services dhcp]` hierarchy level. You can include the remaining statements at the following hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
[edit system services dhcp pool]
[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
```

**Table 26: Pool and Binding Statements**

Statement	Description	Hierarchy Level
<code>pool</code>	Configure a pool of IP addresses for DHCP clients on a subnet. When a client joins the network, the DHCP server dynamically allocates an IP address from this pool.	<code>[edit system services dhcp]</code>
<code>static-binding</code>	Set static bindings for DHCP clients. A static binding is a mapping between a fixed IP address and the client's MAC address.	

To minimize configuration changes, include common configuration statements shown in Table 27 on page 167 (for example, the `domain-name` statement) at the highest applicable level of the hierarchy (network or subnetwork). Configuration statements at lower levels of the hierarchy override statements inherited from a higher level. For example, if a statement appears at both the `[edit system services dhcp]` and `[edit system services dhcp pool]` hierarchy levels, the value assigned to the statement at the `[edit system services dhcp pool]` level takes priority.

**Table 27: Common Configuration Statements**

Statement	Description	Hierarchy Level
boot-file	Set the boot filename advertised to clients. The client uses the boot image stored in the boot file to complete configuration.	[edit system services dhcp] [edit system services dhcp pool] [edit system services dhcp static-binding]
boot-server	Set the server that contains the boot file.	
default-lease-time	Set the default lease time assigned to any client that does not request a specific lease time.	
domain-name	Configure the name of the domain in which clients will search for a DHCP server host. This is the default domain name that is appended to hostnames that are not fully qualified.	
domain-search	Define a domain search list.	
maximum-lease-time	Set the maximum lease time allowed by the server.	
name-server	Specify the DNS server that maintains the database of client name to IP address mappings.	
option	Configure user-defined DHCP options.	
router	Specify IP address for routers on the client's subnetwork. Routers are listed in order of preference.	
server-identifier	Set the IP address of the DHCP server.	

### Configuring Address Pools for DHCP Dynamic Bindings

For dynamic bindings, set aside a pool of IP addresses that can be assigned to clients. Addresses in a pool must be available to clients on the same subnet.

To configure an address pool, include the following statements at the [edit system services dhcp] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
pool (**address/prefix-length) {
  address-range {
    low address;
    high address;
  }
}
```

```

    exclude-address {
        address;
    }
}

```

The pool definition must include the client subnet number and prefix length (in bits). Optionally, the definition can include an address range and a list of excluded addresses.

The **address-range** statement defines the lowest and highest IP addresses in the pool that are available for dynamic address assignment. This statement is optional. If no range is specified, the pool will use all available addresses within the subnet specified. (Broadcast addresses, interface addresses, and excluded addresses are not available.)

The **exclude-address** statement specifies addresses within the range that are not used for dynamic address assignment. You can exclude one or more addresses within the range. This statement is optional.

The following is an example of a pool configuration.

```

[edit system services dhcp]
pool 10.3.3.0/24 {
    address-range low 10.3.3.2 high 10.3.3.254;
    exclude-address {
        10.3.3.33;
    }
}

```

For dynamic address assignment, configure an address pool for each client subnet the DHCP server supports. You can configure multiple address pools for a DHCP server, but only one address range per pool is supported.

DHCP maintains the state information for all pools configured. Clients are assigned addresses from pools with subnets that match the interface on which the DHCPDISCOVER packet is received. When more than one pool exists on the same interface, addresses are assigned on a rotating basis from all available pools.

## Configuring Manual (Static) DHCP Bindings Between a Fixed IP Address and a Client's MAC Address

Static bindings provide configuration information for specific clients. This information can include one or more fixed Internet addresses, the client hostname, and a client identifier.

To configure static bindings, include the following statements at the `[edit system services dhcp]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit system services dhcp]
static-binding mac-address {
    fixed-address {
        address;
    }
    host client-hostname;
    client-identifier (ascii client-id | hexadecimal client-id);
}

```



```
}
```

A static binding defines a mapping between a fixed IP address and the client's MAC address.

The *mac-address* variable specifies the MAC address of the client. This is a hardware address that uniquely identifies each client on the network.

The *fixed-address* statement specifies the fixed IP address assigned to the client. Typically a client has one address assigned, but you can assign more.

The *host* statement specifies the hostname of the client requesting the DHCP server. The name can include the local domain name. Otherwise, the name is resolved based on the *domain-name* statement.

The *client-identifier* statement is used by the DHCP server to index the database of address bindings. The client identifier is either an ASCII string or hexadecimal digits. It can include a type-value pair as specified in RFC 1700, *Assigned Numbers*. Either a client identifier or the client's MAC address must be configured to uniquely identify the client on the network.



**NOTE:** For each unique client-identifier *client-id* value, the DHCP server issues a unique lease and IP address from the pool. Previously, when the client provided an incorrect client-identifier *client-id* value, the DHCP server did not issue a lease.

---

The following is an example of a static binding configuration:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
static-binding 00:0d:56:f4:01:ab {
  fixed-address {
    10.5.5.5;
    10.6.6.6;
  }
  host-name "another-host.domain.tld";
  client-identifier hexadecimal 01001122aabbcc;
}
```

## Specifying DHCP Lease Times for IP Address Assignments

For clients that do not request a specific lease time, the default lease time is one day. You can configure a maximum lease time for IP address assignments or change the default lease time.

To configure lease times, include the *maximum-lease-time* and *default-lease-time* statements:

```
maximum-lease-time;
default-lease-time;
```

You can include these statements at the following hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
```

```
[edit system services dhcp pool]
[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
```

Lease times defined for static bindings and address pools take priority over lease times defined at the [edit system services **dhcp**] hierarchy level.

The **maximum-lease-time** statement configures the maximum length of time in seconds for which a client can request and hold a lease. If a client requests a lease longer than the maximum specified, the lease is granted only for the maximum time configured on the server. After a lease expires, the client must request a new lease.



**NOTE:** Maximum lease times do not apply to dynamic BOOTP leases. These leases are not specified by the client and can exceed the maximum lease time configured.

---

The following example shows a configuration for maximum and default lease times:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
maximum-lease-time 7200;
default-lease-time 3600;
```

## Configuring a DHCP Boot File and DHCP Boot Server

When a DHCP client starts, it contacts a boot server to download the boot file.

To configure a boot file and boot server, include the **boot-file** and **boot-server** statements:

```
boot-file filename;
boot-server address;
```

You can include these statements at the following hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
[edit system services dhcp pool]
[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
```

After a client receives a DHCP`OFFER` response from a DHCP server, the client can communicate directly with the boot server (instead of the DHCP server) to download the boot file. This minimizes network traffic and enables you to specify separate boot server/file pairs for each client pool or subnetwork.

The **boot-file** statement configures the name and location of the initial boot file that the DHCP client loads and executes. This file stores the boot image for the client. In most cases, the boot image is the operating system the client uses to load.

The **boot-server** statement configures the IP address of the TFTP server that contains the client's initial boot file. You must configure an IP address (not a hostname) for the server.

You must configure at least one boot file and boot server. Optionally, you can configure multiple boot files and boot servers. For example, you might configure two separate boot servers and files: one for static binding and one for address pools. Boot

file configurations for pools or static bindings take precedence over boot file configurations at the `[edit system services dhcp]` hierarchy level.

The following example specifies a boot file and server for an address pool:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
pool 10.4.4.0/24 {
  boot-file "boot.client";
  boot-server 10.4.4.1;
}
```

### **Configuring a Static IP Address as DHCP Server Identifier**

The host running the DHCP server must itself use a manually assigned, static IP address. It cannot send a request and receive an IP address from itself or another DHCP server.

To configure a DHCP server identifier, include the `server-identifier` statement:

```
server-identifier address;
```

You can include this statement at the following hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
[edit system services dhcp pool]
[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
```

The `server-identifier` statement specifies the IP address of the DHCP server. The host must be a TFTP server that is accessible by all clients served within a range of IP addresses (based on either an address pool or static binding).

The following example shows a DHCP server identifier configured for an address pool:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
pool 10.3.3.0/24 {
  address-range low 10.3.3.2 high 10.3.3.254;
  exclude-address {
    10.3.3.33;
  }
  router {
    10.3.3.1;
  }
  server-identifier 10.3.3.1;
}
```

### **Configuring a Domain Name and Domain Search List for a DHCP Server Host**

To configure the name of the domain in which clients search for a DHCP server host, include the `domain-name` statement:

```
domain-name domain;
```

You can include this statement at the following hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
[edit system services dhcp pool]
[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
```

The `domain-name` statement sets the domain name that is appended to hostnames that are not fully qualified. This statement is optional. If you do not configure a domain name, the default is the client's current domain.

To configure a domain search list, include the `domain-search` statement:

```
domain-search [ domain-list ];
```

You can include this statement at the following hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
[edit system services dhcp pool]
[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
```

The `domain-search` statement sets the order in which clients append domain names when searching for the IP address of a host. You can include one or more domain names in the list. For more information, see RFC 3397, *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Domain Search Option*.

The `domain-search` statement is optional, if you do not configure a domain search list, the default is the client's current domain.

## Configuring Routers Available to the DHCP Client

After a DHCP client loads the boot image and has booted, the client sends packets to a router.

To configure routers available to the DHCP client, include the `router` statement:

```
router {
    address;
}
```

You can include this statement at the following hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
[edit system services dhcp pool]
[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
```

The `router` statement specifies a list of IP addresses for routers on the client's subnet. List routers in order of preference. You must configure at least one router for each client subnet.

The following example shows routers configured at the `[edit system services dhcp]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
router {
    10.6.6.1;
    10.7.7.1;
```

```
}
```

## Creating User-Defined DHCP Options Not Included in the Default JUNOS Implementation of the DHCP Server

You can configure one or more user-defined options that are not included in the JUNOS default implementation of the DHCP server. For example, if a client requests a DHCP option that is not included in the DHCP server, you can create a user-defined option that enables the server to respond to the client's request.

To configure a user-defined DHCP option, include the `option` statement:

```
option {
  [ (id-number option-type option-value) | (id-number array option-typeoption-value) ] ;
}
```

The `option` statement specifies the following values:

- *id-number*—Any whole number. The ID number is used to index the option and must be unique across a DHCP server.
- *option-type*—Any of the following types: `flag`, `byte`, `string`, `short`, `unsigned-short`, `integer`, `unsigned-integer`, `ip-address`.
- *array*—An option can include an array of values.
- *option-value*—Value associated with an option. The option value must be compatible with the option type (for example, an `On` or `Off` value for a `flag` type).

You can include this statement at the following hierarchy levels:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
[edit system services dhcp pool]
[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
```

The following example shows user-defined DHCP options:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
option 19 flag off; # 19: "IP Forwarding" option
option 40 string "domain.tld"; # 40: "NIS Domain" option
option 16 ip-address 10.3.3.33; # 16: "Swap Server" option
```

User-defined options that conflict with DHCP configuration statements are ignored by the server. For example, in the following configuration, the DHCP server ignores the user-defined `option 3 router` statement and uses the `edit system services dhcp router` statement instead:

```
[edit system services dhcp]
option 3 router 10.7.7.2; # 3: "Default Router" option
router {
  10.7.7.1;
}
```

## Example: Complete DHCP Server Configuration

This topic shows a complete DHCP server configuration with address pools, static bindings, and user-defined options.

The following example shows statements at the [edit interfaces] hierarchy level. The interface's primary address (10.3.3.1/24) has a corresponding address pool (10.3.3.0/24) defined at the [edit system services] hierarchy level.

```
[edit interfaces]
fe-0/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.3.3.1/24;
    }
  }
}
```



**NOTE:** You can configure a DHCP server only on an interface's primary IP address.

---

Statements at the [edit system services] hierarchy level include the following:

```
[edit system services]
dhcp {
  domain-name "domain.tld";
  maximum-lease-time 7200;
  default-lease-time 3600;
  name-server {
    10.6.6.6;
    10.6.6.7;
  }
  domain-search [ subnet1.domain.tld subnet2.domain.tld ];
  wins-server {
    10.7.7.7;
    10.7.7.9;
  }
  router {
    10.6.6.1;
    10.7.7.1;
  }
  option 19 flag off; # 19: "IP Forwarding" option
  option 40 string "domain.tld"; # 40: "NIS Domain" option
  option 16 ip-address 10.3.3.33; # 16: "Swap Server" option
  pool 10.3.3.0/24 {
    address-range low 10.3.3.2 high 10.3.3.254;
    exclude-address {
      10.3.3.33;
    }
    router {
      10.3.3.1;
    }
  }
  server-identifier 10.3.3.1;
```

```

}
pool 10.4.4.0/24 {
    boot-file "boot.client";
    boot-server 10.4.4.1;
}
static-binding 00:0d:56:f4:20:01 {
    fixed-address 10.4.4.4;
    host-name "host.domain.tld";
}
static-binding 00:0d:56:f4:01:ab {
    fixed-address {
        10.5.5.5;
        10.6.6.6;
    }
    host-name "another-host.domain.tld";
    client-identifier "01aa.001a.bc65.3e";
}
}

```

### Example: Viewing DHCP Bindings

Use the CLI command `show system services dhcp binding` to view information about DHCP address bindings, lease times, and address conflicts.

The following example shows the binding type and lease expiration times for IP addresses configured on a router that supports a DHCP server:

```

user@host> show system services dhcp binding
IP Address      Hardware Address  Type    Lease expires at
192.168.1.2     00:a0:12:00:12:ab static        never
192.168.1.3     00:a0:12:00:13:02 dynamic    2004-05-03 13:01:42 PDT

```

Enter an IP address to show binding for a specific IP address:

```

user@host> show system services dhcp binding 192.168.1.3
DHCP binding information:
IP address      192.168.1.3
Hardware address 00:a0:12:00:12:ab
Client identifier
61 63 65 64 2d 30 30 3a 61 30 3a 31 32 3a 30 30 aced-00:a0:12:00
3a 31 33 3a 30 32
Lease information:
Type            dynamic
Obtained at     2004-05-02 13:01:42 PDT
Expires at      2004-05-03 13:01:42 PDT

```

Use the `detail` option to show detailed binding information:

```

user@host> show system services dhcp binding detail
DHCP binding information:
IP address      192.168.1.3
Hardware address 00:a0:12:00:12:ab
Pool            192.168.1.0/24
Interface       fe-0/0/0, relayed by 192.168.4.254
Lease information:

```

```

Type                dynamic
Obtained at         2004-05-02 13:01:42 PDT
Expires at          2004-05-03 13:01:42 PDT
DHCP options:
name-server foo.mydomain.tld
domain-name mydomain.tld
option 19 flag off

```

### Example: Viewing DHCP Address Pools

Use the CLI `show system services dhcp pool` command to view information about DHCP address pools.

The following example shows address pools configured on a DHCP server:

```

user@ host> show system services dhcp pool
Pool name      Low address    High address    Excluded addresses
10.40.1.0/24    10.40.1.1      10.40.1.254     10.40.1.254

```

### Example: Viewing and Clearing DHCP Conflicts

When the DHCP server provides an IP address, the client performs an ARP check to make sure the address is not being used by another client and reports any conflicts back to the server. The server keeps track of addresses with conflicts and removes them from the address pool. Use the CLI command `show system services dhcp conflict` to show conflicts.

```

user@host> show system services dhcp conflict
Detection time      Detection method    Address
2004-08-03 19:04:00 PDT    client      192.168.1.5
2004-08-04 04:23:12 PDT    ping        192.168.1.8

```

Use the `clear system services dhcp conflicts` command to clear the conflicts list and return IP addresses to the pool. The following command shows how to clear an address on the server that has a conflict:

```

user@host> clear system services dhcp conflict 192.168.1.5

```

For more information about CLI commands you can use with the DHCP server, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

### Configuring Tracing Operations for DHCP Processes

DHCP tracing operations track all DHCP operations and record them to a log file.

By default, no DHCP processes are traced. If you include the `traceoptions` statement at the `[edit system services dhcp]` hierarchy level, the default tracing behavior is the following:

- Important events are logged in a file called `dhcpd` located in the `/var/log` directory.
- When the file `dhcpd` reaches 128 kilobytes (KB), it is renamed `dhcpd.0`, then `dhcpd.1`, and so on, until there are 3 trace files. Then the oldest trace file (`dhcpd.2`)



is overwritten). For more information about how log files are created, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.

- Log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation.

You cannot change the directory in which trace files are located. However, you can customize the other trace file settings by including the following statements at the [edit system services dhcp traceoptions] hierarchy level.:

```
[edit system services dhcp traceoptions]
file filename <files number> <match regex> <size size> <world-readable |
no-world-readable>;
flag {
  all;
}
```

Tasks for configuring DHCP tracing operations are:

1. Configuring the DHCP Processes Log Filename on page 177
2. Configuring the Number and Size of DHCP Processes Log Files on page 177
3. Configuring Access to the DHCP Log File on page 178
4. Configuring a Regular Expression for Refining the Output of DHCP Logged Events on page 178
5. Configuring DHCP Trace Operation Events on page 178

### Configuring the DHCP Processes Log Filename

By default, the name of the file that records trace output is `dhcpd`. You can specify a different name by including the file statement at the [edit system services dhcp traceoptions] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp traceoptions (DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers)]
file filename;
```

### Configuring the Number and Size of DHCP Processes Log Files

By default, when the trace file reaches 128 kilobytes (KB) in size, it is renamed `filename.0`, then `filename.1`, and so on, until there are 3 trace files. Then the oldest trace file (`filename.2`) is overwritten.

You can configure the limits on the number and size of trace files by including the following statements at the [edit system services dhcp traceoptions] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp traceoptions]
file files number size size;
```

For example, set the maximum file size to 2 MB, and the maximum number of files to 20. When the file that receives the output of the tracking operation (`filename`) reaches 2 MB, `filename` is renamed `filename.0`, and a new file called `filename` is created. When the new `filename` reaches 2 MB, `filename.0` is renamed `filename.1` and `filename` is renamed `filename.0`. This process repeats until there are 20 trace files. Then the oldest file (`filename.19`) is overwritten by the newest file (`filename.0`).

The number of files can be from 2 through 1000 files. The file size of each file can be from 10KB through 1 gigabyte (GB).

### Configuring Access to the DHCP Log File

By default, log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation.

To specify that any user can read all log files, include the `file world-readable` statement at the `[edit system services dhcp traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp traceoptions]
file world-readable;
```

To set the default behavior explicitly, include the `file no-world-readable` statement at the `[edit system services dhcp traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp traceoptions]
file no-world-readable;
```

### Configuring a Regular Expression for Refining the Output of DHCP Logged Events

By default, the trace operations output includes all lines relevant to the logged events.

You can refine the output by including the `match` statement at the `[edit system services dhcp traceoptions file filename]` hierarchy level and specifying a regular expression (regex) to be matched:

```
[edit system services dhcp traceoptions]
file filename match regex;
```

### Configuring DHCP Trace Operation Events

By default, only important events are logged. You can configure the trace operations to be logged by including the following options at the `[edit system services dhcp traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit dhcp system services dhcp traceoptions]
flag {
  all;
  binding;
  config;
  conflict;
  event;
  ifdb;
  io;
  lease;
  main;
  misc;
  packet;
  options;
  pool;
```

```

protocol;
rtsock;
scope;
signal;
trace;
ui;
}

```

## DHCP Processes Tracing Flags

Table 28 on page 179 describes which operation or event is recorded by each DHCP tracing flag. By default, all flags are disabled.

**Table 28: DHCP Processes Tracing Flags**

Flag	Operation or Event
all	All operations.
binding	Binding operations.
config	Logins to the configuration database.
conflict	Client-detected conflicts for IP addresses.
event	Important events.
ifdb	Interface database operations.
io	I/O operations.
lease	Lease operations.
main	Main loop operations.
misc	Miscellaneous operations.
packet	DHCP packets.
options	DHCP options.
pool	Address pool operations.
protocol	Protocol operations.
rtsock	Routing socket operations.
scope	Scope operations.
signal	DHCP signal operations.
trace	Tracing operations.
ui	User interface operations.

## Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server

You can enable the router to function as an extended DHCP local server and configure the extended DHCP local server options on the router. The extended DHCP local server provides an IP address and other configuration information in response to a client request.

The extended DHCP local server enhances traditional DHCP server operation in which the client address pool and client configuration information reside on the DHCP server. With the extended DHCP local server, the client address and configuration information reside in centralized address-assignment pools, which are managed independently of the DHCP local server and which can be shared by different client applications.

The extended DHCP local server also supports advanced pool matching and the use of named address ranges. You can also configure the local server to use DHCP option 82 information in the client PDU to determine which named address range to use for a particular client. The client configuration information, which is configured in the address-assignment pool, includes user-defined options, such as boot server, grace period, and lease time.

Configuring the DHCP environment that includes the extended DHCP local server requires two independent configuration operations, which you can complete in any order. In one operation, you configure the extended DHCP local server on the router and specify how the DHCP local server determines which address-assignment pool to use. In the other operation, you configure the address-assignment pools used by the DHCP local server. The address-assignment pools contain the IP addresses, named address ranges, and configuration information for DHCP clients. See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475 for details about creating and using address-assignment pools.



**NOTE:** The extended DHCP local server and the address-assignment pools used by the server must be configured in the same logical system and routing instance.

You cannot configure the extended DHCP local server and extended DHCP relay on the same interface.

---

To configure the extended DHCP local server on the router, include the `dhcp-local-server` statement at the `[edit system services]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services]
dhcp-local-server {
  authentication {
    password password-string;
    username-include {
      circuit-type;
      delimiter delimiter-character;
      domain-name domain-name-string;
      logical-system-name;
      mac-address;
```

```

        option-60;
        option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;
        routing-instance-name;
        user-prefix user-prefix-string;
    }
}
group group-name {
    authentication {
        password password-string;
        username-include {
            circuit-type;
            delimiter delimiter-character;
            domain-name domain-name-string;
            logical-system-name;
            mac-address;
            option-60;
            option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;
            routing-instance-name;
            user-prefix user-prefix-string;
        }
    }
}
interface (DHCP Local Server) interface-name <upto upto-interface-name>
    <exclude>;
}
pool-match-order {
    ip-address-first;
    option-82;
}
traceoptions {
    file filename <files number> <size size> <world-readable | no-world-readable>
        <match regex>;
    flag flag;
}
}

```

You can also include these statements at the following hierarchy levels:

- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services]
- [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services]



**NOTE:** The extended DHCP local server is incompatible with the J-series DHCP server. As a result, the DHCP local server and the DHCP or BOOTP relay agent cannot both be enabled on the router at the same time. The extended DHCP local server is fully compatible with the extended DHCP relay feature.

---

## ***Interaction Among the DHCP Client, Extended DHCP Local Server, and Address-Assignment Pools***

In a typical carrier edge network configuration, the DHCP client is on the subscriber's computer, and the DHCP local server is configured on the router. The following steps provide a high-level description of the interaction among the DHCP local server, DHCP client, and address-assignment pools:

1. The DHCP client sends a discover packet to one or more DHCP local servers in the network to obtain configuration parameters and an IP address for the subscriber.
2. Each DHCP local server that receives the discover packet then searches its address-assignment pool for the client address and configuration options. Each local server creates an entry in its internal client table to keep track of the client state, then sends a DHCP offer packet to the client.
3. On receipt of the offer packet, the DHCP client selects the DHCP local server from which to obtain configuration information and sends a request packet indicating the DHCP local server that will grant the address and configuration information.
4. The selected DHCP local server sends an acknowledgement packet to the client that contains the client address lease and configuration parameters. The server also installs the host route and ARP entry, and then monitors the lease state.

### ***Extended DHCP Local Server and Address-Assignment Pools***

The extended DHCP local server enhances traditional DHCP server operation in which the client address pool and client configuration information reside on the DHCP server. With the extended DHCP local server, the client address and configuration information reside in centralized address-assignment pools, which are managed independently of the DHCP local server and which can be shared by different client applications.

The extended DHCP local server also supports advanced pool matching and the use of named address ranges. You can also configure the local server to use DHCP option 82 information in the client PDU to determine which named address range to use for a particular client. The client configuration information, which is configured in the address-assignment pool, includes user-defined options, such as boot server, grace period, and lease time.

Configuring the DHCP environment that includes the extended DHCP local server requires two independent configuration operations, which you can complete in any order. In one operation, you configure the extended DHCP local server on the router and specify how the DHCP local server determines which address-assignment pool to use. In the other operation, you configure the address-assignment pools used by the DHCP local server. The address-assignment pools contain the IP addresses, named address ranges, and configuration information for DHCP clients. See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475 for details about creating and using address-assignment pools.



**NOTE:** The extended DHCP local server and the address-assignment pools used by the server must be configured in the same logical system and routing instance.

---

## **Methods Used by the Extended DHCP Local Server to Determine Which Address-Assignment Pool to Use**

You can specify the method that the extended DHCP local server uses to determine which address-assignment pool provides the IP address and configuration for a DHCP client. By default, the server matches the IP address in the client DHCP request to the address of the address-assignment pool.

The following sections describe the methods used by the DHCP local server to determine which address-assignment pool to use:

- Matching the Client IP Address to the Address-Assignment Pool on page 183
- Matching Option 82 Information to Named Address Ranges on page 183

### **Matching the Client IP Address to the Address-Assignment Pool**

In the default configuration, the server selects the address-assignment pool to use by matching the IP address in the client DHCP request with the network address of the address-assignment pool. If the client request contains the gateway IP address (giaddr), the local server matches the giaddr to the address-assignment pool's address. If there is no giaddr in the request, the DHCP local server matches the IP address of the receiving interface to the address of the address-assignment pool.

### **Matching Option 82 Information to Named Address Ranges**

You can also configure the extended DHCP local server to match the DHCP relay agent information option (option 82) in the client DHCP packets to a named range in the address-assignment pool used for the client. Named ranges are subsets within the overall address-assignment pool address range, and are configured when you create the address-assignment pool. To use the DHCP local server option 82 matching feature, you must ensure that the **option-82** statement is included in the **dhcp-attributes** statement for the address-assignment pool.



**NOTE:** To enable the option 82 matching method, you must first specify the **ip-address-first** statement in the **pool-match-order** statement, and then specify the **option-82** statement.

---

## **Default Options Provided by the Extended DHCP Server for the DHCP Client**

The extended DHCP local server provides a minimal configuration to the DHCP client if the client does not have DHCP option 55 configured. The server provides the subnet mask of the address-assignment pool that is selected for the client. In addition to the subnet mask, the server provides the following values to the client if the information is configured in the selected address-assignment pool:

- **router**—A router located on the client's subnet. This statement is the equivalent of DHCP option 3.
- **domain name**—The name of the domain in which the client searches for a DHCP server host. This is the default domain name that is appended to hostnames that are not fully qualified. This is equivalent to DHCP option 15.
- **domain name server**—A Domain Name System (DNS) name server that is available to the client to resolve hostname-to-client mappings. This is equivalent to DHCP option 6.

### Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients

Both the extended DHCP local server and the extended DHCP relay agent support the use of external AAA authentication services, such as RADIUS, to authenticate DHCP clients. When the extended DHCP local server or relay agent receives a discover PDU from a client, the extended DHCP application contacts the AAA server to authenticate the DHCP client. The extended DHCP application can obtain client addresses and DHCP configuration options from the external AAA authentication server.



**NOTE:** This topic uses the term extended DHCP application to refer to both the extended DHCP local server and the extended DHCP relay agent.

---

The external authentication feature also supports AAA directed logout. If the external AAA service supports a user logout directive, the extended DHCP application honors the logout and views it as if it was requested by a CLI management command. All of the client state information and allocated resources are deleted at logout. The extended DHCP application supports directed logout using the list of configured authentication servers you specify with the **authentication-server** statement at the **[edit access profile *profile-name*]** hierarchy level.

Tasks for configuring External AAA authentication services are:

1. Configuring Authentication Support for an Extended DHCP Application on page 184
2. Grouping Interfaces with Common DHCP Configurations on page 186
3. Configuring Passwords for Usernames the DHCP Application Presents to the External AAA Authentication Service on page 187
4. Creating Unique Usernames the Extended DHCP Application Passes to the External AAA Authentication Service on page 187

### Configuring Authentication Support for an Extended DHCP Application

To configure authentication support for an extended DHCP application, include the **authentication** statement at these hierarchy levels. You can configure either global authentication support or group-specific support.

You must configure the **username-include** statement to enable the use of authentication. The **password** statement is not required and does not cause DHCP to use authentication if the **username-include** statement is not included.



Extended DHCP local server hierarchies:

- [edit system services dhcp-local-server]
- [edit system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name*]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name*]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services dhcp-local-server]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name*]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name*]
- [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server]
- [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name*]

Extended DHCP relay agent hierarchies:

- [edit forwarding-options dhcp-relay]
- [edit forwarding-options dhcp-relay group *group-name*]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* forwarding-options dhcp-relay]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* forwarding-options dhcp-relay group *group-name*]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* forwarding-options dhcp-relay]
- [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* forwarding-options dhcp-relay group *group-name*]
- [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* forwarding-options dhcp-relay]
- [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* forwarding-options dhcp-relay group *group-name*]

```
authentication {
  password password-string;
  username-include {
    circuit-type;
    delimiter delimiter-character;
    domain-name domain-name-string;
    logical-system-name;
    mac-address;
    option-60;
    option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;
    routing-instance-name;
```

```

        user-prefix user-prefix-string;
    }
}

```

## Grouping Interfaces with Common DHCP Configurations

The extended DHCP applications enable you to group together a set of interfaces and apply a common DHCP configuration to the named interface group.

To configure an interface group, use the **group** statement.

```

group group-name {
  authentication {
    password password-string;
    username-include {
      circuit-type;
      delimiter delimiter-character;
      domain-name domain-name-string;
      logical-system-name;
      mac-address;
      option-60;
      option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;
      routing-instance-name;
      user-prefix user-prefix-string;
    }
  }
  interface (DHCP Local Server) interface-name <upto upto-interface-name> <exclude>;
}

```

You can specify the names of one or more interfaces on which the extended DHCP application is enabled. You can repeat the **interface** *interface-name* statement to specify multiple interfaces within a group, but you cannot specify the same interface in more than one group. For example:

```

group boston {
  interface 192.168.10.1;
  interface 192.168.15.5;
}

```

You can use the **upto** option to specify a range of interfaces on which the extended DHCP application is enabled. For example:

```

group quebec {
  interface 192.168.10.1 upto 192.168.10.255;
}

```

You can use the **exclude** option to exclude a specific interface or a specified range of interfaces from the group. For example:

```

group paris {
  interface 192.168.100.1 exclude;
  interface 192.168.100.100 upto 192.168.100.125 exclude;
}

```

### Configuring Passwords for Usernames the DHCP Application Presents to the External AAA Authentication Service

You can configure an optional password that the extended DHCP application presents to the external AAA authentication service to authenticate the specified username.

To configure a password that authenticates the username, use the password statement. See “Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords” on page 60 for information about supported characters in passwords. For example:

```
authentication {
  password myPassword1234
}
```

### Creating Unique Usernames the Extended DHCP Application Passes to the External AAA Authentication Service

You can configure the extended DHCP application to include additional fields in the username passed to the external AAA authentication service when the DHCP client logs in. This additional information enables you to construct usernames that uniquely identify subscribers.



**NOTE:** No authentication is performed if you do not include a username in the authentication configuration; however, the IP address is provided by the local pool if it is configured.

---

To configure unique usernames, use the `username-include` statement. You can include any or all of the additional statements.

```
authentication {
  username-include {
    circuit-type;
    delimiter delimiter-character;
    domain-name domain-name-string;
    logical-system-name;
    mac-address;
    option-60;
    option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;
    routing-instance-name;
    user-prefix user-prefix-string;
  }
}
```

The following list describes the attributes that can be included as part of the username:

- **circuit-type**—The circuit type used by the DHCP client, for example `enet`.
- **delimiter**—The delimiter character that separates components that make up the concatenated username. The semicolon (;) is not supported as a delimiter character.

- **domain-name**—The client domain name as string. The router adds the @ delimiter to the username.
- **logical-system-name**—The name of the logical system, if the receiving interface is in a logical system.
- **mac-address**—The client MAC address, in a string of the format xxxx.xxxx.xxxx.
- **option-60**—The portion of the option 60 payload that follows the length field.
- **option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;**—The specified contents of the option 82 payload.
  - **circuit-id**—The payload of the Agent Circuit ID suboption.
  - **remote-id**—The payload of the Agent Remote ID suboption.
  - Both **circuit-id** and **remote-id**—The payloads of both suboptions, in the format: circuit-id[delimiter]remote-id.
  - Neither **circuit-id** or **remote-id**—The raw payload of the option 82 from the PDU is concatenated to the username.
- **routing-instance-name**—The name of the routing instance, if the receiving interface is in a routing instance.
- **user-prefix**—A string indicating the user prefix.

The router creates the unique username by including the specified additional information in the following order, with the fields separated by a delimiter. The default delimiter is a period (.). You can specify a different delimiter; however, the semicolon character (;) is not allowed.

```
user-prefix[delimiter]mac-address[delimiter]logical-system-name[delimiter]
routing-instance-name[delimiter]circuit-type[delimiter]option-82[delimiter]
option-60@domain-name
```

The following example shows a sample configuration that creates a unique username. The username is shown after the configuration.

```
authentication {
  username-include {
    circuit-type;
    domain-name isp55.com;
    mac-address;
    user-prefix wallybrown;
  }
}
```

The resulting unique username is:

```
wallybrown.0090.1a01.1234.enet@isp55.com
```

## **Client Configuration Information Exchanged Between the External Authentication Server, DHCP Application, and DHCP Client**

When the extended DHCP application receives a response from an external authentication server, the response might include information in addition to the IP

address and subnet mask. The extended DHCP application uses the information from the authentication grant for the response the DHCP application sends to the DHCP client. The DHCP application can either send the information in its original form or the application might merge the information with local configuration specifications. For example, if the authentication grant includes an address pool name and a local configuration specifies DHCP attributes for that pool, the extended DHCP application merges the authentication results and the attributes in the reply that the server sends to the client.

A local configuration is optional — a client can be fully configured by the external authentication service. However, if the external authentication service does not provide client configuration, you must configure the local address assignment pool to provide the configuration for the client. When a local configuration specifies options, the extended DHCP application adds the local configuration options to the offer PDU the server sends to the client. If the two sets of options overlap, the options in the authentication response from the external service take precedence.

When you use RADIUS to provide the authentication, the additional information might be in the form of RADIUS attributes and Juniper Networks VSAs. The following list shows the information that RADIUS might include in the authentication grant. See “RADIUS Attributes and Juniper Networks VSAs Supported by the AAA Service Framework” on page 468 for a complete list of RADIUS attributes and Juniper Networks VSAs that the extended DHCP applications supports for subscriber access management.

- Client IP address—RADIUS attribute 8, Framed-IP-Address
- Subnet mask for client IP address (DHCP option 1)—RADIUS attribute 9, Framed-IP-Netmask
- Primary domain server (DHCP option 6)—VSA 26-4, Primary-DNS
- Secondary domain server (DHCP option 6)—VSA 26-5 Secondary-DNS
- Primary WINS server (DHCP option 44)—VSA 26-6, Primary-WINS
- Secondary WINS server (DHCP option 44)—VSA 26-7, Secondary-WINS
- Address assignment pool name—RADIUS attribute 88, Framed-Pool
- Lease time—RADIUS attribute 27, Session-Timeout
- DHCP relay server—VSA 26-109, DHCP-Guided-Relay-Server

### **Tracing Extended DHCP Local Server Operations**

The extended DHCP tracing operations track the extended DHCP local server operations and record them in a log file. By default, no extended DHCP local server processes are traced. If you include the **traceoptions** statement at the **[edit system services dhcp-local-server]** hierarchy level, the default tracing behavior is the following:

- Important extended DHCP local server events are logged in a file called **jdhcpd** located in the **/var/log** directory.
- When the file **jdhcpd** reaches 128 kilobytes (KB), it is renamed **jdhcpd.0**, then **jdhcpd.1**, and so on, until there are 3 trace files. Then the oldest trace file (**jdhcpd.2**) is overwritten. For more information about how log files are created, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.

- Log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation.

To trace DHCP local server operations, include the **traceoptions** statement at the [edit system services dhcp-local-server] hierarchy level:

```
traceoptions {
  file filename <files number> <size size> <world-readable | no-world-readable> <match
    regex>;
  flag flag;
}
```

The following topics describe the tracing operation configuration statements:

1. Configuring the Filename of the Extended DHCP Local Server Processes Log on page 190
2. Configuring the Number and Size of Extended DHCP Local Server Processes Log Files on page 190
3. Configuring Access to the Log File on page 191
4. Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged on page 191
5. Configuring Trace Option Flags on page 191

### Configuring the Filename of the Extended DHCP Local Server Processes Log

By default, the name of the file that records trace output is `jdhcpd`. You can specify a different name by including the `file` statement at the [edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]
file filename;
```

### Configuring the Number and Size of Extended DHCP Local Server Processes Log Files

By default, when the trace file reaches 128 kilobytes (KB) in size, it is renamed `jdhcpd.0`, then `jdhcpd.1`, and so on, until there are three trace files. Then the oldest trace file (`jdhcpd.2`) is overwritten.

You can configure the limits on the number and size of trace files by including the following statements at the [edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]
file filename files number size size;
```

For example, set the maximum file size to 2 MB, and the maximum number of files to 20. When the file that receives the output of the tracking operation (`jdhcpd`) reaches 2 MB, `jdhcpd` is renamed `jdhcpd.0`, and a new file called `jdhcpd` is created. When the new `jdhcpd` reaches 2 MB, `jdhcpd.0` is renamed `jdhcpd.1` and *filename* is renamed `jdhcpd.0`. This process repeats until there are 20 trace files. Then the oldest file (`jdhcpd.19`) is overwritten by the newest file (`jdhcpd.0`).

The number of files can be from 2 through 1000 files. The file size of each file can be from 10KB through 1 gigabyte (GB).

### Configuring Access to the Log File

By default, log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation.

To specify that any user can read all log files, include the `file world-readable` statement at the `[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]
file filename world-readable;
```

To set the default behavior explicitly, include the `file no-world-readable` statement at the `[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]
file filename no-world-readable;
```

### Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged

By default, the trace operations output includes all lines relevant to the logged events.

You can refine the output by including the `match` statement at the `[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]` hierarchy level and specifying a regular expression (regex) to be matched:

```
[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]
file filename match regex;
```

### Configuring Trace Option Flags

By default, only important events are logged. You can configure the trace operations to be logged by including extended DHCP local server tracing flags at the `[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services dhcp-local-server traceoptions]
flag flag;
```

You can configure the following tracing flags:

- `all`—Trace all operations.
- `auth`—Trace authentication operations.
- `database`—Trace database events.
- `fwd`—Trace firewall process events.
- `general`—Trace miscellaneous events.
- `ha`—Trace high availability-related events.
- `interface`—Trace interface operations.
- `io`—Trace I/O operations.

- packet—Trace packet decoding operations.
- packet-option—Trace DHCP option decoding operations.
- rpd—Trace routing protocol process events.
- rtsock—Trace routing socket operations.
- session-db—Trace session database operations.
- state—Trace changes in state.
- ui—Trace user interface operations.

### **Example: Configuring Minimum Extended DHCP Local Server Configuration**

The following example shows the minimum configuration you need to use the extended DHCP local server on the router:

This example creates the server group named **group\_one**, and specifies that the DHCP local server is enabled on interface **fe-0/0/2.0** within the group. The DHCP local server uses the default pool match configuration of **ip-address-first**.

```
[edit system services]
dhcp-local-server {
  group group_one {
    interface fe-0/0/2.0;
  }
}
```

### **Example: Extended DHCP Local Server Configuration with Optional Pool Matching**

The following example shows an extended DHCP local server configuration that includes optional pool matching and interface groups. This configuration specifies that the DHCP local server uses option 82 information to match the named address range for client IP address assignment. The option 82 matching must also be included in the address-assignment pool configuration.

```
[edit system services]
dhcp-local-server {
  group group_one {
    interface fe-0/0/2.0;
    interface fe-0/0/2.1;
  }
  group group_two {
    interface fe-0/0/3.0;
    interface fe-0/0/3.1;
  }
  pool-match-order {
    ip-address-first;
    option-82;
  }
}
```



## Verifying and Managing DHCP Local Server Configuration

To display the client address bindings for the extended DHCP local server, use the following operational commands:

- `show dhcp server binding`
- `show dhcp server statistics`

To clear client address bindings and DHCP local server statistics, use the following operational commands:

- `clear dhcp server binding`
- `clear dhcp server statistics`

For information about using these operations commands, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Reference*.

## Configuring DTCP-over-SSH Service for the Flow-Tap Application

The active monitoring flow-tap application requires you to configure the flow-tap DTCP-over-SSH service. Flow-tap enables you to intercept IPv4 packets transiting an active monitoring router and send a copy of matching packets to one or more content destinations, for use in flexible trend analysis of security threats and in lawful intercept of data.

To enable the flow-tap DTCP-over-SSH service, include the following statements at the `[edit system services]` hierarchy level:

```
flow-tap-dtcp {
  ssh {
    <connection-limit limit>;
    <rate-limit limit>;
  }
}
```

By default, the router supports a limited number of simultaneous flow-tap DTCP-over-SSH sessions and connection attempts per minute. Optionally, you can include either or both of the following statements to change the defaults:

- `connection-limit limit`—Maximum number of simultaneous connections (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 75.
- `rate-limit limit`—Maximum number of connection attempts accepted per minute (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 150.

You must also define user permissions that enable flow-tap users to configure flow-tap services. Specify a login class and access privileges for flow-tap users at the `[edit system login class class-name permissions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class class-name permissions]
(flow-tap | flow-tap-control | flow-tap-operation);
```

The permission bit for a flow-tap login class can be one of the following:

- **flow-tap**—Can view the flow-tap configuration in configuration mode.
- **flow-tap-control**—Can view the flow-tap configuration in configuration mode and configure flow-tap configuration information at the **[edit services flow-tap]** hierarchy level.
- **flow-tap-operation**—Can make flow-tap requests to the router from a remote location using a DTCP client.



**NOTE:** Only users with a configured access privilege of **flow-tap-operation** can initiate flow-tap requests.

---

You can also specify user permissions through the Juniper-User-Permissions RADIUS attribute.

To enable the flow-tap DTCP-over-SSH service, you must also include statements at the **[edit interfaces]** hierarchy level to specify an Adaptive Services PIC that runs the flow-tap service and conveys flow-tap filters from the mediation device to the router. In addition, you must include the **flow-tap** statement at the **[edit services]** hierarchy level.

## Configuring Finger Service for Remote Access to the Router

To configure the router to accept finger as an access service, include the **finger** statement at the **[edit system services]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services]
finger {
  <connection-limit limit>;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
```

By default, the router supports a limited number of simultaneous finger sessions and connection attempts per minute. Optionally, you can include either or both of the following statements to change the defaults:

- **connection-limit limit**—Maximum number of simultaneous connections (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 75.
- **rate-limit limit**—Maximum number of connection attempts accepted per minute (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 150.

You cannot include the **finger** statement on routers that run the JUNOS-FIPS software. We recommend that you do not use the finger service in a Common Criteria environment.

## Configuring FTP Service for Remote Access to the Router

To configure the router to accept FTP as an access service, include the **ftp** statement at the [edit system services] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services]
ftp {
  <connection-limit limit>;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
```

By default, the router supports a limited number of simultaneous FTP sessions and connection attempts per minute. Optionally, you can include either or both of the following statements to change the defaults:

- **connection-limit limit**—Maximum number of simultaneous connections (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 75.
- **rate-limit limit**—Maximum number of connection attempts accepted per minute (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 150.

You can use passive FTP to access devices that accept only passive FTP services. All commands and statements that use FTP also accept passive FTP. Include the **ftp** statement at the [edit system services] hierarchy level to use either active FTP or passive FTP.

To start a passive FTP session, use **pasvftp** (instead of **ftp**) in the standard FTP format (**ftp://destination**). For example:

```
request system software add pasvftp://name.com/jinstall.tgz
```

You cannot include the **ftp** statement on routers that run the JUNOS-FIPS software. We recommend that you do not use the finger service in a Common Criteria environment.

## Configuring SSH Service for Remote Access to the Router

To configure the router to accept SSH as an access service, include the **ssh** statement at the [edit system services] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services]
ssh {
  root-login (allow | deny | deny-password);
  protocol-version [v1 v2];
  <connection-limit limit>;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
```

By default, the router supports a limited number of simultaneous SSH sessions and connection attempts per minute. Optionally, you can include either or both of the following statements to change the defaults:

- **connection-limit *limit***—Maximum number of simultaneous connections (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 75.
- **rate-limit *limit***—Maximum number of connection attempts accepted per minute (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 150.

For information about other configuration settings, see the following topics:

- Configuring the Root Login Through SSH on page 196
- Configuring the SSH Protocol Version on page 196

### Configuring the Root Login Through SSH

By default, users are allowed to log in to the router as **root** through SSH. To control user access through SSH, include the **root-login** statement at the **[edit system services ssh]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services ssh]
root-login (allow | deny | deny-password);
```

**allow**—Allows users to log in to the router as root through SSH. The default is **allow**.

**deny**—Disables users from logging in to the router as root through SSH.

**deny-password**—Allows users to log in to the router as root through SSH when the authentication method (for example, RSA) does not require a password.



**NOTE:** The **root-login** and **protocol-version** statements are supported in JUNOS Release 5.0 and later. If you downgrade to a release earlier than JUNOS Release 5.0, the **root-login** and **protocol-version** statements are ignored if they are present in the configuration file.

---

### Configuring the SSH Protocol Version

By default, version 2 of the SSH protocol is enabled. To configure the router to use only version 1 of the SSH protocol, include the **protocol-version** statement and specify **v1** at the **[edit system services ssh]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services ssh]
protocol-version [ v1 ];
```

To configure the router to use version 1 and 2 of the SSH protocol, include the **protocol-version** statement and specify **v1** and **v2** at the **[edit system services ssh]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services ssh]
protocol-version [ v1 v2 ];
```

You can specify **v1**, **v2**, or both versions (**[ v1 v2 ]**) of the SSH protocol. The default is **v2**.

For J-series Services Routers, the export license software only supports SSH version 1.



**NOTE:** The `root-login` and `protocol-version` statements are supported in JUNOS Release 5.0 and later. If you downgrade to a release prior to release 5.0, the `root-login` and `protocol-version` statements are ignored if they are present in the configuration file.

## Configuring Outbound SSH Service

You can configure a router running the JUNOS software to initiate a TCP/IP connection with a client management application that would be blocked if the client attempted to initiate the connection (for example, if the router is behind a firewall). A single `outbound-ssh` configuration statement instructs the router to create a TCP/IP connection with the client management application and to forward the router's identity. Once the connection is established, the management application initiates the SSH sequence as the client and the router as the server that authenticates the client.



**NOTE:** There is no initiation command with outbound SSH. Once outbound SSH is configured and committed, the router begins to initiate an outbound SSH connection based on the committed configuration. It continues to attempt to create this connection until successful. If the connection between the router and the client management application is broken, the router again attempts to create a new outbound SSH connection until successful. This connection is maintained until the outbound SSH stanza is removed from the configuration.

To configure the router running JUNOS software for outbound SSH connections, include the `outbound-ssh` statement at the `[edit system services]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services]
outbound-ssh {
  client client-id {
    address {
      port port-number;
      retry number;
      timeout seconds;
    }
    device-id device-id;
    keep-alive {
      retry number;
      timeout seconds;
    }
    reconnect-strategy (in-order | sticky);
    secret password;
    services netconf;
  }
  traceoptions {
    file filename <files number> <match regex> <size size> <world-readable |
      no-world-readable>;
    flag flag;
    no-remote-trace;
```

```
}
}
```

The following topics describe the tasks for configuring the outbound-SSH service:

1. Configuring the Router's Device Identifier for Outbound SSH Connections on page 198
2. Sending the Router's Public SSH Host Key to the Outbound SSH Client on page 198
3. Configuring Keepalive Messages for Outbound SSH Connections on page 199
4. Configuring a New Outbound SSH Connection on page 200
5. Configuring the Outbound SSH Client to Accept NETCONF as an Available Service on page 200
6. Configuring Outbound SSH Clients on page 200

### Configuring the Router's Device Identifier for Outbound SSH Connections

Each time the router establishes an outbound SSH connection, it first sends an initiation sequence to the management client. This sequence identifies the router to the management client. Within this transmission is the value of *device-id*.

To configure the router's device identifier, include the **device-id** statement at the [edit system services outbound-ssh client *client-id*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]
device-id device-id;
```

The initiation sequence when **secret** is not configured:

```
MSG-ID: DEVICE-CONN-INFO\r\n
MSG-VER: V1\r\n
DEVICE-ID: <device-id>\r\n
```

### Sending the Router's Public SSH Host Key to the Outbound SSH Client

Each time the router establishes an outbound SSH connection, it first sends an initiation sequence to the management client. This sequence identifies the router to the management client. Within this transmission is the value of *device-id*.

To configure the router's device identifier, include the **device-id** statement at the [edit system services outbound-ssh client *client-id*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]
device-id device-id;
```

The initiation sequence when **secret** is not configured:

```
MSG-ID: DEVICE-CONN-INFO\r\n
MSG-VER: V1\r\n
DEVICE-ID: <device-id>\r\n
```

During the initialization of an SSH connection, the client authenticates the identity of the router using the router's public SSH host key. Therefore, before the client can

initiate the SSH sequence, it needs the router's public SSH key. When you configure the **secret** statement, the router running JUNOS software passes the router's public SSH key as part of the outbound SSH connection initiation sequence.

When the **secret** statement is set and the router establishes an outbound SSH connection, the router communicates its device ID, its public SSH key, and an SHA1 hash derived in part from the **secret** statement. The value of the **secret** statement is shared between the router and the management client. The client uses the shared secret to authenticate the public SSH host key it is receiving to determine whether the public key is from the router identified by the **device-id** statement.

Using the **secret** statement to transport the router's public SSH host key is optional. You can manually transport and install the public key onto the client system.



**NOTE:** Including the **secret** statement means that the router's public SSH host key is sent every time the router establishes a connection to the client. It is then up to the client to decide what to do with the SSH host key if it already has one for that router. We recommend that you replace the client's copy with the new key. Host keys can change for various reasons and by replacing the key each time a connection is established, you ensure that the client has the latest key.

To configure a router that is running the JUNOS software to send the router's public SSH host key when connection to the client occurs, include the **secret** statement at the [edit system services outbound-ssh client *client-id*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]  
secret password;
```

The message sent by the JUNOS router when the **secret** attribute is configured:

```
MSG-ID: DEVICE-CONN-INFO\r\n  
MSG-VER: V1\r\n  
DEVICE-ID: <device-id>\r\n  
HOST-KEY: <public-host-key>\r\n  
HMAC:<HMAC(pub-SSH-host-key, <secret>>)>\r\n
```

## Configuring Keepalive Messages for Outbound SSH Connections

Once the client application has the router's public SSH host key, it can then initiate the SSH sequence as if it had created the TCP/IP connection and authenticate the router using its copy of the router's public host SSH key as part of that sequence. The router authenticates the client user through the mechanisms supported in the JUNOS software (RSA/DSA public string or password authentication).

To enable the router to send SSH protocol keepalive messages to the client application, configure the **keep-alive** statement at the [edit system services outbound-ssh client *client-id*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]  
keep-alive {  
  retry number;  
  timeout seconds;
```

```
}
```

The `timeout` option specifies how long the router waits to receive data before sending a request for acknowledgment from the application. The default is 15 seconds.

The `retry` option specifies how many keepalive messages the router sends without receiving a response from the client. When that number is exceeded, the router disconnects from the application, ending the outbound SSH connection. The default is three retries.

### Configuring a New Outbound SSH Connection

When disconnected, the router begins to initiate a new outbound SSH connection. To specify how the router reconnects to the server after a connection is dropped, include the `reconnect-strategy` statement at the `[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services outbound-ssh client-id]
reconnect-strategy (sticky | in-order);
```

The `sticky` option configures the router to reconnect to the server that it disconnected.

The `in-order` option configures the router to reconnect to the first configured server. If this server is unavailable, the router tries to connect to the next configured server. This process repeats until a connection is completed.

You can also specify the number of retry attempts and set the amount of time before stopping the reconnection attempts. See “Configuring Keepalive Messages for Outbound SSH Connections” on page 199.

### Configuring the Outbound SSH Client to Accept NETCONF as an Available Service

To configure the application to accept NETCONF as an available service, include the `services netconf` statement at the `[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]
services {
  netconf;
}
```

### Configuring Outbound SSH Clients

To configure the clients available for this outbound SSH connection, list each client with a separate `address` statement at the `[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services outbound-ssh client client-id]
address {
  retry number;
  timeout seconds;
  port port-number;
```



```
}
```

The `client` *client-id* value is not forwarded to the client management application. This value serves to uniquely identify the `outbound-ssh` configuration stanza. Each `outbound-ssh` stanza represents a single outbound SSH connection. Thus, the administrator is free to assign the `client-id` any meaningful unique value.

The `address` statement is the IP address or host name of the client.

The `timeout` statement specifies how long the application waits between attempts to reconnect to the specified IP address, in seconds. The default is 15 seconds.

The `retry` statement specifies how many connection attempts a router can make to the specified IP address. The default is 3.

The `port` statement specifies the port at which a server listens for outbound SSH connection requests.

## Configuring Telnet Service for Remote Access to a Router

To configure the router to accept Telnet as an access service, include the `telnet` statement at the `[edit system services]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services]
telnet {
  <connection-limit limit>;
  <rate-limit limit>;
}
```

By default, the router supports a limited number of simultaneous Telnet sessions and connection attempts per minute.

Optionally, you can include either or both of the following statements to change the defaults:

- `connection-limit limit`—Maximum number of simultaneous connections (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 75.
- `rate-limit limit`—Maximum number of connection attempts accepted per minute (a value from 1 through 250). The default is 150.

You cannot include the `telnet` statement on routers that run the JUNOS-FIPS software. We recommend that you do not use Telnet in a Common Criteria environment.

## Configuring Password Authentication for Console Access to PICs

By default, there is no password setting for console access. To configure console access to the Physical Interface Cards (PICs), include the `pic-console-authentication` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
pic-console-authentication {
  (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);
}
```

```
}
```

**encrypted-password "password"**—Use Message Digest 5 (MD5) or other encrypted authentication. Specify the MD5 or other password. You can specify only one encrypted password.

You cannot configure a blank password for **encrypted-password** using blank quotation marks (" "). You must configure a password whose number of characters range from 1 through 128 characters and enclose the password in quotation marks.

**plain-text-password**—Use a plain-text password. The command-line interface (CLI) prompts you for the password and then encrypts it. The CLI displays the encrypted version, and the software places the encrypted version in its user database. You can specify only one plain-text password.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Message

By default, no login message is displayed. To configure a system login message, include the **message** statement at the **[edit system login]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login]
message text;
```

If the message text contains any spaces, enclose it in quotation marks.

**Special Characters**—You can format the message using the following special characters:

- \n—New line
- \t—Horizontal tab
- \'—Single quotation mark
- \"—Double quotation mark
- \\—Backslash

The following is a sample login message configuration:

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    message "\n\n\n\tUNAUTHORIZED USE OF THIS SYSTEM\n
\tIS STRICTLY PROHIBITED!\n\n\tPlease contact
\t'company-noc@company.com\t' to gain\naccess
to this equipment if you need authorization.\n\n\n";
  }
}
```

The preceding login message configuration example produces a login message similar to the following:

```
server% telnet router1
Trying 1.1.1.1...
Connected to router1.
```

Escape character is '^\'.

```
UNAUTHORIZED USE OF THIS SYSTEM
IS STRICTLY PROHIBITED!
```

```
Please contact 'company-noc@company.com' to gain
access to this equipment if you need authorization.
```

```
router1 (ttyp0)
```

```
login:
```

A system login message appears before the user logs in. A system login announcement appears after the user logs in. See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Announcement” on page 203.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Announcement

---

By default, no login announcement is displayed. To configure a system login announcement, include the announcement statement at the [edit system login] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login]
announcement text;
```

If the announcement text contains any spaces, enclose it in quotation marks.

A system login announcement appears after the user logs in. A system login message appears before the user logs in. See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Message” on page 202.



**TIP:** You can use the same special characters described in “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Message” on page 202 to format your system login announcement.

---

## Disabling JUNOS Software Processes

---



**CAUTION:** Never disable any of the software processes unless instructed to do so by a Customer Support engineer.

---

To disable a software process, specify the appropriate option in the processes statement at the [edit system] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
processes {
  process-name (enable | disable);
```

}



**NOTE:** The *process-name* variable is one of the valid process names. You can obtain a complete list of process names by using the CLI command completion feature. For additional information, see **processes**.

## Configuring Failover to Backup Media if a JUNOS Software Process Fails

For routers with redundant Routing Engines, you can configure the routing platform to switch to backup media that contains a version of the system if a software process fails repeatedly. You can configure the routing platform to fail over either to backup media or to the other Routing Engine. To configure automatic switchover to backup media if a software process fails, include the **failover** statement at the **[edit system processes process-name]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system processes]
process-name failover (alternate-media | other-routing-engine);
```

*process-name* is one of the valid process names. If this statement is configured for a process, and that process fails four times within 30 seconds, the router reboots from either the alternative media or the other Routing Engine.

## Configuring Password Authentication for the Diagnostics Port

If you have been asked by Customer Support personnel to connect a physical console to a control board or forwarding component on the router (such as the System Control Board [SCB], System and Switch Board [SSB], or Switching and Forwarding Module [SFM]) to perform diagnostics, you can configure a password on the diagnostics port. This password provides an extra level of security.

To configure a password on the diagnostics port, include the **diag-port-authentication** statement at the **[edit system]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
diag-port-authentication (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);
```

You cannot configure a blank password for **encrypted-password** using blank quotation marks (" "). You must configure a password whose number of characters range from 1 through 128 characters and enclose the password in quotation marks.

You can use an MD5 password, or you can enter a plain-text password that the JUNOS software encrypts (using MD5-style encryption) before it places it into the password database. For an MD5 password, specify the password in the configuration. Null-password (empty) is not permitted.

If you configure the **plain-text-password** option, the CLI prompts you for the password.

For routers that have more than one SSB, the same password is used for both SSBs.

## Viewing Core Files from JUNOS Software Processes

---

When an internal JUNOS process generates a core file, the output found at `/var/crash/` and `/var/tmp/` can now be viewed. This provides a quick method of finding core issues across large networks.

Use the CLI command `show system core-dumps` to view core dumps.

```
root@sierra> show system core-dumps
-rw----- 1 root  wheel  268369920 Jun 18 17:59 /var/crash/vmcore.0
-rw-rw---- 1 root  field   3371008 Jun 18 17:53 /var/tmp/rpd.core.0
-rw-r--r-- 1 root  wheel   27775914 Jun 18 17:59 /var/crash/kernel.0
```

## Saving Core Files from JUNOS Software Processes

---

By default, when an internal JUNOS process generates a core file, the file and associated context information are saved for debugging purposes in a compressed tar file named `/var/tmp/process-name.core.core-number.tgz`. The contextual information includes the configuration and system log message files.

To disable the saving of core files and associated context information, include the `no-saved-core-context` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
no-saved-core-context;
```

To save the core files only, include the `saved-core-files` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level and specify the number of files to save:

```
[edit system]
saved-core-files number;
```

*number* is the number of core files to save and can be a value from 1 through 64.

To save the core files along with the contextual information, include the `saved-core-context` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
saved-core-context;
```

## Using JUNOS Software to Configure Logical System Administrators

---

Using the JUNOS software, you can partition a single router into multiple logical devices that perform independent routing tasks. When creating logical systems, you must configure logical system administrators and interfaces, assign logical interfaces to logical systems, and configure various other logical system statements.



**NOTE:** Beginning with JUNOS software Release 9.3, the logical router feature has been renamed logical system.

All configuration statements, operational commands, **show** command outputs, error messages, log messages, and SNMP MIB objects that contain the string `logical-router` or `logical-routers` have been changed to `logical-system` and `logical-systems`, respectively.

---

The master administrator can assign one or more logical system administrators to each logical system. Once assigned to a logical system, administrators are restricted to viewing only configurations of the logical system to which they are assigned and accessing only the operational commands that apply to that particular logical system. This restriction means that these administrators cannot access global configuration statements, and all command output is restricted to the logical system to which the administrators are assigned.

To configure logical system administrators, include the `logical-system` *logical-system-name* statement at the `[edit system login class class-name]` hierarchy level and apply the class to the user. For example:

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    class admin1 {
      permissions all;
      logical-system logical-system-LS1;
    }
    class admin2 {
      permissions view; # Gives users assigned to class admin2 the ability to view
                        # but not to change the configuration.
      logical-system logical-system-LS2;
    }
    user user1 {
      class admin1;
    }
    user user2 {
      class admin2;
    }
  }
}
```

Fully implementing logical systems requires that you also configure any protocols, routing statements, and policy statements for the logical system.

## Using JUNOS Software to Configure a Router to Transfer Its Configuration to an Archive Site

You can configure a router to transfer its configuration to an archive file periodically. Tasks to configure the router configuration transfer to an archive site are:

1. Configuring the Router to Transfer Its Currently Active Configuration to an Archive on page 207
2. Configuring the Transfer Interval for Periodic Transfer of the Active Configuration to an Archive Site on page 207
3. Configuring Transfer of the Current Active Configuration When a Configuration Is Committed on page 208
4. Configuring Archive Sites for Transfer of Active Configuration Files on page 208

### Configuring the Router to Transfer Its Currently Active Configuration to an Archive

If you want to back up your router's current configuration to an archive site, you can configure the router to transfer its currently active configuration by FTP periodically or after each commit.

To configure the router to transfer its currently active configuration to an archive site, include statements at the [edit system archival configuration] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system archival configuration]
transfer-interval interval;
transfer-on-commit;
archive-sites {
  ftp://username<:password>@host-address<:port>/url-path;
  scp://username<:password>@host-address<:port>/url-path;
}
```



**NOTE:** When specifying a URL in a JUNOS statement using an IPv6 host address, you must enclose the entire URL in quotation marks (") and enclose the IPv6 host address in brackets ([ ]). For example, "ftp://username<:password>@[ipv6-host-address]<:port>/url-path"

### Configuring the Transfer Interval for Periodic Transfer of the Active Configuration to an Archive Site

To configure the router to periodically transfer its currently active configuration to an archive site, include the `transfer-interval` statement at the [edit system archival configuration] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system archival configuration]
transfer-interval interval;
```

The *interval* is a period of time ranging from 15 through 2880 minutes.

## Configuring Transfer of the Current Active Configuration When a Configuration Is Committed

To configure the router to transfer its currently active configuration to an archive site each time you commit a candidate configuration, include the `transfer-on-commit` statement at the `[edit system archival configuration]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system archival configuration]
transfer-on-commit;
```



**NOTE:** When specifying a URL in a JUNOS statement using an IPv6 host address, you must enclose the entire URL in quotation marks (" ") and enclose the IPv6 host address in brackets ([ ]). For example,  
`"scp://username<:password>@[ipv6-host-address]<:port>/url-path"`

## Configuring Archive Sites for Transfer of Active Configuration Files

When you configure the router to transfer its configuration files, you specify an archive site to which the files are transferred. If you specify more than one archive site, the router attempts to transfer files to the first archive site in the list, moving to the next site only if the transfer fails.

When you use the `archive-sites` statement, you can specify a destination as a Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) URL, FTP URL, or secure copy (SCP)-style remote file specification. The URL type `file://` is also supported.

To configure the archive site, include the `archive-sites` statement at the `[edit system archival configuration]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system archival configuration]
archive-sites {
  ftp://username@host:<port>url-path password password;
  http://username@host:<port>url-path password password;
  scp://username@host:<port>url-path password password;
  file://<path>/<filename>;
}
```



**NOTE:** When specifying a URL in a JUNOS statement using an IPv6 host address, you must enclose the entire URL in quotation marks (" ") and enclose the IPv6 host address in brackets ([ ]). For example,  
`"scp://username<:password>@[ipv6-host-address]<:port>/url-path"`

When you specify the archive site, do not add a forward slash (/) to the end of the URL. The format for the destination filename is as follows:

```
<router-name>_juniper.conf[.gz]_YYYYMMDD_HHMMSS
```





**NOTE:** The time included in the destination filename is always in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) regardless of whether the time on the router is configured as UTC or the local time zone. The default time zone on the router is UTC.

## Using JUNOS Software to Specify the Number of Configurations Stored on the CompactFlash Card

By default, the JUNOS software saves the current configuration and three previous versions of the committed configuration on the CompactFlash card. The currently operational JUNOS software configuration is stored in the file `juniper.conf.gz`, and the last three committed configurations are stored in the files `juniper.conf.1.gz`, `juniper.conf.2.gz`, and `juniper.conf.3.gz`. These four files are located in the router's CompactFlash card in the directory `/config`.

In addition to saving the current configuration and the current operational version, you can also specify how many previous versions of the committed configurations you want stored on the CompactFlash card in the directory `/config`. The remaining previous versions of committed configurations are stored in the directory `/var/db/config` on the hard disk. This is useful when you have very large configurations that might not fit on the CompactFlash card.

To specify how many previous versions of the committed configurations you want stored on the CompactFlash card, include the `max-configurations-on-flash` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system]
max-configurations-on-flash number;
```

*number* is a value from 0 through 49.

## Configuring RADIUS System Accounting

With RADIUS accounting enabled, Juniper Network routers, acting as RADIUS clients, can notify the RADIUS server about user activities such as software logins, configuration changes, and interactive commands. The framework for RADIUS accounting is described in RFC 2866.

Tasks for configuring RADIUS system accounting are:

1. Configuring Auditing of User Events on a RADIUS Server on page 209
2. Specifying RADIUS Server Accounting and Auditing Events on page 210
3. Configuring RADIUS Server Accounting on page 210

### Configuring Auditing of User Events on a RADIUS Server

To audit user events, include the following statements at the `[edit system accounting]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system accounting]
```

```

events [ events ];
destination {
  radius {
    server {
      server-address {
        accounting-port port-number;
        secret password;
        source-address address;
        retry number;
        timeout seconds;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

### Specifying RADIUS Server Accounting and Auditing Events

To specify the events you want to audit when using a RADIUS server for authentication, include the **events** statement at the [edit system accounting] hierarchy level:

```

[edit system accounting]
events [ events ];

```

**events** is one or more of the following:

- login—Audit logins
- change-log—Audit configuration changes
- interactive-commands—Audit interactive commands (any command-line input)

### Configuring RADIUS Server Accounting

To configure RADIUS server accounting, include the **server** statement at the [edit system accounting destination radius] hierarchy level:

```

server {
  server-address {
    accounting-port port-number;
    secret password;
    source-address address;
    retry number;
    timeout seconds;
  }
}

```

**server-address** specifies the address of the RADIUS server. To configure multiple RADIUS servers, include multiple **server** statements.



**NOTE:** If no RADIUS servers are configured at the [edit system accounting destination radius] statement hierarchy level, the JUNOS software uses the RADIUS servers configured at the [edit system radius-server] hierarchy level.

accounting-port *port-number* specifies the RADIUS server accounting port number.

The default port number is 1813.



**NOTE:** If you enable RADIUS accounting at the [edit access profile *profile-name* accounting-order] hierarchy level, accounting is triggered on the default port of 1813 even if you do not specify a value for the accounting-port statement.

You must specify a secret (password) that the local router passes to the RADIUS client by including the **secret** statement. If the password contains spaces, enclose the entire password in quotation marks (“ ”).

In the **source-address** statement, specify a source address for the RADIUS server. Each RADIUS request sent to a RADIUS server uses the specified source address. The source address is a valid IPv4 address configured on one of the router interfaces.

Optionally, you can specify the number of times that the router attempts to contact a RADIUS authentication server by including the **retry** statement. By default, the router retries three times. You can configure the router to retry from 1 through 10 times.

Optionally, you can specify the length of time that the local router waits to receive a response from a RADIUS server by including the **timeout** statement. By default, the router waits 3 seconds. You can configure the timeout to be from 1 through 90 seconds.

## Example: Configuring RADIUS System Accounting

The following example shows three servers (10.5.5.5, 10.6.6.6, and 10.7.7.7) configured for RADIUS accounting.

```
system {
  accounting {
    events [ login change-log interactive-commands ];
    destination {
      radius {
        server {
          10.5.5.5 {
            accounting-port 3333;
            secret $9$dkafeqwrew;
            source-address 10.1.1.1;
            retry 3;
            timeout 3;
          }
          10.6.6.6 secret $9$fe3erqwrez;
```

```

    10.7.7.7 secret $9$f34929ftby;
  }
}
}
}
}

```

## Configuring TACACS+ System Accounting

You can use TACACS+ to track and log software logins, configuration changes, and interactive commands. To audit these events, include the following statements at the [edit system accounting] hierarchy level:

```

[edit system accounting]
events [ events ];
destination {
  tacplus {
    server {
      server-address {
        port port-number;
        secret password;
        single-connection;
        timeout seconds;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

Tasks for configuring TACACS+ system accounting are:

1. Specifying TACACS+ Auditing and Accounting Events on page 212
2. Configuring TACACS+ Server Accounting on page 212

### Specifying TACACS+ Auditing and Accounting Events

To specify the events you want to audit when using a TACACS+ server for authentication, include the **events** statement at the [edit system accounting] hierarchy level:

```

[edit system accounting]
events [ events ];

```

**events** is one or more of the following:

- login—Audit logins
- change-log—Audit configuration changes
- interactive-commands—Audit interactive commands (any command-line input)

### Configuring TACACS+ Server Accounting

To configure TACACS+ server accounting, include the **server** statement at the [edit system accounting destination tacplus] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system accounting destination tacplus]
server {
  server-address {
    port port-number;
    secret password;
    single-connection;
    timeout seconds;
  }
}
```

*server-address* specifies the address of the TACACS+ server. To configure multiple TACACS+ servers, include multiple **server** statements.



**NOTE:** If no TACACS+ servers are configured at the [edit system accounting destination tacplus] statement hierarchy level, the JUNOS software uses the TACACS+ servers configured at the [edit system tacplus-server] hierarchy level.

*port-number* specifies the TACACS+ server port number.

You must specify a secret (password) that the local router passes to the TACACS+ client by including the **secret** statement. If the password contains spaces, enclose the entire password in quotation marks (" "). The password used by the local router must match that used by the server.

Optionally, you can specify the length of time that the local router waits to receive a response from a TACACS+ server by including the **timeout** statement. By default, the router waits 3 seconds. You can configure this to be a value in the range from 1 through 90 seconds.

Optionally, you can maintain one open TCP connection to the server for multiple requests, rather than opening a connection for each connection attempt, by including the **single-connection** statement.

To ensure that start and stop requests for accounting of login events are correctly logged in the Accounting file instead of the Administration log file on a TACACS+ server, include either the **no-cmd-attribute-value** statement or the **exclude-cmd-attribute** at the [edit system tacplus-options] hierarchy level.

If you use the **no-cmd-attribute-value** statement, the value of the **cmd** attribute is set to a null string in the start and stop requests. If you use the **exclude-cmd-attribute** statement, the **cmd** attribute is totally excluded from the start and stop requests. Both statements support the correct logging of accounting requests in the Accounting file, instead of the Administration file.

```
[edit system tacplus-options]
(no-cmd-attribute-value | exclude-cmd-attribute);
```

## Configuring TACACS+ Accounting on a TX Matrix Platform

On a TX Matrix platform, TACACS+ accounting should be configured only under the groups **re0** and **re1**.



**NOTE:** Accounting should *not* be configured at the [edit system] hierarchy; on a TX Matrix platform, control is done under the switch-card chassis only.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Work with SRC Software

You can enable JUNOS software to work with the Session and Resource Control (SRC) software. The SRC software supports dynamic service activation engine (SAE) functionality on JUNOS routers. To do this, include the following statements at the [edit system services service-deployment] hierarchy level:

```
[edit system services service-deployment]
servers server-address {
  port port-number;
}
source-address source-address;
```

*server-address* is the IPv4 address of the SRC server.

By default, *port-number* is set to 3333 and is a TCP port number.

*source-address* is optional, and is the local IP version 4 (IPv4) address to be used as the source address for traffic to the SRC server.



**NOTE:** By default, when a connection between SRC and a Juniper Networks router is established, the SRC process (sdxd) starts a JUNOScript session as **user root**. Beginning with JUNOS Release 7.6, you have the option of configuring **user sdx** with a different classification at the [edit system login] hierarchy level.

For more information about SRC software, see the SRC documentation set.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv4 Rate Limit for ICMPv4 Routing Engine Messages

To limit the rate at which ICMPv4 messages can be generated by the Routing Engine and sent to the Routing Engine, include the **icmpv4-rate-limit** statement at the [edit system internet-options] hierarchy level:

```
icmpv4-rate-limit {
  bucket-size bucket-size;
  packet-rate packet-rate;
}
```

The bucket size is the number of seconds in the rate-limiting bucket. The packet rate is the packets earned per second. Specify a **bucket-size** from 0 through 4294967295 seconds. The default value is 5 seconds. Specify a **packet-rate** from 0 through 4294967295. The default value is 1000.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv6 Rate Limit for ICMPv6 Routing Engine Messages

---

To limit the rate at which ICMPv6 messages are sent, include the `icmpv6-rate-limit` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
icmpv6-rate-limit {
    bucket-size bucket-size;
    packet-rate packet-rate;
}
```

The bucket size is the the number of seconds in the rate-limiting bucket. The packet rate is the packets earned per second. Specify a `bucket-size` from 0 through 4294967295 seconds. The default value is 5 seconds. Specify a `packet-rate` from 0 through 4294967295. The default value is 1000.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software for IP-IP Path MTU Discovery on IP-IP Tunnel Connections

---

By default, path maximum transmission unit (MTU) discovery on outgoing IP-IP tunnel connections is enabled. To enable IP-IP path MTU discovery, include the `ipip-path-mtu-discovery` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

To disable IP-IP path MTU discovery, include the `no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery;
```

To reenable IP-IP path MTU discovery, include the `ipip-path-mtu-discovery` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
ipip-path-mtu-discovery;
```

## Configuring TCP MSS for Session Negotiation

---

During session connection establishment, two peers agree in negotiations to determine the IP segment size of packets that they will exchange during their communication. The TCP MSS (maximum segment size) value in TCP SYN packets specifies the maximum number of bytes that a TCP packet's data field, or segment, can contain. An MSS value that is set too high could result in an IP datagram that is too large to send and that must be fragmented. Fragmentation can incur additional overhead cost and packet loss.

To diminish the likelihood of fragmentation and to protect against packet loss, you can use the `tcp-mss` statement to specify a lower TCP MSS value. The `tcp-mss` statement applies to all IPv4 TCP SYN packets traversing all the router's ingress interfaces whose MSS value is higher than the one you specify. You cannot exempt particular ports from its effects.

The following sections describe how to configure TCP MSS on T-series and M-series Routing Platforms and J-series Services Routers, respectively:

1. Configuring TCP MSS on T-series and M-series Routing Platforms on page 216
2. Configuring TCP MSS on J-series Services Routers on page 216

### **Configuring TCP MSS on T-series and M-series Routing Platforms**

To specify a TCP MSS value on T-series and M-series routing platforms, include the `tcp-mss` statement at the `[edit services service-set service-set-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit services service-set service-set-name]
tcp-mss mss-value;
interface-service {
  service-interface sp-fpc/pic/port;
}
```

The range of the `tcp-mss mss-value` parameter is from 536 through 65535.

To view statistics of SYN packets received and SYN packets whose MSS value is modified, issue the `show services service-sets statistics tcp-mss` operational mode command.

For further information about configuring TCP MSS on T-series and M-series routing platforms, see the *JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

### **Configuring TCP MSS on J-series Services Routers**

To specify a TCP MSS value on a J-series Services Router, include the following statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
tcp-mss {
  mss-value;
}
```

The range of the `mss-value` parameter is from 64 through 65535.

To remove the TCP MSS specification, use the following command:

```
delete system internet-options tcp-mss
```

For more information about configuring TCP MSS and session negotiation on J-series Services Routers, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

### **Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Path MTU Discovery**

By default, path MTU (PMTU) discovery for IPv6 packets is enabled. To disable IPv6 PMTU discovery, include the `no-ipv6-path-mtu-discovery` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:



```
[edit system internet-options]
no-ipv6-path-mtu-discovery;
```

To configure IPv6 PMTU discovery timeout in minutes, include the `ipv6-path-mtu-discovery-timeout` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
ipv6-path-mtu-discovery-timeout minutes;
```

For details about IPv6 PMTU, see RFC 1981, *Path MTU Discovery for IP version 6*.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Duplicate Address Detection Attempts

---

The `ipv6-duplicate-addr-detection-transmits` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level controls the number of attempts for IPv6 duplicate address detection. The default value is 3.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software for Acceptance of IPv6 Packets with a Zero Hop-Limit

---

The `ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit` and `no-ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit` statements are used to enable and disable rejection of incoming IPv6 packets that have a zero hop-limit value in their header.

By default, such packets are rejected both when they are addressed to the local host and when they are transiting the router. To accept zero hop-limit packets addressed to the local host, include the `no-ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level. Transit packets are still dropped.

```
{master}[edit]
user@host#
set system internet-options no-ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing GRE Tunnel Connections

---

By default, path MTU discovery on outgoing GRE tunnel connections is enabled. To disable GRE path MTU discovery, include the `no-gre-path-mtu-discovery` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
no-gre-path-mtu-discovery;
```

To reenabling GRE path MTU discovery, include the `gre-path-mtu-discovery` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
gre-path-mtu-discovery;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing TCP Connections

---

By default, path MTU discovery on outgoing TCP connections is disabled. To enable path MTU discovery, include the `path-mtu-discovery` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
path-mtu-discovery;
```

To disable path MTU discovery on outgoing TCP connections, include the `no-path-mtu-discovery` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
no-path-mtu-discovery;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Ignore ICMP Source Quench Messages

---

By default, Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) source quench is disabled. You enable `source quench` when you want the JUNOS software to ignore ICMP source quench messages. To do this, include the `source-quench` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
source-quench;
```

To disable ICMP source quench, include the `no-source-quench` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
no-source-quench;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the Router to Drop Packets with the SYN and FIN Bits Set

---

By default, the router accepts packets that have both the SYN and FIN bits set in the TCP flag. You can configure the router to drop packets with both the SYN and FIN bits set. Accepting packets with the SYN and FIN bits set can result in security vulnerabilities, such as denial-of-service attacks. To configure the router to drop such packets, include the `tcp-drop-synfin-set` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
tcp-drop-synfin-set;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable TCP RFC 1323 Extensions

---

To disable RFC 1323 TCP extensions, include the `no-tcp-rfc1323` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
no-tcp-rfc1323;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the TCP RFC 1323 PAWS Extension

---

To configure the JUNOS Software to disable Protection Against Wrapped Sequence (PAWS) number extension (described in RFC 1323, *TCP Extensions for High Performance*), include the `no-tcp-rfc1323-paws` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
no-tcp-rfc1323-paws;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Extend the Default Port Address Range

---

By default, the upper range of a port address is 5000. You can increase the range from which the port number can be selected to decrease the probability that someone can determine your port number.

To configure the JUNOS Software to extend the default port address range, include the `source-port` statement at the `[edit system internet-options]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system internet-options]
source-port upper-limit upper-limit;
```

`upper-limit upper-limit` is the upper limit of a source port address and can be a value from 5000 through 65,355.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software ARP Learning and Aging Options for Mapping IPv4 Network Addresses to MAC Addresses

---

The Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol used by IPv4 to map IP network addresses to MAC addresses. This topic describes how to set passive ARP learning and ARP aging options for routers.

Tasks for configuring ARP learning and aging are:

1. Configuring Passive ARP Learning for Backup VRRP Routers on page 219
2. Adjusting the ARP Aging Timer on page 220

### Configuring Passive ARP Learning for Backup VRRP Routers

By default, the backup VRRP router drops ARP requests for the VRRP-IP to VRRP-MAC address translation. The backup router does not learn the ARP (IP-to-MAC address) mappings for the hosts sending the requests. When it detects a failure of the master router and becomes the new master, the backup router must learn all the entries that were present in the ARP cache of the master router. In environments with many directly attached hosts, such as metro Ethernet environments, the number of ARP entries to learn can be high. This can cause a significant transition delay, during which traffic transmitted to some of the hosts might be dropped.

Passive ARP learning enables the ARP cache in the backup router to hold approximately the same contents as the ARP cache in the master router, thus preventing the problem of learning ARP entries in a burst. To enable passive ARP learning, include the **passive-learning** statement at the **[edit system arp]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system arp]
passive-learning;
```

We recommend setting passive learning on both the backup and master VRRP routers. This prevents the need to intervene manually when the master router becomes the backup router. While a router is operating as the master, the passive learning configuration has no operational impact. The configuration takes effect only when the router is operating as a backup router.

## Adjusting the ARP Aging Timer

By default, the ARP aging timer is set at 20 minutes. In environments with many directly attached hosts, such as metro Ethernet environments, increasing the amount of time between ARP updates by configuring the ARP aging timer can improve performance. However, in some scenarios, it might be desirable to lower the ARP aging timer value to prevent the flooding of traffic and improve performance.

In JUNOS Release 9.4 and later, the range of the ARP aging timer is from 1 through 240 minutes.

To configure a system-wide ARP aging timer, include the **aging-timer** statement at the **[edit system arp]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system arp]
aging-timer minutes;
```

You can also configure the ARP aging timer for each logical interface of family type **inet**. To configure the ARP aging timer at the logical interface level, specify the timer value in minutes at the

**[edit system arp aging-timer interface *interface-name*]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit system arp aging-timer interface interface-name]
aging-timer aging-timer-minutes;
```



**NOTE:** If the aging timer value is configured both at the system and the logical interface levels, the value configured at the logical interface level takes precedence for the specific logical interface.

---

The timer value you configure takes effect as ARP entries expire. Each refreshed ARP entry receives the new timer value. The new timer value does not apply to ARP entries that exist at the time you commit the configuration.

## Using JUNOS Software to Configure System Alarms to Appear Automatically on J-series Routers

You can configure J-series Services Routers to execute a `show system alarms` command whenever a user with the login class `admin` logs on to the router. To do so, include the `login-alarms` statement at the `[edit system login class admin]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system login class admin]
login-alarms;
```

For more information on the `show system alarms` command, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

## System Alarms on J-series Routers

Table 29 on page 221 describes system alarms that may occur on J-series routers. These alarms are preset and cannot be modified.

**Table 29: System Alarms on J-series Routers**

Alarm Type	Alarm Summary	Remedy
Configuration	This alarm appears if you have not created a rescue configuration for the router. If you inadvertently commit a configuration that denies management access to the router, you must either connect a console to the router or invoke a rescue configuration. Using a rescue configuration is the recommended method. A rescue configuration is one that you know allows management access to the router.	Create the rescue configuration.
License	This alarm appears if you have configured at least one software feature that requires a feature license, but no valid license for the feature is currently installed.	Install a valid license key.



## Chapter 11

# Security Configuration Example

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Example: Configuring a Router's Name and Domain Name on page 223
- Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication on page 223
- Example: Creating Login Classes on page 224
- Example: Defining User Login Accounts on page 225
- Example: Defining RADIUS Template Accounts on page 225
- Example: Enabling SSH Connection Services on page 226
- Example: Configuring System Logging on page 226
- Example: Configuring NTP as a Single Time Source for Router Clock Synchronization on page 227
- Example: Configuring ATM, SONET, Loopback, and Out-of-band Management Interfaces on page 227
- Example: Configuring SNMPv3 on page 229
- Examples: Configuring Protocol-Independent Routing Properties on page 232
- Example: Configuring the BGP and IS-IS Routing Protocols on page 233
- Configuring Firewall Policies and Filters on page 235
- Example: Consolidated Security Configuration on page 240

### Example: Configuring a Router's Name and Domain Name

---

The following example shows how to configure the router's name and domain name:

```
[edit]
system {
    host-name Secure-Router;
    domain-name company.com;
    default-address-selection;
}
```

### Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication

---

The JUNOS software supports two protocols for central authentication of users on multiple routers: Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) and Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+). We recommend RADIUS

because it is a multivendor IETF standard, and its features are more widely accepted than those of TACACS+ or other proprietary systems. In addition, we recommend using a one-time-password system for increased security, and all vendors of these systems support RADIUS.

In the JUNOS model for centralized RADIUS authentication, you create one or more template accounts on the router, and the users' access to the router is configured to use the template account. In this configuration, if the RADIUS server is not reachable, the fallback authentication mechanism is through the local account set up on the router.

The following example shows how to configure RADIUS authentication:

```
[edit]
system {
  authentication-order [ radius password ];
  root-authentication {
    encrypted-password "$9$aH1j8gqQ1gjjghgjiiii"; # SECRET-DATA
  }
  name-server {
    10.1.1.1;
    10.1.1.2;
  }
}
```

The following example shows how to enable RADIUS authentication and define the shared secret between the client and the server. This enables the client and server to know that they are talking to the trusted peer.

Define a timeout value for each server so if there is no response within the specified number of seconds, the router can try either the next server or the next authentication mechanism.

```
[edit]
system {
  radius-server {
    10.1.2.1 {
      secret "$9$aH1j8gqQ1sdjerrhser"; # SECRET-DATA
      timeout 5;
    }
    10.1.2.2 {
      secret "$9$aH1j8gqQ1csdoiuardwefoiud"; # SECRET-DATA
      timeout 5;
    }
  }
}
```

## Example: Creating Login Classes

---

The following example shows how to create several user classes, each with specific privileges. In this example, you configure timeouts to disconnect the class members after a period of inactivity. Users' privilege levels, and therefore the classes of which they are members, should be dependent on their responsibilities within the organization, and the permissions shown here are only examples.



The first class of users (called “observation”) can only view statistics and configuration. They are not allowed to modify any configuration. The second class of users (called “operation”) can view and modify the configuration. The third class of users (called “engineering”) has unlimited access and control.

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    class observation {
      idle-timeout 5;
      permissions [ view ];
    }
    class operation {
      idle-timeout 5;
      permissions [ admin clear configure interface interface-control network
        reset routing routing-control snmp snmp-control trace-control
        firewall-control rollback ];
    }
    class engineering {
      idle-timeout 5;
      permissions all;
    }
  }
}
```

### Example: Defining User Login Accounts

---

The following example shows how to define the local superuser account. If RADIUS fails or becomes unreachable, revert to the local accounts on the router.

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    user admin {
      uid 1000;
      class engineering;
      authentication {
        encrypted-password "<PASSWORD>"; # SECRET-DATA
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Example: Defining RADIUS Template Accounts

---

The following example shows how to define RADIUS template accounts for different users or groups of users:

```
[edit]
system {
  login {
    user observation {
      uid 1001;
      class observation;
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
    user operation {
        uid 1002;
        class operation;
    }
    user engineering {
        uid 1003;
        class engineering;
    }
}

```

## Example: Enabling SSH Connection Services

---

The following example shows how to enable connection services on the router. SSH provides secure encrypted communications over an insecure network and is therefore useful for inband router management. Like all other types of network-based access, however, SSH access to the router is disabled by default in the JUNOS software. The following configuration enables SSH access and sets optional parameters that can be used to control the number of concurrent SSH sessions and the maximum number of SSH sessions that can be established in one minute. The **rate-limit** option can be useful in protecting against SYN flood denial-of-service (DoS) attacks on the SSH port.

```

[edit]
system {
    services {
        ssh connection-limit 10 rate-limit 4;
    }
}

```

## Example: Configuring System Logging

---

The system log file records when authentication and authorization is granted and rejected, and what user commands are executed. It provides an excellent way to track all management activity on the router. Checking these files for failed authentication events can help identify attempts to hack into the router. These files can also provide logs of all the command executed on the router and who has performed them. You can review logs of the commands executed on the router and correlate any event in the network with changes made at a particular time. These files are stored locally on the router. Place the firewall logs in a separate system log file.

The following example shows how to configure a system log file:

```

[edit]
system {
    syslog {
        file messages {
            any notice;
            authorization info;
            daemon any;
            kernel any;
            archive size 10m files 5 no-world-readable;
        }
    }
}

```

```

    }
    file authorization-commands {
        authorization any;
        interactive-commands any;
    }
    file firewall-logs {
        firewall any;
    }
}

```

### Example: Configuring NTP as a Single Time Source for Router Clock Synchronization

Debugging and troubleshooting are much easier when the timestamps in the log files of all routers are synchronized, because events that span the network can be correlated with synchronous entries in multiple logs. We strongly recommend using the Network Time Protocol (NTP) to synchronize the system clocks of routers and other network equipment.

By default, NTP operates in an entirely unauthenticated manner. If a malicious attempt to influence the accuracy of a router's clock succeeds, it could have negative effects on system logging, make troubleshooting and intrusion detection more difficult, and impede other management functions.

The following sample configuration synchronizes all the routers in the network to a single time source. We recommend using authentication to make sure that the NTP peer is trusted. The **boot-server** statement identifies the server from which the initial time of day and date is obtained when the router boots. The **server** statement identifies the NTP server used for periodic time synchronization. The **authentication-key** statement specifies that an HMAC-Message Digest 5 (MD5) scheme should be used to hash the key value for authentication, which prevents the router from synchronizing with an attacker's host posing as the time server.

```

[edit]
system {
    ntp {
        authentication-key 2 type md5 value "$9$aH1j8gqQ1gvyjghgjiiii"; # SECRET-DATA
        boot-server 10.1.4.1;
        server 10.1.4.2;
    }
}

```

### Example: Configuring ATM, SONET, Loopback, and Out-of-band Management Interfaces

The following example shows how to configure the interfaces on your router. It covers configurations for Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM), SONET, loopback, and out-of-band management interfaces.

The following example shows how to configure an ATM interface:

```

[edit]
interfaces {

```

```

at-4/0/0 {
  description core-router;
  atm-options {
    vpi 0 maximum-vc 1024;
    ilmi;
  }
  unit 131 {
    description to-other-core-router;
    encapsulation atm-snap;
    point-to-point;
    vci 0.131;
    family inet {
      address 12.1.1.1/30;
    }
    family iso;
  }
}

```

The **fxp0** interface can be used for out-of-band management. However, because most service providers use inband communication for management (because of lower operating costs), you can disable this interface to make the router more secure.

The following example shows how to configure an **fxp0** interface as a loopback interface:

```

[edit]
interfaces {
  fxp0 {
    disable;
  }
}

```

The following example shows how to configure the loopback interface and apply a firewall filter to protect the Routing Engine. This filter, which you define at the **[edit firewall]** hierarchy level, checks all traffic destined for the Routing Engine that enters the router from the customer interfaces. Adding or modifying filters for every interface on the router is not necessary.

```

[edit]
interfaces {
  lo0 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        filter {
          input protect-routing-engine;
        }
        address 10.10.5.1/32;
      }
      family iso {
        address 48.0005.80dd.f900.0000.0001.0001.0000.0000.011.00;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

The following example shows how to configure a SONET interface.

```
[edit]
interfaces {
  so-2/0/0 {
    description To-other-router;
    clocking external;
    sonet-options {
      fcs 32;
      payload-scrambler;
    }
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.1.5.1/30;
      }
      family iso;
    }
  }
}
```

### Example: Configuring SNMPv3

---

The following example shows how to configure Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3) on a router running JUNOS software:

```
[edit snmp]
engine-id {
  use-fxp0-mac-address;
}
view jnxAlarms {
  oid 1.3.6.1.4.1.2636.3.4 include;
}
view interfaces {
  oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.2 include;
}
view ping-mib {
  oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.80 include;
}
[edit snmp v3]
notify n1 {
  tag router1; # Identifies a set of target addresses
  type trap; # Defines type of notification
}
notify n2 {
  tag host1;
  type trap;
}
notify-filter nf1 {
  oid .1 include; # Defines which traps (or which objects for which traps) are sent. In
  this case, includes all traps
}
notify-filter nf2 {
  oid 1.3.6.1.4.1 include; # Sends enterprise-specific traps only
}
notify-filter nf3 {
```

```

oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5 include; # Sends BGP traps only
}
snmp-community index1 {
  community-name "$9$JOzi.QF/AtOz3"; # SECRET-DATA
  security-name john; # Matches the security name at the target-parameters
  tag host1; # Finds the addresses that can be used with this community string
}
target-address ta1 { # Associates the target address with the group san-francisco
  address 10.1.1.1;
  address-mask 255.255.255.0; # Defines the range of addresses
  port 162;
  tag-list router1;
  target-parameters tp1; # Applies configured target parameters
target-address ta2 {
  address 10.1.1.2;
  address-mask 255.255.255.0;
  port 162;
  tag-list host1;
  target-parameters tp2;
}
target-address ta3 {
  address 10.1.1.3;
  address-mask 255.255.255.0;
  port 162;
  tag-list [router1 host1];
  target-parameters tp3;
}
target-parameters tp1 { # Defines the target parameters
  notify-filter nf1; # Specifies which notify filter to apply
  parameters {
    message-processing-model v1;
    security-model v1;
    security-level none;
    security-name john; # Matches the security name configured at the [edit snmp v3
                        snmp-community community-index] hierarchy level
  }
}
target-parameters tp2 {
  notify-filter nf2;
  parameters {
    message-processing-model v1;
    security-model v1;
    security-level none;
    security-name john;
  }
}
target-parameters tp3 {
  notify-filter nf3;
  parameters {
    message-processing-model v1;
    security-model v1;
    security-level none;
    security-name john;
  }
}
}
usm {

```

```

local-engine { # Defines authentication and encryption for
user user1 { # SNMPv3 users
authentication-md5 {
    authentication-password authentication-password;
}
privacy-des {
    privacy-password password;
}
}
user user2 {
    authentication-sha {
        authentication-password authentication-password;
    }
    privacy-none;
}
user user3 {
    authentication-none;
    privacy-none;
}
user user4 {
    authentication-md5 {
        authentication-password authentication-password;
    }
    privacy-3des {
        privacy-password password;
    }
}
user user5 {
    authentication-sha {
        authentication-password authentication-password;
    }
    privacy-aes128 {
        privacy-password password;
    }
}
vacm {
    access {
        group san-francisco {# Defines the access privileges for the group
default-context-prefix { # san-francisco
security-model v1 {
    security-level none {
        notify-view ping-mib;
        read-view interfaces;
        write-view jnxAlarms;
    }
}
}
}
}
security-to-group {
    security-model v1 {
        security-name john {# Assigns john to the security group san-francisco
group san-francisco;
    }
    security-name bob {
        group new-york;
    }
}

```

```

security-name elizabeth {
    group chicago;
}

```

## Examples: Configuring Protocol-Independent Routing Properties

---

This section covers the following topics:

- Example: Configuring the Router ID and Autonomous System Number for BGP on page 232
- Example: Configuring Martian Addresses on page 232
- Example: Viewing Reserved IRI IP Addresses on page 233

### **Example: Configuring the Router ID and Autonomous System Number for BGP**

The following example shows how to configure a router ID and autonomous system (AS) number for the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP):

```

[edit]
routing-options {
    router-id 10.1.7.1;
    autonomous-system 222;
}

```

### **Example: Configuring Martian Addresses**

The following example shows how to configure martian addresses, which are reserved host or network addresses about which all routing information should be ignored. By default, the JUNOS software blocks the following martian addresses: 0.0.0.0/8, 127.0.0.0/8, 128.0.0.0/16, 191.255.0.0/16, 192.0.0.0/24, 223.255.55.0/24, and 240.0.0.0/4. It is also a good idea to block private address space (addresses defined in RFC 1918). You can add these addresses and other martian addresses to the default martian addresses.

```

[edit]
routing-options {
    martians {
        1.0.0.0/8 exact;
        10.0.0.0/8 exact;
        19.255.0.0/16 exact;
        59.0.0.0/8 exact;
        129.156.0.0/16 exact;
        172.16.0.0/12 exact;
        192.0.2.0/24 exact;
        192.5.0.0/24 exact;
        192.9.200.0/24 exact;
        192.9.99.0/24 exact;
        192.168.0.0/16 exact;
        224.0.0.0/3 exact;
    }
}

```



### Example: Viewing Reserved IRI IP Addresses

A number of interception related information (IRI) IP addresses, such as 128.0.0.1, are reserved for internal communication. 128.0.0.1 is the base of the IRI IP address. The upper limit of this range depends on the chassis configuration of the router and may use 129.x.x.x, 130.x.x.x, and so on.

The following example shows how to use the CLI command `show route table __juniper_private1__` to view the router's configured IP addresses, including the reserved IRI IP addresses.

```
user@host> show route table __juniper_private1__
__juniper_private1__.inet.0: 8 destinations, 8 routes (5 active, 0 holddown, 3
hidden)
+ = Active Route, - = Last Active, * = Both

10.0.0.0/8      *[Direct/0] 7w1d 03:24:45
                 > via fxp1.0
10.0.0.1/32     *[Local/0] 7w1d 03:22:48
                 Local via sp-1/2/0.16383
10.0.0.4/32     *[Local/0] 7w1d 03:24:45
                 Local via fxp1.0
10.0.0.34/32    *[Direct/0] 7w1d 03:22:32
                 > via sp-1/2/0.16383
128.0.0.0/2     *[Direct/0] 7w1d 03:24:45
                 > via fxp1.0

__juniper_private1__.inet6.0: 4 destinations, 4 routes (4 active, 0 holddown, 0
hidden)
+ = Active Route, - = Last Active, * = Both

fe80::/64       *[Direct/0] 7w1d 03:24:45
                 > via fxp1.0
fe80::200:ff:fe00:4/128
                 *[Local/0] 7w1d 03:24:45
                 Local via fxp1.0
fec0::/64       *[Direct/0] 7w1d 03:24:45
                 > via fxp1.0
fec0::a:0:0:4/128 *[Local/0] 7w1d 03:24:45
                 Local via fxp1.0
```

### Example: Configuring the BGP and IS-IS Routing Protocols

The main task of a router is to use its routing and forwarding tables to forward user traffic to its intended destination. Attackers can send forged routing protocol packets to a router with the intent of changing or corrupting the contents of its routing table or other databases, which in turn can degrade the functionality of the router and the network. To prevent such attacks, routers must ensure that they form routing protocol relationships (peering or neighboring relationships) to trusted peers. One way of doing this is by authenticating routing protocol messages. We strongly recommend using authentication when configuring routing protocols. The JUNOS software supports HMAC-MD5 authentication for BGP, Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS), Open Shortest Path First (OSPF), Routing Information Protocol (RIP), and Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP). HMAC-MD5 uses a secret key that is combined

with the data being transmitted to compute a hash. The computed hash is transmitted along with the data. The receiver uses the matching key to recompute and validate the message hash. If an attacker has forged or modified the message, the hash will not match and the data will be discarded.

In the following examples, we configure BGP as the exterior gateway protocol (EGP) and IS-IS as the interior gateway protocol (IGP). If you use OSPF, configure it similarly to the IS-IS configuration shown.

## Configuring BGP

The following example shows the configuration of a single authentication key for the BGP peer group internal peers. You can also configure BGP authentication at the neighbor or routing instance levels, or for all BGP sessions. As with any security configuration, there is a tradeoff between the degree of granularity (and to some extent the degree of security) and the amount of management necessary to maintain the system. This example also configures a number of tracing options for routing protocol events and errors, which can be good indicators of attacks against routing protocols. These events include protocol authentication failures, which might point to an attacker that is sending spoofed or otherwise malformed routing packets to the router in an attempt to elicit a particular behavior.

```
[edit]
protocols {
  bgp {
    group ibgp {
      type internal;
      traceoptions {
        file bgp-trace size 1m files 10;
        flag state;
        flag general;
      }
      local-address 10.10.5.1;
      log-updown;
      neighbor 10.2.1.1;
      authentication-key "$9$aH1j8gqQ1gvygjhggjiiii";
    }
    group ebgp {
      type external;
      traceoptions {
        file ebgp-trace size 10m files 10;
        flag state;
        flag general;
      }
      local-address 10.10.5.1;
      log-updown;
      peer-as 2;
      neighbor 10.2.1.2;
      authentication-key "$9$aH1j8gqQ1gvygjhggjiiii";
    }
  }
}
```

## Configuring IS-IS

Although all JUNOS IGP's support authentication, some are inherently more secure than others. Most service providers use OSPF or IS-IS to allow fast internal convergence and scalability and to use traffic engineering capabilities with Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS). Because IS-IS does not operate at the network layer, it is more difficult to spoof than OSPF, which is encapsulated in IP and is therefore subject to remote spoofing and DoS attacks.

The following example also shows how to configure a number of tracing options for routing protocol events and errors, which can be good indicators of attacks against routing protocols. These events include protocol authentication failures, which might point to an attacker that is sending spoofed or otherwise malformed routing packets to the router in an attempt to elicit a particular behavior.

```
[edit]
protocols {
  isis {
    authentication-key "$9$aH1j8gqQ1gyjgjhgiiii"; # SECRET-DATA
    authentication-type md5;
    traceoptions {
      file isis-trace size 10m files 10;
      flag normal;
      flag error;
    }
    interface at-0/0/0.131 {
      lsp-interval 50;
      level 2 disable;
      level 1 {
        metric 3;
        hello-interval 5;
        hold-time 60;
      }
    }
    interface lo0.0 {
      passive;
    }
  }
}
```

## Configuring Firewall Policies and Filters

---

- Example: Configuring Firewall Filters on page 236
- Example: Configuring Firewall Policies on page 239

## Example: Configuring Firewall Filters

The following example shows how to configure a firewall filter to protect the Routing Engine. To protect the Routing Engine, it is important to constrain the traffic load from each of the allowed services. Rate-limiting control traffic helps protect the Routing Engine from attack packets that are forged such that they appear to be legitimate traffic and are then sent at such a high rate as to cause a DoS attack.

Routing and control traffic are essential to proper functioning of the router, and rapid convergence of routing protocols is crucial for stabilizing the network during times of network instability. While it might seem desirable to limit the amount of routing protocol traffic to protect against various types of attacks, it is very difficult to determine a fixed maximum rate for protocol traffic, because it depends upon the number of peers and adjacencies, which varies over time. Therefore, it is best not to rate-limit routing protocol traffic.

By contrast, because management traffic is less essential and more deterministic than routing protocol traffic, it can be policed to a fixed rate, to prevent it from consuming resources necessary for less flexible traffic. We recommend allocating a fixed amount of bandwidth to each type of management traffic so that an attacker cannot consume all the router's CPU if an attack is launched using any single service.

```
[edit]
firewall {
  filter protect-routing-engine {
    policer ssh-policer {
      if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
      }
      then discard;
    }
    policer small-bandwidth-policer {
      if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
      }
      then discard;
    }
    policer snmp-policer {
      if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
      }
      then discard;
    }
    policer ntp-policer {
      if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
      }
      then discard;
    }
    policer dns-policer {
      if-exceeding {
```

```

        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
    }
    then discard;
}
policer radius-policer {
    if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
    }
    then discard;
}
policer tcp-policer {
    if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 500k;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
    }
    then discard;
}
/* The following terms accept traffic only from the trusted sources. The trusted
   traffic is rate-limited with the exception of the routing protocols. */
/* The following term protects against ICMP flooding attacks against the Routing
   Engine. */
term icmp {
    from {
        protocol icmp;
        icmp-type [ echo-request echo-reply unreachable time-exceeded ];
    }
    then {
        policer small-bandwidth-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term tcp-connection {
    from {
        source-prefix-list {
            ssh-addresses;
            bgp-addresses;
        }
        protocol tcp;
        tcp-flags "(syn & !ack) | fin | rst";
    }
    then {
        policer tcp-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
/* The following term protects SSH traffic destined for the Routing Engine. */
term ssh {
    from {
        source-prefix-list {
            ssh-addresses;
        }
        protocol tcp;
        port [ ssh telnet ];
    }
}

```

```

    policer ssh-policer;
    then accept;
}
/* The following term protects BGP traffic destined for the Routing Engine. */
term bgp {
    from {
        source-prefix-list {
            bgp-addresses;
        }
        protocol tcp;
        port bgp;
    }
    then accept;
}
term snmp {
    from {
        source-prefix-list {
            snmp-addresses;
        }
        protocol udp;
        port snmp;
    }
    then {
        policer snmp-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term ntp {
    from {
        source-prefix-list {
            ntp-addresses;
        }
        protocol udp;
        port ntp;
    }
    then {
        policer ntp-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term dns {
    from {
        source-address {
            dns-addresses;
        }
        protocol udp;
        port domain;
    }
    then {
        policer dns-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term radius {
    from {
        source-address {

```

```
radius-addresses;
}
protocol udp;
port radius;
}
then {
    policer radius-policer;
    accept;
}
}
term trace-route {
    from {
        protocol udp;
        destination-port 33434-33523;
    }
    then {
        policer small-bandwidth-policer;
        accept;
    }
    /* All other traffic that is not trusted is silently dropped. We recommend logging
       the denied traffic for analysis purposes. */
    term everything-else {
        then {
            syslog;
            log;
            discard;
        }
    }
}
}
```

### **Example: Configuring Firewall Policies**

To configure firewall policies, configure the trusted source addresses with which each protocol or service wants to communicate. Once you define the prefix list, you apply it in the filter definition at the **[edit firewall]** hierarchy level.

The following example shows how to configure firewall policies:

```
[edit]
policy-options {
  prefix-list ssh-addresses {
    1.1.9.0/24;
  }
  prefix-list bgp-addresses {
    10.2.1.0/24;
  }
  prefix-list ntp-addresses {
    10.1.4.0/24;
  }
  prefix-list snmp-addresses {
    10.1.6.0/24;
  }
  prefix-list dns-address {
```

```

        10.1.1.0/24;
    }
    prefix-list radius-address {
        10.1.2.0/24;
    }
}

```

## Example: Consolidated Security Configuration

---

This topic provides a complete example of configuring various security features available in the JUNOS Software to secure your router:

<b>Configuring Basic System Information</b>	<pre> system {     host-name Secure-Router;     domain-name company.com;     default-address-selection; } </pre>
<b>Configuring RADIUS Authentication</b>	<pre> authentication-order [ radius password ]; root-authentication {     encrypted-password "\$9\$aH1j8gqQ1gijgihgigiiii"; # SECRET-DATA } name-server {     10.1.1.1;     10.1.1.2; } radius-server {     10.1.2.1 {         secret "\$9\$aH1j8gqQ1sdjerrhser"; # SECRET-DATA         timeout 5;     }     10.1.2.2 {         secret "\$9\$aH1j8gqQ1csdoiuardwefoiud"; # SECRET-DATA         timeout 5;     } } </pre>
<b>Configuring Login Classes</b>	<pre> login {     class observation {         idle-timeout 5;         permissions [ view ];     }     class operation {         idle-timeout 5;         permissions [ admin clear configure interface interface-control network         reset routing routing-control snmp snmp-control trace-control         firewall-control rollback ];     }     class engineering {         idle-timeout 5;         permissions all;     } } </pre>



<b>Configuring User Login Accounts</b>	<pre> user admin {   uid 1000;   class engineering;   authentication {     encrypted-password "&lt;PASSWORD&gt;"; # SECRET-DATA   } } </pre>
<b>Configuring RADIUS Template Accounts</b>	<pre> user observation {   uid 1001;   class observation; } user operation {   uid 1002;   class operation; } user engineering {   uid 1003;   class engineering; } </pre>
<b>Configuring SSH Connection Services</b>	<pre> services {   ssh connection-limit 10 rate-limit 4; } </pre>
<b>Configuring System Logging</b>	<pre> syslog {   file messages {     any notice;     authorization info;     daemon any;     kernel any;     archive size 10m files 5 no-world-readable;   }   file authorization-commands {     authorization any;     interactive-commands any;   }   file firewall-logs {     firewall any;   } } </pre>
<b>Configuring the Time Source</b>	<pre> ntp {   authentication-key 2 type md5 value "\$9\$aH1j8gqQ1gjyjghgigiinii"; \   # SECRET-DATA   boot-server 10.1.4.1;   server 10.1.4.2; } </pre>
<b>Configuring Interfaces</b>	<pre> interfaces {   at-4/0/0 {     description core router;     atm-options {       vpi 0 maximum-vcs 1024;     }   } } </pre>

```

        ilmi;
    }
    unit 131 {
        description to-other-core-router;
        encapsulation atm-snap;
        point-to-point;
        vci 0.131;
        family inet {
            address 12.1.1.1/30;
        }
        family iso;
    }
}
fxp0 {
    disable;
}
lo0 {
    unit 0 {
        family inet {
            filter {
                input protect-routing-engine;
            }
            address 10.10.5.1/32;
        }
        family iso {
            address 48.0005.80dd.f900.0000.0001.0001.0000.0000.011.00;
        }
    }
}
so-2/0/0 {
    description To-other-router;
    clocking external;
    sonet-options {
        fcs 32;
        payload-scrambler;
    }
    unit 0 {
        family inet {
            address 10.1.5.1/30;
        }
        family iso;
    }
}
}
}

```

**Configuring SNMP**

```

[edit snmp]
engine-id {
    use-fxp0-mac-address;
}
view jnxAlarms {
    oid .1.3.6.1.4.1.2636.3.4 include;
}
view interfaces {
    oid .1.3.6.1.2.1.2 include;
}

```

```

view ping-mib {
    oid .1.3.6.1.2.1.80 include;
}
[edit snmp v3]
notify n1 {
    tag router1;          # Identifies a set of target addresses
    type trap;            # Defines type of notification
}
notify n2 {
    tag host1;
    type trap;
}
notify-filter nf1 {
    oid 1 include;        # Defines which (or the objects for which) traps
                          # will be sent. In this case, include all traps.
}
notify-filter nf2 {
    oid 1.3.6.1.4.1 include; # Sends enterprise-specific traps only
}
notify-filter nf3 {
    oid 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5 include; # Sends BGP traps only
}
snmp-community index1 {
    community-name "$9$JOzi.QF/AtOz3"; # SECRET-DATA
    security-name john; # Matches the security name at the target parameters
    tag host1; # Finds the addresses that can be used with this community
    string
}
target-address ta1 { # Associates the target address with the group san-francisco
    address 10.1.1.1;
    address-mask 255.255.255.0; # Defines the range of addresses
    port 162;
    tag-list router1;
    target-parameters tp1; # Applies configured target parameters
}
target-address ta2 {
    address 10.1.1.2;
    address-mask 255.255.255.0;
    port 162;
    tag-list host1;
    target-parameters tp2;
}
target-address ta3 {
    address 10.1.1.3;
    address-mask 255.255.255.0;
    port 162;
    tag-list [router1 host1];
    target-parameters tp3;
}
target-parameters tp1 { # Defines the target parameters
    notify-filter nf1; # Specifies which notify filter to apply
    parameters {
        message-processing-model v1;
        security-model v1;
        security-level none;
        security-name john; # Matches the security name configured at the [edit snmpv3
                             # snmp-community community-index] hierarchy level
    }
}

```

```

}
} # hierarchy level
target-parameters tp2 {
  notify-filter nf2;
  parameters {
    message-processing-model v1;
    security-model v1;
    security-level none;
    security-name john;
  }
}
target-parameters tp3 {
  notify-filter nf3;
  parameters {
    message-processing-model v1;
    security-model v1;
    security-level none;
    security-name john;
  }
}
}
usm {
  local-engine {      #Defines authentication and encryption for SNMP3 users.
    user user1 {
      authentication-md5 {
        authentication-password authentication-password;
      }
      privacy-des {
        privacy-password privacy-password;
      }
    }
    user user2 {
      authentication-sha {
        authentication-password authentication-password;
      }
      privacy-none;
    }
    user user3 {
      authentication-none;
      privacy-none;
    }
    user user4 {
      authentication-md5 {
        authentication-password authentication-password;
      }
      privacy-3des {
        privacy-password password;
      }
    }
    user user5 {
      authentication-sha {
        authentication-password authentication-password;
      }
      privacy-aes128 {
        privacy-password password;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```

}
vacm {
  access {
    group san-francisco {          # Defines the access privileges for the group
      default-context-prefix {    # san-francisco
        security-model v1 {
          security-level none {
            notify-view ping-mib;
            read-view interfaces;
            write-view jnxAlarms;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
security-to-group {
  security-model v1 {
    security-name john {          # Assigns john to the security group
      group san-francisco;        # san-francisco
    }
    security-name bob {
      group new-york;
    }
    security-name elizabeth {
      group chicago;
    }
  }
}

```

#### Configuring the Router ID and AS Number for BGP

```

[edit]
  routing-options {
    router-id 10.1.7.1;
    autonomous-system 222;
  }

```

#### Configuring Martian Addresses

```

[edit]
  routing-options {
    martians {
      1.0.0.0/8 exact;
      10.0.0.0/8 exact;
      19.255.0.0/16 exact;
      59.0.0.0/8 exact;
      129.156.0.0/16 exact;
      172.16.0.0/12 exact;
      192.0.2.0/24 exact;
      192.5.0.0/24 exact;
      192.9.200.0/24 exact;
      192.9.99.0/24 exact;
      192.168.0.0/16 exact;
      224.0.0.0/3 exact;
    }
  }

```

#### Configuring Routing Protocols

```

  protocols {
  }

```

```

BGP      bgp {
            group ibgp {
                type internal;
                traceoptions {
                    file bgp-trace size 1m files 10;
                    flag state;
                    flag general;
                }
                local-address 10.10.5.1;
                log-updown;
                neighbor 10.2.1.1;
                authentication-key "$9$aH1j8gqQ1gjyjjhgjgiiii";
            }
            group ebgp {
                type external;
                traceoptions {
                    file ebgp-trace size 10m files 10;
                    flag state;
                    flag general;
                }
                local-address 10.10.5.1;
                log-updown;
                peer-as 2;
                neighbor 10.2.1.2;
                authentication-key "$9$aH1j8gqQ1gjyjjhgjgiiii";
            }
        }

```

```

Configuring IS-IS  isis {
                    authentication-key "$9$aH1j8gqQ1gjyjjhgjgiiii"; # SECRET-DATA
                    authentication-type md5;
                    traceoptions {
                        file isis-trace size 10m files 10;
                        flag normal;
                        flag error;
                    }
                    interface at-0/0/0.131 {
                        lsp-interval 50;
                        level 2 disable;
                        level 1 {
                            metric 3;
                            hello-interval 5;
                            hold-time 60;
                        }
                    }
                    interface lo0.0 {
                        passive;
                    }
                }

```

```

Configuring Firewall Policies  policy-options {
                                prefix-list ssh-addresses {
                                    1.1.9.0/24
                                }
                                prefix-list bgp-addresses {

```

```

    10.2.1.0/24;
  }
  prefix-list ntp-addresses {
    10.1.4.0/24
  }
  prefix-list snmp-addresses {
    10.1.6.0/24;
  }
  prefix-list dns-addresses {
    10.1.1.0/24;
  }
  prefix-list radius-addresses {
    10.1.2.0/24;
  }
}

```

### Configuring Firewall Filters

```

firewall {
  filter protect-routing-engine {
    term icmp {
      from {
        protocol icmp;
        icmp-type [ echo-request echo-reply unreachable time-exceeded ];
      }
      then {
        policer small-bandwidth-policer;
        accept;
      }
    }
    term tcp-connection {
      from {
        source-prefix-list {
          ssh-addresses;
          bgp-addresses;
        }
        protocol tcp;
        tcp-flags "(syn & !ack) | fin | rst";
      }
      then {
        policer tcp-policer;
        accept;
      }
    }
    term ssh {
      from {
        source-prefix-list {
          ssh-addresses;
        }
        protocol tcp;
        port [ ssh telnet ];
      }
      policer ssh-policer;
      then accept;
    }
    term bgp {
      from {

```

```

        source-prefix-list {
            bgp-addresses;
        }
        protocol tcp;
        port bgp;
    }
    then accept;
}
}
term snmp {
    from {
        source-prefix-list {
            snmp-addresses;
        }
        protocol udp;
        port snmp;
    }
    then {
        policer snmp-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term ntp {
    from {
        source-prefix-list {
            ntp-addresses;
        }
        protocol udp;
        port ntp;
    }
    then {
        policer ntp-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term dns {
    from {
        source-address {
            dns-addresses;
        }
        protocol udp;
        port domain;
    }
    then {
        policer dns-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term radius {
    from {
        source-prefix-list {
            radius-addresses;
        }
        protocol udp;
        port radius;
    }
}

```



```

    then {
        policer radius-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term trace-route {
    from {
        protocol udp;
        destination-port 33434-33523;
    }
    then {
        policer small-bandwidth-policer;
        accept;
    }
}
term everything-else {
    then {
        syslog;
        log;
        discard;
    }
}
}
policer ssh-policer {
    if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
    }
    then discard;
}
policer small-bandwidth-policer {
    if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
    }
    then discard;
}
policer snmp-policer {
    if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
    }
    then discard;
}
policer ntp-policer {
    if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
    }
    then discard;
}
policer dns-policer {
    if-exceeding {
        bandwidth-limit 1m;
        burst-size-limit 15k;
    }
}

```

```
        then discard;
    }
    policer radius-policer {
        if-exceeding {
            bandwidth-limit 1m;
            burst-size-limit 15k;
        }
        then discard;
    }
    policer tcp-policer {
        if-exceeding {
            bandwidth-limit 500k;
            burst-size-limit 15k;
        }
        then discard;
    }
}
```

## Chapter 12

# **Summary of System Management Configuration Statements**

The following topics explain each of the system management configuration statements. The statements are organized alphabetically.

## accounting

---

**Syntax**

```

accounting {
  events [ login change-log interactive-commands ];
  destination {
    radius {
      server {
        server-address {
          accounting-port port-number;
          secret password;
          source-address address;
          retry number;
          timeout seconds;
        }
      }
    }
    tacplus {
      server {
        server-address {
          port port-number;
          secret password;
          single-connection;
          timeout seconds;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure audit of TACACS+ or RADIUS authentication events, configuration changes, and interactive commands.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring RADIUS System Accounting” on page 209 and “Configuring TACACS+ System Accounting” on page 212.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## accounting-port

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>accounting-port <i>port-number</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system accounting destination radius server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system radius-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the accounting port number on which to contact the RADIUS server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Port number on which to contact the RADIUS server. <b>Default:</b> 1813
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication” on page 83 and “Configuring RADIUS System Accounting” on page 209.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## allow-commands

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>allow-commands "<i>regular-expression</i>";</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login class <i>class-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the operational mode commands that members of a login class can use.
<b>Default</b>	If you omit this statement and the <code>deny-commands</code> statement, users can issue only those commands for which they have access privileges through the <code>permissions</code> statement.
<b>Options</b>	<i>regular-expression</i> —Extended (modern) regular expression as defined in POSIX 1003.2. If the regular expression contains any spaces, operators, or wildcard characters, enclose it in quotation marks.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands” on page 76.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<code>deny-commands</code> , <code>user</code>

## allow-configuration

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>allow-configuration "regular-expression";</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login class <i>class-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the configuration mode commands that members of a login class can use.
<b>Default</b>	If you omit this statement and the <b>deny-configuration</b> statement, users can issue only those commands for which they have access privileges through the <b>permissions</b> statement.
<b>Options</b>	<i>regular-expression</i> —Extended (modern) regular expression as defined in POSIX 1003.2. If the regular expression contains any spaces, operators, or wildcard characters, enclose it in quotation marks.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands” on page 76.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	deny-commands, user

## allow-transients

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>allow-transients;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system scripts commit]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For JUNOS commit scripts, enable transient configuration changes to be committed.
<b>Default</b>	Transient changes are disabled by default. If you do not include the <b>allow-transients</b> statement, and an enabled script generates transient changes, the CLI generates an error message and the commit operation does not succeed.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration. maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## announcement

---

<b>Syntax</b>	announcement text;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a system login announcement. This announcement appears after a user logs in.
<b>Options</b>	<i>text</i> —Text of the announcement. If the text contains any spaces, enclose it in quotation marks.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Announcement” on page 203.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration
<b>Related Topics</b>	message

## archival

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> archival {   configuration {     transfer-interval <i>interval</i>;     transfer-on-commit;     archive-sites {       ftp://username:&lt;password&gt;@&lt;host&gt;:&lt;port&gt;/&lt;url-path&gt;;       scp://&lt;username&gt;:&lt;password&gt;@&lt;host&gt;:&lt;port&gt;/&lt;url-path&gt;;     }   } } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4
<b>Description</b>	Configure copying of the currently active configuration to an archive site. The remaining statements are described separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using JUNOS Software to Configure a Router to Transfer Its Configuration to an Archive Site” on page 207.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## archive

---

### **archive (All System Log Files)**

<b>Syntax</b>	archive size <i>size</i> files <i>number</i> (world-readable   no-world-readable);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog],
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure archiving of all system log files. The remaining statements are described separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

### **archive (Individual System Log File)**

<b>Syntax</b>	archive { archive-sites { <i>site-name</i> <password <i>password</i> >; } files <i>number</i> size <i>size</i> start-time <i>date.time</i> transfer-interval <i>interval</i> (world-readable   no-world-readable); }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog file <i>filename</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure archiving of specific system log files. The remaining statements are described separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



## archive-sites

---

- archive-sites (Configuration) on page 257
- archive-sites (System Log) on page 258

### archive-sites (Configuration)

**Syntax** archive-sites {  
     ftp://username@host:<port>url-path password password;  
     http://username@host:<port>url-path password password;  
     scp://username@host:<port>url-path password password;  
     file://<path>/<filename>;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system archival configuration]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Specify where to transfer the current configuration files. When specifying a URL in a JUNOS statement using an IPv6 host address, you must enclose the entire URL in quotation marks (" ") and enclose the IPv6 host address in brackets ([ ]). For example, "scp://username<:password>@[ipv6-host-address]<:port>/url-path"

If you specify more than one archive site, the router attempts to transfer the configuration files to the first archive site in the list, moving to the next only if the transfer fails. The format for the destination filename is *router-name\_juniper.conf[.gz]\_YYYYMMDD\_HHMMSS*.



**NOTE:** The time included in the destination filename is always in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) regardless of whether the time on the router is configured as UTC or the local time zone. The default time zone on the router is UTC.

---

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Archive Sites for Transfer of Active Configuration Files” on page 208.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** transfer-on-commit, transfer-on-commit, and configuration

**archive-sites (System Log)**

**Syntax**    archive-sites {  
                  *site-name*;  
          }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system file *filename* archive]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.

**Description**    Configure an archive site. If more than one site name is configured, a list of archive sites for the system log files is created. When a file is archived, the router attempts to transfer the file to the first URL in the list, moving to the next site only if the transfer does not succeed. The log file is stored at the archive site with the filename specified at the [edit system syslog] hierarchy level.

**Options**    *site-name*—Any valid FTP URL to a destination. For information about how to specify valid FTP URLs, see “Format for Specifying Filenames and URLs in JUNOS CLI Commands” on page 36.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring Archive Sites for Transfer of Active Configuration Files” on page 208.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                  system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**arp**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	arp { passive-learning; aging-timer <i>minutes</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4
<b>Description</b>	Specify ARP options. You can enable backup VRRP routers to learn ARP requests for VRRP-IP to VRRP-MAC address translation. You can also set the time interval between ARP updates.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>passive-learning</b>—Configures backup VRRP routers to learn the ARP mappings (IP-to-MAC address) for hosts sending the requests. By default, the backup VRRP router drops these requests; therefore, if the master router fails, the backup router must learn all entries present in the ARP cache of the master router. Configuring passive learning reduces transition delay when the backup router is activated.</p> <p><b>aging-timer</b>—Time interval in minutes between ARP updates. In environments where the number of ARP entries to update is high (for example, metro Ethernet environments), increasing the time between updates can improve system performance.  <b>Default:</b> 20 minutes  <b>Range:</b> 5 to 240 minutes</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See <i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	Configuring the JUNOS Software ARP Learning and Aging Options for Mapping IPv4 Network Addresses to MAC Addresses on page 219.

## authentication

---

### *authentication (Login)*

**Syntax** authentication {  
     (encrypted-password "*password*" | plain-text-password);  
     ssh-dsa "*public-key*";  
     ssh-rsa "*public-key*";  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system login user *username*]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4

**Description** Authentication methods that a user can use to log in to the router. You can assign multiple authentication methods to a single user.

**Options** encrypted-password "*password*"—Use Message Digest 5 (MD5) or other encrypted authentication. Specify the MD5 or other password. You can specify only one encrypted password for each user.

You cannot configure a blank password for **encrypted-password** using blank quotation marks (" "). You must configure a password whose number of characters range from 1 through 128 characters and enclose the password in quotation marks.

plain-text-password—Use a plain-text password. The command-line interface (CLI) prompts you for the password and then encrypts it.

ssh-dsa "*public-key*"—SSH version 2 authentication. Specify the SSH public key. You can specify one or more public keys for each user.

ssh-rsa "*public-key*"—SSH version 1 and SSH version 2 authentication. Specify the SSH public key. You can specify one or more public keys for each user.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts” on page 69.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** root-authentication

**authentication (Subscriber Access Management)**

**Syntax**

```
authentication {
    password password-string;
    username-include {
        circuit-type;
        delimiter delimiter-character;
        domain-name domain-name-string;
        logical-system-name;
        mac-address;
        option-60;
        option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;
        routing-instance-name;
        user-prefix user-prefix-string;
    }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level**

```
[edit logical-systems logical-system-name routing-instances routing-instance-name system
services dhcp-local-server],
[edit logical-systems logical-system-name routing-instances routing-instance-name system
services dhcp-local-server group group-name],
[edit logical-systems logical-system-name system services dhcp-local-server],
[edit logical-systems logical-system-name system services dhcp-local-server group
group-name],
[edit logical-systems logical-system-name routing-instances routing-instance-name system
services dhcp-local-server],
[edit logical-systems logical-system-name routing-instances routing-instance-name system
services dhcp-local-server group group-name],
[edit routing-instances routing-instance-name system services dhcp-local-server],
[edit routing-instances routing-instance-name system services dhcp-local-server group
group-name],
[edit system services dhcp-local-server],
[edit system services dhcp-local-server group group-name]
```

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description** Configure the parameters the router sends to the external AAA server. A group configuration takes precedence over a global DHCP relay or DHCP local server configuration.

The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## authentication-key

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>authentication-key <i>key-number</i> type <i>type</i> value <i>password</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system ntp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure Network Time Protocol (NTP) authentication keys so that the router can send authenticated packets. If you configure the router to operate in authenticated mode, you must configure a key.</p> <p>Both the keys and the authentication scheme (MD5) must be identical between a set of peers sharing the same key number.</p>
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>key-number</i>—Positive integer that identifies the key.</p> <p><i>type type</i>—Authentication type. It can only be md5.</p> <p><i>value password</i>—The key itself, which can be from 1 through 8 ASCII characters. If the key contains spaces, enclose it in quotation marks.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring NTP Authentication Keys” on page 112.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	broadcast, peer, server, trusted-key

## authentication-order

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>authentication-order [ <i>authentication-methods</i> ];</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the order in which the software tries different user authentication methods when attempting to authenticate a user. For each login attempt, the software tries the authentication methods in order, starting with the first one, until the password matches.
<b>Default</b>	If you do not include the <code>authentication-order</code> statement, users are verified based on their configured passwords.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>authentication-methods</i>—One or more authentication methods, listed in the order in which they should be tried. The method can be one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>password</code>—Verify the user using the password configured for the user with the <code>authentication</code> statement at the [edit system login user] hierarchy level.</li> <li>■ <code>radius</code>—Verify the user using RADIUS authentication services.</li> <li>■ <code>tacplus</code>—Verify the user using TACACS + authentication services.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software Authentication Order for RADIUS, TACACS + , and Local Password Authentication” on page 99.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## autoinstallation

---

**Syntax**

```

autoinstallation {
  interfaces {
    interface-name {
      bootp;
      rarp;
      slarp;
    }
  }
  configuration-servers {
    url;
  }
}

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** For J-series Services Routers only. Download a configuration file automatically from an FTP, Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), or Trivial FTP (TFTP) server. When you power on a J-series Services Router configured for autoinstallation, it requests an IP address from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. Once the router has an address, it sends a request to a configuration server and downloads and installs a configuration.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** configuration-servers, idle-timeout



## auxiliary

---

<b>Syntax</b>	auxiliary { type <i>terminal-type</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system ports]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the characteristics of the auxiliary port, which is on the router's craft interface.
<b>Default</b>	The auxiliary port is disabled.
<b>Options</b>	type <i>terminal-type</i> —Type of terminal that is connected to the port. <b>Range:</b> ansi, vt100, small-xterm, xterm <b>Default:</b> The terminal type is unknown, and the user is prompted for the terminal type.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set Console and Auxiliary Port Properties on a Router's Craft Interface” on page 154.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## backup-router

---

<b>Syntax</b>	backup-router <i>address</i> <destination <i>destination-address</i> >;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Set a default router (running IP version 4 [IPv4]) to use while the local router (running IPv4) is booting and if the routing protocol processes fail to start. The JUNOS software removes the route to this router as soon as the software starts.
<b>Options</b>	<i>address</i> —Address of the default router.  <i>destination destination-address</i> —(Optional) Destination address that is reachable through the backup router. Include this option to achieve network reachability while loading, configuring, and recovering the router, but without the risk of installing a default route in the forwarding table. <b>Default:</b> All hosts (default route) are reachable through the backup router.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring a Backup Router” on page 55.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## boot-file

---

<b>Syntax</b>	boot-file <i>filename</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp], [edit system services dhcp pool], [edit system services dhcp static-binding]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Set the boot file advertised to DHCP clients. After the client receives an IP address and the boot file location from the DHCP server, the client uses the boot image stored in the boot file to complete DHCP setup.
<b>Options</b>	<i>filename</i> —The location of the boot file on the boot server. The filename can include a pathname.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	boot-server (DHCP)

## boot-server

---

See the following sections:

- boot-server (DHCP) on page 267
- boot-server (NTP) on page 268

### ***boot-server (DHCP)***

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>boot-server address;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp], [edit system services dhcp pool], [edit system services dhcp static-binding]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Configure the name of the boot server advertised to DHCP clients. The client uses a boot file located on the boot server to complete DHCP setup.
<b>Options</b>	<i>address</i> —Address of a boot server. You must specify an IPv4 address, not a hostname.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	boot-file

**boot-server (NTP)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>boot-server address;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system ntp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure the server that NTP queries when the router boots to determine the local date and time.</p> <p>When you boot the router, it issues an <code>ntpdate</code> request, which polls a network server to determine the local date and time. You need to configure a server that the router uses to determine the time when the router boots. Otherwise, NTP will not be able to synchronize to a time server if the server's time appears to be very far off of the local router's time.</p>
<b>Options</b>	<code>address</code> —Address of an NTP server. You must specify an address, not a hostname.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the NTP Boot Server” on page 107.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<code>system</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>system-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.

## **broadcast**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>broadcast address &lt;key key-number&gt; &lt;version value&gt; &lt;tll value&gt;;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system ntp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the local router to operate in broadcast mode with the remote system at the specified <i>address</i> . In this mode, the local router sends periodic broadcast messages to a client population at the specified broadcast or multicast <i>address</i> . Normally, you include this statement only when the local router is operating as a transmitter.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>address</i>—The broadcast address on one of the local networks or a multicast address assigned to NTP. You must specify an address, not a hostname. If the multicast address is used, it must be <b>224.0.1.1</b>.</p> <p><i>key key-number</i>—(Optional) All packets sent to the address include authentication fields that are encrypted using the specified key number.  <b>Range:</b> Any unsigned 32-bit integer</p> <p><i>value</i>—(Optional) Time-to-live (TTL) value to use.  <b>Range:</b> 1 through 255  <b>Default:</b> 1</p> <p><i>version value</i>—(Optional) Specify the version number to be used in outgoing NTP packets.  <b>Range:</b> 1 through 4  <b>Default:</b> 4</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the NTP Time Server and Time Services” on page 109.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## **broadcast-client**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>broadcast-client;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit system ntp]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the local router to listen for broadcast messages on the local network to discover other servers on the same subnet.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router to Listen for Broadcast Messages Using NTP” on page 112.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## **bucket-size**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>bucket-size <i>bucket-size</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit system internet-options icmpv4-rate-limit],</code> <code>[edit system internet-options icmpv6-rate-limit]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	The number of seconds in the rate limiting bucket.
<b>Options</b>	<code>bucket-size</code> <b>Range:</b> 0 through 4294967295 seconds <b>Default:</b> 5
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv4 Rate Limit for ICMPv4 Routing Engine Messages” on page 214 and “Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv6 Rate Limit for ICMPv6 Routing Engine Messages” on page 215.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## change-type

---

<b>Syntax</b>	change-type (character-sets   set-transitions);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login password]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Set requirements for using character sets in plain-text passwords. When combined with the <b>minimum-changes</b> statement, you can check for the total number of character sets included in the password or for the total number of character set changes in the password. Newly created passwords must meet these requirements.
<b>Options</b>	One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>character-sets</b>—The number of character sets in the password. Valid character sets include uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation, and other special characters.</li> <li>■ <b>set-transitions</b>—The number of transitions between character sets.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords” on page 60.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	minimum-changes

## circuit-type

---

<b>Syntax</b>	circuit-type;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify that the circuit type is concatenated with the username during the subscriber authentication process.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>



## class

---

- class (Define Login Classes) on page 273
- class (Assign a Class to an Individual User) on page 273

### **class (Define Login Classes)**

**Syntax**    class *class-name* {  
               allow-commands "*regular-expression*";  
               allow-configuration "*regular-expression*";  
               deny-commands "*regular-expression*";  
               deny-configuration "*regular-expression*";  
               idle-timeout *minutes*;  
               no-world-readable;  
               permissions [ *permissions* ];  
               }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system login]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Define login classes.

**Options**    *class-name*—A name you choose for the login class.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Defining JUNOS Software Login Classes” on page 67.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                       admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    user

### **class (Assign a Class to an Individual User)**

**Syntax**    class *class-name*;

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system login user *username*]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure a user’s login class. You must configure one class for each user.

**Options**    *class-name*—One of the classes defined at the [edit system login class] hierarchy level.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts” on page 69.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                       admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## client-identifier

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>client-identifier (ascii <i>client-id</i>   hexadecimal <i>client-id</i>);</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp static-binding]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Configure the client's unique identifier. This identifier is used by the DHCP server to index its database of address bindings. Either a client identifier or the client's MAC address is required to uniquely identify the client on the network.
<b>Options</b>	<i>client-id</i> —A name or number that uniquely identifies the client on the network. The client identifier can be an ASCII string or hexadecimal digits.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## commit

---

**Syntax**    commit {  
              allow-transients;  
              file *filename.xml* {  
                  optional;  
                  refresh;  
                  refresh-from *url*;  
                  source *url*;  
              }  
              refresh;  
              refresh-from *url*;  
              source *url*;  
              traceoptions {  
                  file *filename* <files *number*> <size *size*>;  
                  flag *flag*;  
              }  
              }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system scripts]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    For JUNOS commit scripts, configure commit-time scripting mechanism.  
  
                  The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See the *JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level**    maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                  maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## commit synchronize

---

<b>Syntax</b>	commit synchronize;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For multiple Routing Engines only. Configure a commit command to automatically result in a commit synchronize. The Routing Engine on which you execute the commit command (requesting Routing Engine) copies and loads its candidate configuration to the other (responding) Routing Engines. All Routing Engines then perform a syntax check on the candidate configuration file being committed. If no errors are found, the configuration is activated and becomes the current operational configuration on all Routing Engines.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Multiple Routing Engines to Synchronize Committed Configurations Automatically” on page 63.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## compress-configuration-files

---

**Syntax** (compress-configuration-files | no-compress-configuration-files);

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Compress the current operational configuration file. By default, the current operational configuration file is compressed, and is stored in the file `juniper.conf`, in the `/config` file system, along with the last three committed versions of the configuration. However, with large networks, the current configuration file might exceed the available space in the `/config` file system. Compressing the current configuration file allows the file to fit in the file system, typically reducing the size of the file by 90 percent. The current configuration file is compressed on the second commit of the configuration after the first commit is made to include the `compress-configuration-files` statement.



**NOTE:** We recommend that you enable compression of the router configuration files to minimize the amount of disk space that they require.

---

**Default** The current operational configuration file is uncompressed.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Compressing the Current Configuration File” on page 63.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## configuration

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>configuration {   transfer-interval <i>interval</i>;   transfer-on-commit;   archive-sites {     ftp://&lt;username&gt;:&lt;password&gt;@&lt;host&gt;:&lt;port&gt;/&lt;url-path&gt;;   } }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system archival]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the router to transfer its currently active configuration by means of FTP periodically or after each commit. The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using JUNOS Software to Configure a Router to Transfer Its Configuration to an Archive Site” on page 207.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	transfer-interval, transfer-on-commit, and archive.

## configuration-servers

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>configuration-servers {   <i>url</i>; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system autoinstallation]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only, configure the URL address of a server from which to obtain configuration files. Examples of URLs:  <pre>tftp://tftpconfig.sp.com/config.conf;</pre> <pre>ftp://user:password:@sftpconfig.sp.com/path file-name/</pre>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the Getting Started Guide for your router model.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	autoinstallation, idle-timeout.

**connection-limit**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	connection-limit <i>limit</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services finger], [edit system services ftp], [edit system services ssh], [edit system services telnet], [edit system services xnm-clear-text], [edit system services xnm-ssl]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the maximum number of established connections for each type of system service.
<b>Options</b>	<i>limit</i> —(Optional) Maximum number of established connections. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 250 <b>Default:</b> 75
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring System Services for Remote Router Access” on page 158.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## console

---

### *console (Physical Port)*

**Syntax** console {  
     insecure;  
     log-out-on-disconnect;  
     type *terminal-type*;  
     disable;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system ports]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.  
 disable option added in JUNOS Release 7.6.

**Description** Configure the characteristics of the console port, which is on the router's craft interface.

**Default** The console port is enabled and its speed is 9600 baud.

**Options** insecure—Disable root login connections to the console and auxiliary ports.  
 Configuring the console port as insecure also prevents superusers and anyone with a user identifier (UID) of 0 from establishing terminal connections in multiuser mode.

log-out-on-disconnect—Log out the session when the data carrier on the console port is lost.

type *terminal-type*—Type of terminal that is connected to the port.

**Range:** ansi, vt100, small-xterm, xterm

**Default:** The terminal type is unknown, and the user is prompted for the terminal type.

disable—Disable console login connections.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set Console and Auxiliary Port Properties on a Router's Craft Interface” on page 154.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**console (System Logging)**

<b>Syntax</b>	console { <i>facility severity</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the logging of system messages to the system console.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>facility</i>—Class of messages to log. To specify multiple classes, include multiple <i>facility severity</i> statements. For a list of the facilities, see Table 16 on page 124.</p> <p><i>severity</i>—Severity of the messages that belong to the facility specified by the paired <i>facility</i> name. Messages with severities the specified level and higher are logged. For a list of the severities, see Table 17 on page 124.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Directing System Log Messages to the Console” on page 127.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i>

**default-address-selection**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	default-address-selection;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Use the loopback interface, lo0, as the source address for all locally generated IP packets. The lo0 interface is the interface to the router’s Routing Engine.
<b>Default</b>	The outgoing interface is used as the source address.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Select a Fixed Source Address for Locally Generated TCP/IP Packets” on page 156 and the <i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## default-lease-time

---

<b>Syntax</b>	default-lease-time <i>seconds</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp], [edit system services dhcp pool], [edit system services dhcp static-binding]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Specify the length of time in seconds that a client holds the lease for an IP address assigned by a DHCP server. This setting is used if a lease time is not requested by the client.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —Number of seconds the lease can be held. <b>Default:</b> 86400 (1 day)
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	maximum-lease-time

## delimiter

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>delimiter <i>delimiter-character</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the character used as the delimiter between the concatenated components of the username. The semicolon (;) cannot be used as a delimiter.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## deny-commands

---

<b>Syntax</b>	deny-commands " <i>regular-expression</i> ";
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login class]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the operational mode commands that the user is denied permission to issue, even though the permissions set with the permissions statement would allow it.
<b>Default</b>	If you omit this statement and the allow-commands statement, users can issue only those commands for which they have access privileges through the permissions statement.
<b>Options</b>	<i>regular-expression</i> —Extended (modern) regular expression as defined in POSIX 1003.2. If the regular expression contains any spaces, operators, or wildcard characters, enclose it in quotation marks.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands” on page 76.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	allow-commands, user

## deny-configuration

---

<b>Syntax</b>	deny-configuration " <i>regular-expression</i> ";
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login class]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the configuration mode commands that the user is denied permission to issue, even though the permissions set with the <b>permissions</b> statement would allow it.
<b>Default</b>	If you omit this statement and the <b>allow-configuration</b> statement, users can issue only those commands for which they have access privileges through the <b>permissions</b> statement.
<b>Options</b>	<i>regular-expression</i> —Extended (modern) regular expression as defined in POSIX 1003.2. If the regular expression contains any spaces, operators, or wildcard characters, enclose it in quotation marks.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Access Privileges for JUNOS Software Individual Operational Mode Commands” on page 76.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	allow-configuration, user

## destination

---

```

Syntax  destination {
            radius {
              server {
                server-address {
                  accounting-port port-number;
                  secret password;
                  source-address address;
                  retry number;
                  timeout seconds;
                }
              }
            }
            tacplus {
              server {
                server-address {
                  secret password;
                  single-connection;
                  timeout seconds;
                  port port-number;
                }
              }
            }
          }

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system accounting]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.  
radius statement added in JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure the authentication server.

**Options** The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring RADIUS System Accounting” on page 209 and “Configuring TACACS + System Accounting” on page 212.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## destination-override

---

<b>Syntax</b>	destination-override { syslog host <i>ip-address</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system tracing]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.2.
<b>Description</b>	This option overrides the system-wide config under [edit system tracing] and has no effect if system tracing is not configured.
<b>Options</b>	These options specify the syslogs and the host the remote tracing is sent to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>syslog</b>—Specify the system process log files to send to the remote tracing host.</li> <li>■ <b>host &lt;ip-address&gt;</b>—Specify the host and IP address to send tracing information.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “JUNOS Software Tracing and Logging Operations” on page 38.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	tracing

## dhcp

---

**Syntax**

```
dhcp {
  boot-file filename;
  boot-server (address | hostname);
  domain-name domain-name;
  domain-search [domain-list];
  default-lease-time seconds;
  maximum-lease-time seconds;
  name-server {
    address;
  }
  option {
    [ (id-number option-type option-value) | (id-number array option-type option-value) ];
  }
  pool address/prefix-length {
    address-range {
      low address;
      high address;
    }
    exclude-address {
      address;
    }
  }
  router {
    address;
  }
  static-binding mac-address {
    fixed-address {
      address;
    }
    host hostname;
    client-identifier (ascii client-id | hexadecimal client-id);
  }
  server-identifier address;
  wins-server {
    address;
  }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system services]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** For J-series Services Routers only. Configure a router or interface as a DHCP server. A DHCP server can allocate network addresses and deliver configuration information to client hosts on a TCP/IP network.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.



**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                         system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## dhcp-local-server

---

**Syntax**

```

dhcp-local-server {
  authentication {
    password password-string;
    username-include {
      circuit-type;
      delimiter delimiter-character;
      domain-name domain-name-string;
      logical-system-name;
      mac-address;
      option-60;
      option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;
      routing-instance-name;
      user-prefix user-prefix-string;
    }
  }
  group group-name {
    authentication {
      password password-string;
      username-include {
        circuit-type;
        domain-name domain-name-string;
        logical-system-name;
        mac-address;
        option-60;
        option-82;
        routing-instance-name;
        user-prefix user-prefix-string;
      }
    }
  }
  interface (DHCP Local Server) interface-name <upto upto-interface-name> <exclude>;
}
pool-match-order {
  ip-address-first;
  option-82 (Extended DHCP Local Server);
}
traceoptions {
  file filename <files number> <size size> <world-readable | no-world-readable><match
    regex>;
  flag flag;
}
}

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services],  
 [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services],  
 [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services],  
 [edit system services]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.

**Description** Configure Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) local server options on the router and enable the router to function as an extended DHCP local server. The DHCP local server receives DHCP request and reply packets from DHCP clients and then responds with an IP address and other optional configuration information to the client.

The DHCP local server interacts with the local AAA Service Framework to use back-end authentication servers, such as RADIUS, to provide subscriber authentication. You can configure authentication support on a global basis or for a specific group of interfaces.

The DHCP local server also supports the use of JUNOS software address-assignment pools or external authorities, such as RADIUS, to provide the client address and configuration information.

The extended DHCP local server is incompatible with the J-series DHCP server and is not supported on the J-series Services Router. Also, the DHCP local server and the DHCP or BOOTP relay, which are configured under the `[edit forwarding-options helpers]` hierarchy level, cannot both be enabled on the router at the same time. The extended DHCP local server is fully compatible with the extended DHCP relay feature.



**NOTE:** When you configure the `dhcp-local-server` statement at the routing instance hierarchy level, you must use a routing instance type of virtual-router.

---

The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server” on page 180.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** address-assignment, dhcp-attributes

## diag-port-authentication

---

**Syntax** diag-port-authentication (encrypted-password "*password*" | plain-text-password);

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure a password for performing diagnostics on the router's System Control Board (SCB), System and Switch Board (SSB), Switching and Forwarding Module (SFM), or Forwarding Engine Board (FEB) port.

For routers that have more than one SSB, the same password is used for both SSBs.



**NOTE:** Do not run diagnostics on the SCB, SSB, SFM, or FEB unless you have been instructed to do so by Customer Support personnel.

---

**Default** No password is configured on the diagnostics port.

**Options** encrypted-password *password*—Use MD5 or other encrypted authentication. Specify the MD5 or other password. You can specify only one encrypted password for each user.

You cannot configure a blank password for **encrypted-password** using blank quotation marks (" "). You must configure a password whose number of characters range from 1 through 128 characters and enclose the password in quotation marks.

plain-text-password—Use a plain-text password. The CLI prompts you for the password and then encrypts it. The CLI displays the encrypted version, and the software places the encrypted version in its user database. You can specify only one plain-text password for each user.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Password Authentication for the Diagnostics Port” on page 204.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## domain-name

---

- domain-name (DHCP) on page 293
- domain-name (Subscriber Access Management) on page 294
- domain-name (Router) on page 295

### ***domain-name (DHCP)***

<b>Syntax</b>	domain-name <i>domain-name</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp], [edit system services dhcp pool], [edit system services dhcp static-binding]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Configure the name of the domain in which clients search for a DHCP server host. This is the default domain name that is appended to hostnames that are not fully qualified.
<b>Options</b>	<i>domain-name</i> —Name of the domain.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**domain-name (Subscriber Access Management)**

**Syntax** domain-name *domain-name-string*;

**Hierarchy Level** [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],  
 [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication username-include],  
 [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],  
 [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication username-include],  
 [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],  
 [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication username-include],  
 [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],  
 [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication username-include],  
 [edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],  
 [edit system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication username-include]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description** Specify the domain name that is concatenated with the username during the subscriber authentication process.

**Options** *domain-name-string*—The domain name formatted string.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**domain-name (Router)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>domain-name domain-name;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the name of the domain in which the router is located. This is the default domain name that is appended to hostnames that are not fully qualified.
<b>Options</b>	<i>domain-name</i> —Name of the domain.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router’s Domain Name” on page 54.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**domain-search**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>domain-search [ domain-list ];</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system], [edit system services dhcp], [edit system services dhcp pool], [edit system services dhcp static-bindings]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a list of domains to be searched.
<b>Options</b>	<i>domain-list</i> —A list of domain names to search. The list can contain up to 6 domain names, with a total of up to 256 characters.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Domains to Search When a Router Is Included in Multiple Domains” on page 54 and “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## dump-device

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> dump-device {   compact-flash;   removable-compact-flash;   usb; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>For J-series Services Routers only. Configure the medium used for storing memory snapshots of system failure. When you specify the storage and an operating system fails, the operating system writes a snapshot of the state of the router when it failed to the storage medium. When the operating system is rebooted, the storage device is checked for a snapshot. If found, the snapshot of memory is written to the <code>/var/crash</code> directory on the router and can be examined by Juniper Networks customer support to help determine the cause of failure.</p> <p>If the swap partition on the device medium is not large enough for the system memory snapshot, the snapshot is not successfully written to the directory. Use the <b>request system snapshot</b> command to specify the swap partition.</p>
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>compact-flash</b>—The primary CompactFlash card.</p> <p><b>removable-compact-flash</b>—The CompactFlash card on the front of the router (J4300 and J6300 only) as the system software failure memory snapshot device.</p> <p><b>usb</b>—The device attached to the universal serial bus (USB) port.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the Getting Started Guide for your router model.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p><b>system</b>—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p><b>system-control</b>—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>



## events

---

<b>Syntax</b>	events [ <i>events</i> ];
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system accounting]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the types of events to track and log.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>events</i>—Event types; can be one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ login—Audit logins.</li> <li>■ change-log—Audit configuration changes.</li> <li>■ interactive-commands—Audit interactive commands (any command-line input).</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying TACACS+ Auditing and Accounting Events” on page 212.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## explicit-priority

---

<b>Syntax</b>	explicit-priority;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit system syslog file <i>filename</i>],</p> <p>[edit system syslog host]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Record the priority (facility and severity level) in each standard-format system log message directed to a file or remote destination.</p> <p>When the <b>structured-data</b> statement is also included at the [edit system syslog file <i>filename</i>] hierarchy level, this statement is ignored for the file.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Including Priority Information in System Log Messages” on page 135.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	structured-data, <i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i>

## facility-override

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>facility-override facility;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog host]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Substitute an alternate facility for the default facilities used when messages are directed to a remote destination.
<b>Options</b>	<i>facility</i> —Alternate facility to substitute for the default facilities. For a list of the possible facilities, see Table 19 on page 131.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Changing the Alternative Facility Name for Remote System Log Messages” on page 129.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i>

## file

---

See the following sections:

- file (Commit Scripts) on page 299
- file (System Logging) on page 300

### **file (Commit Scripts)**

**Syntax** file *filename*.xsl {  
     optional;  
     refresh;  
     refresh-from *url*;  
     source *url*;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system scripts commit]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** For JUNOS commit scripts, enable a commit script that is located in the /var/db/scripts/commit directory.

**Options** *filename*—The name of an XSLT file containing a commit script.

The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See the *JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level** maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**file (System Logging)**

**Syntax**    file *filename* {  
               *facility severity*;  
               explicit-priority;  
               match "*regular-expression*";  
               structured-data {  
                   brief;  
               }  
               archive {  
                   files *number*;  
                   size *size*;  
                   (world-readable | no-world-readable);  
               }  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system syslog]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure the logging of system messages to a file.

**Options**    *facility*—Class of messages to log. To specify multiple classes, include multiple *facility severity* statements. For a list of the facilities, see Table 16 on page 124.

*filename*—File in the `/var/log` directory in which to log messages from the specified facility. To log messages to more than one file, include more than one *file* statement.

*severity*—Severity of the messages that belong to the facility specified by the paired *facility* name. Messages with severities the specified level and higher are logged. For a list of the severities, see Table 17 on page 124.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Directing System Log Messages to a Log File” on page 125.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*

## files

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>files number;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog archive], [edit system syslog file <i>filename</i> archive]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the maximum number of archived log files to retain. When the JUNOS logging utility has written a defined maximum amount of data to a log file <i>logfile</i> , it closes the file, compresses it, and renames it to <i>logfile.0.gz</i> (for information about the maximum file size, see <b>size</b> ). The utility then opens and writes to a new file called <i>logfile</i> . When the new file reaches the maximum size, the <i>logfile.0.gz</i> file is renamed to <i>logfile.1.gz</i> , and the new file is closed, compressed, and renamed <i>logfile.0.gz</i> . By default, the logging facility creates up to ten archive files in this manner. Once the maximum number of archive files exists, each time the active log file reaches the maximum size, the contents of the oldest archive file are lost (overwritten by the next oldest file).
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Maximum number of archived files. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 1000 <b>Default:</b> 10 files
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>size</i> , <i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i>

## finger

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>finger {   &lt;connection-limit limit&gt;;   &lt;rate-limit limit&gt;; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Allow finger requests from remote systems to the local router.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Finger Service for Remote Access to the Router” on page 194.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## flow-tap-dtcp

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> flow-tap-dtcp {   ssh {     connection-limit <i>limit</i>;     rate-limit <i>limit</i>;   } } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure Digital Transmission Content Protection (DTCP) sessions to run over SSH in support of the flow-tap application.
<b>Options</b>	<p>connection-limit <i>limit</i>—(Optional) Maximum number of connections allowed.  <b>Range:</b> 1 through 250  <b>Default:</b> 75</p> <p>rate-limit <i>limit</i>—(Optional) Maximum number of connection attempts allowed per minute.  <b>Range:</b> 1 through 250  <b>Default:</b> 150</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring DTCP-over-SSH Service for the Flow-Tap Application” on page 193.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>flow-tap—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>flow-tap-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## format

---

<b>Syntax</b>	format (md5   sha1   des);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login passwords]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the authentication algorithm for plain-text passwords.
<b>Default</b>	For JUNOS software, the default encryption format is <b>md5</b> . For JUNOS-FIPS software, the default encryption format is <b>sha1</b> .
<b>Options</b>	The hash algorithm that authenticates the password can be one of three algorithms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>md5</b>—Produces a 128-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>sha1</b>—Produces a 160-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>des</b>—Has a block size of 8 bytes; its key size is 48 bits long.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords” on page 60.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ftp

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ftp { <connection-limit <i>limit</i> >; <rate-limit <i>limit</i> >; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Allow FTP requests from remote systems to the local router.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring FTP Service for Remote Access to the Router” on page 195.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## full-name

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>full-name <i>complete-name</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login user]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the complete name of a user.
<b>Options</b>	<i>complete-name</i> —Full name of the user. If the name contains spaces, enclose it in quotation marks.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts” on page 69.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## gre-path-mtu-discovery

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>(gre-path-mtu-discovery   no-gre-path-mtu-discovery);</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure path MTU discovery for outgoing GRE tunnel connections: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>gre-path-mtu-discovery</code>—Path MTU discovery is enabled.</li> <li>■ <code>no-gre-path-mtu-discovery</code>—Path MTU discovery is disabled.</li> </ul>
<b>Default</b>	Path MTU discovery is enabled.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing GRE Tunnel Connections” on page 217.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



## group

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>group <i>group-name</i> {   authentication {     password <i>password-string</i>;     username-include {       circuit-type;       delimiter <i>delimiter-character</i>;       domain-name <i>domain-name-string</i>;       logical-system-name;       mac-address;       option-60;       option-82 &lt;circuit-id&gt; &lt;remote-id&gt;;       routing-instance-name;       user-prefix <i>user-prefix-string</i>;     }   }   interface (DHCP Local Server) <i>interface-name</i> &lt;upto <i>upto-interface-name</i>&gt; &lt;exclude&gt;; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<pre>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system   services dhcp-local-server], [edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server], [edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server], [edit system services dhcp-local-server]</pre>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a group of interfaces that have a common configuration, such as authentication parameters. A group must contain at least one interface.
<b>Options</b>	<i>group-name</i> —Name of the group.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server” on page 180 and “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## host

---

**Syntax**    `host (hostname | other-routing-engine| scc-master) {  
                   facility severity;  
                   explicit-priority;  
                   facility-override facility;  
                   log-prefix string;  
                   match "regular-expression";  
                   }`

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system syslog]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure the logging of system messages to a remote destination.

**Options**    *facility*—Class of messages to log. To specify multiple classes, include multiple *facility severity* statements. For a list of the facilities, see Table 16 on page 124.

*hostname*—IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or fully qualified hostname of the remote machine to which to direct messages. To direct messages to multiple remote machines, include a **host** statement for each one.

*severity*—Severity of the messages that belong to the facility specified by the paired *facility* name. Messages with severities the specified level and higher are logged. For a list of the severities, see Table 17 on page 124.

*other-routing-engine*—Direct messages to the other Routing Engine on a routing platform with two Routing Engines installed and operational.

*scc-master*—On a T640 routing node that is part of a routing matrix, direct messages to the TX Matrix platform.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Directing System Log Messages to a Remote Machine or the Other Routing Engine” on page 127 and “Directing Messages to a Remote Destination from the Routing Matrix” on page 149.

**Required Privilege Level**    *system*—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                   *system-control*—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*

## host-name

---

<b>Syntax</b>	host-name <i>hostname</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Set the hostname of the router.
<b>Options</b>	<i>hostname</i> —Name of the router.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router’s Hostname” on page 52.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## http

---

<b>Syntax</b>	http { interfaces [ <i>interface-names</i> ]; port <i>port</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services web-management]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure port and interfaces for HTTP service, which is unencrypted.
<b>Options</b>	interfaces [ <i>interface-names</i> ]—Name of one or more interfaces on which to allow the HTTP service. By default, HTTP access is allowed through built-in Fast Ethernet interfaces only.  The remaining statement is explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>J-Web Interface User Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	https, port (HTTP/HTTPS), web-management

## https

---

**Syntax**    https {  
               interfaces [ *interface-names* ];  
               local-certificate *name*;  
               port *port*;  
               }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system services web-management]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure the secure version of HTTP (HTTPS) service, which is encrypted.

**Options**    interfaces [ *interface-names* ]— Name of one or more interfaces on which to allow the HTTPS service. By default, HTTPS access is allowed through any ingress interface, but HTTP access is allowed through built-in Fast Ethernet interfaces only.

              local-certificate *name*— Name of the X.509 certificate for a secure sockets layer (SSL) connection. An SSL connection is configured at the [edit security certificates local] hierarchy.

The remaining statement is explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See the *J-Web Interface User Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    http, port (HTTP/HTTPS), web-management

**icmpv4-rate-limit**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	icmpv4-rate-limit { bucket-size <i>bucket-size</i> ; packet-rate <i>packet-rate</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure rate limiting parameters for ICMPv4 messages sent.
<b>Options</b>	The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv4 Rate Limit for ICMPv4 Routing Engine Messages” on page 214.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**icmpv6-rate-limit**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	icmpv6-rate-limit { bucket-size <i>bucket-size</i> ; packet-rate <i>packet-rate</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure rate limiting parameters for ICMPv6 messages sent.
<b>Options</b>	The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv6 Rate Limit for ICMPv6 Routing Engine Messages” on page 215.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## idle-timeout

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>idle-timeout <i>minutes</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit system login class <i>class-name</i>]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For a login class, configure the maximum time that a session can be idle before the user is logged off the router. The session times out after remaining at the CLI operational mode prompt for the specified time.
<b>Default</b>	If you omit this statement, a user is never forced off the system after extended idle times.
<b>Options</b>	<i>minutes</i> —Maximum idle time. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 100,000 minutes
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Timeout Value for Idle Login Sessions” on page 81.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	user

## inet6-backup-router

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>inet6-backup-router <i>address</i> &lt;destination <i>destination-address</i>&gt;;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit system]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Set a default router (running IP version 6 [IPv6]) to use while the local router (running IPv6) is booting and if the routing protocol processes fail to start. The JUNOS software removes the route to this router as soon as the software starts.
<b>Options</b>	<i>address</i> —Address of the default router.  <i>destination <i>destination-address</i></i> —(Optional) Destination address that is reachable through the backup router. Include this option to achieve network reachability while loading, configuring, and recovering the router, but without the risk of installing a default route in the forwarding table. <b>Default:</b> All hosts (default route) are reachable through the backup router.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring a Backup Router” on page 55.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## interface

---

See the following sections:

- interface (ARP Aging Timer) on page 311
- interface (DHCP Local Server) on page 312

### ***interface (ARP Aging Timer)***

**Syntax**    interface *interface-name* *minutes*;

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system arp aging-timer]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.4.

**Description**    Specify the ARP aging timer in minutes for a logical interface of family type *inet*.

**Options**    *minutes*—Time between ARP updates, in minutes.

**Default:** 20

**Range:** 1 through 240

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Adjusting the ARP Aging Timer” on page 220.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                          system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**interface (DHCP Local Server)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>interface interface-name &lt;upto upto-interface-name&gt; &lt;exclude&gt;;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i>],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i>],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i>],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i>]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	<p>Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.</p> <p><code>upto</code> and <code>exclude</code> options introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.</p>
<b>Description</b>	Specify one or more interfaces, or a range of interfaces, that are within a specified group on which the DHCP local server is enabled. You can repeat the <b>interface interface-name</b> statement to specify multiple interfaces within a group, but you cannot specify the same interface in more than one group. Also, you cannot use an interface that is being used by the DHCP relay agent.
<b>Options</b>	<p><code>exclude</code>—Exclude an interface or a range of interfaces from the group.</p> <p><i>interface-name</i>—Name of the interface. You can repeat this keyword multiple times.</p> <p><code>upto upto-interface-name</code>—Upper end of the range of interfaces; the lower end of the range is the <b>interface-name</b> entry. The interface specified for <code>upto</code> must <i>not</i> be the same as the interface specified for <i>interface-name</i>.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server” on page 180 and “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>



## interfaces

---

**Syntax**    interfaces {  
                   interface-name {  
                     bootp;  
                     rarp;  
                     slarp;  
                   }  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system autoinstallation]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    For J-series Services Routers only. Configure the interface on which to perform autoinstallation. A request for an IP address is sent from the interface. Specify the IP address procurement protocol.

**Options**    bootp

              rarp—Send requests over Ethernet interfaces.

              slarp—Send requests over serial interfaces.

**Usage Guidelines**    See the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    autoinstallation

## internet-options

---

**Syntax** internet-options {  
     tcp-mss *mss-value*;  
     (gre-path-mtu-discovery | no-gre-path-mtu-discovery);  
     icmpv4-rate-limit {  
         bucket-size *bucket-size*;  
         packet-rate *packet-rate*;  
     }  
     icmpv6-rate-limit {  
         bucket-size *bucket-size*;  
         packet-rate *packet-rate*;  
     }  
     (ipip-path-mtu-discovery | no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery);  
     ipv6-duplicate-addr-detection-transmits;  
     (ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit | no-ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit);  
     (ipv6-path-mtu-discovery | no-ipv6-path-mtu-discovery);  
     ipv6-path-mtu-discovery-timeout;  
     no-tcp-rfc1323;  
     no-tcp-rfc1323-paws;  
     (path-mtu-discovery | no-path-mtu-discovery);  
     source-port upper-limit *<upper-limit>*;  
     (source-quench | no-source-quench);  
     tcp-drop-synfin-set;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure system Internet Protocol options to protect against certain types of DoS attacks.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv4 Rate Limit for ICMPv4 Routing Engine Messages” on page 214, “Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv6 Rate Limit for ICMPv6 Routing Engine Messages” on page 215, “Configuring the JUNOS Software for IP-IP Path MTU Discovery on IP-IP Tunnel Connections” on page 215, “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing GRE Tunnel Connections” on page 217, “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing TCP Connections” on page 218, “Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Duplicate Address Detection Attempts” on page 217, “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Acceptance of IPv6 Packets with a Zero Hop-Limit” on page 217, “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Ignore ICMP Source Quench Messages” on page 218, “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the Router to Drop Packets with the SYN and FIN Bits Set” on page 218, “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable TCP RFC 1323 Extensions” on page 218, “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the TCP RFC 1323 PAWS Extension” on page 219, “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Extend the Default Port Address Range” on page 219, and “Configuring TCP MSS on J-series Services Routers” on page 216.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ip-address-first

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ip-address-first;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server pool-match-order], [edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server pool-match-order], [edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server pool-match-order], [edit system services dhcp-local-server pool-match-order]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the extended DHCP local server to use the IP address method to determine which address-assignment pool to use. The local server uses the IP address in the giaddr if one is present in the DHCP client PDU. If no giaddr is present, the local server uses the IP address of the receiving interface to find the address-assignment pool. The DHCP local server uses this method by default when no method is explicitly specified.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server” on page 180.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ipip-path-mtu-discovery

---

<b>Syntax</b>	(ipip-path-mtu-discovery   no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure path MTU discovery for outgoing IP-IP tunnel connections: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>ipip-path-mtu-discovery</b>—Path MTU discovery is enabled.</li> <li>■ <b>no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery</b>—Path MTU discovery is disabled.</li> </ul>
<b>Default</b>	Path MTU discovery is enabled.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for IP-IP Path MTU Discovery on IP-IP Tunnel Connections” on page 215.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ipv6-duplicate-addr-detection-transmits

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ipv6-duplicate-addr-detection-transmits;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Control the number of attempts for IPv6 duplicate address detection.
<b>Default</b>	The default value is 3.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Duplicate Address Detection Attempts” on page 217.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ipv6-path-mtu-discovery

---

<b>Syntax</b>	(ipv6-path-mtu-discovery   no-ipv6-path-mtu-discovery);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.2.
<b>Description</b>	Configure path MTU discovery for IPv6 packets.
<b>Default</b>	IPv6 path MTU discovery is enabled.
<b>Options</b>	ipv6-path-mtu-discovery—IPv6 path MTU discovery is enabled.  no-ipv6-path-mtu-discovery—IPv6 path MTU discovery is disabled.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Path MTU Discovery” on page 216.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ipv6-path-mtu-discovery-timeout

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ipv6-path-mtu-discovery-timeout <i>minutes</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.2.
<b>Description</b>	Set IPv6 path MTU discovery timeout interval.
<b>Default</b>	The default timeout is 10 minutes.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for IPv6 Path MTU Discovery” on page 216.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit

---

<b>Syntax</b>	(ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit   no-ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Enable and disable rejecting incoming ipv6 packets with zero hop limit in their header.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Acceptance of IPv6 Packets with a Zero Hop-Limit” on page 217.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	See no-ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit.

## limits

---

<b>Syntax</b>	limits { active-child-process [ <i>process-limit</i> ]; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services web-management]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.
<b>Description</b>	Configure limits on the number of simultaneous HTTPD child processes that can be started to prevent DOS attacks on the HTTP port.
<b>Options</b>	active-child-process [ <i>process-limit</i> ]—Maximum number of simultaneous HTTPD child processes that can be started. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 32 <b>Default:</b> 5
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>J-Web Interface User Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## load-key-file

---

<b>Syntax</b>	load-key-file;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Load RSA (SSH version 1 and SSH version 2) and DSA (SSH version 2) public keys from a file. The file is a URL containing one or more SSH keys.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Root Password” on page 58 and “Configuring JUNOS Software User Accounts” on page 69.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## local-certificate

---

<b>Syntax</b>	local-certificate;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Import or reference a SSL certificate.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications” on page 160 and “Importing SSL Certificates for JUNOScript Support” on page 603.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## location

---

**Syntax** location {  
 altitude *feet*;  
 building *name*;  
 country-code *code*;  
 floor *number*;  
 hcoord *horizontal-coordinate*;  
 lata *service-area*;  
 latitude *degrees*;  
 longitude *degrees*;  
 npa-nxx *number*;  
 postal-code *postal-code*;  
 rack *number*;  
 vcoord *vertical-coordinate*;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure the system location in various formats.

**Options** altitude *feet*—Number of feet above sea level.

building *name*—Name of building. The name of the building can be 1 to 28 characters in length. If the string contains spaces, enclose it in quotation marks (" ").

country-code *code*—Two-letter country code.

floor *number*—Floor in the building.

hcoord *horizontal-coordinate*—Bellcore Horizontal Coordinate.

lata *service-area*—Long-distance service area.

latitude *degrees*—Latitude in degree format.

longitude *degrees*—Longitude in degree format.

npa-nxx *number*—First six digits of the phone number (area code and exchange).

postal-code *postal-code*—Postal code.

rack *number*—Rack number.

vcoord *vertical-coordinate*—Bellcore Vertical Coordinate.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Physical Location of the Router” on page 57.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



## log-prefix

---

<b>Syntax</b>	log-prefix <i>string</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog host]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Include a text string in each message directed to a remote destination.
<b>Options</b>	<i>string</i> —Text string to include in each message.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Adding a Text String to System Log Messages” on page 133.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i>

## logical-system-name

---

<b>Syntax</b>	logical-system-name;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify that the logical system name is concatenated with the username during the subscriber authentication process. No logical system name is concatenated if the configuration is in the default logical system.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## login

---

**Syntax**

```
login {
  announcement text;
  class class-name {
    allow-commands "regular-expression";
    allow-configuration "regular-expression";
    deny-commands "regular-expression";
    deny-configuration "regular-expression";
    idle-timeout minutes;
    login-tip;
    permissions [ permissions ];
  }
  message text;
  password {
    change-type (set-transitions | character-set);
    format (md5 | sha1 | des);
    maximum-length length;
    minimum-changes number;
    minimum-length length;
  }
  retry-options {
    backoff-threshold number;
    backoff-factor seconds;
    minimum-time seconds;
    tries-before-disconnect number;
  }
  user username {
    full-name complete-name;
    uid uid-value;
    class class-name;
    authentication authentication;
    (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);
    ssh-rsa "public-key";
    ssh-dsa "public-key";
  }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure user access to the router.

**Options** The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring User Access” on page 65.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## login-alarms

---

<b>Syntax</b>	login-alarms;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login class admin]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Show system alarms automatically when an admin user logs on to the router.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using JUNOS Software to Configure System Alarms to Appear Automatically on J-series Routers” on page 221.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>J-series Services Router Administration Guide</i>

## login-tip

---

<b>Syntax</b>	login-tip;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login class <i>class-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Enable CLI tips at login.
<b>Default</b>	Disabled.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring CLI Tips” on page 82.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## mac-address

---

<b>Syntax</b>	mac-address;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify that the MAC address from the client PDU is concatenated with the username during the subscriber authentication process.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## match

---

<b>Syntax</b>	match " <i>regular-expression</i> ";
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog file <i>filename</i> ], [edit system syslog host <i>hostname</i>   other-routing-engine  scc-master)], [edit system syslog user ( <i>username</i>   *)]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a text string that must (or must not) appear in a message for the message to be logged to a destination.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using Regular Expressions to Refine the Set of Logged Messages” on page 138.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## max-configurations-on-flash

---

<b>Syntax</b>	max-configurations-on-flash <i>number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the number of configurations stored on the CompactFlash card.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —The number of configurations stored on the CompactFlash card. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 49. The most recently saved configuration is number 0, and the oldest saved configuration is number 49.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using JUNOS Software to Specify the Number of Configurations Stored on the CompactFlash Card” on page 209.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration

## maximum-lease-time

---

<b>Syntax</b>	maximum-lease-time <i>seconds</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Specify the maximum length of time in seconds for which a client can request and hold a lease on a DHCP server.  Exception: Dynamic BOOTP lease length can exceed the maximum lease length specified.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —The maximum number of seconds the lease can be held.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration
<b>Related Topics</b>	default-lease-time

## maximum-length

---

<b>Syntax</b>	maximum-length <i>length</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login passwords]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the maximum number of characters allowed in plain-text passwords. Newly created passwords must meet this requirement.
<b>Default</b>	For JUNOS-FIPS software, the maximum number of characters for plain-text passwords is 20. For JUNOS software, no maximum is set.
<b>Options</b>	<i>length</i> —The maximum number of characters the password can include. <b>Range:</b> 1 to 64 characters
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords” on page 60.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## message

---

<b>Syntax</b>	message <i>text</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a system login message. This message appears before a user logs in.
<b>Options</b>	<i>text</i> —Text of the message.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Display a System Login Message” on page 202.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration
<b>Related Topics</b>	announcement

## minimum-changes

---

<b>Syntax</b>	minimum-changes <i>number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login passwords]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the minimum number of character sets (or character set changes) required in plain-text passwords. Newly created passwords must meet this requirement.  This statement is used in combination with the <b>change-type</b> statement. If the change-type is <b>character-sets</b> , then the number of character sets included in the password is checked against the specified minimum. If change-type is <b>set-transitions</b> , then the number of character set changes in the password is checked against the specified minimum.
<b>Default</b>	For JUNOS software, the minimum number of changes is 1. For JUNOS-FIPS software, the minimum number of changes is 3.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —The minimum number of character sets (or character set changes) required for the password.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords” on page 60.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	change-type



## minimum-length

---

<b>Syntax</b>	minimum-length <i>length</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login passwords]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the minimum number of characters required in plain-text passwords. Newly created passwords must meet this requirement.
<b>Default</b>	For JUNOS software, the minimum number of characters for plain-text passwords is six. For JUNOS-FIPS software, the minimum number of characters for plain-text passwords is 10.
<b>Options</b>	<b>length</b> —The minimum number of characters the password must include. <b>Range:</b> 6 to 20 characters
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords” on page 60.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	maximum-length

## mirror-flash-on-disk

---

**Syntax** mirror-flash-on-disk;

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure the hard disk to automatically mirror the contents of the CompactFlash card. The hard disk maintains a synchronized mirror copy of the CompactFlash card contents. Data written to the CompactFlash card is simultaneously updated in the mirrored copy of the hard disk. If the CompactFlash card fails to read data, the hard disk automatically retrieves its mirrored copy of the CompactFlash card. This command is not available on the J-series routers.



**CAUTION:** We recommend that you disable flash disk mirroring when you upgrade or downgrade the router.

You cannot issue the **request system snapshot** command while the **mirror-flash-on-disk** statement is enabled.



**NOTE:** After you have enabled or disabled the **mirror-flash-on-disk** statement, you must reboot the router for your changes to take effect. To reboot, issue the **request system reboot** command.

---

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Automatic Mirroring of the CompactFlash Card on the Hard Disk Drive” on page 57.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## multicast-client

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>multicast-client &lt;address&gt;;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit system ntp]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For NTP, configure the local router to listen for multicast messages on the local network to discover other servers on the same subnet.
<b>Options</b>	<i>address</i> —(Optional) One or more IP addresses. If you specify addresses, the router joins those multicast groups. <b>Default:</b> 224.0.1.1.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router to Listen for Multicast Messages Using NTP” on page 113.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## name-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>name-server {     <i>address</i>; }</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit system], [edit system services dhcp], [edit system services dhcp pool], [edit system services dhcp static-binding]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure one or more Domain Name System (DNS) name servers.
<b>Options</b>	<i>address</i> —Address of the name server. To configure multiple name servers, include multiple <i>address</i> options.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring a DNS Name Server for Resolving a Router’s Hostname into Addresses” on page 55 and “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## no-compress-configuration-files

---

**See** `compress-configuration-files`.

## no-gre-path-mtu-discovery

---

**See** gre-path-mtu-discovery.

## no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery

---

**See** ipip-path-mtu-discovery.

## no-ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit

---

**See** ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit.

## no-multicast-echo

---

**Syntax** no-multicast-echo;

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.1

**Description** Disable the Routing Engine from responding to ICMP echo requests sent to multicast group addresses.

**Default** The Routing Engine responds to ICMP echo requests sent to multicast group addresses.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Routing Engine Response to Multicast Ping Packets” on page 157.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## no-path-mtu-discovery

---

**See** path-mtu-discovery.

## no-ping-record-route

---

<b>Syntax</b>	no-ping-record-route;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the JUNOS software to disable the reporting of the IP address in ping responses.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Reporting of IP Address and Timestamps in Ping Responses” on page 157.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## no-ping-time-stamp

---

<b>Syntax</b>	no-ping-time-stamp;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the JUNOS software to disable the recording of timestamps in ping responses.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Reporting of IP Address and Timestamps in Ping Responses” on page 157.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## no-redirects

---

<b>Syntax</b>	no-redirects;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Disable the sending of protocol redirect messages by the router.</p> <p>To disable the sending of redirect messages on a per-interface basis, include the <code>no-redirects</code> statement at the [edit interfaces <i>interface-name</i> unit <i>logical-unit-number</i> family <i>family</i>] hierarchy level.</p>
<b>Default</b>	The router sends redirect messages.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable Protocol Redirect Messages on the Router” on page 155.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i>

## no-remote-trace

---

**See** tracing.

## no-saved-core-context

---

**See** saved-core-context.

## no-source-quench

---

**See** source-quench.

**no-tcp-rfc1323**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	no-tcp-rfc1323;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the JUNOS software to disable RFC 1323 TCP extensions.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable TCP RFC 1323 Extensions” on page 218.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**no-tcp-rfc1323-paws**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	no-tcp-rfc1323-paws;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the JUNOS software to disable the RFC 1323 Protection Against Wrapped Sequence (PAWS) number extension.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the TCP RFC 1323 PAWS Extension” on page 219.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**no-world-readable**

---

**See** world-readable.

**ntp**

---

**Syntax**    ntp {  
              authentication-key *number* type *type* value *password*;  
              boot-server (NTP) *address*;  
              broadcast <*address*> <key *key-number*> <version *value*> <ttl *value*>;  
              broadcast-client;  
              multicast-client <*address*>;  
              peer *address* <key *key-number*> <version *value*> <prefer>;  
              server *address* <key *key-number*> <version *value*> <prefer>;  
              source-address *source-address*;  
              trusted-key [ *key-numbers* ];  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure NTP on the router.

**Options**    The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Synchronizing and Coordinating Time Distribution Using NTP” on page 106.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                          system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**option-60**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	option-60;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify that the payload of Option 60 (Vendor Class Identifier) from the client PDU is concatenated with the username during the subscriber authentication process.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## option-82

---

See the following sections:

- option-82 (Extended DHCP Local Server) on page 338
- option-82 (Subscriber Access Management) on page 339

### **option-82 (Extended DHCP Local Server)**

**Syntax** option-82;

**Hierarchy Level** [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server pool-match-order],  
 [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services dhcp-local-server pool-match-order],  
 [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server pool-match-order],  
 [edit system services dhcp-local-server pool-match-order]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.

**Description** Configure the extended DHCP local server to use the option 82 value in the DHCP client DHCP PDU together with the ip-address-first method to determine which address-assignment pool to use. You must configure the **ip-address-first** statement before configuring the **option-82** statement. The DHCP local server first determines which address-assignment pool to use based on the ip-address-first method. Then, the local server matches the option 82 value in the client PDU with the option 82 configuration in the address-assignment pool.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server” on page 180.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**option-82 (Subscriber Access Management)**

**Syntax** option-82 <circuit-id> <remote-id>;

<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the type of Option 82 information from the client PDU that is concatenated with the username during the subscriber authentication process. You can specify either, both, or neither of the Agent Circuit ID and Agent Remote ID suboptions. If you specify both, the Agent Circuit ID is supplied first, followed by a delimiter, and then the Agent Remote ID. If you specify that neither suboption is supplied, the raw payload of Option 82 from the PDU is concatenated to the username.
<b>Options</b>	<p>circuit-id—The string for the Agent Circuit ID suboption (suboption 1).</p> <p>remote-id—The string for the Agent Remote ID suboption (suboption 2).</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## optional

---

<b>Syntax</b>	optional;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system scripts commit file <i>filename</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For JUNOS commit scripts, allow a commit operation to succeed even if the script specified in the <b>file</b> statement is missing from the <b>/var/db/scripts/commit</b> directory on the routing platform. The <b>optional</b> statement allows the commit operation to progress as if the commit script were not enabled in the configuration.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration. maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## outbound-ssh

---

**Syntax** [edit system services]  
 outbound-ssh {  
   client *client-id* {  
     address {  
       port *port-number*;  
       retry *number*;  
       timeout *seconds*;  
     }  
     device-id *device-id*;  
     keep-alive {  
       retry *number*;  
       timeout *seconds*;  
     }  
     reconnect-strategy (in-order | sticky);  
     secret *password*;  
     services netconf;  
   }  
   traceoptions {  
     file filename <files *number*> <match *regex*> <size *size*> <world-readable |  
       no-world-readable>;  
     flag *flag*;  
     no-remote-trace;  
   }  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system services]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.4.

**Description** Configure a router running the JUNOS software behind a firewall to communicate with client management applications on the other side of the firewall.

**Default** To configure transmission of the router's device ID to the application, include the `device-id` statement at the [edit system services] hierarchy level.

**Options** `client-id`—Identifies the `outbound-ssh` configuration stanza on the router. Each `outbound-ssh` stanza represents a single outbound SSH connection. This attribute is not sent to the client.

`device-id`—Identifies the router to the client during the initiation sequence.

`secret`—(Optional) Specifies the JUNOS router's public SSH host key. If added to the `outbound-ssh` statement, during the initialization of the outbound SSH service, the router passes its public key to the management server. This is the recommended method of maintaining a current copy of the router's public key.

`keep-alive`—(Optional) When configured, specifies that the router send keepalive messages to the management server. To configure the keepalive message, you must set both the `timeout` and `retry` attributes.

**retry**—Specifies the number of keepalive messages the router sends without receiving a response from the client before the current SSH connection will be disconnected. The default is three messages.

**timeout**—Specifies the amount of time that the JUNOS server waits for data before sending a keep alive signal. The default is 15 seconds.

**reconnect-strategy**—(Optional) Specifies the method the JUNOS router uses to reestablish a disconnected outbound SSH connection. Two methods available:

- **sticky**—Specifies that the router attempt to reconnect to the management server that it was last connected with first. If the connection is unavailable, it attempts to establish a connection with the next client on the list and so forth until a connection is made.
- **in-order**—Specifies that the router attempt to establish an outbound SSH session based on the management server address list. The router attempts to establish a session with the first server on the list. If this connection is not available, the router attempts to establish a session with the next server, and so on down the list until a connection is established.

When reconnecting to a client, the router attempts to reconnect to the client based on the **retry** and **timeout** values for each client listed.

**services**—Specifies the services available for the session. Currently, NETCONF is the only service available.

**address**—Indicates the hostname or the IPv4 address of the NSM application server. You can list multiple clients by adding each client's IP address or hostname along with the following connection parameters:

- **port**—Sets the outbound SSH port for the client. The default is port 22.
- **retry**—Specifies the number of times the JUNOS router will attempt to establish an outbound SSH connection before giving up. The default is 3 tries.
- **timeout**—Sets the amount of time that the router attempts to establish an outbound SSH connection before giving up. The default is 15 seconds.

**filename**—(Optional) By default, the file name of the log file used to record the trace options is the name of traced process (for example **mib2d** or **snmpd**). Use this option to override the default value.

**files**—(Optional) The maximum number of trace files generated. By default, the maximum number of trace files is 10. Use this option to override the default value.

When a trace file reaches its maximum size, the system archives the file and starts a new file. The system archives trace files by appending a number to the file name in sequential order from 1 to the maximum value (specified by the default value or the options value set here). Once the maximum value is reached, the numbering sequence is restarted at 1, overwriting the older file.

**size**—(Optional) The maximum size of the trace file in kilobytes (KB). Once the maximum file size is reached, the system archives the file. The default value is 1000 KB. Use this option to override the default value.

**match**—(Optional) When used, the system only adds lines to the trace file that match the regular expression specified. For example, if the match value is set to `=error`, the system only records lines to the trace file that include the string `error`.

**world-readable | no-world-readable**—(Optional) This option specifies whether the files are accessible by the originator of the trace operation only or by any user. By default, log files are only accessible by the user that started the trace operation (`no-world-readable`).

**all | configuration | connectivity**—(Optional) This flag specifies the type of tracing operation to perform.

**all**—Log all events.

**configuration**—Log all events pertaining to the configuration of the router.

**connectivity**—Log all events pertaining to the establishment of a connection between the client server and the router.

**no-remote-trace**—(Optional) Disables remote tracing.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Outbound SSH Service” on page 197.

**Required Privilege Level** `interface`—To view this statement in the configuration.  
`interface-control`—To add this statement to the configuration.

## packet-rate

---

**Syntax** `packet-rate packet-rate;`

**Hierarchy Level** `[edit system internet-options icmpv4-rate-limit],`  
`[edit system internet-options icmpv6-rate-limit]`

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** The rate-limiting packets earned per second.

**Options** `packet-rate`  
**Range:** 0 through 4294967295 seconds  
**Default:** 1000

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv6 Rate Limit for ICMPv6 Routing Engine Messages” on page 215 and “Configuring the JUNOS Software ICMPv4 Rate Limit for ICMPv4 Routing Engine Messages” on page 214.

**Required Privilege Level** `system`—To view this statement in the configuration.  
`system-control`—To add this statement to the configuration.

## password

---

See the following sections:

- password (Login) on page 344
- password (Subscriber Access Management) on page 345

### ***password (Login)***

**Syntax** password {  
     change-type (set-transitions | character-set);  
     format (md5 | sha1 | des);  
     maximum-length *length*;  
     minimum-changes *number*;  
     minimum-length *length*;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system login]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure special requirements such as character length and encryption format for plain-text passwords. Newly created passwords must meet these requirements.

**Options** The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Special Requirements for JUNOS Software Plain-Text Passwords” on page 60.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** maximum-length.



***password (Subscriber Access Management)***

**Syntax**    `password password-string;`

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server authentication],  
                              [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication],  
                              [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services dhcp-local-server authentication],  
                              [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication],  
                              [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server authentication],  
                              [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication],  
                              [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server authentication],  
                              [edit routing-instances *routing-instance-name* system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication],  
                              [edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication],  
                              [edit system services dhcp-local-server group *group-name* authentication]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description**    Configure the password that is sent to the external AAA authentication server for subscriber authentication.

**Options**    *password-string*—Authentication password.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                          system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## path-mtu-discovery

---

<b>Syntax</b>	(path-mtu-discovery   no-path-mtu-discovery);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure path MTU discovery for outgoing Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) connections:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <b>path-mtu-discovery</b>—Path MTU discovery is enabled.</li><li>■ <b>no-path-mtu-discovery</b>—Path MTU discovery is disabled.</li></ul>
<b>Default</b>	Path MTU discovery is disabled.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Path MTU Discovery on Outgoing TCP Connections” on page 218.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**peer**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>peer address &lt;key key-number&gt; &lt;version value&gt; &lt;prefer&gt;;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system ntp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For NTP, configure the local router to operate in symmetric active mode with the remote system at the specified address. In this mode, the local router and the remote system can synchronize with each other. This configuration is useful in a network in which either the local router or the remote system might be a better source of time.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>address</b>—Address of the remote system. You must specify an address, not a hostname.</p> <p><b>key key-number</b>—(Optional) All packets sent to the address include authentication fields that are encrypted using the specified key number.  <b>Range:</b> Any unsigned 32-bit integer</p> <p><b>prefer</b>—(Optional) Mark the remote system as the preferred host, which means that if all other factors are equal, this remote system is chosen for synchronization among a set of correctly operating systems.</p> <p><b>version value</b>—(Optional) Specify the NTP version number to be used in outgoing NTP packets.  <b>Range:</b> 1 through 4  <b>Default:</b> 4</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the NTP Time Server and Time Services” on page 109.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## permissions

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>permissions [ <i>permissions</i> ];</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login class]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the login access privileges to be provided on the router.
<b>Options</b>	<i>permissions</i> —Privilege type. For a list of permission flag types, see Table 8 on page 72.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Access Privilege Levels” on page 75.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	user

## pic-console-authentication

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>pic-console authentication {     (encrypted-password "password"   plain-text-password); }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure console access to Physical Interface Cards (PICs).
<b>Default</b>	Disabled. By default, there is no password setting for console access.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>encrypted-password "password"</b>—Use MD5 or other encrypted authentication. Specify the MD5 or other password. You can specify only one encrypted password.</p> <p>You cannot configure a blank password for <b>encrypted-password</b> using blank quotation marks (" "). You must configure a password whose number of characters range from 1 through 128 characters and enclose the password in quotation marks.</p> <p><b>plain-text-password</b>—Use a plain-text password. The CLI prompts you for the password and then encrypts it. The CLI displays the encrypted version, and the software places the encrypted version in its user database. You can specify only one plain-text password.</p> <p>The default requirements for plain-text passwords are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The password must be between 6 and 128 characters long <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ You can include most character classes in a password (uppercase letters, lowercase letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and other special characters). Control characters are not recommended.</li> <li>■ Valid passwords must contain at least one change of case or character class.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Password Authentication for Console Access to PICs” on page 201.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set Console and Auxiliary Port Properties on a Router's Craft Interface on page 154.

**pool**

---

**Syntax** `pool address/prefix-length {  
     address-range {  
         low address;  
         high address;  
     }  
     exclude-address {  
         address;  
     }  
}`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system services dhcp]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** For J-series Services Routers only. Configure a pool of IP addresses for DHCP clients on a subnet. When a client joins the network, the DHCP server dynamically allocates an IP address from this pool.

**Options** **address-range**—Lowest and highest IP addresses in the pool that are available for dynamic address assignment. If no range is specified, the pool will use all available addresses within the subnet specified. (Broadcast addresses, interface addresses, and excluded addresses are not available.)

**exclude-address**—Addresses within the range that are not used for dynamic address assignment. You can exclude one or more addresses within the range.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## pool-match-order

---

<b>Syntax</b>	pool-match-order { ip-address-first; option-82 (Extended DHCP Local Server); }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server], [edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server], [edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server], [edit system services dhcp-local-server]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the order in which the DHCP local server uses information in the DHCP client PDU to determine how to obtain an address for the client. By default, the DHCP local server uses the ip-address-first method to determine which address pool to use.  The statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router as an Extended DHCP Local Server” on page 180.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## port

---

- port (HTTP/HTTPS) on page 352
- port (RADIUS Server) on page 352
- port (SRC Server) on page 353
- port (TACACS+ Server) on page 353

### port (HTTP/HTTPS)

<b>Syntax</b>	port <i>port-number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services web-management]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the port on which the HTTP or HTTPS service is connected.
<b>Options</b>	<i>port</i> —The TCP port number on which the specified service listens.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>J-Web Interface User Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	web-management, http, https

### port (RADIUS Server)

<b>Syntax</b>	port <i>port-number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system radius-server <i>address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the port number on which to contact the RADIUS server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Port number on which to contact the RADIUS server. <b>Default:</b> 1812 (as specified in RFC 2865)
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication” on page 83.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**port (SRC Server)**

<b>Syntax</b>	port <i>port-number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services service-deployment servers <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the port number on which to contact the SRC server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>port-number</i> —(Optional) The TCP port number for the SRC server. <b>Default:</b> 3333
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Work with SRC Software” on page 214.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**port (TACACS+ Server)**

<b>Syntax</b>	port <i>port-number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system accounting destination tacplus server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the port number on which to contact the TACACS + server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Port number on which to contact the TACACS + server. <b>Default:</b> 49
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring TACACS + System Accounting” on page 212.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ports

---

**Syntax**    ports {  
              auxiliary {  
                  type *terminal-type*;  
              }  
              console {  
                  type *terminal-type*;  
              }  
          }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure the properties of the console and auxiliary ports, which are located on the router's craft interface.

**Options**    The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See "Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set Console and Auxiliary Port Properties on a Router's Craft Interface" on page 154.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                  system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## processes

---

**Syntax**    `processes {  
              process-name (enable | disable) failover (alternate-media | other-routing-engine);  
              timeout seconds;  
          }`

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure which JUNOS software processes are running on the router.



**CAUTION:** Never disable any of the software processes unless instructed to do so by a customer support engineer.

---

**Default**    All processes are enabled by default.

**Options**    (enable | disable)—(Optional) Enables or disables a specified process.

`failover (alternate-media | other-routing-engine)`—(Optional) For routers with redundant Routing Engines only, switch to backup media if a process fails repeatedly. If a process fails four times within 30 seconds, the router reboots from the alternate media or the other Routing Engine.

`process-name`—One of the valid process names. You can obtain a complete list of process names by using the CLI command completion feature. After specifying a process name, command completion also indicates any additional options for that process.

`timeout seconds`—(Optional) How often the system checks the watchdog timer, in seconds. If the watchdog timer has not been checked in the specified number of seconds, the system reloads. If you set the time value too low, it is possible for the system to reboot immediately after it loads.

**Range:** 15, 60, 180

**Default:** 180 seconds (rounded up to 291 seconds by the JUNOS kernel)

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Disabling JUNOS Software Processes” on page 203.

**Required Privilege Level**    `system`—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                  `system-control`—To add this statement to the configuration.

## protocol-version

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>protocol-version <i>version</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services ssh]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the secure shell (SSH) protocol version.
<b>Options</b>	<i>version</i> —v1, v2, or [ v1 v2 ] <b>Default:</b> v2
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the SSH Protocol Version” on page 196.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## radius

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>radius {   server {     server-address {       accounting-port <i>port-number</i>;       secret <i>password</i>;       source-address <i>address</i>;       retry <i>number</i>;       timeout <i>seconds</i>;     }   } }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system accounting destination]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the RADIUS accounting server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>server-address</i> —Address of the RADIUS accounting server.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS System Accounting” on page 209.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## radius-options

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>radius-options {   attributes {     nas-ip-address <i>ip-address</i>;   }   password-protocol <i>mschap-v2</i>; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3. MS-CHAPv2 password protocol configuration option introduced in JUNOS Release 9.2.
<b>Description</b>	Configure RADIUS options for the NAS-IP address for outgoing RADIUS packets and password protocol used in RADIUS packets.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>ip-address</i>—IP address of the network access server (NAS) that requests user authentication.</p> <p><i>mschap-v2</i>—Protocol MS-CHAPv2, used for password authentication and password changing.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring MS-CHAPv2 for Password-Change Support” on page 84.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## radius-server

---

**Syntax**    radius-server *server-address* {  
               accounting-port *port-number*;  
               port *number*;  
               retry *number*;  
               routing-instance *routing-instance-name*;  
               secret *password*;  
               source-address *source-address*;  
               timeout *seconds*;  
               }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure a RADIUS server for Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP).

To configure multiple RADIUS servers, include multiple **radius-server** statements. The servers are tried in order and in a round-robin fashion until a valid response is received from one of the servers or until all the configured retry limits are reached.

**Options**    *server-address*—Address of the RADIUS authentication server.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication” on page 83.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                       system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## rate-limit

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>rate-limit <i>limit</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services finger], [edit system services ftp], [edit system services ssh], [edit system services telnet], [edit system services xnm-clear-text], [edit system services xnm-ssl]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Maximum number of connection attempts on an access service.
<b>Options</b>	<code>rate-limit <i>limit</i></code> —(Optional) Maximum number of connection attempts allowed per minute. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 250 <b>Default:</b> 150
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring System Services for Remote Router Access” on page 158.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## refresh

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>refresh;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system scripts commit], [edit system scripts commit file <i>filename</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For JUNOS commit scripts, overwrite the local copy of all enabled commit scripts or a single enabled script located in the <code>/var/db/scripts/commit</code> directory with the copy located at the source URL, as specified in the <code>source</code> statement.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration. maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	refresh-from, source

## refresh-from

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>refresh-from url;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system scripts commit], [edit system scripts commit file <i>filename</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For JUNOS commit scripts, overwrite the local copy of all enabled commit scripts or a single enabled script located in the <code>/var/db/scripts/commit</code> directory with the copy located at a URL other than the URL specified in the <code>source</code> statement.
<b>Options</b>	<i>url</i> —The source specified as an HTTP URL, FTP URL, or SCP-style remote file specification.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration. maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	refresh, source

## retry

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>retry number;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system radius-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system accounting destination radius server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Number of times the router is allowed to try to contact a RADIUS authentication or accounting server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Number of retries allowed for contacting a RADIUS server. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 10 <b>Default:</b> 3
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication” on page 83 and “Configuring RADIUS System Accounting” on page 209.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	timeout



## retry-options

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> retry-options {   backoff-threshold <i>number</i>;   backoff-factor <i>seconds</i>;   minimum-time <i>seconds</i>;   tries-before-disconnect <i>number</i>; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.0.
<b>Description</b>	Maximum number of times a user can attempt to enter a password while logging in through SSH or Telnet before being disconnected.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>backoff-threshold <i>number</i></b>—Threshold for the number of failed login attempts before the user experiences a delay when attempting to reenter a password. Use the <b>backoff-factor</b> option to specify the length of delay, in seconds.  <b>Range:</b> 1 through 3  <b>Default:</b> 2</p> <p><b>backoff-factor <i>seconds</i></b>—Length of delay after each failed login attempt. The length of delay increases by this value for each subsequent login attempt after the value specified in the <b>backoff-threshold</b> option.  <b>Range:</b> 5 through 10  <b>Default:</b> 5</p> <p><b>minimum-time <i>seconds</i></b>—Minimum length of time that the connection remains open while the user is attempting to enter a password to log in.  <b>Range:</b> 20 through 60  <b>Default:</b> 20</p> <p><b>tries-before-disconnect <i>number</i></b>—Maximum number of times a user is allowed to attempt to enter a password to log in through SSH or Telnet.  <b>Range:</b> 1 through 10  <b>Default:</b> 10</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Limiting the Number of User Login Attempts for SSH and Telnet Sessions” on page 70.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	rate-limit

## root-authentication

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> root-authentication {     (encrypted-password "password"   plain-text-password);     ssh-dsa "public-key";     ssh-rsa "public-key"; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the authentication methods for the root-level user, whose username is root.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>encrypted-password "password"</b>—Use MD5 or other encrypted authentication. Specify the MD5 or other password. You can specify only one encrypted password.</p> <p>You cannot configure a blank password for <b>encrypted-password</b> using blank quotation marks (" "). You must configure a password whose number of characters range from 1 through 128 characters and enclose the password in quotation marks.</p> <p><b>plain-text-password</b>—Use a plain-text password. The CLI prompts you for the password and then encrypts it. The CLI displays the encrypted version, and the software places the encrypted version in its user database. You can specify only one plain-text password.</p> <p><b>ssh-dsa "public-key"</b>—SSH version 2 authentication. Specify the DSA (SSH version 2) public key. You can specify one or more public keys.</p> <p><b>ssh-rsa "public-key"</b>—SSH version 1 authentication. Specify the RSA (SSH version 1 and SSH version 2) public key. You can specify one or more public keys.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Root Password” on page 58.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	authentication (Login)

## root-login

---

<b>Syntax</b>	root-login (allow   deny   deny-password);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services ssh]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Control user access through SSH.
<b>Options</b>	<p>allow—Allow users to log in to the router as root through SSH.</p> <p><b>Default:</b> allow</p> <p>deny—Disable users from logging in to the router as root through SSH.</p> <p>deny-password—Allow users to log in to the router as root through SSH when the authentication method (for example, RSA authentication) does not require a password.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Root Login Through SSH” on page 196.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	Configuring SSH Service for Remote Access to the Router on page 195.

## router

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>router {     address; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp-service], [edit system services dhcp-service pool], [edit system services dhcp-service static-binding]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Specify IPv4 addresses for one or more routers available to a DHCP client. List routers in order of preference.
<b>Options</b>	address—IPv4 address of the router. To configure multiple routers, include multiple address options.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## routing-instance-name

---

<b>Syntax</b>	routing-instance-name;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify that the routing instance name is concatenated with the username during the subscriber authentication process. No routing instance name is concatenated if the configuration is in the default routing instance.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## saved-core-context

---

<b>Syntax</b>	(saved-core-context   no-saved-core-context);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure whether the router saves core files generated by internal JUNOS processes, along with contextual information (system log files and a copy of the current configuration):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>saved-core-context</b>—The router saves each cores file and its associated context in a compressed tar file named <code>/var/tmp/process-name.core.core-number.tgz</code>.</li> <li>■ <b>no-saved-core-context</b>—The router does not save cores files and their associated context.</li> </ul> <p>The router saves core files.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Saving Core Files from JUNOS Software Processes” on page 205.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	saved-core-files

## saved-core-files

---

<b>Syntax</b>	saved-core-files <i>number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Save core files generated by internal JUNOS processes, but not the associated contextual information (configuration and system log files).
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Maximum number of core files to save. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 64
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Saving Core Files from JUNOS Software Processes” on page 205.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	saved-core-context

## scripts

---

**Syntax**

```
scripts {
  commit {
    file filename.xml {
      optional;
      refresh;
      refresh-from url;
      source url;
    }
    traceoptions {
      file filename <files number> <size size>;
      flag flag;
    }
  }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** For JUNOS commit scripts, configure scripting mechanisms.

The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See the *JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level** maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration.  
maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**secret**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>secret password;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system accounting destination radius server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system accounting destination tacplus server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system radius-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system tacplus-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the password to use with the RADIUS or TACACS+ server. The secret password used by the local router must match that used by the server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>password</i> —Password to use; can include spaces included in quotation marks.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication” on page 83, “Configuring TACACS+ Authentication” on page 87, “Configuring TACACS+ System Accounting” on page 212, and “Configuring RADIUS System Accounting” on page 209.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**server**

---

**server (NTP)**

**Syntax** `server address <key key-number> <version value> <prefer>;`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system ntp]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** For NTP, configure the local router to operate in client mode with the remote system at the specified **address**. In this mode, the local router can be synchronized with the remote system, but the remote system can never be synchronized with the local router.

**Options** **address**—Address of the remote system. You must specify an address, not a hostname.

**key key-number**—(Optional) Use the specified key number to encrypt authentication fields in all packets sent to the specified address.

**Range:** Any unsigned 32-bit integer

**prefer**—(Optional) Mark the remote system as preferred host, which means that if all other things are equal, this remote system is chosen for synchronization among a set of correctly operating systems.

**version value**—(Optional) Specify the version number to be used in outgoing NTP packets.

**Range:** 1 through 4

**Default:** 4

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the NTP Time Server and Time Services” on page 109.

**Required Privilege Level** **system**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**system-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.



**server (RADIUS Accounting)**

**Syntax**    server {  
               server-address {  
                   accounting-port *port-number*;  
                   secret *password*;  
                   source-address *address*;  
                   retry *number*  
                   timeout *seconds*;  
               }  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system accounting destination radius]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure RADIUS logging.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring RADIUS System Accounting” on page 209.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**server (TACACS+ Accounting)**

**Syntax**    server {  
               server-address {  
                   port *port-number*;  
                   secret *password*;  
                   single-connection;  
                   timeout *seconds*;  
               }  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system accounting destination tacplus]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure TACACS+ logging.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring TACACS+ System Accounting” on page 212.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## server-identifier

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>server-identifier <i>address</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp], [edit system services dhcp pool], [edit system services dhcp static-binding]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>For J-series Services Routers only. Configure a server identifier. This is an optional setting that can be used to identify a DHCP server in a DHCP message. It can also be used as a destination address from clients to servers (for example, when the boot file is set, but not the boot server).</p> <p>Servers include the server identifier in <b>DHCP OFFER</b> messages so that clients can distinguish between multiple lease offers. Clients include the server identifier in <b>DHCP REQUEST</b> messages to select a lease and indicate which offer is accepted from multiple lease offers. Also, clients can use the server identifier to send unicast request messages to specific DHCP servers to renew a current lease.</p> <p>This address must be a manually assigned, static IP address. The server cannot send a request and receive an IP address from itself or another DHCP server.</p>
<b>Default</b>	If no server identifier is set, the DHCP server sets the server identifier based on the primary interface address used by the server to receive a client request. For example, if the client sends a DHCP request and the server receives it on <b>fe-0/0/0</b> and the primary interface address is <b>1.1.1.1</b> , then the server identifier is set to <b>1.1.1.1</b> .
<b>Options</b>	<i>address</i> —The IPv4 address of the server. This address must be accessible by all clients served within a specified range of addresses (based on an address pool or static binding).
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## servers

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>servers server-address {     port port-number; }</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services service-deployment]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure an IPv4 address for the Session and Resource Control (SRC) server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>server-address</i> —The TCP port number. <b>Default:</b> 3333  The remaining statement is explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Work with SRC Software” on page 214.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## service-deployment

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>service-deployment {     servers server-address {         port port-number;     }     source-address source-address; }</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Enable JUNOS software to work with the SRC software.
<b>Options</b>	The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Work with SRC Software” on page 214.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## services

---

```

Syntax  services {
            dhcp {
                dhcp_services;
            }
            finger {
                <connection-limit limit>;
                <rate-limit limit>;
            }
            ftp {
                <connection-limit limit>;
                <rate-limit limit>;
            }
            ssh {
                root-login (allow | deny | deny-password);
                protocol-version [v1 v2];
                <connection-limit limit>;
                <rate-limit limit >;
            }
            service-deployment {
                servers server-address {
                    port-number port-number;
                }
                source-address source-address;
            }
            telnet {
                <connection-limit limit>;
                <rate-limit limit>;
            }
            web-management {
                http {
                    interfaces [ interface-names ];
                    port port;
                }
                https {
                    interfaces [ interface-names ];
                    local-certificate name;
                    port port;
                }
                limits {
                    active-child-process [ process-limit ];
                }
                session {
                    idle-timeout [ minutes ];
                    session-limit [ session-limit ];
                }
            }
            xnm-clear-text {
                <connection-limit limit>;
                <rate-limit limit>;
            }
            xnm-ssl {

```

```

    <connection-limit limit>;
    <rate-limit limit>;
    <local-certificate name>
  }
}

```

<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure the router so that users on remote systems can access the local router through the DHCP server, finger, rlogin, SSH, telnet, Web management, JUNOScript clear-text, JUNOScript SSL, and network utilities or enable JUNOS software to work with the SRC software.</p> <p>The statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring System Services for Remote Router Access” on page 158 and “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Work with SRC Software” on page 214.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## session

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> session {   idle-timeout [ <i>minutes</i> ];   session-limit [ <i>session-limit</i> ]; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services web-management]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.
<b>Description</b>	Configure limits for the number of minutes a session can be idle before it times out, and configure the number of simultaneous J-Web user login sessions.
<b>Options</b>	<p>idle-timeout <i>minutes</i>—Configure the number of minutes a session can be idle before it times out.</p> <p><b>Range:</b> 1 through 1440</p> <p><b>Default:</b> 1440</p> <p>session-limit <i>session-limit</i>—Configure the maximum number of simultaneous J-Web user login sessions.</p> <p><b>Range:</b> 1 through 1024</p> <p><b>Default:</b> Unlimited</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>J-Web Interface User Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## single-connection

---

<b>Syntax</b>	single-connection;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system tacplus-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system accounting destination tacplus-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Optimize attempts to connect to a TACACS + server. The software maintains one open TCP connection to the server for multiple requests, rather than opening a connection for each connection attempt.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring TACACS + Authentication” on page 87 and “Configuring TACACS + System Accounting” on page 212.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## size

---

<b>Syntax</b>	size <i>size</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog archive], [edit system syslog file <i>filename</i> archive]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the maximum amount of data that the JUNOS logging utility writes to a log file <i>logfile</i> before archiving it (closing it, compressing it, and changing its name to <i>logfile.0.gz</i> ). The utility then opens and writes to a new file called <i>logfile</i> . For information about the number of archive files that the utility creates in this way, see files.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>size</i>—Maximum size of each system log file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB).</p> <p><b>Syntax:</b> <i>xk</i> to specify the number of kilobytes, <i>xm</i> for the number of megabytes, or <i>xg</i> for the number of gigabytes</p> <p><b>Range:</b> 64 KB through 1 GB</p> <p><b>Default:</b> 128 KB for J-series Services Routers; 1 MB for M-series, MX-series, and T-series routing platforms</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	files, <i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i>

**source**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>source url;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system scripts commit], [edit system scripts commit file <i>filename</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For JUNOS commit scripts, specify the location of the source file for all enabled commit scripts or a single enabled script located in the <code>/var/db/scripts/commit</code> directory. When you include the <b>refresh</b> statement, the source URL is the location from which the local copy is refreshed.
<b>Options</b>	<i>url</i> —The source specified as an HTTP URL, FTP URL, or SCP-style remote file specification.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration. maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	refresh, refresh-from

## source-address

---

- source-address (NTP, RADIUS, System Logging, or TACACS+) on page 376
- source-address (SRC Software) on page 377

### **source-address (NTP, RADIUS, System Logging, or TACACS+)**

<b>Syntax</b>	source-address <i>source-address</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system accounting destination radius server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system accounting destination tacplus server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system ntp], [edit system radius-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system syslog], [edit system tacplus-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a source address for each configured TACACS + server, RADIUS server, NTP server, or the source address to record in system log messages that are directed to a remote machine.
<b>Options</b>	<i>source-address</i> —A valid IP address configured on one of the router interfaces. For system logging, the address is recorded as the message source in messages sent to the remote machines specified in all <b>host <i>hostname</i></b> statements at the [edit system syslog] hierarchy level, but not for messages directed to the other Routing Engine or to the TX Matrix platform in a routing matrix.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying a Source Address for the JUNOS Software to Access External RADIUS Servers” on page 85, “Specifying a Source Address for an NTP Server” on page 107, and “Specifying an Alternative Source Address for System Log Messages” on page 128.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**source-address (SRC Software)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>source-address source-address;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services service-deployment]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Enable JUNOS software to work with the SRC software.
<b>Options</b>	<code>source-address</code> —(Optional) The local IPv4 address to be used as source address for traffic to the SRC server. The source address restricts traffic within the out-of-band network.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Work with SRC Software” on page 214.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**source-port**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>source-port upper-limit &lt;upper-limit&gt;;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the range of port addresses.
<b>Options</b>	<code>upper-limit upper-limit</code> —(Optional) The range of port addresses and can be a value from 5000 through 65,355.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Extend the Default Port Address Range” on page 219.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## source-quench

---

<b>Syntax</b>	(source-quench   no-source-quench);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure how the JUNOS software handles Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) source quench messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>source-quench</b>—The JUNOS software ignores ICMP source quench messages.</li> <li>■ <b>no-source-quench</b>—The JUNOS software does not ignore ICMP source quench messages.</li> </ul>
<b>Default</b>	The JUNOS software does not ignore ICMP source quench messages.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Ignore ICMP Source Quench Messages” on page 218.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## ssh

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>ssh {   root-login (allow   deny   deny-password);   protocol-version [v1 v2];   &lt;connection-limit limit&gt;;   &lt;rate-limit limit&gt;; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Allow SSH requests from remote systems to the local router.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring SSH Service for Remote Access to the Router” on page 195.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## start-time

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>start-time <i>date.time</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog file <i>filename</i> archive]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the date and time for a one-time transfer of a system logging archive file to a remote archiving site.
<b>Options</b>	<i>date.time</i> —Date and time at which you want the log file transfer to begin. The format for this value is <code>yyyy-mm-dd.hh:mm</code> .
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## static-binding

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>static-binding mac-address {     fixed-address {         address;     }     host client-hostname;     client-identifier (ascii client-id   hexadecimal client-id); }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Set static bindings for DHCP clients. A static binding is a mapping between a fixed IP address and the client's MAC address or client identifier.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>mac-address</b>—The MAC address of the client. This is a hardware address that uniquely identifies a client on the network.</p> <p><b>fixed-address address</b>—Fixed IP address assigned to the client. Typically a client has one address assigned, but you can assign more.</p> <p><b>host client-hostname</b>—Hostname of the client requesting the DHCP server. The name can include the local domain name. Otherwise, the name is resolved based on the <b>domain-name</b> statement.</p> <p><b>client-identifier (ascii client-id   hexadecimal client-id)</b>—Used by the DHCP server to index the database of address bindings. The client identifier is an ASCII string or hexadecimal number and can include a type-value pair as specified in RFC 1700, <i>Assigned Numbers</i>. Either a client identifier or the client's MAC address must be configured to uniquely identify the client on the network.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## static-host-mapping

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>static-host-mapping {     hostname {         inet [ address ];         sysid system-identifier;         alias [ alias ];     } }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Map a hostname to one or more IP addresses and aliases, and configure an International Organization for Standardization (ISO) system identifier (system ID).
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>alias alias</i>—(Optional) Alias for the hostname.</p> <p><i>hostname</i>—Fully qualified hostname.</p> <p><i>inet address</i>—IP address. You can specify one or more IP addresses for the host.</p> <p><i>sysid system-identifier</i>—ISO system identifier (system ID). This is the 6-byte portion of the Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS) network service access point (NSAP). We recommend that you use the host's IP address represented in binary-coded decimal (BCD) format. For example, the IP address 208.197.169.18 is 2081.9716.9018 in BCD.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router’s Hostname” on page 52.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## structured-data

---

**Syntax**    structured-data {  
              brief;  
              }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system syslog file *filename*]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.

**Description**    Write system log messages to the log file in structured-data format, which complies with Internet draft draft-ietf-syslog-protocol-23, *The syslog Protocol* (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/draft-ietf-syslog-protocol-23>).



**NOTE:** When this statement is included, other statements that specify the format for messages written to the file are ignored (the **explicit-priority** statement at the [edit system syslog file *filename*] hierarchy level and the **time-format** statement at the [edit system syslog] hierarchy level).

---

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Logging Messages in Structured-Data Format” on page 126.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                  system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    explicit-priority, time-format, *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*

**syslog**

**Syntax**

```

syslog {
  archive {
    files number;
    size size;
    (world-readable | no-world-readable);
  }
  console {
    facility severity;
  }
  file filename {
    facility severity;
    explicit-priority;
    match "regular-expression";
    structured-data {
      brief;
    }
    archive {
      archive-sites {
        site-name;
      }
      files number;
      size size;
      start-time date.time;
      transfer-interval interval;
      (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
  }
  host (hostname | other-routing-engine | scc-master) {
    facility severity;
    explicit-priority;
    facility-override facility;
    log-prefix string;
    match "regular-expression";
  }
  source-address source-address;
  time-format (year | millisecond | year millisecond);
  user (username | *) {
    facility severity;
    match "regular-expression";
  }
}

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure the types of system log messages to log to files, a remote destination, user terminals, or the system console.

The statements are explained separately.

<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Overview” on page 117.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i>

## system

---

<b>Syntax</b>	system { ... }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure system management properties.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “System Management Complete Configuration Statements” on page 43.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## tacplus

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> tacplus {   server {     server-address {       port <i>port-number</i>;       secret <i>password</i>;       single-connection;       timeout <i>seconds</i>;     }   } } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system accounting destination]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+).
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>server-address</i>—Address of the TACACS+ authentication server.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring TACACS+ System Accounting” on page 212.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



## tacplus-options

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>tacplus-options {   service-name <i>service-name</i>;   (no-cmd-attribute-value   exclude-cmd-attribute); }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	<p>Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.</p> <p>The no-cmd-attribute-value and exclude-cmd-attribute option introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.</p>
<b>Description</b>	Configure TACACS+ options for authentication and accounting.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>service-name</b> <i>service-name</i>—The name of the authentication service used when configuring multiple TACACS+ servers to use the same authentication service.  <b>Default:</b> junos-exec</p> <p><b>no-cmd-attribute-value</b>—Set the cmd attribute value to an empty string in the TACACS+ accounting start and stop requests to enable logging of accounting records in the correct log file on a TACACS+ server.</p> <p><b>exclude-cmd-attribute</b>—Exclude the cmd attribute value completely from start and stop accounting records to enable logging of accounting records in the correct log file on a TACACS+ server.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Same Authentication Service for Multiple TACACS+ Servers” on page 89 and “Configuring TACACS+ Server Accounting” on page 212.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## tacplus-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>tacplus-server server-address {     secret <i>password</i>;     single-connection;     source-address <i>source-address</i>;     timeout <i>seconds</i>; }</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the TACACS+ server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>server-address</i> —Address of the TACACS+ authentication server.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring TACACS+ Authentication” on page 87.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## tcp-drop-synfin-set

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>tcp-drop-synfin-set;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the router to drop packets that have both the SYN and FIN bits set.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the Router to Drop Packets with the SYN and FIN Bits Set” on page 218.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**tcp-mss**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>tcp-mss mss-value;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system internet-options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.2 of J-series Services Routers software.
<b>Description</b>	<p>(J-series Services Routers only) Enable and specify the TCP maximum segment size (TCP MSS) to be used to replace that of TCP SYN packets whose MSS option is set to a higher value than the value you choose.</p> <p>If the router receives a TCP packet with the SYN bit and MSS option set and the MSS option specified in the packet is larger than the MSS specified by the <code>tcp-mss</code> command, the router replaces the MSS value in the packet with the lower value specified by the <code>tcp-mss</code> statement.</p> <p>This statement enables you to specify the MSS size in TCP SYN packets used during session establishment. Decreasing the MSS size helps to limit packet fragmentation and to protect against packet loss that can occur when a packet must be fragmented to meet the MTU size but the packet's DF (don't fragment) bit is set.</p> <p>Use the <code>tcp-mss</code> statement to specify a lower TCP MSS value than the value in the TCP SYN packets.</p>
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>mss-value</i>—TCP MSS value for SYN packets with a higher MSS value set.</p> <p><b>Range:</b> 64 through 65535 seconds</p> <p><b>Default:</b> TCP MSS is disabled.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring TCP MSS on J-series Services Routers” on page 216.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## telnet

---

**Syntax**   telnet {  
              <connection-limit *limit*>;  
              <rate-limit *limit*>;  
              }

**Hierarchy Level**   [edit system services]

**Release Information**   Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**   Allow Telnet connections from remote systems to the local router.  
  
                  The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**   See “Configuring System Services for Remote Router Access” on page 158.

**Required Privilege Level**   system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                              system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## time-format

---

**Syntax** time-format (year | millisecond | year millisecond);

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system syslog]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Include the year, the millisecond, or both, in the timestamp on every standard-format system log message. The additional information is included for messages directed to each destination configured by a **file**, **console**, or **user** statement at the [edit system syslog] hierarchy level, but not to destinations configured by a **host** statement.

By default, the timestamp specifies the month, date, hour, minute, and second when the message was logged, for example, **Aug 21 12:36:30**.



**NOTE:** When the **structured-data** statement is included at the [edit system syslog file *filename*] hierarchy level, this statement is ignored for the file.

---

**Options** millisecond—Include the millisecond in the timestamp.

year—Include the year in the timestamp.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Including the Year or Millisecond in Timestamps” on page 137.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** structured-data, *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*

## timeout

---

<b>Syntax</b>	timeout <i>seconds</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system radius-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system tacplus-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system accounting destination radius server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit system accounting destination tacplus server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the amount of time that the local router waits to receive a response from a RADIUS or TACACS+ server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —Amount of time to wait. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 90 seconds <b>Default:</b> 3 seconds
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication” on page 83 and “Configuring TACACS+ Authentication” on page 87.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	retry

## time-zone

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>time-zone (GMT<i>hour-offset</i>   <i>time-zone</i>);</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4. GMT <i>hour-offset</i> option added in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Set the local time zone. To have the time zone change take effect for all processes running on the router, you must reboot the router.
<b>Default</b>	UTC
<b>Options</b>	GMT <i>hour-offset</i> —Set the time zone relative to UTC time. <b>Range:</b> -14 through +12 <b>Default:</b> 0

*time-zone*—Specify the time zone as UTC, which is the default time zone, or as a string such as PDT (Pacific Daylight Time), or use one of the following continents and major cities:

Africa/Abidjan, Africa/Accra, Africa/Addis\_Ababa, Africa/Algiers, Africa/Asmera, Africa/Bamako, Africa/Bangui, Africa/Banjul, Africa/Bissau, Africa/Blantyre, Africa/Brazzaville, Africa/Bujumbura, Africa/Cairo, Africa/Casablanca, Africa/Ceuta, Africa/Conakry, Africa/Dakar, Africa/Dar\_es\_Salaam, Africa/Djibouti, Africa/Douala, Africa/El\_Aaiun, Africa/Freetown, Africa/Gaborone, Africa/Harare, Africa/Johannesburg, Africa/Kampala, Africa/Khartoum, Africa/Kigali, Africa/Kinshasa, Africa/Lagos, Africa/Libreville, Africa/Lome, Africa/Luanda, Africa/Lubumbashi, Africa/Lusaka, Africa/Malabo, Africa/Maputo, Africa/Maseru, Africa/Mbabane, Africa/Mogadishu, Africa/Monrovia, Africa/Nairobi, Africa/Ndjamena, Africa/Niamey, Africa/Nouakchott, Africa/Ouagadougou, Africa/Porto-Novo, Africa/Sao\_Tome, Africa/Timbuktu, Africa/Tripoli, Africa/Tunis, Africa/Windhoek

America/Adak, America/Anchorage, America/Anguilla, America/Antigua, America/Aruba, America/Asuncion, America/Barbados, America/Belize, America/Bogota, America/Boise, America/Buenos\_Aires, America/Caracas, America/Catamarca, America/Cayenne, America/Cayman, America/Chicago, America/Cordoba, America/Costa\_Rica, America/Cuiaba, America/Curacao, America/Dawson, America/Dawson\_Creek, America/Denver, America/Detroit, America/Dominica, America/Edmonton, America/El\_Salvador, America/Ensenada, America/Fortaleza, America/Glace\_Bay, America/Godthab, America/Goose\_Bay, America/Grand\_Turk, America/Grenada, America/Guadeloupe, America/Guatemala, America/Guayaquil, America/Guyana, America/Halifax, America/Havana, America/Indiana/Knox, America/Indiana/Marengo, America/Indiana/Vevay, America/Indianapolis, America/Inuvik, America/Iqaluit, America/Jamaica, America/Jujuy, America/Juneau, America/La\_Paz, America/Lima, America/Los\_Angeles, America/Louisville, America/Maceio, America/Managua, America/Manaus, America/Martinique, America/Mazatlan, America/Mendoza, America/Menominee, America/Mexico\_City, America/Miquelon, America/Montevideo, America/Montreal, America/Montserrat, America/Nassau, America/New\_York, America/Nipigon, America/Nome, America/Noronha, America/Panama, America/Pangnirtung, America/Paramaribo,

America/Phoenix, America/Port-au-Prince, America/Port\_of\_Spain,  
 America/Porto\_Acre, America/Puerto\_Rico, America/Rainy\_River,  
 America/Rankin\_Inlet, America/Regina, America/Rosario, America/Santiago,  
 America/Santo\_Domingo, America/Sao\_Paulo, America/Scoresbysund,  
 America/Shiprock, America/St\_Johns, America/St\_Kitts, America/St\_Lucia,  
 America/St\_Thomas, America/St\_Vincent, America/Swift\_Current,  
 America/Tegucigalpa, America/Thule, America/Thunder\_Bay, America/Tijuana,  
 America/Tortola, America/Vancouver, America/Whitehorse, America/Winnipeg,  
 America/Yakutat, America/Yellowknife  
 Antarctica/Casey, Antarctica/DumontDURville, Antarctica/Mawson, Antarctica/McMurdo,  
 Antarctica/Palmer, Antarctica/South\_Pole  
 Arctic/Longyearbyen  
 Asia/Aden, Asia/Alma-Ata, Asia/Amman, Asia/Anadyr, Asia/Aqtau, Asia/Aqtobe,  
 Asia/Ashkhabad, Asia/Baghdad, Asia/Bahrain, Asia/Baku, Asia/Bangkok,  
 Asia/Beirut, Asia/Bishkek, Asia/Brunei, Asia/Calcutta, Asia/Chungking,  
 Asia/Colombo, Asia/Dacca, Asia/Damascus, Asia/Dubai, Asia/Dushanbe,  
 Asia/Gaza, Asia/Harbin, Asia/Hong\_Kong, Asia/Irkutsk, Asia/Ishigaki, Asia/Jakarta,  
 Asia/Jayapura, Asia/Jerusalem, Asia/Kabul, Asia/Kamchatka, Asia/Karachi,  
 Asia/Kashgar, Asia/Katmandu, Asia/Krasnoyarsk, Asia/Kuala\_Lumpur,  
 Asia/Kuching, Asia/Kuwait, Asia/Macao, Asia/Magadan, Asia/Manila, Asia/Muscat,  
 Asia/Nicosia, Asia/Novosibirsk, Asia/Omsk, Asia/Phnom\_Penh, Asia/Pyongyang,  
 Asia/Qatar, Asia/Rangoon, Asia/Riyadh, Asia/Saigon, Asia/Seoul, Asia/Shanghai,  
 Asia/Singapore, Asia/Taipei, Asia/Tashkent, Asia/Tbilisi, Asia/Tehran, Asia/Thimbu,  
 Asia/Tokyo, Asia/Ujung\_Pandang, Asia/Ulan\_Bator, Asia/Urumqi, Asia/Vientiane,  
 Asia/Vladivostok, Asia/Yakutsk, Asia/Yekaterinburg, Asia/Yerevan  
 Atlantic/Azores, Atlantic/Bermuda, Atlantic/Canary, Atlantic/Cape\_Verde,  
 Atlantic/Faeroe, Atlantic/Jan\_Mayen, Atlantic/Madeira, Atlantic/Reykjavik,  
 Atlantic/South\_Georgia, Atlantic/St\_Helena, Atlantic/Stanley  
 Australia/Adelaide, Australia/Brisbane, Australia/Broken\_Hill, Australia/Darwin,  
 Australia/Hobart, Australia/Lindeman, Australia/Lord\_Howe, Australia/Melbourne,  
 Australia/Perth, Australia/Sydney  
 Europe/Amsterdam, Europe/Andorra, Europe/Athens, Europe/Belfast,  
 Europe/Belgrade, Europe/Berlin, Europe/Bratislava, Europe/Brussels,  
 Europe/Bucharest, Europe/Budapest, Europe/Chisinau, Europe/Copenhagen,  
 Europe/Dublin, Europe/Gibraltar, Europe/Helsinki, Europe/Istanbul,  
 Europe/Kaliningrad, Europe/Kiev, Europe/Lisbon, Europe/Ljubljana, Europe/London,  
 Europe/Luxembourg, Europe/Madrid, Europe/Malta, Europe/Minsk, Europe/Monaco,  
 Europe/Moscow, Europe/Oslo, Europe/Paris, Europe/Prague, Europe/Riga,  
 Europe/Rome, Europe/Samara, Europe/San\_Marino, Europe/Sarajevo,  
 Europe/Simferopol, Europe/Skopje, Europe/Sofia, Europe/Stockholm,  
 Europe/Tallinn, Europe/Tirane, Europe/Vaduz, Europe/Vatican, Europe/Vienna,  
 Europe/Vilnius, Europe/Warsaw, Europe/Zagreb, Europe/Zurich  
 Indian/Antananarivo, Indian/Chagos, Indian/Christmas, Indian/Cocos, Indian/Comoro,  
 Indian/Kerguelen, Indian/Mahe, Indian/Maldives, Indian/Mauritius, Indian/Mayotte,  
 Indian/Reunion  
 Pacific/Apia, Pacific/Auckland, Pacific/Chatham, Pacific/Easter, Pacific/Efate,  
 Pacific/Enderbury, Pacific/Fakaofu, Pacific/Fiji, Pacific/Funafuti, Pacific/Galapagos,  
 Pacific/Gambier, Pacific/Guadalcanal, Pacific/Guam, Pacific/Honolulu,  
 Pacific/Johnston, Pacific/Kiritimati, Pacific/Kosrae, Pacific/Kwajalein, Pacific/Majuro,  
 Pacific/Marquesas, Pacific/Midway, Pacific/Nauru, Pacific/Niue, Pacific/Norfolk,  
 Pacific/Noumea, Pacific/Pago\_Pago, Pacific/Palau, Pacific/Pitcairn, Pacific/Ponape,  
 Pacific/Port\_Moresby, Pacific/Rarotonga, Pacific/Saipan, Pacific/Tahiti,  
 Pacific/Tarawa, Pacific/Tongatapu, Pacific/Truk, Pacific/Wake, Pacific/Wallis,  
 Pacific/Yap



**Usage Guidelines** See “Modifying the Default Time Zone for a Router Running JUNOS Software” on page 105.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## **traceoptions**

---

- [traceoptions \(Address-Assignment Pool\) on page 395](#)
- [traceoptions \(Commit Scripts\) on page 397](#)
- [traceoptions \(DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers\) on page 399](#)
- [traceoptions \(Extended DHCP Local Server\) on page 402](#)
- [traceoptions \(SBC Configuration Process\) on page 404](#)

**tracoptions (Address-Assignment Pool)**

**Syntax**    tracoptions {  
               file *filename*{  
                   files *number*;  
                   size *maximum-file-size*;  
                   match *regex*;  
                   world-readable | no-world-readable  
               }  
               flag address-assignment;  
               flag all;  
               flag configuration;  
               flag framework;  
               flag ldap;  
               flag local-authentication;  
               flag radius;  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system processes general-authentication-service]

**Release Information**    Flag for tracing address-assignment pool operations introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.  
                               option-name option introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.

**Description**    Configure tracing options.

**Options**    file *filename*—Name of the file that receives the output of the tracing operation.  
                   Enclose the name in quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory */var/log*.

files *number*—(Optional) Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named *trace-file* reaches its maximum size, it is renamed *trace-file.0*, then *trace-file.1*, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.

If you specify a maximum number of files, you also must specify a maximum file size with the *size* option and a filename.

**Range:** 2 through 1000

**Default:** 3 files

flag *flag*—Tracing operation to perform. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple *flag* statements. You can include the following flags:

- address-assignment—All address-assignment events
- all—All tracing operations
- configuration—Configuration events
- framework—Authentication framework events
- ldap—LDAP authentication events
- local-authentication—Local authentication events
- radius—RADIUS authentication events

**match *regex***—(Optional) Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.

**size *size***—(Optional) Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB). If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the **files** option and filename.

**Syntax:** *xk* to specify KB, *xm* to specify MB, or *xg* to specify GB

**Range:** 10 KB through 1 GB

**Default:** 128 KB

**world-readable**—(Optional) Enable unrestricted file access.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Tracing Address-Assignment Pool Processes” on page 479.

**Required Privilege Level** **admin**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**admin-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.

**traceoptions (Commit Scripts)**

**Syntax** traceoptions {  
     file *filename* <files *number*> <size *size*>;  
     flag *flag*;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system scripts commit]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Define tracing operations for the commit scripts.

**Default** If you do not include this statement, no commit-script-specific tracing operations are performed.

**Options** *filename*—Name of the file that receives the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name in quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory */var/log*. By default, commit script process tracing output is placed in the file *cscript.log*.

*files number*—(Optional) Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named *trace-file* reaches its maximum size, it is renamed *trace-file.0*, then *trace-file.1*, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then, the oldest trace file is overwritten.

If you specify a maximum number of files, you also must specify a maximum file size with the *size* option.

**Range:** 2 through 1000

**Default:** 10 files

*flag*—Tracing operation to perform. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple *flag* statements. You can include the following flags:

- *all*—Log all operations
- *events*—Log important events
- *input*—Log commit script input data
- *offline*—Generate data for offline development
- *output*—Log commit script output data
- *rpc*—Log commit script RPCs
- *xslt*—Log the XSLT library

*size size*—(Optional) Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB). When a trace file named *trace-file* reaches this size, it is renamed *trace-file.0*. When the *trace-file* again reaches its maximum size, *trace-file.0* is renamed *trace-file.1* and *trace-file* is renamed *trace-file.0*. This renaming scheme continues until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then, the oldest trace file is overwritten.

If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the **files** option.

**Syntax:** *xk* to specify KB, *xm* to specify MB, or *xg* to specify GB

**Range:** 128 KB through 1 GB

**Default:** 128 KB

**Usage Guidelines** See the *JUNOS Configuration and Diagnostic Automation Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level** maintenance—To view this statement in the configuration.  
maintenance-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**tracoptions (DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>tracoptions {     file filename &lt;files number&gt; &lt;match regex&gt; &lt;size size&gt; &lt;world-readable       no-world-readable&gt;;     flag flag; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement for tracing J-series Services Router DHCP processes introduced in JUNOS Release 8.0.
<b>Description</b>	Define tracing operations for DHCP processes.
<b>Options</b>	<p>file <i>filename</i>—Name of the file that receives the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name in quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory <code>/var/log</code>.</p> <p>files <i>number</i>—(Optional) Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named <i>trace-file</i> reaches its maximum size, it is renamed <i>trace-file.0</i>, then <i>trace-file.1</i>, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.</p> <p>If you specify a maximum number of files, you also must specify a maximum file size with the <b>size</b> option and a filename.  <b>Range:</b> 2 through 1000  <b>Default:</b> 3 files</p> <p>flag <i>flag</i>—Tracing operation to perform. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple <b>flag</b> statements. You can include the following flags.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ all—All tracing operations</li> <li>■ binding—Trace binding operations</li> <li>■ config—Log reading of configuration</li> <li>■ conflict—Trace user-detected conflicts for IP addresses</li> <li>■ event—Trace important events</li> <li>■ ifdb—Trace interface database operations</li> <li>■ io—Trace I/O operations</li> <li>■ lease—Trace lease operations</li> <li>■ main—Trace main loop operations</li> <li>■ misc—Trace miscellaneous operations</li> <li>■ packet—Trace DHCP packets</li> <li>■ options—Trace DHCP options</li> <li>■ pool—Trace address pool operations</li> <li>■ protocol—Trace protocol operations</li> </ul>

- **rtsock**—Trace routing socket operations
- **scope**—Trace scope operations
- **signal**—Trace DHCP signal operations
- **trace**—All tracing operations
- **ui**—Trace user interface operations

**match *regex***—(Optional) Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.

- **all**—All tracing operations
- **binding**—Trace binding operations
- **config**—Log reading of configuration
- **conflict**—Trace user-detected conflicts for IP addresses
- **event**—Trace important events
- **ifdb**—Trace interface database operations
- **io**—Trace I/O operations
- **lease**—Trace lease operations
- **main**—Trace main loop operations
- **misc**—Trace miscellaneous operations
- **packet**—Trace DHCP packets
- **options**—Trace DHCP options
- **pool**—Trace address pool operations
- **protocol**—Trace protocol operations
- **rtsock**—Trace routing socket operations
- **scope**—Trace scope operations
- **signal**—Trace DHCP signal operations
- **trace**—All tracing operations
- **ui**—Trace user interface operations
- **match *regex***—(Optional) Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.

**size *size***—(Optional) Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB). When a trace file named *trace-file* reaches this size, it is renamed *trace-file.0*. When the *trace-file* again reaches its maximum size, *trace-file.0* is renamed *trace-file.1* and *trace-file* is renamed *trace-file.0*. This renaming scheme continues until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.



If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the **files** option and filename.

**Syntax:** *xk* to specify KB, *xm* to specify MB, or *xg* to specify GB

**Range:** 10 KB through 1 GB

**Default:** 128 KB

**world-readable**—(Optional) Enable unrestricted file access.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Tracing Operations for DHCP Processes” on page 176.

**Required Privilege Level** **system**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**system-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.

**traceoptions (Extended DHCP Local Server)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> traceoptions {     file <i>filename</i> &lt;files <i>number</i>&gt; &lt;size <i>size</i>&gt; &lt;world-readable   no-world-readable&gt; &lt;match         <i>regex</i>&gt;;     flag <i>flag</i>; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Define tracing operations for DHCP processes.
<b>Options</b>	<p>file <i>filename</i>—Name of the file that receives the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name in quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory <code>/var/log</code>.</p> <p>files <i>number</i>—(Optional) Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named <b>trace-file</b> reaches its maximum size, it is renamed <b>trace-file.0</b>, then <b>trace-file.1</b>, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.</p> <p>If you specify a maximum number of files, you also must specify a maximum file size with the <b>size</b> option and a filename.</p> <p><b>Range:</b> 2 through 1000</p> <p><b>Default:</b> 3 files</p> <p>flag <i>flag</i>—Tracing operation to perform. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple <b>flag</b> statements. You can include the following flags:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ all—Trace all operations.</li> <li>■ auth—Trace authentication operations.</li> <li>■ database—Trace database events.</li> <li>■ fwd—Trace firewall process events.</li> <li>■ general—Trace miscellaneous events.</li> <li>■ ha—Trace high availability-related events.</li> <li>■ interface—Trace interface operations.</li> <li>■ io—Trace I/O operations.</li> <li>■ packet—Trace packet decoding operations.</li> <li>■ packet-option—Trace DHCP option decoding operations.</li> <li>■ rpd—Trace routing protocol process events.</li> <li>■ rtsock—Trace routing socket operations.</li> </ul>

- **session-db**—Trace session database operations.
- **state**—Trace changes in state.
- **ui**—Trace user interface operations.

**match *regex***—(Optional) Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.

**size *size***—(Optional) Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB). When a trace file named **trace-file** reaches this size, it is renamed **trace-file.0**. When the trace-file again reaches its maximum size, **trace-file.0** is renamed **trace-file.1** and **trace-file** is renamed **trace-file.0**. This renaming scheme continues until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten. If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the **files** option and filename.

**Syntax:** **xk** to specify KB, **xm** to specify MB, or **xg** to specify GB

**Range:** 10 KB through 1 GB

**Default:** 128 KB

**world-readable**—(Optional) Enable unrestricted file access.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Tracing Extended DHCP Local Server Operations” on page 189

**Required Privilege Level** **system**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**system-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.

**traceoptions (SBC Configuration Process)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> traceoptions {     file filename &lt;files number&gt; &lt;match regex&gt; &lt;size size&gt; &lt;world-readable       no-world-readable&gt;;     flag flag; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system processes sbc-configuration-process]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.5.
<b>Description</b>	Configure trace options for the session border controller (SBC) process of the border signaling gateway (BSG).
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>file <i>filename</i></b>—Name of the file that receives the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name in quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory <code>/var/log</code>.</p> <p><b>files <i>number</i></b>—(Optional) Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named <code>trace-file</code> reaches its maximum size, it is renamed <code>trace-file.0</code>, then <code>trace-file.1</code>, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.</p> <p>If you specify a maximum number of files, you must also specify a maximum file size with the <b>size</b> option and a filename.  <b>Range:</b> 2 through 1000  <b>Default:</b> 3 files</p> <p><b>flag <i>flag</i></b>—Tracing operation to perform. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple <b>flag</b> statements. You can include the following flags:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>all <i>trace-level</i></b>—Trace all SBC process operations.</li> <li>■ <b>common <i>trace-level</i></b>—Trace common events.</li> <li>■ <b>configuration <i>trace-level</i></b>—Trace configuration events.</li> <li>■ <b>device-monitor <i>trace-level</i></b>—Trace device monitor events.</li> <li>■ <b>ipc <i>trace-level</i></b>—Trace IPC events.</li> <li>■ <b>memory—pool <i>trace-level</i></b>—Trace memory pool events.</li> <li>■ <b>ui <i>trace-level</i></b>—Trace user interface operations.</li> <li>■ <b><i>trace-level</i></b>—Trace level options are related to the severity of the event being traced. When you choose a trace level, messages at that level and higher levels are captured. Enter one of the following trace levels as the <i>trace-level</i>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>debug</b>—Log all code flow of control.</li> <li>■ <b>error</b>—Log failures with a short-term effect.</li> <li>■ <b>info</b>—Log summary for normal operations, such as the policy decisions made for a call.</li> <li>■ <b>trace</b>—Log program trace START and EXIT macros.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- **warning**—Log failure recovery events or failure of an external entity.

**match *regex***—(Optional) Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.

**size *size***—(Optional) Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB). When a trace file named **trace-file** reaches this size, it is renamed **trace-file.0**. When the trace-file again reaches its maximum size, **trace-file.0** is renamed **trace-file.1** and **trace-file** is renamed **trace-file.0**. This renaming scheme continues until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten. If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the **files** option and filename.

**Syntax:** *xk* to specify KB, *xm* to specify MB, or *xg* to specify GB.

**Range:** 10 KB through 1 GB

**Default:** 128 KB

**world-readable**—(Optional) Enable unrestricted file access.

**Usage Guidelines** See *Troubleshooting the IMSG* in the *JUNOS Multiplay Solutions Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level** **system**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**system-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.

## tracing

---

<b>Syntax</b>	tracing { destination-override syslog host <i>ip-address</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.2.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure the router to enable remote tracing to a specified host IP-address. The default setting is disabled.</p> <p>The following processes are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ chassisd—chassis-control process</li> <li>■ eventd—event-processing process</li> <li>■ cosd—class-of-service process</li> <li>■ spd—adaptive-services process</li> </ul> <p>You can use the <code>no-remote-trace</code> statement, under the [edit system &lt;process-name&gt; traceoptions] hierarchy, to disable remote tracing.</p>
<b>Options</b>	destination-override syslog host <i>ip-address</i> —Overrides the global config under system tracing and has no effect if system tracing is not configured.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “JUNOS Software Tracing and Logging Operations” on page 38.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	no-remote-trace, destination-override

## transfer-interval

---

### *transfer-interval (Configuration)*


<b>Syntax</b>	<code>transfer-interval interval;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system archival configuration]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the router to periodically transfer its currently active configuration to an archive site.
<b>Options</b>	<i>interval</i> —Interval at which to transfer the current configuration to an archive site. <b>Range:</b> 15 through 2880 minutes
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Transfer Interval for Periodic Transfer of the Active Configuration to an Archive Site” on page 207.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	configuration, transfer-on-commit, archive

### *transfer-interval (System Log)*

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>transfer-interval interval;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog file <i>filename</i> archive]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the router to periodically transfer a system log to an archive site.
<b>Options</b>	<i>interval</i> —Interval at which to transfer the current configuration to an archive site. <b>Range:</b> 5 through 2880 minutes
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	archive

## transfer-on-commit

---

<b>Syntax</b>	transfer-on-commit;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system archival configuration]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the router to transfer its currently active configuration to an archive site each time you commit a candidate configuration.
<hr/>	
	<p><b>NOTE:</b> When specifying a URL in a JUNOS statement using an IPv6 host address, you must enclose the entire URL in quotation marks (" ") and enclose the IPv6 host address in brackets ([ ]). For example,</p> <p><code>"ftp://username&lt;:password&gt;@[ipv6-host-address]&lt;:port&gt;/url-path"</code></p>
<hr/>	
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See "Configuring Transfer of the Current Active Configuration When a Configuration Is Committed" on page 208.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	configuration, transfer-interval, archive

## trusted-key

---

<b>Syntax</b>	trusted-key [ <i>key-numbers</i> ];
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system ntp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For NTP, configure the keys you are allowed to use when you configure the local router to synchronize its time with other systems on the network.
<b>Options</b>	<i>key-numbers</i> —One or more key numbers. Each key can be any 32-bit unsigned integer except 0.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See "Configuring NTP Authentication Keys" on page 112.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	authentication-key, broadcast, peer, server



**uid**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>uid <i>uid-value</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system login user]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a user identifier for a login account.
<b>Options</b>	<i>uid-value</i> —Number associated with the login account. This value must be unique on the router. <b>Range:</b> 100 through 64000
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring User Access” on page 65.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**user**

---

**user (Access)**

**Syntax**    `user username {  
                   full-name complete-name;  
                   uid uid-value;  
                   class class-name;  
                   authentication {  
                     (encrypted-password "password" | plain-text-password);  
                     ssh-rsa "public-key";  
                     ssh-dsa "public-key";  
                   }  
                 }`

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system login]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure access permission for individual users.

**Options**    The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring User Access” on page 65.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    class

**user (System Logging)**

**Syntax**    user (*username* | \*) {  
                   *facility severity*;  
                   match "*regular-expression*";  
                   }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit system syslog]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure the logging of system messages to user terminals.

**Options**    \* (the asterisk)—Log messages to the terminal sessions of all users who are currently logged in.

*facility*—Class of messages to log. To specify multiple classes, include multiple *facility severity* statements. For a list of the facilities, see Table 16 on page 124.

*severity*—Severity of the messages that belong to the facility specified by the paired *facility* name. Messages with severities the specified level and higher are logged. For a list of the severities, see Table 17 on page 124.

*username*—JUNOS login name of the user whose terminal session is to receive system log messages. To log messages to more than one user's terminal session, include more than one **user** statement.

The remaining statement is explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See "Directing System Log Messages to a User Terminal" on page 126.

**Required Privilege Level**    system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                          system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*

## username-include

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>username-include {   circuit-type;   delimiter <i>delimiter-character</i>;   domain-name <i>domain-name-string</i>;   logical-system-name;   mac-address;   option-60;   option-82 &lt;circuit-id&gt; &lt;remote-id&gt;;   routing-instance-name;   user-prefix <i>user-prefix-string</i>; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure the username that the router passes to the external AAA server. You must include at least one of the optional statements for the username to be valid. If you do not configure a username, the router accesses the local authentication service only and does not use external authentication services, such as RADIUS.</p> <p>The statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## user-prefix

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>user-prefix <i>user-prefix-string</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit logical-systems <i>logical-system-name</i> routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit routing-instances <i>routing-instance-name</i> system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server authentication username-include],</p> <p>[edit system services dhcp-local-server group <i>group-name</i> authentication username-include]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the user prefix that is concatenated with the username during the subscriber authentication process.
<b>Options</b>	<i>user-prefix-string</i> —The user prefix string.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Using External AAA Authentication Services to Authenticate DHCP Clients” on page 184.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## web-management

---

**Syntax**

```
web-management {
  http {
    interfaces [ interface-names ];
    port port;
  }
  https {
    interfaces [ interface-names ];
    local-certificate name;
    port port;
  }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit system services]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure settings for HTTP or HTTPS access. HTTP access allows management of the router using the browser-based J-Web graphical user interface. HTTPS access allows secure management of the router using the J-Web interface. With HTTPS access, communication between the router Web server and your browser is encrypted.

**Options** The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See the *J-Web Interface User Guide*.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** http, https, port (HTTP/HTTPS)

**wins-server**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	wins-server { <code>address</code> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services dhcp], [edit system services dhcp pool], [edit system services dhcp static-binding]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For J-series Services Routers only. Specify one or more NetBIOS Name Servers. When a DHCP client is added to the network and assigned an IP address, the NetBIOS Name Server manages the Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) database that matches IP addresses (such as 192.168.1.3) to Windows NetBIOS names (such as \\Marketing). List servers in order of preference.
<b>Options</b>	<code>address</code> —IPv4 address of the NetBIOS Name Server running WINS. To configure multiple servers, include multiple <code>address</code> options.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Router or Interface to Act as a DHCP Server on J-series Services Routers” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**world-readable**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	world-readable   no-world-readable;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system syslog archive], [edit system syslog file <i>filename</i> archive]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Grant all users permission to read log files, or restrict the permission only to the root user and users who have the JUNOS maintenance permission.
<b>Default</b>	no-world-readable
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying Log File Size, Number, and Archiving Properties” on page 133.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS System Log Messages Reference</i>

## xnm-clear-text

---

<b>Syntax</b>	xnm-clear-text { <connection-limit <i>limit</i> >; <rate-limit <i>limit</i> >; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Allow JUNOScript clear-text requests from remote systems to the local router.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring clear-text or SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications” on page 159.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## xnm-ssl

---

<b>Syntax</b>	xnm-ssl { <connection-limit <i>limit</i> >; <rate-limit <i>limit</i> >; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit system services]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Allow JUNOScript SSL requests from remote systems to the local router.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring SSL Service for JUNOScript Client Applications” on page 160.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



## **Part 3**

# **Access**

- Configuring Access on page 419
- Summary of Access Configuration Statements on page 483



## Chapter 13

# Configuring Access

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Access Configuration Complete Statements on page 420
- Configuring the PPP Authentication Protocol on page 423
- Example: Configuring PPP CHAP on page 424
- Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS on page 425
- Configuring Tracing Operations for Access Processes on page 427
- Configuring L2TP for Enabling PPP Tunneling Within a Network on page 430
- Defining Minimum L2TP Configuration on page 431
- Configuring the Address Pool for L2TP Network Server IP Address Allocation on page 432
- Configuring the Group Profile for Defining L2TP Attributes on page 433
- Example: Group Profile Configuration on page 435
- Configuring Access Profiles for L2TP or PPP Parameters on page 436
- Configuring the L2TP Client on page 439
- Example: Defining the Default Tunnel Client on page 439
- Example: Defining the User Group Profile on page 439
- Configuring the CHAP Secret for an L2TP Profile on page 440
- Example: Configuring L2TP PPP CHAP on page 440
- Referencing the Group Profile from the L2TP Profile on page 441
- Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile on page 441
- Example: PPP MP for L2TP on page 442
- Example: L2TP Multilink PPP Support on Shared Interfaces on page 443
- Configuring the PAP Password for an L2TP Profile on page 444
- Example: Configuring PAP for an L2TP Profile on page 444
- Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile on page 445
- Applying a Configured PPP Group Profile to a Tunnel on page 446
- Example: Applying a User Group Profile on the M7i or M10i Router on page 446
- Example: Configuring the Access Profile on page 447
- Example: Configuring L2TP on page 448

- Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP on page 450
- RADIUS Attributes for L2TP on page 451
- Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP on page 454
- Configuring the RADIUS Disconnect Server for L2TP on page 455
- Configuring RADIUS Authentication for an L2TP Client and Profile on page 456
- Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication for an L2TP Profile on page 457
- Configuring an IKE Access Profile on page 457
- Subscriber Access Management on page 459

## Access Configuration Complete Statements

---

To configure access, include the following statements at the [edit access] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access]
address-assignment {
  pool pool-name family inet {
    network address-or-prefix </subnet-mask>;
    range name {
      low lower-limit high upper-limit;
    }
    host hostname {
      hardware-address mac-address;
      ip-address ip-address;
    }
    dhcp-attributes {
      [protocol-specific-attributes];
    }
  }
}
address-pool pool-name {
  address address-or-prefix;
  address-range low <lower-limit> high <upper-limit>;
}
group-profile profile-name {
  l2tp {
    interface-id interface-id;
    lcp-renegotiation;
    local-chap;
    maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;
    multilink {
      drop-timeout milliseconds;
      fragmentation-threshold bytes;
    }
  }
}
ppp {
  cell-overhead;
  encapsulation-overhead bytes;
  framed-pool pool-id;
  idle-timeout seconds;
  interface-id interface-id;
```

```

        keepalive seconds;
        primary-dns primary-dns;
        primary-wins primary-wins;
        secondary-dns secondary-dns;
        secondary-wins secondary-wins;
    }
}
profile profile-name {
    accounting {
        accounting-stop-on-access-deny;
        accounting-stop-on-failure;
        order [ accounting-method ];
        statistics (time);
        update-interval minutes;
    }
    accounting-order radius;
    authentication {
        order [ authentication-methods ];
    }
    authentication-order [ authentication-methods ];
    client client-name {
        chap-secret chap-secret;
        group-profile profile-name;
        ike {
            allowed-proxy-pair {
                remote remote-proxy-address local local-proxy-address;
            }
            pre-shared-key (ascii-text character-string | hexadecimal hexadecimal-digits);
            ike-policy policy-name
            interface-id interface-id;
        }
    }
    l2tp {
        interface-id interface-id;
        lcp-renegotiation;
        local-chap;
        maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;
        multilink {
            drop-timeout milliseconds;
            fragmentation-threshold bytes;
        }
        ppp-authentication (chap | pap);
        ppp-profile profile-name;
        shared-secret shared-secret;
    }
    pap-password pap-password;
    ppp {
        cell-overhead;
        encapsulation-overhead bytes;
        framed-ip-address ip-address;
        framed-pool framed-pool;
        idle-timeout seconds;
        interface-id interface-id;
        keepalive seconds;
        primary-dns primary-dns;
        primary-wins primary-wins;
        secondary-dns secondary-dns;
    }
}

```

```

        secondary-wins secondary-wins;
    }
    user-group-profile profile-name;
}
radius {
    authentication-server [ ip-address ];
    accounting-server [ ip-address ];
    options {
        accounting-session-id-format (decimal | description);
        ethernet-port-type-virtual;
        interface-description-format [ sub-interface | adapter ];
        nas-identifier identifier-value;
        nas-port-extended-format {
            adapter-width width;
            port-width width;
            slot-width width;
            stacked-vlan-width width;
            vlan-width width;
        }
        override-nas-information;
        revert-interval interval;
        vlan-nas-port-stacked-format;
    }
    attributes {
        ignore {
            framed-ip-netmask;
            input-filter;
            logical-system-routing-instance;
            output-filter;
        }
    }
    exclude
        accounting-authentic [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
        accounting-delay-time [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
        accounting-session-id [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off |
            accounting-stop ];
        accounting-terminate-cause [ accounting-off ];
        called-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        calling-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        class [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        dhcp-options [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        dhcp-gi-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        dhcp-mac-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        output-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        event-timestamp [ accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start |
            accounting-stop ];
        framed-ip-address [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        framed-ip-netmask [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        input-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        input-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
        input-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
        interface-description [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-identifier [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off |
            accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port-type [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];

```

```

        output-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
        output-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
    }
}
radius-server server-address {
    accounting-port port-number;
    port port-number;
    retry attempts ;
    routing-instance routing-instance-name;
    secret password;
    source-address source-address;
    timeout seconds;
}
}
radius-disconnect {
    client-address {
        secret password;
    }
}
radius-disconnect-port port-number;
radius-server server-address {
    accounting-port port-number;
    port port-number;
    retry attempts;
    routing-instance routing-instance-name;
    secret password;
    source-address source-address;
    timeout seconds;
}
traceoptions {
    flag all;
    flag authentication;
    flag chap;
    flag configuration;
    flag kernel;
    flag radius;
}

```

## Configuring the PPP Authentication Protocol

---

The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) is an encapsulation protocol for transporting IP traffic across point-to-point links. To configure the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP), you can configure the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). CHAP allows each end of a PPP link to authenticate its peer, as defined in RFC 1994. The authenticator sends its peer a randomly generated challenge that the peer must encrypt using a one-way hash; the peer must then respond with that encrypted result. The key to the hash is a secret known only to the authenticator and authenticated. When the response is received, the authenticator compares its calculated result with the peer's response. If they match, the peer is authenticated.

Each end of the link identifies itself to its peer by including its name in the CHAP challenge and response packets it sends to the peer. This name defaults to the local hostname, or you can explicitly set it using the **local-name** option. When a host

receives a CHAP challenge or CHAP response packet on a particular interface, it uses the peer identity to look up the CHAP secret key to use.

To configure CHAP, include the **profile** statement at the [edit access] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access]
profile profile-name {
  client client-name chap-secret chap-secret;
}
```

Then reference the CHAP profile name at the [edit interfaces] hierarchy level.

You can configure multiple CHAP profiles, and configure multiple clients for each profile.

**profile** is the mapping between peer identifiers and CHAP secret keys. The identity of the peer contained in the CHAP challenge or response queries the profile for the secret key to use.

**client** is the peer identity.

**chap-secret** is the secret key associated with that peer.

## Example: Configuring PPP CHAP

---

The following example shows how to configure the profile **pe-A-ppp-clients** at the [edit access] hierarchy level; then reference it at the [edit interfaces] hierarchy level:

```
[edit]
access {
  profile pe-A-ppp-clients {
    client cpe-1 chap-secret "$1$dQYsZ$B5ojUeUjDsUo.yKwcCZ0";
    # SECRET-DATA
    client cpe-2 chap-secret "$1$kdAsfaDAfkDjDsASxfafdKdFKJ";
    # SECRET-DATA
  }
}
interfaces {
  so-1/1/1 {
    encapsulation ppp;
    ppp-options {
      chap {
        access-profile pe-A-ppp-clients;
        local-name "pe-A-so-1/1/1";
      }
    }
  }
  so-1/1/2 {
    encapsulation ppp;
    ppp-options {
      chap {
        passive;
        access-profile pe-A-ppp-clients;
        local-name "pe-A-so-1/1/2";
      }
    }
  }
}
```



```

    }
  }
}

```

## Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS

You can send RADIUS messages through a routing instance to customer RADIUS servers in a private network. To configure, include the `routing-instance` statement at the `[edit access profile profile-name radius-server]` hierarchy level and apply the profile to an interface with the `access-profile` statement at the `[edit interfaces interface-name unit logical-unit-number ppp-options chap]` hierarchy level.

In this example, PPP peers of interfaces `at-0/0/0.0` and `at-0/0/0.1` are authenticated by a RADIUS server reachable via routing instance A. PPP peers of interfaces `at-0/0/0.2` and `at-0/0/0.3` are authenticated by a RADIUS server reachable via routing instance B.

For more information on RADIUS authentication, see “Configuring RADIUS Authentication” on page 83.

```

system {
  radius-server {
    1.1.1.1 secret $9$dalkfj;
    2.2.2.2 secret $9$adsfaszx;
  }
}
routing-instances {
  A {
    instance-type vrf;
    ...
  }
  B {
    instance-type vrf;
    ...
  }
}
access {
  profile A-PPP-clients {
    authentication-order radius;
    radius-server {
      3.3.3.3 {
        port 3333;
        secret "$9$LO/7NbDjqmPQGdMT"; # # SECRET-DATA
        timeout 3;
        retry 3;
        source-address 99.99.99.99;
        routing-instance A;
      }
      4.4.4.4 {
        routing-instance A;
        secret $9$adsfaszx;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```

}
profile B-PPP-clients {
  authentication-order radius;
  radius-server {
    5.5.5.5 {
      routing-instance B;
      secret $9$kljhlkhl;
    }
    6.6.6.6 {
      routing-instance B;
      secret $9$kljhlkhl;
    }
  }
}
}
}
interfaces {
  at-0/0/0 {
    atm-options {
      vpi 0;
    }
    unit 0 {
      encapsulation atm-ppp-llc;
      ppp-options {
        chap {
          access-profile A-PPP-clients;
        }
      }
      keepalives {
        interval 20;
        up-count 5;
        down-count 5;
      }
      vci 0.128;
      family inet {
        address 21.21.21.21/32 {
          destination 21.21.21.22;
        }
      }
    }
  }
  unit 1 {
    encapsulation atm-ppp-llc;
    ...
    ppp-options {
      chap {
        access-profile A-PPP-clients;
      }
    }
    ...
  }
  unit 2 {
    encapsulation atm-ppp-llc;
    ...
    ppp-options {
      chap {
        access-profile B-PPP-clients;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
    ...
}
unit 3 {
    encapsulation atm-ppp-llc;
    ...
    ppp-options {
        chap {
            access-profile B-PPP-clients;
        }
    }
    ...
}
...
}
...
}

```

Users who log in to the router with telnet or SSH connections are authenticated by the RADIUS server 1.1.1.1. The backup RADIUS server for these users is 2.2.2.2.

Each profile may contain one or more backup RADIUS servers. In this example, PPP peers are CHAP authenticated by the RADIUS server 3.3.3.3 (with 4.4.4.4 as the backup server) or RADIUS server 5.5.5.5 (with 6.6.6.6 as the backup server).

**Related Topics** ■ Configuring the Authentication Order on page 437

## Configuring Tracing Operations for Access Processes

To trace access processes, you can specify options in the `traceoptions` statement at the `[edit access]` hierarchy level. The default tracing behavior is the following:

- Important events are logged in a file called `accessd` located in the `/var/log` directory.
- When the file `accessd` reaches 128 kilobytes (KB), it is renamed `accessd.0`, then `accessd.1` and so on, until there are 3 trace files. Then the oldest trace file (`accessd2`) is overwritten. For more information about how log files are created, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.
- Log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation.

You cannot change the directory (`/var/log`) in which trace files are located. However, you can customize the other trace file settings by including the following statements at the `[edit access traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit access]
traceoptions {
    file filename {
        files number;
        size maximum-file-size;
        world-readable | no-world-readable;
        match regex;
    }
}

```

```

    flag all;
    flag authentication;
    flag chap;
    flag configuration;
    flag kernel;
    flag radius;
}

```

Tasks for configuring tracing operations are:

1. Configuring the Access Processes Log Filename on page 428
2. Configuring the Number and Size of Access Processes Log Files on page 428
3. Configuring Access to the Log File on page 429
4. Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged on page 429
5. Configuring the Trace Operations to be Logged on page 429

### Configuring the Access Processes Log Filename

By default, the name of the file that records trace output is `accessd`.

To specify a different name, include the `file` statement at the `[edit traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit access traceoptions]
file filename;

```

### Configuring the Number and Size of Access Processes Log Files

By default, when the trace file reaches 128 kilobytes (KB) in size, it is renamed `filename.0`, then `filename.1`, and so on, until there are 3 trace files. Then the oldest trace file (`filename.2`) is overwritten.

To configure the limits on the number and size of trace files, include the following statements at the `[edit access traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit access traceoptions]
file files number size size;

```

For example, set the maximum file size to 2 MB, and the maximum number of files to 20. When the file that receives the output of the tracing operation (`filename`) reaches 2 MB, `filename` is renamed `filename.0`, and a new file called `filename` is created. When the new `filename` reaches 2 MB, `filename.0` is renamed `filename.1` and `filename` is renamed `filename.0`. This process repeats until there are 20 trace files. Then the oldest file (`filename.19`) is overwritten by the newest file (`filename.0`).

The number of files can be from 2 through 1000 files. The file size of each file can be from 10 KB through 1 gigabyte (GB).

## Configuring Access to the Log File

By default, log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation.

To specify that any user can read all log files, include the `file world-readable` statement at the `[edit access traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit access traceoptions]
file world-readable;
```

To explicitly set the default behavior, include the `file no-world-readable` statement at the `[edit event-options traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit access traceoptions]
file no-world-readable;
```

## Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged

By default, the trace operation output includes all lines relevant to the logged events.

You can refine the output by including the `match` statement at the `[edit access traceoptions file filename]` hierarchy level and specifying a regular expression (regex) to be matched:

```
[edit access traceoptions]
file filename match regex;
```

## Configuring the Trace Operations to be Logged

By default, only important events are logged. You can configure the trace operations to be logged by including the following statements at the `[edit access traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit access traceoptions]
flag {
  all;
  authentication;
  chap;
  configuration;
  kernel;
  radius;
}
```

You can specify the following access tracing flags:

- `all`—All tracing operations
- `authentication`—All authentication module handling
- `chap`—All CHAP messages and handling
- `configuration`—Reading of configuration

- kernel—Send all configuration messages to the kernel
- radius—All RADIUS messages and handling

## Configuring L2TP for Enabling PPP Tunneling Within a Network

For M7i and M10i routers, you can configure Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) tunneling security services on an Adaptive Services Physical Interface Card (PIC) or a MultiServices PIC. The L2TP protocol allows Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) to be tunneled within a network.



**NOTE:** For information about how to configure L2TP service, see the *JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide* and the *JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

To configure L2TP, include the following statements at the [edit access] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access]
address-pool pool-name {
  address address-or-prefix;
  address-range low <lower-limit> high <upper-limit>;
}
group-profile profile-name {
  l2tp {
    interface-id interface-id;
    lcp-renegotiation;
    local-chap;
    maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;
    ppp {
      cell-overhead;
      encapsulation-overhead bytes;
      framed-pool pool-id;
      idle-timeout seconds;
      interface-id interface-id;
      keepalive seconds;
      primary-dns primary-dns;
      primary-wins primary-wins;
      secondary-dns secondary-dns;
      secondary-wins secondary-wins;
    }
  }
}
profile profile-name {
  authentication-order [ authentication-methods ];
  accounting-order radius;
  client client-name {
    chap-secret chap-secret;
    group-profile profile-name;
    l2tp {
      interface-id interface-id;
      lcp-renegotiation;
      local-chap;
      maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;
```

```

        ppp-authentication (chap | pap);
        shared-secret shared-secret;
    }
    pap-password pap-password;
    ppp {
        cell-overhead;
        encapsulation-overhead bytes;
        framed-ip-address ip-address;
        framed-pool framed-pool;
        idle-timeout seconds;
        interface-id interface-id;
        keepalive seconds;
        primary-dns primary-dns;
        primary-wins primary-wins;
        secondary-dns secondary-dns;
        secondary-wins secondary-wins;
    }
    user-group-profile profile-name;
}
}
radius-disconnect-port port-number {
    radius-disconnect {
        client-address {
            secret password;
        }
    }
}
}
radius-server server-address {
    accounting-port port-number;
    port port-number;
    retry attempts;
    secret password;
    source-address source-address;
    timeout seconds;
}
}
}

```

## Defining Minimum L2TP Configuration

---

To define a minimum configuration for Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP), include at least the following statements at the [edit access] hierarchy level:

```

[edit access]
address-pool pool-name {
    address address-or-prefix;
    address-range low <lower-limit> high <upper-limit>;
}
profile profile-name {
    authentication-order [ authentication-methods ];
    client client-name {
        chap-secret chap-secret;
        l2tp {
            interface-id interface-id;
            maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;
        }
    }
}

```

```

        ppp-authentication (chap | pap);
        shared-secret shared-secret;
    }
    pap-password pap-password;
    ppp {
        framed-ip-address ip-address;
        framed-pool framed-pool;
        interface-id interface-id;
        primary-dns primary-dns;
        primary-wins primary-wins;
        secondary-dns secondary-dns;
        secondary-wins secondary-wins;
    }
}
radius-server server-address {
    accounting-port port-number;
    port port-number;
    retry attempts;
    secret password;
}

```



**NOTE:** When the L2TP network server (LNS) is configured with RADIUS authentication, the default behavior is to accept the preferred RADIUS-assigned IP address. Previously, the default behavior was to accept and install the nonzero peer IP address received in the Internet Protocol Control Protocol (IPCP) configuration request packet.

## Configuring the Address Pool for L2TP Network Server IP Address Allocation

With an address pool, you configure an address or address range. When you define an address pool for a client, the L2TP network server (LNS) allocates IP addresses for clients from an address pool. If you do not want to use an address pool, you can specify an IP address by means of the **framed-ip-address** statement at the **[edit access profile *profile-name* client *client-name* ppp]** hierarchy level. For information about specifying an IP address, see “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.



**NOTE:** When an address pool is modified or deleted, all the sessions using that pool are deleted.

To define an address or a range of addresses, include the **address-pool** statement at the **[edit access]** hierarchy level:

```

[edit access]
address-pool pool-name;

```

*pool-name* is the name assigned to the address pool.



To configure an address, include the **address** statement at the [edit access address-pool *pool-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access address-pool pool-name]  
address address-or-prefix;
```

*address-or-prefix* is one address or a prefix value.

When you specify an address range, it cannot exceed 65,535 IP addresses.

To configure the address range, include the **address-range** statement at the [edit access address-pool *pool-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access address-pool pool-name]  
address-range <low lower-limit> <high upper-limit>;
```

- *low lower-limit*—The lower limit of an address range.
- *high upper-limit*—The upper limit of an address range.



**NOTE:** The address pools for user access and Network Address Translation (NAT) can overlap. When you configure an address pool at the [edit access address-pool *pool-name*] hierarchy level, you can also configure an address pool at the [edit services nat pool *pool-name*] hierarchy level.

---

## Configuring the Group Profile for Defining L2TP Attributes

Optionally, you can configure the group profile to define the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) or Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) attributes. Any client referencing the configured group profile inherits all the group profile attributes.



**NOTE:** The **group-profile** statement overrides the **user-group-profile** statement, which is configured at the [edit access profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level. The **profile** statement overrides the attributes configured at the [edit access group-profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level. For information about the **user-group-profile** statement, see “Applying a Configured PPP Group Profile to a Tunnel” on page 446.

---

Tasks for configuring the group profile are:

1. Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile on page 433
2. Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile on page 434

## Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile

To configure the Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) for the group profile, include the following statements at the [edit access group-profile *profile-name* l2tp] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access group-profile profile-name l2tp]
```

```

interface-id interface-id;
lcp-renegotiation;
local-chap;
maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;

```

*interface-id* is the identifier for the interface representing an L2TP session configured at the [edit interfaces *interface-name* unit *local-unit-number* dial-options] hierarchy level.

You can configure the LNS so that it renegotiates the link control protocol (LCP) with the PPP client (in the **renegotiation** statement). By default, the PPP client negotiates the LCP with the L2TP access concentrator (LAC). When you do this, the LNS discards the last sent and the last received LCP configuration request attribute value pairs (AVPs) from the LAC; for example, the LCP negotiated between the PPP client and the LAC.

You can configure the JUNOS software so that the LNS ignores proxy authentication AVPs from the LAC and reauthenticates the PPP client using a CHAP challenge (in the **local-chap** statement). When you do this, the LNS directly authenticates the PPP client. By default, the PPP client is not reauthenticated by the LNS.

*number* is the maximum number of sessions per L2TP tunnel.

## Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile

To configure the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) attributes for a group profile, include the following statements at the [edit access group-profile *profile-name* ppp] hierarchy level:

```

[edit access group-profile profile-name ppp]
cell-overhead;
encapsulation-overhead bytes;
framed-pool pool-id;
idle-timeout seconds;
interface-id interface-id;
keepalive seconds;
primary-dns primary-dns;
primary-wins primary-wins;
secondary-dns secondary-dns;
secondary-wins secondary-wins;

```

The **cell-overhead** statement configures the session to use Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM)-aware egress shaping on the IQ2 PIC.

*bytes* (in the **encapsulation-overhead** statement) configures the number of bytes used as overhead for class-of-service calculations.

*pool-id* (in the **framed-pool** statement) is the name assigned to the address pool.

*seconds* (in the **idle-timeout** statement) is the number of seconds a user can remain idle before the session is terminated. By default, idle timeout is set to 0. You can configure this to be a value in the range from 0 through 4,294,967,295.

*interface-id* (in the *interface-id* statement) is the identifier for the interface representing an L2TP session configured at the [edit interfaces *interface-name* unit *local-unit-number* dial-options] hierarchy level.

*seconds* (in the *keepalive* statement) is the time period that must elapse before the JUNOS software checks the status of the PPP session by sending an echo request to the peer. For each session, JUNOS software sends out three keepalives at 10-second intervals and the session is close if there is no response. By default, the time to send a keepalive messages is set to 10 seconds. You configure this to be a value in the range from 0 through 32,767.

*primary-dns* (in the *primary-dns* statement) is an IP version 4 (IPv4) address.

*secondary-dns* (in the *secondary-dns* statement) is an IPv4 address.

*primary-wins* (in the *primary-wins* statement) is an IPv4 address.

*secondary-wins* (in the *secondary-wins* statement) is an IPv4 address.

## Example: Group Profile Configuration

---

The following example shows how to configure an L2TP and PPP group profile:

```
[edit access]
group-profile westcoast_users {
  ppp {
    framed-pool customer_a;
    keepalive 15;
    primary-dns 192.120.65.1;
    secondary-dns 192.120.65.2;
    primary-wins 192.120.65.3;
    secondary-wins 192.120.65.4;
    interface-id west
  }
}
group-profile eastcoast_users {
  ppp {
    framed-pool customer_b;
    keepalive 15;
    primary-dns 192.120.65.5;
    secondary-dns 192.120.65.6;
    primary-wins 192.120.65.7;
    secondary-wins 192.120.65.8;
    interface-id east;
  }
}
group-profile westcoast_tunnel {
  l2tp {
    maximum-sessions-per-tunnel 100;
  }
}
group-profile east_tunnel {
  l2tp {
    maximum-sessions-per-tunnel 125;
```

```
}
}
```

## Configuring Access Profiles for L2TP or PPP Parameters

To validate Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) connections and session requests, you set up access profiles by configuring the profile statement at the [edit access] hierarchy level. You can configure multiple profiles. You can also configure multiple clients for each profile.

Tasks for configuring the access profile are:

1. Configuring the Access Profile on page 436
2. Configuring the L2TP Properties for a Profile on page 436
3. Configuring the PPP Properties for a Profile on page 437
4. Configuring the Authentication Order on page 437
5. Configuring the Accounting Order on page 438

### Configuring the Access Profile

To configure the profile, include the **profile** statement at the [edit access] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access]
profile profile-name;
```

*profile-name* is the name assigned to the profile.



**NOTE:** The **group-profile** statement overrides the **user-group-profile** statement, which is configured at the [edit access profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level. The **profile** statement overrides the attributes configured at the [edit access group-profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level. For information about the **user-group-profile** statement, see “Applying a Configured PPP Group Profile to a Tunnel” on page 446.

When you configure a profile, you can only configure L2TP or PPP parameters. You cannot configure both.

### Configuring the L2TP Properties for a Profile

To configure the Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) properties for a profile, include the following statements at the [edit access profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access profile profile-name]
authentication-order [ authentication-methods ];
accounting-order radius
client client-name {
  group-profile profile-name;
  l2tp {
    interface-id interface-id;
```

```

        lcp-renegotiation;
        local-chap;
        maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;
        ppp-authentication (chap | pap);
        shared-secret shared-secret;
    }
}
user-group-profile profile-name;

```

## Configuring the PPP Properties for a Profile

To configure the PPP properties for a profile, include the following statements at the [edit access profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level:

```

[edit access profile profile-name]
authentication-order [ authentication-methods ];
client client-name {
    chap-secret chap-secret;
    group-profile profile-name;
    pap-password pap-password;
    ppp {
        cell-overhead;
        encapsulation-overhead bytes;
        framed-ip-address ip-address;
        framed-pool framed-pool;
        idle-timeout seconds;
        interface-id interface-id;
        keepalive seconds;
        primary-dns primary-dns;
        primary-wins primary-wins;
        secondary-dns secondary-dns;
        secondary-wins secondary-wins;
    }
}

```



**NOTE:** When you configure PPP properties for a profile, you typically configure the chap-secret statement or pap-password statement.

---

## Configuring the Authentication Order

You can configure the order in which the JUNOS software tries different authentication methods when authenticating peers. For each access attempt, the software tries the authentication methods in order, from first to last.

To configure the authentication order, include the **authentication-order** statement at the [edit access profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level:

```

[edit access profile profile-name]
authentication-order [ authentication-methods ];

```

In *authentication-methods*, specify one or more of the following in the preferred order, from first tried to last tried:

- **radius**—Verify the client using RADIUS authentication services.
- **password**—Verify the client using the information configured at the [edit access profile *profile-name* client *client-name*] hierarchy level.



**NOTE:** When you configure the authentication methods for L2TP, only the first configured authentication method is used.

---

For L2TP, RADIUS authentication servers are configured at the [edit access radius-server] hierarchy level. For more information about configuring RADIUS authentication servers, see “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450.

If you do not include the **authentication-order** statement, clients are verified by means of **password** authentication.

## Configuring the Accounting Order

Beginning with JUNOS release 8.0, you can configure RADIUS accounting for an L2TP profile.

With RADIUS accounting enabled, Juniper Networks routers, acting as RADIUS clients, can notify the RADIUS server about user activities such as software logins, configuration changes, and interactive commands. The framework for RADIUS accounting is described in RFC 2866.

To configure RADIUS accounting, include the **accounting-order** statement at the [edit access profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access profile profile-name]  
  accounting-order radius;
```

When you enable RADIUS accounting for an L2TP profile, it applies to all the clients within that profile. You must enable RADIUS accounting on at least one L2TP profile for the RADIUS authentication server to send accounting stop and start messages.



**NOTE:** When you enable RADIUS accounting for an L2TP profile, you do not need to configure the **accounting-port** statement at the [edit access radius-server *server-address*] hierarchy level. When you enable RADIUS accounting for an L2TP profile, accounting is triggered on the default port of 1813.

For L2TP, RADIUS authentication servers are configured at the [edit access radius-server] hierarchy level.

---

## Configuring the L2TP Client

---

To configure the client, include the `client` statement at the `[edit access profile profile-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit access profile profile-name]  
client client-name;
```

*client-name* is the peer identity.

For L2TP, you can optionally use the wildcard (\*) to define a default tunnel client to authenticate multiple LACs with the same secret and L2TP attributes. If an LAC with a specific name is not defined in the configuration, the wildcard tunnel client authenticates it.

## Example: Defining the Default Tunnel Client

---

Use the wildcard (\*) to define a default tunnel client to authenticate multiple LACs with the same secret:

```
[edit access profile profile-name]  
client * {  
  l2tp {  
    interface-id interface1;  
    lcp-renegotiation;  
    local-chap;  
    maximum-sessions-per-tunnel 500;  
    ppp-authentication chap;  
    shared-secret "$1$dQYsZ$B5ojUeUjDsUo.yKwcCZ0";  
  }  
}
```

For any tunnel client, you can optionally use the user group profile to define default PPP attributes for all users coming in through a tunnel. The user group profile must define PPP attributes. If the user group profile is specified, all users (PPP sessions) use the PPP attributes specified in the user group profile. The PPP attributes specified in the local or RADIUS server take precedence over those specified in the user group profile.

Optionally, you can use a wildcard client to define a user group profile. When you do this, any client entering this tunnel uses the PPP attributes (defined user group profile attributes) as its default PPP attributes.

## Example: Defining the User Group Profile

---

Use a wildcard client to define a user group profile:

```
[edit access profile profile]  
client * {  
  user-group-profile user-group-profile1;  
}
```

For information about how to configure the user group profile, see “Applying a Configured PPP Group Profile to a Tunnel” on page 446.

## Configuring the CHAP Secret for an L2TP Profile

CHAP allows each end of a PPP link to authenticate its peer, as defined in RFC 1994. The authenticator sends its peer a randomly generated challenge that the peer must encrypt using a one-way hash; the peer must then respond with that encrypted result. The key to the hash is a secret known only to the authenticator and authenticated. When the response is received, the authenticator compares its calculated result with the peer’s response. If they match, the peer is authenticated.

Each end of the link identifies itself to its peer by including its name in the CHAP challenge and response packets it sends to the peer. This name defaults to the local hostname, or you can explicitly set it using the **local-name** option. When a host receives a CHAP challenge or CHAP response packet on a particular interface, it uses the peer identity to look up the CHAP secret key to use.



**NOTE:** When you configure PPP properties for a Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) profile, you typically configure the **chap-secret** statement or **pap-password** statement.

To configure CHAP, include the **profile** statement and specify a profile name at the **[edit access]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit access]
profile profile-name {
  client client-name chap-secret data;
}
```

Then reference the CHAP profile name at the **[edit interfaces *interface-name* ppp-options chap]** hierarchy level.

You can configure multiple profiles. You can also configure multiple clients for each profile.

**profile** is the mapping between peer identifiers and CHAP secret keys. The identity of the peer contained in the CHAP challenge or response queries the profile for the secret key to use.

**client** is the peer identity.

**chap-secret *secret*** is the secret key associated with that peer.

## Example: Configuring L2TP PPP CHAP

Configure the profile **westcoast\_bldg1** at the **[edit access]** hierarchy level, then reference it at the **[edit interfaces]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit]
access {
```



```

profile westcoast_bldg1 {
  client cpe-1 chap-secret "$1$dQYsZ$B5ojUeUjDsUo.yKwcCZ0";
  # SECRET-DATA
  client cpe-2 chap-secret "$1$kdAsfaDAfkjDsASxfafdKdFKJ";
  # SECRET-DATA
}

```

## Referencing the Group Profile from the L2TP Profile

You can reference a configured group profile from the L2TP tunnel profile.

To reference the group profile configured at the [edit access group-profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level, include the `group-profile` statement at the [edit access profile *profile-name* client *client-name*] hierarchy level:

```

[edit access profile profile-name client client-name]
group-profile profile-name;

```

*profile-name* references a configured group profile from a PPP user profile.

## Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile

To define L2TP properties for a client-specific profile, include one or more of the following statements at the [edit access profile *profile-name* client *client-name* l2tp] hierarchy level:



**NOTE:** When you configure the profile, you can only configure L2TP or PPP parameters. You cannot configure both.

```

[edit access profile profile-name client client-name l2tp]
interface-id interface-id;
lcp-renegotiation;
local-chap;
maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;
multilink {
  drop-timeout milliseconds;
  fragmentation-threshold bytes;
}
ppp-authentication (chap | pap);
shared-secret shared-secret;

```

*interface-id* (in the `interface-id` statement) is the identifier for the interface representing an L2TP session configured at the [edit interfaces *interface-name* unit *local-unit-number* dial-options] hierarchy level.

*number* (in the `maximum-sessions-per-tunnel` statement) is the maximum number of sessions for an L2TP tunnel.

*shared-secret* (in the `shared-secret` statement) is the shared secret for authenticating the peer.

You can specify PPP authentication (in the **ppp-authentication** statement). By default, the PPP authentication uses CHAP. You can configure this to use Password Authentication Protocol (PAP).

You can configure LNS so it renegotiates LCP with the PPP client (in the **lcp-negotiation** statement). By default, the PPP client negotiates the LCP with the LAC. When you do this, the LNS discards the last sent LCP configuration request and last received LCP configuration request AVPs from the LAC; for example, the LCP negotiated between the PPP client and LAC.

You can configure the JUNOS software so that the LNS ignores proxy authentication AVPs from the LAC and reauthenticates the PPP client using a CHAP challenge (in the **local-chap** statement). By default, the PPP client is not reauthenticated by the LNS. When you do this, the LNS directly authenticates the PPP client.

You can configure the PPP MP for L2TP if the PPP sessions that are coming into the LNS from the LAC have multilink PPP negotiated. When you do this, you join multilink bundles based on the endpoint discriminator (in the **multilink** statement).

- *milliseconds* (in the **drop-timeout** statement) specifies the number of milliseconds for the timeout that associated with the first fragment on the reassembly queue. If the timeout expires before all the fragments have been collected, the fragments at the beginning of the reassembly queue are dropped. If the drop timeout is not specified, the JUNOS software holds on to the fragments (fragments may still be dropped if the multilink reassembly algorithm determines that another fragment belonging to the packet on a reassembly queue has been lost).



**NOTE:** The drop timeout and fragmentation threshold for a bundled multilink might belong to different tunnels. The different tunnels might have different drop timeout and fragmentation thresholds. We recommend configuring group profiles instead of profiles when you have L2TP tunnels.

---

- *bytes* specifies the maximum size of a packet, in bytes (in the **fragmentation-threshold** statement). If a packet exceeds the fragmentation threshold, the JUNOS software fragments it into two or more multilink fragments.

## Example: PPP MP for L2TP

---

Join multilink bundles based on the endpoint discriminator:

```
[edit access]
profile tunnel-profile {
  client remote-host {
    l2tp {
      multilink {
        drop-timeout 600;
        fragmentation-threshold 100;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

## Example: L2TP Multilink PPP Support on Shared Interfaces

On M7i and M10i routers, L2TP multilink PPP sessions are supported on both dedicated and shared interfaces. This example shows how to configure many multilink bundles on a single ASP shared interface.

```
[edit]
interfaces {
  sp-1/3/0 {
    traceoptions {
      flag all;
    }
    unit 0 {
      family inet;
    }
    unit 20 {
      dial-options {
        l2tp-interface-id test;
        shared;
      }
      family inet;
    }
  }
}
access {
  profile t {
    client cholera {
      l2tp {
        interface-id test;
        multilink;
        shared-secret "$9$n8HX6A01RhIvL1R"; # SECRET-DATA
      }
    }
  }
  profile u {
    authentication-order radius;
  }
  radius-server {
    192.168.65.63 {
      port 1812;
      secret "$9$Vyb4ZHKPQ39mf9pORlexNdbgoZUjqP5"; # SECRET-DATA
    }
  }
}
services {
  l2tp {
    tunnel-group 1 {
      tunnel-access-profile t;
      user-access-profile u;
      local-gateway {
        address 10.70.1.1;
      }
      service-interface sp-1/3/0;
    }
  }
}
```

```

        traceoptions {
            flag all;
            debug-level packet-dump;
            filter {
                protocol l2tp;
                protocol ppp;
                protocol radius;
            }
        }
    }
}

```

## Configuring the PAP Password for an L2TP Profile

---

When you configure PPP properties for an L2TP profile, you typically configure the `chap-secret` statement or `pap-password` statement. For information about how to configure the CHAP secret, see “Configuring the CHAP Secret for an L2TP Profile” on page 440.

To configure the Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) password, include the `pap-password` statement at the `[edit access profile profile-name client client-name]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit access profile profile-name client client-name]
  pap-password pap-password;

```

*pap-password* is the password for PAP.

## Example: Configuring PAP for an L2TP Profile

---

The following examples shows you how to configure the password authentication protocol for an L2TP profile:

```

[edit access]
profile sunnyvale_bldg_2 {
  client green {
    pap-password "$9$24gGiPfz6CuQFu1EyW8VwYgZUik.5z3";
    ppp {
      interface-id west;
    }
    group-profile sunnyvale_users;
  }
  client red {
    chap-secret "$9$24gGiPfz6CuQFu1EyW8VwYgZUik.5z3";
    group-profile sunnyvale_users;
  }
  authentication-order radius;
}
profile Sunnyvale_bldg_1_tunnel {
  client test {
    l2tp {
      shared-secret "$9$24gGiPfz6CuQFu1EyW8VwYgZUik.5z3";
      ppp-authentication pap;
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
  }
}

```

## Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile

To define PPP properties for a profile, include one or more of the following statements at the [edit access profile *profile-name* client *client-name* ppp] hierarchy level.



**NOTE:** The properties defined in the profile take precedence over the values defined in the group profile.

```

[edit access profile profile-name client client-name ppp]
cell-overhead;
encapsulation-overhead bytes;
framed-ip-address ip-address;
framed-pool pool-id;
idle-timeout seconds;
interface-id interface-id;
keepalive seconds;
primary-dns primary-dns;
primary-wins primary-wins;
secondary-dns secondary-dns;
secondary-wins secondary-wins;

```



**NOTE:** When you configure a profile, you can only configure L2TP or PPP parameters. You cannot configure both.

The **cell-overhead** statement configures the session to use ATM-aware egress shaping on the IQ2 PIC.

**bytes** (in the **encapsulation-overhead** statement) configures the number of bytes used as overhead for class-of-service calculations.

**ip-address** (in the **framed-ip-address** statement) is the IPv4 prefix.

**pool-id** (in the **framed-pool** statement) is a configured address pool.

**seconds** (in the **idle-timeout** statement) is the number of seconds a user can remain idle before the session is terminated. By default, idle timeout is set to 0. You can configure this to be a value in the range from 0 through 4,294,967,295.

**interface-id** (in the **interface-id** statement) is the identifier for the interface representing an L2TP session configured at the [edit interfaces *interface-name* unit *local-unit-number* dial-options] hierarchy level.

**seconds** (in the **keepalive** statement) is the time period that must elapse before the JUNOS software checks the status of the PPP session by sending an echo request to the peer. For each session, JUNOS software sends out three keepalives at 10-second

intervals and the session is closed if there is no response. By default, the time to send a keepalive messages is set to 10 seconds. You configure this to be a value in the range from 0 through 32,767.

*primary-dns* (in the *primary-dns* statement) is an IPv4 address.

*secondary-dns* (in the *secondary-dns* statement) is an IPv4 address.

*primary-wins* (in the *primary-wins* statement) is an IPv4 address.

*secondary-wins* (in the *secondary-wins* statement) is an IPv4 address.

## Applying a Configured PPP Group Profile to a Tunnel

---

On Mi7 and M10i routers, you can optionally apply a configured PPP group profile to a tunnel. For any tunnel client, you can use the *user-group-profile* statement to define default PPP attributes for all users coming in through a tunnel. The user group profile must define PPP attributes. If the user group profile is specified, all users (PPP sessions) use the PPP attributes specified in the user group profile.

When a PPP client enters a tunnel, the JUNOS software first applies the PPP user group profile attributes and then any PPP attributes from the local or RADIUS server. The PPP attributes defined in the RADIUS or local server take precedence over the attributes defined in the user group profile.

To apply configured PPP attributes to a PPP client, include the *user-group-profile* statement at the [edit access profile *profile-name* client *client-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access profile profile-name client client-name]
user-group-profile profile-name;
```

*profile-name* is a PPP group profile configured at the [edit access group-profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level. When a client enters this tunnel, it uses the *user-group-profile* attributes as the default attributes.

## Example: Applying a User Group Profile on the M7i or M10i Router

---

The following example shows how to apply a configured PPP group profile to a tunnel:

```
[edit access]
group-profile westcoast_users {
  ppp {
    idle-timeout 100;
  }
}
group-profile westcoast_default_configuration {
  ppp {
    framed-pool customer_b;
    idle-timeout 20;
    interface-id west;
    primary-dns 192.120.65.5;
    secondary-dns 192.120.65.6;
    primary-wins 192.120.65.7;
```

```

        secondary-wins 192.120.65.8;
    }
}
profile westcoast_bldg_1_tunnel {
    client test {
        l2tp {
            interface-id west;
            shared-secret "$9$r3HKvLg4ZUDkX7JGjif5p0BIRS8LN";
            # SECRET-DATA
            maximum-sessions-per-tunnel 75;
            ppp-authentication chap;
        }
        user-group-profile westcoast_default_configuration; # Apply default PPP
    }
}
profile westcoast_bldg_1 {
    client white {
        chap-secret "$9$3s2690leK8X7VKM7VwgaJn/Ctu1hclv87Ct87";
        # SECRET-DATA
        ppp {
            idle-timeout 22;
            primary-dns 192.120.65.9;
            framed-ip-address 12.12.12.12/32;
        }
        group-profile westcoast_users; # Reference the west_users group
    }
}

```

## Example: Configuring the Access Profile

---

The following example shows you how to configure the access profile:

```

[edit access]
profile westcoast_bldg_1 {
    client white {
        chap-secret "$9$3s2690leK8X7VKM7VwgaJn/Ctu1hclv87Ct87";
        # SECRET-DATA
        ppp {
            idle-timeout 22;
            primary-dns 192.120.65.10;
            framed-ip-address 12.12.12.12/32;
        }
        group-profile westcoast_users;
    }
    client blue {
        chap-secret "$9$eq1KWxbwgZUHNdjmqmTF3u01Rhr-dsoJDNd";
        # SECRET-DATA
        group-profile sunnyvale_users;
    }
    authentication-order password;
}
profile westcoast_bldg_1_tunnel {
    client test {
        l2tp {
            shared-secret "$9$r3HKvLg4ZUDkX7JGjif5p0BIRS8LN";

```

```

        # SECRET-DATA
        maximum-sessions-per-tunnel 75;
        ppp-authentication chap;
    }
    group-profile westcoast_tunnel;
}
client production {
    l2tp {
        shared-secret "$9$R2QErV8X-goGyIVwg4jiTz36/t0BEleWFnRh
        rIXbs2aJDHqf3nCP5";
        # SECRET-DATA
        ppp-authentication chap;
    }
    group-profile westcoast_tunnel;
}
}

```

## Example: Configuring L2TP

---

The following example shows how to configure L2TP:

```

[edit]
access {
    address-pool customer_a {
        address 1.1.1.1/32;
    }
    address-pool customer_b {
        address-range low 2.2.2.2 high 2.2.3.2;
    }
    group-profile westcoast_users {
        ppp {
            framed-pool customer_a;
            idle-timeout 15;
            primary-dns 192.120.65.1;
            secondary-dns 192.120.65.2;
            primary-wins 192.120.65.3;
            secondary-wins 192.120.65.4;
            interface-id west;
        }
    }
    group-profile eastcoast_users {
        ppp {
            framed-pool customer_b;
            idle-timeout 20;
            primary-dns 192.120.65.5;
            secondary-dns 192.120.65.6;
            primary-wins 192.120.65.7;
            secondary-wins 192.120.65.8;
            interface-id east;
        }
    }
    group-profile westcoast_tunnel {
        l2tp {
            maximum-sessions-per-tunnel 100;
        }
    }
}

```



```

}
group-profile east_tunnel {
    l2tp {
        maximum-sessions-per-tunnel 125;
    }
}
profile westcoast_bldg_1 {
    client white {
        chap-secret "$9$3s2690leK8X7VKM7VwgaJn/Ctu1hclv87Ct87";
        # SECRET-DATA
        ppp {
            idle-timeout 22;
            primary-dns 192.120.65.10;
            framed-ip-address 12.12.12.12/32;
        }
        group-profile westcoast_users;
    }
    client blue {
        chap-secret "$9$eq1KWxbwgZUHNdjmqmTF3u01Rhr-dsoJDNd";
        # SECRET-DATA
        group-profile sunnyvale_users;
    }
    authentication-order password;
}
profile west-coast_bldg_2 {
    client red {
        pap-password "$9$3s2690leK8X7VKM8888Ctu1hclv87Ct87";
        # SECRET-DATA
        ppp {
            idle-timeout 22;
            primary-dns 192.120.65.11;
            framed-ip-address 12.12.12.12/32;
        }
        group-profile westcoast_users;
    }
}
profile westcoast_bldg_1_tunnel {
    client test {
        l2tp {
            shared-secret "$9$r3HKvLg4ZUDkX7JGjif5p0BIRS8LN";
            # SECRET-DATA
            maximum-sessions-per-tunnel 75;
            ppp-authentication chap;#The default for PPP authentication
        }
        group-profile westcoast_tunnel;
    }
    client production {
        l2tp {
            shared-secret "$9$R2QErV8X-goGylVwg4jiTz36/t0BEleWFnRh
            rIXbs2aJDHqf3nCP5"; # SECRET-DATA
            ppp-authentication chap;
        }
        group-profile westcoast_tunnel;
    }
}
profile westcoast_bldg_2_tunnel {

```

```

client black {
  l2tp {
    shared-secret "$9$R2QErV8X-goGyIVwg4jiTz36/t0BEleWFnRh
    rIXbs2aJDHqf3nCP5";
    # SECRET-DATA
    ppp-authentication pap;
  }
  group-profile westcoast_tunnel;
}
}

```

## Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP

The L2TP network server (LNS) sends RADIUS authentication requests or accounting requests. Authentication requests are sent out to the authentication server port. Accounting requests are sent to the accounting port. To configure RADIUS authentication for L2TP on an M10i or M7i router, include the following statements at the [edit access] hierarchy level:

```

[edit access]
radius-server server-address {
  accounting-port port-number;
  port port-number;
  retry attempts;
  routing-instance routing-instance-name;
  secret password;
  source-address source-address;
  timeout seconds;
}

```



**NOTE:** The RADIUS servers at the [edit access] hierarchy level are not used by the network access server process (NASD).

You can specify an accounting port number on which to contact the accounting server (in the **accounting-port** statement). Most RADIUS servers use port number 1813 (as specified in RFC 2866, *Radius Accounting*).



**NOTE:** If you enable RADIUS accounting at the [edit access profile *profile-name* accounting-order] hierarchy level, accounting is triggered on the default port of 1813 even if you do not specify a value for the **accounting-port** statement.

**server-address** specifies the address of the RADIUS authentication server (in the **radius-server** statement).

You can specify a port number on which to contact the RADIUS authentication server (in the **port** statement). Most RADIUS servers use port number 1812 (as specified in RFC 2865, *Remote Authentication Dial In User Service [RADIUS]*).

You must specify a password in the **secret** statement. If a password includes spaces, enclose the password in quotation marks. The secret used by the local router must match that used by the RADIUS authentication server.

Optionally, you can specify the amount of time that the local router waits to receive a response from a RADIUS server (in the **timeout** statement) and the number of times that the router attempts to contact a RADIUS authentication server (in the **retry** statement). By default, the router waits 3 seconds. You can configure this to be a value in the range from 1 through 90 seconds. By default, the router retries connecting to the server three times. You can configure this to be a value in the range from 1 through 10 times.

In the **source-address** statement, specify a source address for each configured RADIUS server. Each RADIUS request sent to a RADIUS server uses the specified source address. The source address is a valid IPv4 address configured on one of the router interfaces.

To configure multiple RADIUS servers, include multiple **radius-server** statements. For information about how to configure the RADIUS disconnect server for L2TP, see “Configuring the RADIUS Disconnect Server for L2TP” on page 455.



**NOTE:** When the L2TP network server (LNS) is configured with RADIUS authentication, the default behavior is to accept the preferred RADIUS-assigned IP address. Previously, the default behavior was to accept and install the nonzero peer IP address received by the Internet Protocol Control Protocol (IPCP) configuration request packet.

## RADIUS Attributes for L2TP

The JUNOS software supports the following types of RADIUS attributes for L2TP:

- Juniper Networks vendor-specific attributes
- Attribute-value pairs (AVPs) defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)
- RADIUS accounting stop and start AVPs

Juniper Networks vendor-specific RADIUS attributes are described in RFC 2865, *Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)*. These attributes are encapsulated with the vendor ID set to the Juniper Networks ID number 2636. Table 30 on page 451 lists the Juniper Networks vendor-specific attributes you can configure for L2TP.

**Table 30: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes for L2TP**

Attribute Name	Standard Number	Value
Juniper-Primary-DNS	31	IP address
Juniper-Primary-WINS	32	IP address
Juniper-Secondary-DNS	33	IP address
Juniper-Secondary-WINS	34	IP address

**Table 30: Juniper Networks Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes for L2TP** *(continued)*

Attribute Name	Standard Number	Value
Juniper-Interface-ID	35	String
Juniper-IP-Pool-Name	36	String
Juniper-Keep-Alive	37	Integer

Table 31 on page 452 lists the IETF RADIUS AVPs supported for L2TP.

**Table 31: Supported IETF RADIUS Attributes for L2TP**

Attribute Name	Standard Number	Value
User-Name	1	String
User-Password	2	String
CHAP-Password	3	String
NAS-IP-Address	4	IP address
NAS-Port	5	Integer
Service-Type	6	Integer
Framed-Protocol	7	Integer
Framed-IP-Address	8	IP address
Framed-IP-Netmask	9	IP address
Framed-MTU	12	Integer
Framed-Route	22	String
Session-Timeout	27	Integer
Idle-Timeout	28	Integer
Called-Station-ID	30	String
Calling-Station-ID	31	String
CHAP-Challenge	60	String
NAS-Port-Type	61	Integer
Framed-Pool	88	Integer

Table 32 on page 453 lists the supported RADIUS accounting start AVPs for L2TP.

**Table 32: Supported RADIUS Accounting Start Attributes for L2TP**

Attribute Name	Standard Number	Value
User-Name	1	String
NAS-IP-Address	4	IP address
NAS-Port	5	Integer
Service-Type	6	Integer
Framed-Protocol	7	Integer
Framed-IP-Address	8	IP address
Called-Station-ID	30	String
Calling-Station-ID	31	String
Acct-Status-Type	40	Integer
Acct-Delay-Time	41	Integer
Acct-Session-ID	44	String
Acct-Authentic	45	Integer
NAS-Port-Type	61	Integer
Tunnel-Client-Endpoint	66	String
Tunnel-Server-Endpoint	67	String
Acct-Tunnel-Connection	68	String
Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID	90	String
Tunnel-Server-Auth-ID	91	String

Table 33 on page 453 lists the supported RADIUS accounting stop AVPs for L2TP.

**Table 33: Supported RADIUS Accounting Stop Attributes for L2TP**

Attribute Name	Standard Number	Value
User-Name	1	String
NAS-IP-Address	4	IP address
NAS-Port	5	Integer
Service-Type	6	Integer
Framed-Protocol	7	Integer

**Table 33: Supported RADIUS Accounting Stop Attributes for L2TP** *(continued)*

Attribute Name	Standard Number	Value
Framed-IP-Address	8	IP address
Called-Station-ID	30	String
Calling-Station-ID	31	String
Acct-Status-Type	40	Integer
Acct-Delay-Time	41	Integer
Acct-Input-Octets	42	Integer
Acct-Output-Octets	43	Integer
Acct-Session-ID	44	String
Acct-Authentic	45	Integer
Acct-Session-Time	46	Integer
Acct-Input-Packets	47	Integer
Acct-Output-Packets	48	Integer
Acct-Terminate-Cause	49	Integer
Acct-Multi-Session-ID	50	String
Acct-Link-Count	51	Integer
NAS-Port-Type	61	Integer
Tunnel-Client-Endpoint	66	String
Tunnel-Server-Endpoint	67	String
Acct-Tunnel-Connection	68	String
Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID	90	String
Tunnel-Server-Auth-ID	91	String

### Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP

The following example shows how to configure RADIUS authentication for L2TP:

```
[edit access]
profile sunnyvale_bldg_2 {
  client green {
    chap-secret "$9$24gGiPfz6CuQFu1EyW8VwYgZUik.5z3";
    ppp {
      interface-id west;
```

```

    }
    group-profile sunnyvale_users;
  }
  client red {
    chap-secret "$9$24gGiPfz6CuQFu1EyW8VwYgZUik.5z3";
    group-profile sunnyvale_users;
  }
  authentication-order radius;
}
radius-server {
  192.168.65.213 {
    port 1812;
    accounting-port 1813;
    secret "$9$24gGiPfz6CuQFu1EyW8VwYgZUik.5z3"; # SECRET-DATA
  }
  192.168.65.223 {
    port 1812;
    accounting-port 1813;
    secret "$9$24gGiPfz6CuQFu1EyW8VwYgZUik.5z3"; # SECRET-DATA
  }
}
radius-disconnect-port 2500;
radius-disconnect {
  192.168.65.152 secret "$9$rtkl87ws4ZDkgokPT3tpEcyIW7-VY4a";
  # SECRET-DATA
  192.168.64.153 secret "$9$gB4UHf5F/A0z30lhr8Lbs24GDHqmTFn";
  # SECRET-DATA
  192.168.64.157 secret "$9$Hk5FCA0lhruOrv87sYGDikfTFn/t0B";
  # SECRET-DATA
  192.168.64.173 secret "$9$Hk5FCA0lhruOrv87sYGDikfTFn/t0B";
  # SECRET-DATA
}

```

## Configuring the RADIUS Disconnect Server for L2TP

To configure the RADIUS disconnect server to listen for disconnect requests from an administrator and process them, include the following statements at the [edit access] hierarchy level:

```

[edit access]
radius-disconnect-port port-number;
radius-disconnect {
  client-address {
    secret password;
  }
}

```

*port-number* is the server port to which the RADIUS client sends disconnect requests. The L2TP network server, which accepts these disconnect requests, is the server. You can specify a port number on which to contact the RADIUS disconnect server. Most RADIUS servers use port number 1700.



**NOTE:** The JUNOS software accepts only disconnect requests from the client address configured at the [edit access radius-disconnect *client-address*] hierarchy level.

*client-address* is the host sending disconnect requests to the RADIUS server. The client address is a valid IP address configured on one of the router interfaces.

*password* authenticates the RADIUS client. Passwords can contain spaces. The secret used by the local router must match that used by the server.

For information about how to configure RADIUS authentication for L2TP, see “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450.

The following example shows the statements to be included at the [edit access] hierarchy level to configure the RADIUS disconnect server:

```
[edit access]
radius-disconnect-port 1700;
radius-disconnect {
  192.168.64.153 secret "$9$rtkl87ws4ZDkgokPT3tpEcyIWL7-VY4a";
  # SECRET-DATA
  192.168.64.162 secret "$9$rtkl87ws4ZDkgokPT3tpEcyIWL7-VY4a";
  # SECRET-DATA
}
```

## Configuring RADIUS Authentication for an L2TP Client and Profile

On an M10i or M7i routing platform, L2TP supports RADIUS authentication and accounting for users with one set of RADIUS servers under the [edit access] hierarchy. You can also configure RADIUS authentication for each tunnel client or user profile.

To configure the RADIUS authentication for L2TP tunnel clients on an M10i or M7i routing platform, include the **ppp-profile** statement with the **l2tp** attributes for tunnel clients:

```
[edit access profile profile-name client client-name l2tp]
ppp-profile profile-name;
```

**ppp-profile *profile-name*** specifies the profile used to validate PPP session requests through L2TP tunnels. Clients of the referenced profile must have only PPP attributes. The referenced group profile must be defined.

To configure the RADIUS authentication for a profile, include following statements at the [edit access profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit access profile profile-name]
radius-server server-address {
  accounting-port port-number;
  port port-number;
  retry attempts;
  routing-instance routing-instance-name;
  secret password;
  source-address source-address;
```



```

        timeout seconds;
    }

```

When a PPP user initiates a session and RADIUS authentication is configured for the user profile on the tunnel group, the following priority sequence is used to determine which RADIUS server is used for authentication and accounting:

- If the `ppp-profile` statement is configured under the tunnel client (LAC), the RADIUS servers configured under the specified `ppp-profile` are used.
- If RADIUS servers are configured under the user profile for the tunnel group, those servers will be used.
- If no RADIUS server is configured for the tunnel client (LAC) or user profile, then the RADIUS servers configured at the `[edit access]` hierarchy level are used.

### Example: Configuring RADIUS Authentication for an L2TP Profile

---

The following example shows statements to be included at the `[edit access]` hierarchy level to configure RADIUS authentication for an L2TP profile:

```

[edit access]
profile t {
  client LAC_A {
    l2tp {
      ppp-profile u;
    }
  }
}
profile u {
  client client_1 {
    ppp {
    }
  }
  5.5.5.5 {
    port 3333;
    secret $9$dkafeqwrew;
    source-address 1.1.1.1;
    retry 3;
    timeout 3;
  }
  6.6.6.6 secret $9$fe3erqwrez;
  7.7.7.7 secret $9$f34929ftby;
}

```

### Configuring an IKE Access Profile

---

An IKE access profile is used to negotiate IKE and IPSec security associations with dynamic peers. You can configure only one tunnel profile per service set for all dynamic peers. The configured preshared key in the profile is used for IKE authentication of all dynamic peers terminating in that service set. Beginning with JUNOS Release 8.2, you can also use the digital certificate method for IKE authentication with dynamic peers. Include the `ike-policy policy-name` statement at the `[edit access profile profile-name client * ike]` hierarchy level. *policy-name* is the

name of the IKE policy you define at the [edit services ipsec-vpn ike policy *policy-name*] hierarchy level.

The IKE tunnel profile specifies all the information you need to complete the IKE negotiation. Each protocol has its own statement hierarchy within the client statement to configure protocol-specific attribute value pairs, but only one client configuration is allowed for each profile. The following is the configuration hierarchy.

```
[edit access]
profile profile-name {
  client * {
    ike {
      allowed-proxy-pair {
        remote remote-proxy-address local local-proxy-address;
      }
      pre-shared-key (ascii-text character-string | hexadecimal hexadecimal-digits);
      ike-policy policy-name;
      initiate-dead-peer-detection;
      interface-id string-value;
    }
  }
}
```

For dynamic peers, the JUNOS software supports only IKE main mode with both the preshared key and digital certificate methods. In this mode, an IPv6 or IPv4 address is used to identify a tunnel peer to obtain the preshared key or digital certificate information. The client value \* (wildcard) means that configuration within this profile is valid for all dynamic peers terminating within the service set accessing this profile.

The following statement makes up the IKE profile:

- **allowed-proxy-pair**—During phase 2 IKE negotiation, the remote peer supplies its network address (**remote**) and its peer's network address (**local**). Since multiple dynamic tunnels are authenticated through the same mechanism, this statement must include the list of possible combinations. If the dynamic peer does not present a valid combination, the phase 2 IKE negotiation fails.

By default, **remote 0.0.0.0/0 local 0.0.0.0/0** is used if no values are configured.

- **pre-shared-key**—Key used to authenticate the dynamic peer during IKE phase 1 negotiation. This key is known to both ends through an out-of-band secure mechanism. You can configure the value either in **hexadecimal** or **ascii-text** format. It is a mandatory value.
- **ike-policy**—Name of the IKE policy that defines either the local digital certificate or the pre-shared key used to authenticate the dynamic peer during IKE negotiation. You must include this statement to use the digital certificate method for IKE authentication with a dynamic peer. You define the IKE policy at the [edit services ipsec-vpn ike policy *policy-name*] hierarchy level.
- **initiate-dead-peer-detection**—Detects dead peers on dynamic IPSec tunnels..
- **interface-id**—Interface identifier, a mandatory attribute used to derive the logical service interface information for the session.

## Subscriber Access Management

---

- Subscriber Access Management Overview on page 459
- RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview on page 460
- Configuring Router Interactions with RADIUS Servers for Subscriber Access on page 460
- Configuring Authentication and Accounting Parameters for Subscriber Access on page 461
- Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management on page 463
- Example: Configuring RADIUS-Based Subscriber Authentication and Accounting on page 466
- RADIUS Attributes and Juniper Networks VSAs Supported by the AAA Service Framework on page 468
- Attaching Access Profiles with the Routing Instance on page 473
- Verifying and Managing Subscriber Access Information on page 474
- Overview of Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management on page 474
- License Requirements for Address-Assignment Pools on page 475
- Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management on page 475
- DHCP Client-Specific Attributes on page 478
- Example: Configuring an Address-Assignment Pool on page 478
- Tracing Address-Assignment Pool Processes on page 479

## Subscriber Access Management Overview

The subscriber access management feature enables you to manage the subscribers that are allowed access to the network server, the services that authorized subscribers can use, and how accounting statistics are collected. The subscriber access management feature uses the AAA Service Framework to support the configuration and management of broadband subscriber access. You can statically configure different client types, such as DHCP-based subscribers or PPP subscribers, and specify the authentication, accounting, and service for the subscribers.

### AAA Service Framework Overview

The AAA Service Framework provides a single point of contact for all the authentication, authorization, accounting, and address assignment services that the router supports for network access. The framework supports authentication and authorization through external servers, such as RADIUS, and the Local Authentication Server component of the framework. The framework also supports accounting through external servers, and address assignment through a combination of local address assignment pools and RADIUS.

When interacting with external back-end RADIUS servers, the AAA Service Framework supports standard RADIUS attributes and Juniper Networks vendor specific attributes (VSAs). The AAA Service Framework also includes an integrated RADIUS client that is compatible with RADIUS servers that conform to RFC-2865, RFC-2866, and RFC-3576, and which can initiate requests.

You create the following types of configurations to manage subscriber access.

- Authentication—Authentication parameters defined in the access profile determine the authentication component of the AAA processing. For example, subscribers can be authenticated using a remote authentication service such as RADIUS. You can also use the Local Authentication Server component of the AAA framework, which authenticates subscribers based on preconfigured credentials.
- Accounting—Accounting parameters in the access profile specify the accounting part of the AAA processing. For example, the parameters determine how the router collects and uses subscriber statistics.
- Address assignment—The AAA Service Framework assigns addresses to subscribers based on the configuration of local address assignment pools. For example, the AAA framework collaborates with RADIUS servers to assign addresses from the specified pools. See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.

## ***RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview***

To configure the router to use RADIUS authentication and accounting for the subscriber access management feature, you create access profiles that specify the following levels of configuration. Subscriber access management supports access profiles attached at the [edit logical-systems *logical-system-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name*] hierarchy level.

- Router interaction with RADIUS servers—Specify how the router interacts with RADIUS servers, such as the ports used for authentication and accounting, the number of times the router tries to contact a RADIUS server, and passwords.
- Authentication and accounting parameters—Create the access profile that defines authentication and accounting parameters, such as the authentication or accounting methods to use, and how accounting statistics are collected and used.
- RADIUS parameters—Specify the RADIUS servers and options for authentication and accounting, and define how RADIUS attributes are used.

## ***Configuring Router Interactions with RADIUS Servers for Subscriber Access***

To identify the RADIUS servers that the router can use and to configure how the router interacts with the servers, you include the `radius-server` statement at the [edit access] hierarchy level. You can specify multiple RADIUS servers on the network.

```
[edit access]
radius-server server-address {
  accounting-port port-number;
  port port-number;
```

```

    retry attempts;
    secret password;
    source-address source-address;
    timeout seconds;
}

```

The following list describes the **radius-server** configuration statements:

- **server-address**—The address of the RADIUS server to use. To configure more than one RADIUS server, include multiple **server-address** entries.
- **accounting-port**—The RADIUS server accounting port number. The default accounting port number is 1813.
- **port-number**—The port number used to contact the RADIUS server. The default is port number 1812.
- **retry**—The number of times that the router attempts to contact a RADIUS accounting server. You can configure the router to retry from 1 through 16 times. The default setting is 3 retry attempts.
- **secret**—The required secret (password) that the local router passes to the RADIUS client. Secrets can contain spaces.
- **source-address**—A source address for the RADIUS server. Each RADIUS request sent to a RADIUS server uses the specified source address. The source address is a valid IPv4 address configured on one of the router interfaces.
- **timeout**—The length of time that the local router waits to receive a response from a RADIUS server. By default, the router waits 3 seconds. You can configure the timeout to be from 1 to 90 seconds.

## Configuring Authentication and Accounting Parameters for Subscriber Access

You use an access profile to configure authentication and accounting support for the subscriber access management feature. The access profile enables you to specify the type of methods used for authentication and accounting. You can also configure how subscriber access management collects and uses accounting statistics.

Tasks to configure authentication and accounting for Subscriber Access Management are:

1. Specifying the Authentication and Accounting Methods on page 461
2. Configuring How Accounting Statistics Are Collected on page 462

### Specifying the Authentication and Accounting Methods

To specify the authentication and accounting methods that subscriber access management uses, you include the **authentication-order** statement and **accounting order** statements at the [edit access profile *profile-name*] hierarchy level.

```

[edit access profile profile-name]
authentication-order [ authentication-methods ]
}
accounting {
    order [ accounting-methods ];
}

```

```
}
```

You can configure multiple authentication and accounting methods—the **authentication-order** and **accounting order** statements specify the order in which the subscriber access management feature uses the methods. For example, an authentication entry of **radius none** specifies that RADIUS authentication is performed first and, if it fails, no authentication (**none**) is done.

```
[edit access profile profile-name]  
authentication-order radius none;
```

You can specify the following authentication methods:

- **none**—No authentication
- **password**—Local authentication
- **radius**—RADIUS-based authentication

You can specify the following accounting methods:

- **radius**—RADIUS-based accounting

## Configuring How Accounting Statistics Are Collected

Include the **accounting** statement at the `[edit access profile profile-name]` hierarchy level to specify how the subscriber access management feature collects and uses accounting statistics.

```
[edit access profile profile-name]  
accounting {  
    accounting-stop-on-access-deny;  
    accounting-stop-on-failure;  
    order [ accounting-method ];  
    statistics (time);  
    update-interval minutes;  
}
```

The following list describes the accounting statements:

- **accounting-stop-on-access-deny**—Configures AAA to issue an Acct-Stop message if the AAA server denies access to the subscriber.
- **accounting-stop-on-failure**—Configures the AAA servers to send an Acct-Stop message if the subscriber fails AAA but is granted access by the AAA-server.
- **order**—The order in which multiple accounting methods are used. For example, an entry of **radius** specifies that the router use RADIUS accounting and, if that fails, no accounting is performed.
- **statistics**—The types of statistics to gather. Currently, only time statistics are gathered.
- **update-interval**—Configures the number of minutes between accounting updates. You can configure an interval from 10 to 1440 minutes. If you specify an interval between 10 and 15, the interval is rounded up to 15.

## Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management

Include the `radius` statement at the `[edit access profile profile-name]` hierarchy level to specify the RADIUS parameters for the subscriber access manager feature. You can specify the IP addresses of the RADIUS servers used for authentication and accounting, options that provide configuration information for the RADIUS servers, and how RADIUS attributes are used.

Tasks to configure RADIUS parameters for subscriber access management are:

1. Specifying the RADIUS Authentication and Accounting Servers to Use for Subscriber Access Management on page 463
2. Configuring Options for RADIUS Servers on page 463
3. Configuring How RADIUS Attributes Are Used on page 464

### Specifying the RADIUS Authentication and Accounting Servers to Use for Subscriber Access Management

To specify one or more RADIUS authentication or accounting servers to use for subscriber access management, include the `authentication-server` and `accounting-server` statements at the `[edit access profile profile-name radius]` hierarchy level. You must specify the IP address for the authentication or accounting server.

```
[edit access profile profile-name radius]
authentication-server [ ip-address ];
accounting-server [ ip-address ];
```

To configure multiple RADIUS authentication or accounting servers, include multiple *ip-address* entries, for example:

```
[edit access profile profile-name radius]
authentication-server 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.2 192.168.1.3;
accounting-server 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.3 192.168.1.4;
```

### Configuring Options for RADIUS Servers

Include the `options` statement at the `[edit access profile profile-name radius]` hierarchy level to specify the options used by the RADIUS authentication and accounting servers.

```
[edit access profile profile-name radius]
options {
  accounting-session-id-format (decimal | description);
  ethernet-port-type-virtual;
  interface-description-format [sub-interface | adapter];
  nas-identifier identifier-value;
  nas-port-extended-format {
    adapter-width width;
    port-width width;
    slot-width width;
    stacked-vlan-width width;
    vlan-width width;
  }
}
```

```

    override-nas-information;
    revert-interval interval;
    vlan-nas-port-stacked-format;
}

```

The following list describes the accounting options:

- **accounting-session-id-format**—The format the router uses to identify the accounting session. The identifier can be in one of the following formats. The router uses decimal format by default.
  - **decimal**—For example, 435264
  - **description**—In the format, *jnpr interface-specifier:subscriber-session-id*. For example, *jnpr fastEthernet 3/2.6:1010101010101*
- **ethernet-port-type-virtual**—The physical port type the router uses to authenticate clients. The port type is passed in RADIUS attribute 61 (NAS-Port-Type). This statement specifies a port type of **virtual**; by default the router passes a port type of **ethernet** in RADIUS attribute 61.
- **interface-description-format**—The information that is included in or omitted from the interface description that the router passes to RADIUS for inclusion in the RADIUS attribute 87 (NAS-Port-Id). By default, the router includes both the subinterface and the adapter in the interface description.
- **nas-identifier**—The value for the client RADIUS attribute 32 (NAS-Identifier), which is used for authentication and accounting requests. You can specify a string in the range 1 to 64 characters.
- **nas-port-extended-format**—Configures the RADIUS client to use the extended format for RADIUS attribute 5 (NAS-Port) and specify the width of the fields in the NAS-Port attribute.
  - **adapter-width *width***—Number of bits in the adapter field.
  - **port-width *width***—Number of bits in the port field.
  - **slot-width *width***—Number of bits in the slot field.
  - **stacked-vlan-width *width***—Number of bits in the SVLAN ID field.
  - **vlan-width *width***—Number of bits in the VLAN ID field.
- **revert-interval**—The amount of time that the router waits after a server has become unreachable. The router rechecks the connection to the server when the revert-interval expires. If the server is then reachable, it is used in accordance with the order of the server list.
- **vlan-nas-port-stacked-format**—Configures RADIUS attribute 5 (NAS-Port) to include the S-VLAN ID, in addition to the VLAN ID, for subscribers on Ethernet interfaces.

## Configuring How RADIUS Attributes Are Used

Include the **attributes** statement at the [edit access profile *profile-name* radius] hierarchy level to specify attributes that are ignored in RADIUS Access-Accept messages, or that are excluded from particular RADIUS message types.



```
[edit access profile profile-name radius]
attributes {
  ignore {
    framed-ip-netmask;
    input-filter;
    logical-system-routing-instance;
    output-filter;
  }
  exclude
    accounting-authentic [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
    accounting-delay-time [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
    accounting-session-id [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off |
      accounting-stop ];
    accounting-terminate-cause [ accounting-off ];
    called-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    calling-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    class [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    dhcp-gi-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    dhcp-mac-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    output-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    event-timestamp [ accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start |
      accounting-stop ];
    framed-ip-address [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    framed-ip-netmask [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    input-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    input-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
    input-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
    interface-description [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    nas-identifier [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start
      | accounting-stop ];
    nas-port [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    nas-port-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    nas-port-type [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    output-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
    output-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
  }
}
```

The following list describes the **ignore** and **exclude** statements:

- Use the **ignore** statement to configure the router to ignore a particular attribute in RADIUS Access-Accept messages. By default, the router processes the attributes received from the external AAA server. You can specify that the following attributes be ignored:
  - **framed-ip-netmask**—Framed-Ip-Netmask, RADIUS attribute 9
  - **input-filter**—Ingress-Policy-Name, VSA 26-10
  - **logical-system-routing-instance**—Virtual-Router, VSA 26-1
  - **output-filter**—Egress-Policy-Name, VSA 26-11
- Use the **exclude** statement to configure the router to exclude the specified attributes from the specified type of RADIUS message. Not all attributes appear in all types of RADIUS messages—the CLI indicates the RADIUS message type. By default, the router includes the specified attributes in RADIUS Access-Request,

Acct-On, Acct-Off, Acct-Start, and Acct-Stop messages. You can configure the router to exclude the following attributes:

- `accounting-authentic`—RADIUS attribute 45, Acct-Authentic
- `accounting-delay-time`—RADIUS attribute 41, Acct-Delay-Time
- `accounting-session-id`—RADIUS attribute 44, Acct-Session-Id
- `accounting-terminate-cause`—RADIUS attribute 49, Acct-Terminate-Cause
- `called-station-id`—RADIUS attribute 30, Called-Station-Id
- `calling-station-id`—RADIUS attribute 31, Calling-Station-Id
- `class`—RADIUS attribute 25, Class
- `dhcp-gi-address`—Juniper VSA 26-57, DHCP-GI-Address
- `dhcp-mac-address`—Juniper VSA 26-56, DHCP-MAC-Address
- `event-timestamp`—RADIUS attribute 55, Event-Timestamp
- `framed-ip-address`—RADIUS attribute 8, Framed-IP-Address
- `framed-ip-netmask`—RADIUS attribute 9, Framed-IP-Netmask
- `input-filter`—Juniper VSA 26-10, Ingress-Policy-Name
- `input-gigapackets`—Juniper VSA 26-42, Acct-Input-Gigapackets
- `input-gigawords`—RADIUS attribute 52, Acct-Input-Gigawords
- `interface-description`—Juniper VSA 26-53, Interface-Desc
- `nas-identifier`—RADIUS attribute 32, NAS-Identifier
- `nas-port`—RADIUS attribute 5, NAS-Port
- `nas-port-id`—RADIUS attribute 87, NAS-Port-Id
- `nas-port-type`—RADIUS attribute 61, NAS-Port-Type
- `output-filter`—Juniper VSA 26-11, Egress-Policy-Name
- `output-gigapackets`—Juniper VSA 25-43, Acct-Output-Gigapackets
- `output-gigawords`—RADIUS attribute 53, Acct-Output-Gigawords

### **Example: Configuring RADIUS-Based Subscriber Authentication and Accounting**

The following example shows a sample RADIUS-based authentication and accounting configuration:

```
[edit access]
radius-server {
  192.168.1.250 {
```

```

    port 1812;
    accounting-port 1813;
    retry 3;
    secret &tIUeI*7688+;
    source-address 192.168.1.100;
    timeout 45;
}
192.168.1.251 {
    port 1812;
    accounting-port 1813;
    retry 3;
    secret $Dyu*UY(877-;
    source-address 192.168.1.100;
    timeout 30;
}
192.168.1.252 {
    port 1812;
    secret $Dyu*UY(877-;
}
}
profile isp-bos-metro-fiber-basic {
    authentication {
        order radius none;
    }
    accounting {
        order radius;
        accounting-stop-on-access-deny;
        accounting-stop-on-failure;
        immediate-update;
        statistics time;
        update-interval 12;
    }
    radius {
        authentication-server 192.168.1.251 192.168.1.252;
        accounting-server 192.168.1.250 192.168.1.251;
        options {
            accounting-session-id-format decimal;
            nas-identifier 56;
            override-nas-information;
        }
        attributes {
            ignore {
                framed-ip-netmask;
            }
            exclude {
                accounting-delay-time [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
                accounting-session-id [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off
                | accounting-start accounting-stop ];
                dhcp-gi-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
                dhcp-mac-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
                nas-identifier [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
                nas-port [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
                nas-port-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
                nas-port-type [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

    }
  }
[edit logical-systems isp-bos-metro-12 routing-instances isp-cmbrg-12-32]
interfaces {
  lo0 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 192.168.1.100/24;
      }
    }
  }
  ge-0/0/0 {
    vlan-tagging;
    unit 0 {
      vlan-id 200;
      family inet {
        unnumbered-address lo0.0;
      }
    }
  }
}
}

```

## ***RADIUS Attributes and Juniper Networks VSAs Supported by the AAA Service Framework***

The AAA Service Framework supports RADIUS attributes and vendor-specific attributes (VSAs)—this support provides tunable parameters that the subscriber access management feature uses when creating subscribers and services.

RADIUS attributes are carried as part of standard RADIUS request and reply messages. The subscriber management access feature uses the RADIUS attributes to exchange specific authentication, authorization and accounting information. VSAs allow the subscriber access management feature to pass implementation-specific information that provide extended capabilities, such as service activation or deactivation, and enabling and disabling filters.

Table 34 on page 468 describes the supported RADIUS IETF attributes. Table 35 on page 471 describes the supported Juniper Networks VSAs.

### **RADIUS IETF Attributes Supported by the AAA Service Framework**

Table 34 on page 468 describes the RADIUS IETF attributes supported by the JUNOS software AAA Service Framework.

**Table 34: Supported RADIUS IETF Attributes**

Attribute Number	Attribute Name	Description
1	User-Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Name of user to be authenticated</li> <li>Configurable username override</li> </ul>
2	User-Password	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Password of user to be authenticated by Password Authentication Protocol (PAP)</li> <li>Configurable password override</li> </ul>

**Table 34: Supported RADIUS IETF Attributes** (continued)

Attribute Number	Attribute Name	Description
4	NAS-IP-Address	IP address of the network access server (NAS) that is requesting authentication of the user
5	NAS-Port	Physical port number of the NAS that is authenticating the user
6	Service-Type	Type of service the user has requested or the type of service to be provided
8	Framed-IP-Address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ IP address to be configured for the user</li> <li>■ 0.0.0.0 or absence is interpreted as 255.255.255.254</li> </ul>
9	Framed-IP-Netmask	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ IP network to be configured for the user when the user is a router to a network</li> <li>■ Absence implies 255.255.255.255</li> </ul>
11	Filter-ID	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Name of the filter list for the user</li> <li>■ Interpreted as input policy name</li> </ul>
12	Framed-MTU	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Maximum Transmission Unit to be configured for the user when it is not negotiated by some other means (such as PPP).</li> <li>■ When sent in an Access-Request with an EAP-Message, indicates the maximum size of the EAP-Message string that the external server supports.</li> </ul>
18	Reply-Message	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Text that may be displayed to the user</li> <li>■ Only the first instance of this attribute is used</li> </ul>
22	Framed-Route	String that provides routing information to be configured for the user on the NAS; in the format:  <code>&lt;addr&gt;[/&lt;maskLen&gt;] [&lt;nexthop&gt; [&lt;cost&gt;]] (tag &lt;tagValue&gt;) [distance &lt;distValue&gt;]</code>
25	Class	Arbitrary value that the NAS includes in all accounting packets for the user if supplied by the RADIUS server
27	Session-Timeout	Maximum number of consecutive seconds of service to be provided to the user before termination of the session
32	NAS-Identifier	NAS originating the request
40	Acct-Status-Type	Indicates whether this Accounting-Request marks the beginning of the user service (Start), the end (Stop), or the interim (Interim-Update)
41	Acct-Delay-Time	Indicates how many seconds the client has been trying to send a particular record
42	Acct-Input-Octets	Indicates how many octets have been received from the port during the time this service has been provided

**Table 34: Supported RADIUS IETF Attributes (continued)**

Attribute Number	Attribute Name	Description
43	Acct-Output-Octets	Indicates how many octets have been sent to the port during the time this service has been provided
44	Acct-Session-ID	<p>Unique accounting identifier that makes it easy to match start and stop records in a log file. The identifier can be in one of the following formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ decimal—For example, 435264</li> <li>■ description—In the generic format, <i>jnpr interface-specifier:subscriber-session-id</i>; For example, <i>jnpr fastEthernet 3/2.6:1010101010101</i></li> </ul>
45	Acct-Authentic	Indicates how the user was authenticated: whether by RADIUS, the NAS itself, or another remote authentication protocol
46	Acct-Session-Time	Indicates how long in seconds that the user has received service
47	Acct-Input-Packets	Indicates how many packets have been received from the port during the time this service has been provided to a framed user
48	Acct-Output-Packets	Indicates how many packets have been sent to the port in the course of delivering this service to a framed user
49	Acct-Terminate-Cause	<p>Contains the reason the service (a PPP session) was terminated. The service can be terminated for the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ User Request (1)—User initiated the disconnect (log out)</li> <li>■ Idle Timeout (4)—Idle timer has expired</li> <li>■ Session Timeout (5)—Client reached the maximum continuous time allowed on the service or session</li> <li>■ Admin Reset (6)—System administrator terminated the session</li> <li>■ Port Error (8)—PVC failed; no hardware or no interface</li> <li>■ NAS Error (9)—Negotiation failures, connection failures, or address lease expiration</li> <li>■ NAS Request (10)—PPP challenge timeout, PPP request timeout, tunnel establishment failure, PPP bundle failure, IP address lease expiration, PPP keep-alive failure, Tunnel disconnect, or an unaccounted-for error</li> </ul>
52	Acct-Input-Gigawords	Indicates how many times the Acct-Input-Octets counter has wrapped around $2^{32}$ during the time this service has been provided. Can be present in Accounting-Request records only where the Acct-Status-Type is set to Stop or Interim-Update

**Table 34: Supported RADIUS IETF Attributes (continued)**

Attribute Number	Attribute Name	Description
53	Acct-Output-Gigawords	Indicates how many times the Acct-Output-Octets counter has wrapped around $2^{32}$ in the course of delivering this service. Can be present in Accounting-Request records only where the Acct-Status-Type is set to Stop or Interim-Update
55	Event-Timestamp	Records the time that this event occurred on the NAS, in seconds, since January 1, 1970 00:00 UTC
61	NAS-Port-Type	Indicates the type of physical port the NAS is using to authenticate the user
85	Acct-Interim-Interval	Number of seconds between each interim accounting update for this session
87	NAS-Port-ID	Text string that identifies the physical interface of the NAS that is authenticating the user
88	Framed-Pool	Name of an assigned address pool that should be used to assign an address for the user

### Juniper Networks VSAs Supported by the AAA Service Framework

Table 35 on page 471 describes Juniper Networks VSAs supported by the JUNOS software AAA Service Framework. The AAA Service Framework uses vendor ID 4874, which is assigned to Juniper Networks by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA).

**Table 35: Supported Juniper Networks VSAs**

Attribute Number	Attribute Name	Description	Value
26-4	Primary-DNS	Client DNS address negotiated during IPCP	integer: 4-byte primary-dns-address
26-5	Secondary-DNS	Client DNS address negotiated during IPCP	integer: 4-byte secondary-dns-address
26-6	Primary-WINS	Client WINS (NBNS) address negotiated during IPCP	integer: 4-byte primary-wins-address
26-7	Secondary-WINS	Client WINS (NBNS) address negotiated during IPCP	integer: 4-byte secondary-wins-address
26-10	Ingress-Policy-Name	Input policy name to apply to client interface	string: input-policy-name

**Table 35: Supported Juniper Networks VSAs (continued)**

Attribute Number	Attribute Name	Description	Value
26-11	Egress-Policy-Name	Output policy name to apply to client interface	string: output-policy-name
26-12	Ingress-Statistics	Enable or disable input statistics on client interface	integer: ■ 0 = disable ■ 1 = enable
26-13	Egress-Statistics	Enable or disable output statistics on client interface	integer: ■ 0 = disable ■ 1 = enable
26-23	IGMP-Enable	Enable or disable IGMP on a client interface	integer: ■ 0 = disable ■ 1 = enable
26-34	Framed-IP-Route-Tag	Route tag to apply to returned framed-ip-address	integer: 4-octet
26-42	Input-Gigapackets	Number of times input-packets attribute rolls over its 4-octet field	integer
26-43	Output-Gigapackets	Number of times output-packets attribute rolls over its 4-octet field	integer
26-56	DHCP-MAC-Address	Client MAC address	string: mac-address
26-57	DHCP-GI-Address	DHCP relay agent IP address	integer: 4-octet
26-63	Interface	Text string that identifies the subscriber's access interface	string: interface-description
26-65	Activate-Service	Service to activate for the subscriber	string: service-name
26-66	Deactivate-Service	Service to deactivate for the subscriber	string: service-name
26-70	Ignore-DF-Bit	Enable or disable the ignore don't fragment (DF) bit feature on a client interface	integer: ■ 0 = disable ■ 1 = enable



**Table 35: Supported Juniper Networks VSAs (continued)**

Attribute Number	Attribute Name	Description	Value
26-71	IGMP-Access-Group-Name	Access List to use for the group (G) filter	string: 32-octet
26-72	IGMP-Access-Source-Group-Name	Access List to use for the source-group (S,G) filter	string: 32-octet
26-74	MLD-Access-Group-Name	Access List to use for the group (G) filter	string: 32-octet
26-75	MLD-Access-Source-Group-Name	Access List to use for the source-group (S,G) filter	string: 32-octet
26-77	MLD-Version	MLD Protocol Version	integer: 1-octet ■ 1 = MLD version ■ 2 = MLD version
26-78	IGMP-Version	IGMP Protocol Version	integer: 1-octet ■ 1 = IGMP version ■ 2 = IGMP version ■ 3 = IGMP version
26-83	Acct-Service-Session	Name of the service (including parameter values) that is associated with service manager statistics	string: service-name
26-97	IGMP-Immediate-Leave	IGMP Immediate Leave	integer: 4-octet ■ 0 = disable ■ 1 = enable
26-100	MLD-Immediate-Leave	MLD Immediate Leave	integer: 4-octet ■ 0 = disable ■ 1 = enable

### Attaching Access Profiles with the Routing Instance

Once you have created the access profile that specifies the subscriber access management authentication and accounting parameters, you attach the profile. Subscriber access management supports access profiles attached at the [edit

logical-systems *logical-instance-name* routing-instances *routing-instance-name*] level of this hierarchy.

```
[edit logical-systems logical-system-name routing-instances routing-instance-name]
access-profile profile-name;
```

For example:

```
[edit logical-systems isp22-bos-metro-12 routing-instances isp22-cmbrg-12-32]
access-profile vz-bos-metro-fios-basic;
```

## Verifying and Managing Subscriber Access Information

- Purpose**
- Display subscriber access statistics and information
  - Clear subscriber access statistics and to log out specific subscribers
- Action** To display subscriber access statistics and information, use the following operational commands:
- show network-access aaa statistics
  - show network-access aaa subscribers
- To clear subscriber access statistics and to log out specific subscribers, use the following operational command:
- clear network-access aaa subscribers

For information about using these operational commands, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

## Overview of Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management

The address-assignment pool feature supports subscriber management functionality by enabling you to create address pools that can be shared by different client applications. For example, multiple client applications, such as DHCP, can use an address-assignment pool to provide addresses for their particular clients. Client applications can acquire addresses for either authenticated or unauthenticated clients.

Address-assignment pools support both dynamic and static address assignment. In dynamic address assignment, a client is automatically assigned an address from the address-assignment pool. In static address assignment, you reserve an address that is then always used by a particular client. Addresses that are reserved for static assignment are removed from the dynamic address pool and cannot be assigned to other clients.

Address-assignment pools support named address ranges, which are subsets of the overall address range. A client application can use named ranges to manage address assignment based on client-specific criteria. For example, you might create a named range that is based on a specific DHCP option 82 value. Then, when a DHCP client request matches the specified option 82 value, an address from the specified range

is assigned to the client. The address lease also contains the DHCP configuration options specified in the `dhcp-attributes` statement.

## License Requirements for Address-Assignment Pools

The address-assignment pool feature is part of the JUNOS Subscriber Management Feature Pack license. You must install and properly configure the license to meet the requirements for using the address-assignment pool feature.

## Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management

The address-assignment pool feature supports subscriber management functionality by enabling you to create address pools that can be shared by different client applications. For example, multiple client applications, such as DHCP, can use an address-assignment pool to provide addresses for their particular clients. Client applications can acquire addresses for either authenticated or unauthenticated clients.



**NOTE:** You cannot use address-assignment pools with the J-series DHCP server. Also, address-assignment pools are completely separate from L2TP address pools, which you create with the `address-pool` statement at the `[edit access]` hierarchy level, and NAT pools, which you create with the `pool` statement at the `[edit services nat]` hierarchy level.

To configure an address-assignment pool, include the `address-assignment` statement at the `[edit access]` hierarchy level. Include the `dhcp-attributes` statement to enable DHCP support for the address-assignment pool.

```
[edit access]
address-assignment {
  pool pool-name family inet {
    network address-or-prefix</subnet-mask>;
    range name {
      low lower-limit high upper-limit;
    }
    host hostname {
      hardware-address mac-address;
      ip-address ip-address;
    }
  }
  dhcp-attributes {
    option-match {
      option-82 {
        circuit-id value range named-range;
        remote-id value range named-range;
      }
    }
  }
  boot-file filename;
  boot-server (address | hostname);
  domain-name domain-name;
  grace-period seconds;
  maximum-lease-time seconds;
  name-server [ server-names ];
```

```

        netbios-node-type node-type;
        option {
            [ (id-number option-type option-value)
              (id-number array option-type option-value) ];
        }
        router [ router-names ];
        tftp-server address;
        wins-server [ server-names ];
    }
}

```

Tasks for configuring address-assignment pools for subscriber access management are:

1. Configuring an Address-Assignment Pool Name and Network Address on page 476
2. Configuring a Named Address Range for Dynamic Address Assignment on page 476
3. Configuring Static Address Assignment on page 477
4. Configuring DHCP Client-Specific Attributes on page 477

### Configuring an Address-Assignment Pool Name and Network Address

To configure an address-assignment pool, include the following mandatory statements at the [edit access] hierarchy level:

```

[edit access]
address-assignment {
    pool pool-name family inet {
        network address-or-prefix</subnet-mask>;
    }
}

```

The address-assignment pool definition must include the pool name and the **network** statement. The **network** statement specifies the network address and prefix length for the addresses in the pool.

The following is an example of an address-assignment pool definition:

```

[edit access]
address-assignment {
    pool isp_1 family inet {
        network 192.168.0.0/16;
    }
}

```

### Configuring a Named Address Range for Dynamic Address Assignment

Optionally, you can configure multiple named subsets of addresses within an address-assignment pool. During dynamic address assignment, a client can be assigned an address from a specific named range. To create a named range, use the **range** statement at the [edit access address-assignment pool *pool-name* family inet] hierarchy level to identify the range and configure the lower and upper address boundaries of the range:

```

range name {

```

```

    low lower-limit high upper-limit;
}

```

## Configuring Static Address Assignment

You can optionally create a static binding by reserving a specific address for a particular client. When you reserve an address, that address is removed from the address-assignment pool so that it is not assigned to another client. To configure a static address assignment, use the `host` statement at the [edit access address-assignment pool *pool-name* family init] hierarchy level to identify the client and create a binding between the client MAC address and the assigned IP address:

```

host hostname {
    hardware-address mac-address;
    ip-address ip-address;
}

```

The following is an example of a static binding configuration. This configuration specifies that the client with MAC address 90:00:00:01:00:01 is always assigned IP address 192.168.44.12.

```

host svale6.boston.net {
    hardware-address 90:00:00:01:00:01;
    ip-address 192.168.44.12;
}

```

## Configuring DHCP Client-Specific Attributes

Use the address-assignment pool feature to include application-specific attributes when clients obtain an address. The client application, such as DHCP, uses the attributes to determine how addresses are assigned, and to also provide optional application-specific characteristics to the client. For example, the DHCP application might specify that a client that matches certain prerequisite information is dynamically assigned an address from a particular named range. Based on which named range is used, DHCP specifies additional DHCP attributes such as the boot-file that the client uses, the lease grace period, and the maximum lease time.

Use the `dhcp-attributes` statement at the [edit access address-assignment pool *pool-name* family inet] hierarchy level to configure client-specific attributes for DHCP clients. Table 36 on page 478 describes the DHCP attributes.

```

dhcp-attributes {
    option-match {
        option-82 {
            circuit-id value range named-range;
            remote-id value range named-range;
        }
    }
    boot-file filename;
    boot-server (address | hostname);
    domain-name domain-name;
    grace-period seconds;
    maximum-lease-time seconds;
    name-server [ server-names ];
}

```

```

netbios-node-type node-type;
option {
    [ (id-number option-type option-value)
      (id-number array option-type option-value) ];
}
router [ router-names ];
tftp-server address;
wins-server [ server-names ];
}

```

## DHCP Client-Specific Attributes

Table 36 on page 478 lists the DHCP client-specific attributes and the corresponding DHCP options:

**Table 36: DHCP-Attributes Statements**

Statement	Description	Corresponding DHCP Option
boot-file	Boot filename advertised to the client, and used by the client to complete configuration.	67
boot-server	Boot server containing the boot file.	66
domain-name	Domain in which clients search for a DHCP server host.	15
grace-period	Grace period offered with the lease.	none
option-match	Maps option 82 value to named address range.	none
maximum-lease-time	Maximum lease time allowed by the DHCP server.	51
name-server	IP address of domain name server.	6
netbios-node-type	NetBIOS node type.	46
option	User-defined options.	–
router	IP address for routers on the subnetwork.	3
tftp-server	Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server that the client uses to obtain the client configuration file.	150
wins-server	IP address of the Windows NetBIOS name server.	44

## Example: Configuring an Address-Assignment Pool

This topic shows a sample address-assignment pool configuration. The configuration includes the `dhcp-attributes` statement, indicating that the pool is used for DHCP clients.

```
[edit access]
```

```

address-assignment {
  pool isp_1 family inet {
    network 192.168.0.0/16;
    range southeast {
      low 192.168.102.2 high 192.168.102.254;
    }
    range northeast {
      low 192.168.119.2 high 192.168.119.250;
    }
    host sval6.boston.net {
      hardware-address 90:00:00:01:00:01;
      ip-address 192.168.44.12;
    }
  }
  dhcp-attributes {
    option-match {
      option-82 {
        circuit-id fiber range northeast;
      }
      option-82 {
        circuit-id cable_net range southeast;
      }
    }
    boot-file boot.client;
    boot-server 192.168.200.100;
    grace-period 3600;
    maximum-lease-time 18000;
    netbios-node-type p-node;
  }
  router 192.168.44.44 192.168.44.45;
}

```

This example creates address-assignment pool **isp-1**, which contains two named address ranges, **southeast** and **northeast**. The address-assignment pool also contains a static binding for client **host sval6.boston.net**. If the option 82 circuit-id entry matches the string **fiber**, then DHCP assigns the client an address from the **northeast** range. If the option 82 circuit-id matches the string **cable\_net**, DHCP assigns an address from the **southeast** range.

## Tracing Address-Assignment Pool Processes

To trace address-assignment pool processes, you can specify flags in the **traceoptions** statement at the [edit **system processes general-authentication-service**] hierarchy level. The default tracing behavior is the following:

- Important events are logged in a file called **authd** located in the **/var/log** directory.
- When the file **authd** reaches 128 kilobytes (KB), it is renamed **authd.0**, then **authd.1**, and so on, until there are 3 trace files. Then the oldest trace file (**authd2**) is overwritten. For more information about how log files are created, see the *JUNOS System Log Messages Reference*.
- Log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation.

You cannot change the directory (`/var/log`) in which trace files are located. However, you can customize the other trace file settings by including the following statements at the `[edit system processes general-authentication-service]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system processes general-authentication-service]
traceoptions {
  file filename {
    files number;
    size maximum-file-size;
    world-readable | no-world-readable;
    match regex;
  }
  flag address-assignment;
  flag all;
  flag configuration;
  flag framework;
  flag ldap;
  flag local-authentication;
  flag radius;
}
```

The following topics describe the tasks for configuring tracing operations for address-assignment pools in detail:

1. Configuring the Address-Assignment Pool Trace Log Filename on page 480
2. Configuring the Number and Size of Address-Assignment Pool Processes Log Files on page 480
3. Configuring Access to the Log File on page 481
4. Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged on page 481
5. Configuring the Trace on page 481

### Configuring the Address-Assignment Pool Trace Log Filename

By default, the name of the file that records trace output for address-assignment pools is `authd`. You can specify a different name by including the `file` statement at the `[edit system processes general-authentication-service]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system processes general-authentication-service traceoptions]
file filename;
```

### Configuring the Number and Size of Address-Assignment Pool Processes Log Files

By default, when the trace file reaches 128 kilobytes (KB) in size, it is renamed `filename.0`, then `filename.1`, and so on, until there are 3 trace files. Then the oldest trace file (`filename.2`) is overwritten.

You can configure the limits on the number and size of trace files by including the following statement at the `[edit system processes general-authentication-service traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system processes general-authentication-service traceoptions]
```



```
file files number size size;
```

For example, set the maximum file size to 2 MB, and the maximum number of files to 20. When the file that receives the output of the tracing operation (*filename*) reaches 2 MB, *filename* is renamed *filename.0*, and a new file called *filename* is created. When the new *filename* reaches 2 MB, *filename.0* is renamed *filename.1* and *filename* is renamed *filename.0*. This process repeats until there are 20 trace files. Then the oldest file (*filename.19*) is overwritten by the newest file (*filename.0*).

The number of files can be from 2 through 1000 files. The file size of each file can be from 10 KB through 1 gigabyte (GB).

### Configuring Access to the Log File

By default, log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation.

To specify that any user can read all log files, include the `file world-readable` statement at the `[edit system processes general-authentication-service traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system processes general-authentication-service traceoptions]
file world-readable;
```

To explicitly set the default behavior, include the `file no-world-readable` statement at the `[edit system processes general-authentication-service traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system processes general-authentication-service traceoptions (Address-Assignment
Pool)]
file no-world-readable;
```

### Configuring a Regular Expression for Lines to Be Logged

By default, the trace operation output includes all lines relevant to the logged events.

You can refine the output by including the `match` statement at the `[edit system processes general-authentication-service file filename]` hierarchy level and specifying a regular expression (regex) to be matched:

```
[edit system processes general-authentication-service traceoptions]
file filename match regex;
```

### Configuring the Trace

By default, only important events are logged. You can configure the trace operations to be logged by including the following statements at the `[edit system <process-name> traceoptions]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit system <process-name> traceoptions]
flag {
  address-assignment;
  all;
  configuration;
```

```
framework;  
ldap;  
local-authentication;  
no-remote-trace;  
radius;  
}
```

You can specify the following access tracing flags:

- **address-assignment**—All address-assignment events
- **all**—All tracing operations
- **configuration**—Configuration events
- **framework**—Authentication framework events
- **ldap**—LDAP authentication events **local-authentication**
- **local-authentication**—Local authentication events
- **no-remote-trace**—Disable remote tracing for a specific process
- **radius**—RADIUS authentication events

## Chapter 14

# Summary of Access Configuration Statements

The following sections explain each of the access configuration statements. The statements are organized alphabetically.

### accounting

---

**Syntax**    accounting {  
              accounting-stop-on-access-deny;  
              accounting-stop-on-failure;  
              order [ *accounting-method* ];  
              statistics (time | volume-time);  
              update-interval *minutes*;  
              }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit access profile *profile-name*]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description**    Configure RADIUS accounting parameters and enable RADIUS accounting for an access profile.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                  admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## accounting-order

---

<b>Syntax</b>	accounting-order radius;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.0
<b>Description</b>	Enable RADIUS accounting for an L2TP profile.
<b>Options</b>	radius—Use RADIUS accounting method.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Accounting Order” on page 438.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## accounting-port

---

<b>Syntax</b>	accounting-port <i>port-number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the port number on which to contact the accounting server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>port-number</i> —The port number on which to contact the accounting server. Most RADIUS servers use port number 1813 (as specified in RFC 2866).
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## accounting-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	accounting-server [ <i>ip-address</i> ];
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a list of the RADIUS accounting servers used to for accounting for DHCP, L2TP, and PPP clients.
<b>Options</b>	<i>ip-address</i> —The IP version 4 (IPv4) address.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## accounting-session-id-format

---

<b>Syntax</b>	accounting-session-id-format (decimal   description);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the format the router uses to identify the accounting session.
<b>Options</b>	decimal—Use the decimal format.  description—Use the generic format, in the form <i>jnpr interface-specifier:subscriber-session-id</i> . <b>Default:</b> decimal
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## accounting-stop-on-access-deny

---

<b>Syntax</b>	accounting-stop-on-access-deny;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> accounting]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure RADIUS accounting to send an Acct-Stop message when the AAA server denies a client access.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## accounting-stop-on-failure

---

<b>Syntax</b>	accounting-stop-on-failure;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> accounting]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure RADIUS accounting to send an Acct-Stop message when client access fails AAA but the AAA server grants access.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## address

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>address <i>address-or-prefix</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access address-pool <i>pool-name</i>]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the IP address or prefix value for clients.
<b>Options</b>	<i>address-or-prefix</i> —An address or prefix value.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Address Pool for L2TP Network Server IP Address Allocation” on page 432.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## address-assignment

---

**Syntax**

```
address-assignment {
  pool pool-name family inet {
    network address-or-prefix</subnet-mask>;
    range range-name {
      low lower-limit high upper-limit;
    }
    host hostname {
      hardware-address mac-address;
      ip-address ip-address;
    }
    dhcp-attributes {
      [protocol-specific attributes]
    }
  }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.

**Description** Configure address-assignment pools that can be used by different client applications.

**Options** *pool-name*—Name assigned to an address-assignment pool.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



## address-pool

---

<b>Syntax</b>	address-pool <i>pool-name</i> { address <i>address-or-prefix</i> ; address-range <low <i>lower-limit</i> > <high <i>upper-limit</i> >; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Allocate IP addresses for clients.
<b>Options</b>	<i>pool-name</i> —Name assigned to an address pool.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Address Pool for L2TP Network Server IP Address Allocation” on page 432.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## address-range

---

<b>Syntax</b>	address-range <low <i>lower-limit</i> > <upper <i>upper-limit</i> >;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-pool <i>pool-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the address range.
<b>Options</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ low <i>lower-limit</i>—The lower limit of an address range.</li> <li>■ high <i>upper-limit</i>—The upper limit of an address range.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Address Pool for L2TP Network Server IP Address Allocation” on page 432.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## allowed-proxy-pair

---

<b>Syntax</b>	allowed-proxy-pair { remote <i>remote-proxy-address</i> local <i>local-proxy-address</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the network address of the local and remote peer associated with an IKE access profile.
<b>Options</b>	remote <i>remote-proxy-address</i> —Network address of the remote peer.  local <i>local-proxy-address</i> —Network address of the local peer.  Default: remote 0.0.0.0/0 local 0.0.0.0/0
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring an IKE Access Profile” on page 457.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## attributes

---

**Syntax**

```

attributes {
  ignore {
    framed-ip-netmask;
    input-filter;
    logical-system-routing-instance;
    output-filter;
  }
  exclude
    accounting-authentic [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
    accounting-delay-time [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
    accounting-session-id [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off |
      accounting-stop ];
    accounting-terminate-cause [ accounting-off ];
    called-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    calling-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    class [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    dhcp-gi-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    dhcp-mac-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    output-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    event-timestamp [ accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    framed-ip-address [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    framed-ip-netmask [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    input-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    input-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
    input-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
    interface-description [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    nas-identifier [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start |
      accounting-stop ];
    nas-port [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    nas-port-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    nas-port-type [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    output-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
    output-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
  }
}

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access profile *profile-name* radius]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description** Specify how the router processes RADIUS attributes.

The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring How RADIUS Attributes Are Used” on page 464.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## authentication-order

---

<b>Syntax</b>	authentication-order [ <i>authentication-methods</i> ];
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Set the order in which the JUNOS software tries different authentication methods when verifying that a client can access the router. For each login attempt, the software tries the authentication methods in order, from first to last.
<b>Options</b>	<p>radius—Verify the client using RADIUS authentication services.</p> <p>password—Verify the client using the information configured at the [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i>] hierarchy level.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS” on page 425 and “Configuring the Authentication Order” on page 437.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## authentication-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	authentication-server [ <i>ip-address</i> ];
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a list of the RADIUS authentication servers used to authenticate DHCP, L2TP, and PPP clients.
<b>Options</b>	<i>ip-address</i> —The IPv4 address.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## boot-file

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>boot-file filename;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Set the boot file advertised to DHCP clients. After the client receives an IP address and the boot file location from the DHCP server, the client uses the boot image stored in the boot file to complete DHCP setup. This is equivalent to DHCP option 67.
<b>Options</b>	<i>filename</i> —The location of the boot file on the boot server. The filename can include a pathname.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	boot-server

## boot-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>boot-server (address   hostname);</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> dhcp-attributes]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the name of the boot server advertised to DHCP clients. The client uses a boot file located on the boot server to complete DHCP setup. This is equivalent to DHCP option 66.
<b>Options</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>address</i>—The IPv4 address of a boot server.</li> <li>■ <i>hostname</i>—The fully qualified hostname of a boot server.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	boot-file

## cell-overhead

---

<b>Syntax</b>	cell-overhead;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the session to use Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM)-aware egress shaping on the IQ2 PIC.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## chap-secret

---

<b>Syntax</b>	chap-secret <i>chap-secret</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the CHAP secret key associated with a peer.
<b>Options</b>	<i>chap-secret</i> —The secret key associated with a peer.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the CHAP Secret for an L2TP Profile” on page 440.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**circuit-id**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>circuit-id value range named-range;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> dhcp-attributes option-matchoption-82]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the address-assignment pool named-range to use for a particular option 82 Agent Circuit ID value.
<b>Options</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <code>circuit-id value</code>—The string for the Agent Circuit ID suboption (suboption 1) of the DHCP relay agent information option (option 82) in DHCP packets.</li><li>■ <code>range named-range</code>—The name of the address-assignment pool range to use.</li></ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## client

---

**Syntax** client *client-name* {  
     chap-secret *chap-secret*;  
     group-profile *profile-name*;  
     ike {  
         allowed-proxy-pair {  
             remote *remote-proxy-address* local *local-proxy-address*;  
         }  
         pre-shared-key (ascii-text *character-string* | hexadecimal *hexadecimal-digits*);  
         ike-policy *policy-name*;  
         interface-id *string-value*;  
     }  
     l2tp {  
         interface-id *interface-id*;  
         lcp-renegotiation;  
         local-chap;  
         maximum-sessions-per-tunnel *number*;  
         multilink {  
             drop-timeout *milliseconds*;  
             fragmentation-threshold *bytes*;  
         }  
         ppp-authentication (chap | pap);  
         ppp-profile *profile-name*;  
         shared-secret *shared-secret*;  
     }  
     pap-password *pap-password*;  
     ppp {  
         cell-overhead;  
         encapsulation-overhead *bytes*;  
         framed-ip-address *ip-address*;  
         framed-pool *framed-pool*;  
         idle-timeout *seconds*;  
         interface-id *interface-id*;  
         keepalive *seconds*;  
         primary-dns *primary-dns*;  
         primary-wins *primary-wins*;  
         secondary-dns *secondary-dns*;  
         secondary-wins *secondary-wins*;  
     }  
     user-group-profile *profile-name*;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access profile *profile-name*]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure the peer identity.

**Options** *client-name*—A peer identity.

The other options are explained separately.



**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the L2TP Client” on page 439.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## dhcp-attributes

---

**Syntax**

```
dhcp-attributes {
  option-match {
    option-82 {
      circuit-id value range named-range;
      remote-id value range named-range;
    }
  }
  boot-file filename;
  boot-server (address | hostname);
  domain-name domain-name;
  grace-period seconds;
  maximum-lease-time seconds;
  name-server [ server-names ];
  netbios-node-type node-type;
  option {
    [ (id-number option-type option-value)
      (id-number array option-type option-value) ];
  }
  router [ router-names ];
  tftp-server address;
  wins-server [ server-names ];
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access address-assignment pool *pool-name* family inet]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.

**Description** Configure address pools that can be used by different client applications.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## domain-name

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>domain-name <i>domain-name</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the name of the domain in which clients search for a DHCP server host. This is the default domain name that is appended to hostnames that are not fully qualified. This is equivalent to DHCP option 15.
<b>Options</b>	<i>domain-name</i> —Name of the domain.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## drop-timeout

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>drop-timeout <i>milliseconds</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> l2tp multilink]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the drop timeout for a multilink bundle.
<b>Options</b>	<i>milliseconds</i> —Number of milliseconds for the timeout that is associated with the first fragment on the reassembly queue. If the timeout expires before all the fragments have been collected, the fragments at the beginning of the reassembly queue are dropped. If the drop timeout is not specified, the JUNOS software holds on to the fragments. (Fragments may still be dropped if the multilink reassembly algorithm determines that another fragment belonging to the packet on a reassembly queue has been lost.)
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## encapsulation-overhead

---

<b>Syntax</b>	encapsulation-overhead <i>bytes</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the encapsulation overhead for class-of-service calculations.
<b>Options</b>	<i>bytes</i> —The number of bytes used as encapsulation overhead for the session.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ethernet-port-type-virtual

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ethernet-port-type-virtual;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specifies the physical port type the router uses to authenticate clients. The port type is passed in RADIUS attribute 61 (NAS-Port-Type). This statement specifies a port type of <i>virtual</i> ; by default the router passes a port type of <b>ethernet</b> in RADIUS attribute 61.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## exclude

---

**Syntax** `exclude {`  
     `accounting-authentic [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];`  
     `accounting-delay-time [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];`  
     `accounting-session-id [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off |`  
         `accounting-stop ];`  
     `accounting-terminate-cause [ accounting-off ];`  
     `called-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `calling-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `class [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `dhcp-gi-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `dhcp-mac-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `output-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `event-timestamp [ accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start |`  
         `accounting-stop ];`  
     `framed-ip-address [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `framed-ip-netmask [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `input-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `input-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];`  
     `input-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];`  
     `interface-description [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `nas-identifier [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start |`  
         `accounting-stop ];`  
     `nas-port [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `nas-port-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `nas-port-type [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];`  
     `output-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];`  
     `output-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];`  
     `}`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access profile *profile-name* radius attributes]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description** Configure the router to exclude the specified attributes from the specified type of RADIUS message.

Not all attributes are available in all types of RADIUS messages. By default, the router includes the specified attributes in RADIUS Access-Request, Acct-On, Acct-Off, Acct-Start, and Acct-Stop messages.

**Options** RADIUS attribute type—RADIUS attribute or Juniper Networks VSA number and name.

- `accounting-authentic`—RADIUS attribute 45, Acct-Authentic.
- `accounting-delay-time`—RADIUS attribute 41, Acct-Delay-Time.
- `accounting-session-id`—RADIUS attribute 44, Acct-Session-Id.
- `accounting-terminate-cause`—RADIUS attribute 49, Acct-Terminate-Cause.
- `called-station-id`—RADIUS attribute 30, Called-Station-Id.

- calling-station-id—RADIUS attribute 31, Calling-Station-Id.
- class—RADIUS attribute 25, Class.
- dhcp-gi-address—Juniper VSA 26-57, DHCP-GI-Address.
- dhcp-mac-address—Juniper VSA 26-56, DHCP-MAC-Address.
- event-timestamp—RADIUS attribute 55, Event-Timestamp.
- framed-ip-address—RADIUS attribute 8, Framed-IP-Address.
- framed-ip-netmask—RADIUS attribute 9, Framed-IP-Netmask.
- input-filter—Juniper VSA 26-10, Ingress-Policy-Name.
- input-gigapackets—Juniper VSA 26-42, Acct-Input-Gigapackets.
- input-gigawords—RADIUS attribute 52, Acct-Input-Gigawords.
- interface-description—Juniper VSA 26-53, Interface-Desc.
- nas-identifier—RADIUS attribute 32, NAS-Identifier.
- nas-port—RADIUS attribute 5, NAS-Port.
- nas-port-id—RADIUS attribute 87, NAS-Port-Id.
- nas-port-type—RADIUS attribute 61, NAS-Port-Type.
- output-filter—Juniper VSA 26-11, Egress-Policy-Name.
- output-gigapackets—Juniper VSA 25-43, Acct-Output-Gigapackets.
- output-gigawords—RADIUS attribute 53, Acct-Output-Gigawords.

#### RADIUS message type

- access-request—RADIUS Access-Accept messages.
- accounting-off—RADIUS Accounting-Off messages.
- accounting-on—RADIUS Accounting-On messages.
- accounting-start—RADIUS Accounting-Start messages.
- accounting-stop—RADIUS Accounting-Stop messages.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## fragmentation-threshold

---

<b>Syntax</b>	fragmentation-threshold <i>bytes</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> l2tp multilink]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the fragmentation threshold for multilink bundle.
<b>Options</b>	<i>bytes</i> —The maximum number of bytes in a packet. If a packet exceeds the fragmentation threshold, the JUNOS software fragments it into two or more multilink fragments.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441. See also multilink.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## framed-ip-address

---

<b>Syntax</b>	framed-ip-address <i>address</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a framed IP address.
<b>Options</b>	<i>address</i> —The IP version 4 (IPv4) prefix.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## framed-pool

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>framed-pool <i>framed-pool</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp],</code> <code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the address pool.
<b>Options</b>	<i>framed-pool</i> —References a configured address pool.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## grace-period

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>grace-period <i>seconds</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the amount of time that the client retains the address lease after the lease expires. The address cannot be reassigned to another client during the grace period.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —Number of seconds the lease is retained. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 4,294,967,295 seconds <b>Default:</b> 0 (no grace period)
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## group-profile

---

See the following sections:

- group-profile (Group Profile) on page 504
- group-profile (Profile) on page 505

### **group-profile (Group Profile)**

**Syntax** group-profile *profile-name* {  
     l2tp {  
         interface-id *interface-id*;  
         lcp-renegotiation;  
         local-chap;  
         maximum-sessions-per-tunnel *number*;  
     }  
     ppp {  
         cell-overhead;  
         encapsulation-overhead *bytes*;  
         framed-pool *pool-id*;  
         idle-timeout *seconds*;  
         interface-id *interface-id*;  
         keepalive *seconds*;  
         primary-dns *primary-dns*;  
         primary-wins *primary-wins*;  
         secondary-dns *secondary-dns*;  
         secondary-wins *secondary-wins*;  
     }  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure the group profile.

**Options** *profile-name*—Name assigned to the group profile.

The other options are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Group Profile for Defining L2TP Attributes” on page 433, “Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile” on page 433, “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**group-profile (Profile)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>group-profile <i>profile-name</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i>]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Associate a group profile with a client.
<b>Options</b>	<i>profile-name</i> —(Optional) Name assigned to the group profile.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Referencing the Group Profile from the L2TP Profile” on page 441.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**hardware-address**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>hardware-address <i>mac-address</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet host <i>hostname</i>]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the MAC address of the client. This is the hardware address that identifies the client on the network.
<b>Options</b>	<i>mac-address</i> —The MAC address of the client.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## host

---

<b>Syntax</b>	host <i>hostname</i> { hardware-address <i>mac-address</i> ; interface-id <i>ip-address</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a static binding for the specified client.
<b>Options</b>	<i>hostname</i> —Name of the client.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## idle-timeout

---

<b>Syntax</b>	idle-timeout <i>seconds</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the idle timeout for a user.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —The number of seconds a user can remain idle before the session is terminated. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 4,294,967,295 seconds <b>Default:</b> 0
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ignore

---

**Syntax**    ignore {  
               framed-ip-netmask;  
               input-filter;  
               logical-system-routing-instance;  
               output-filter;  
               }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit access profile *profile-name* radius attributes]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description**    Configure the router to ignore the specified attributes in RADIUS Access-Accept messages. By default, the router processes the attributes it receives from the external server.

**Options**    framed-ip-netmask—Framed-IP-Netmask (RADIUS attribute 9).

              input-filter—Ingress-Policy-Name (VSA 26-10).

              logical-system-routing-instance—Virtual-Router (VSA 26-1).

              output-filter—Egress-Policy-Name (VSA 26-11).

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ike

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ike { allowed-proxy-pair { remote <i>remote-proxy-address</i> local <i>local-proxy-address</i> ; } pre-shared-key (ascii-text <i>character-string</i>   hexadecimal <i>hexadecimal-digits</i> ); ike-policy <i>policy-name</i> ; interface-id <i>string-value</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4. ike-policy statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.2
<b>Description</b>	Configure an IKE access profile.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring an IKE Access Profile” on page 457.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ike-policy

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ike-policy <i>policy-name</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ike]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.2.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the IKE policy used to authenticate dynamic peers during IKE negotiation.
<b>Options</b>	<i>policy-name</i> —The name of an IKE policy configured at the [edit services ipsec-vpn ike policy <i>policy-name</i> ] hierarchy level. The IKE policy defines either the local digital certificate or the pre-shared key used for IKE authentication with dynamic peers. For more information about how to configure the IKE policy, see the <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> .
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring an IKE Access Profile” on page 457.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> and <i>JUNOS Feature Guide</i>

## immediate-update

---

<b>Syntax</b>	immediate-update;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> accounting]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the router to send an Acct-Update message to the RADIUS accounting server on receipt of a response (for example, an ACK or timeout) to the Acct-Start message.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## initiate-dead-peer-detection

---

<b>Syntax</b>	initiate-dead-peer-detection;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ike]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.
<b>Description</b>	Detect inactive peers on dynamic IPsec tunnels.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring an IKE Access Profile” on page 457.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## interface-description-format

---

<b>Syntax</b>	interface-description-format (adapter   sub-interface);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specifies the information that is included in or omitted from the interface description that the router passes to RADIUS for inclusion in the RADIUS attribute 87 (NAS-Port-Id). By default, the router includes both the subinterface and the adapter in the interface description.
<b>Options</b>	<p>adapter—Specifies the adapter.</p> <p>sub-interface—Specifies the subinterface.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## interface-id

---

<b>Syntax</b>	interface-id <i>interface-id</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> l2tp],</p> <p>[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp],</p> <p>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ike],</p> <p>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> l2tp],</p> <p>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the interface identifier.
<b>Options</b>	<i>interface-id</i> —The identifier for the interface representing a Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) session configured at the [edit interfaces <i>interface-name</i> unit <i>local-unit-number</i> dial-options] hierarchy level. For more information about the interface ID, see the <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> .
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile” on page 433, “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434, “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441, “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445, and “Configuring an IKE Access Profile” on page 457.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## ip-address

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>ip-address <i>ip-address</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet host <i>hostname</i>]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the reserved IP address assigned to the client.
<b>Options</b>	<i>ip-address</i> —The IP version 4 (IPv4) address.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## keepalive

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>keepalive <i>seconds</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp],</code> <code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the keepalive interval for an L2TP tunnel.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —The time period that must elapse before the JUNOS software checks the status of the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) session by sending an echo request to the peer. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 32,767 seconds
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## I2tp

---

See the following sections:

- I2tp (Group Profile) on page 512
- I2tp (Profile) on page 513

### ***I2tp (Group Profile)***

**Syntax** I2tp {  
     interface-id *interface-id*;  
     lcp-renegotiation;  
     local-chap;  
     maximum-sessions-per-tunnel *number*;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access group-profile *profile-name*]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure the Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol for a group profile.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile” on page 433.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**I2tp (Profile)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> I2tp {   interface-id <i>interface-id</i>;   lcp-renegotiation;   local-chap;   maximum-sessions-per-tunnel <i>number</i>;   multilink {     drop-timeout <i>milliseconds</i>;     fragmentation-threshold <i>bytes</i>;   }   ppp-authentication (chap   pap);   ppp-profile <i>profile-name</i>;   shared-secret <i>shared-secret</i>; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure the L2TP properties for a profile.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**lcp-renegotiation**


---

<b>Syntax</b>	lcp-renegotiation;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> l2tp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> l2tp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the L2TP network server (LNS) so it renegotiates the link control protocol (LCP) with the PPP client.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile” on page 433 and “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## local-chap

---

<b>Syntax</b>	local-chap;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> l2tp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> l2tp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the JUNOS software so that the LNS ignores proxy authentication attribute-value pairs (AVPs) from the L2TP access concentrator (LAC) and reauthenticates the PPP client using a Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) challenge. When you do this, the LNS directly authenticates the PPP client.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile” on page 433 and “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## maximum-lease-time

---

<b>Syntax</b>	maximum-lease-time <i>seconds</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the maximum length of time, in seconds, that the lease is held for a client if the client does not renew the lease. This is equivalent to DHCP option 51.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —The maximum number of seconds the lease can be held. <b>Range:</b> 30 through 4,294,967,295 seconds <b>Default:</b> 86,400 (24 hours)
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## maximum-sessions-per-tunnel

---

<b>Syntax</b>	maximum-sessions-per-tunnel <i>number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>l2tp</i> ], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> <i>l2tp</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the maximum sessions for a Layer 2 tunnel.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Maximum number of sessions for a Layer 2 tunnel.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP for a Group Profile” on page 433 and “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## multilink

---

<b>Syntax</b>	multilink { drop-timeout <i>milliseconds</i> ; fragmentation-threshold <i>bytes</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> <i>l2tp</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the PPP MP for L2TP.
<b>Options</b>	The statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## name-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	name-server [ <i>server-names</i> ];
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure one or more Domain Name System (DNS) name servers available to the client to resolve hostname-to-client mappings. This is equivalent to DHCP option 6.
<b>Options</b>	<i>server-names</i> —IP addresses of the domain name servers, listed in order of preference.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## nas-identifier

---

<b>Syntax</b>	nas-identifier <i>identifier-value</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the value for the client RADIUS attribute 32 (NAS-Identifier). This attribute is used for authentication and accounting requests.
<b>Options</b>	<i>identifier-value</i> —A string in the range from 1 to 64 characters.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## nas-port-extended-format

---

**Syntax**    nas-port-extended-format {  
               adapter-width *width*;  
               port-width *width*;  
               slot-width *width*;  
               stacked-vlan-width *width*;  
               vlan-width *width*;  
               }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit access profile *profile-name* radius options]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description**    Configure the RADIUS client to use the extended format for RADIUS attribute 5 (NAS-Port) and specify the width of the fields in the NAS-Port attribute.

**Options**    adapter-width *width*—Number of bits in the adapter field.  
               port-width *width*—Number of bits in the port field.  
               slot-width *width*—Number of bits in the slot field.  
               stacked-vlan-width *width*—Number of bits in the SVLAN ID field.  
               vlan-width *width*—Number of bits in the VLAN ID field.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## netbios-node-type

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>netbios-node-type <i>node-type</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the NetBIOS node type. This is equivalent to DHCP option 46.
<b>Options</b>	<i>node-type</i> —You can specify one of the following node types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>b-node</i>—Broadcast node</li> <li>■ <i>h-node</i>—Hybrid node</li> <li>■ <i>m-node</i>—Mixed node</li> <li>■ <i>p-node</i>—Peer-to-peer node</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## network

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>network <i>address-or-prefix</i>[/<i>subnet-mask</i>];</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure subnet information for an address-assignment pool.
<b>Options</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>address-or-prefix</i>—IP version 4 address or prefix value.</li> <li>■ <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## option

---

<b>Syntax</b>	option { [ ( <i>id-number</i> <i>option-type</i> <i>option-value</i> ) ( <i>id-number</i> array <i>option-type</i> <i>option-value</i> ) ]; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify user-defined options that are added to client packets.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>id-number</i>—Any whole number. The ID number is used to index the option and must be unique across a DHCP server.</p> <p><i>option-type</i>—Any of the following types: flag, byte, string, short, unsigned-short, integer, unsigned-integer, or ip-address.</p> <p>array—An option can include an array of values.</p> <p><i>option-value</i>—Value associated with an option. The option value must be compatible with the option type (for example, an On or Off value for a flag type).</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## options

---

**Syntax**    options {  
               accounting-session-id-format (decimal | description);  
               ethernet-port-type-virtual;  
               interface-description-format (adapter | sub-interface);  
               nas-identifier *identifier-value*;  
               nas-port-extended-format {  
                   adapter-width *width*;  
                   port-width *width*;  
                   slot-width *width*;  
                   stacked-vlan-width *width*;  
                   vlan-width *width*;  
               }  
               override-nas-information;  
               revert-interval *interval*;  
               vlan-nas-port-stacked-format;  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit access profile *profile-name* radius]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description**    Configure the options used by RADIUS authentication and accounting servers.  
                   The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                   admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



## option-82

---

<b>Syntax</b>	option-82 { circuit-id <i>value range named-range</i> ; remote-id <i>value range named-range</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes option-match]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the list of option 82 suboption match criteria used to select the named address range used for the client. The server matches the option 82 value in the user PDU to the specified option 82 match criteria and uses the named address range associated with the string.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## option-match

---

<b>Syntax</b>	option-match { option-82 { circuit-id <i>value range named-range</i> ; remote-id <i>value range named-range</i> ; } }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a list of match criteria used to determine which named address range in the address-assignment pool to use. The extended DHCP local server matches this information to the match criteria specified in the client PDUs. For example, for option 82 match criteria, the server matches the option 82 value in the user PDU to the specified option 82 string and uses the named range associated with the string.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## order

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>order [accounting-method] [authentication-method]</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> accounting],</code> <code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> authentication]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Set the order in which the JUNOS software tries different accounting or authentication methods for client activity. When a client logs in, the software tries the accounting and authentication methods in the specified order.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>accounting-method</i>—One or more accounting methods. When a client logs in, the software tries the accounting methods in the following order, from first to last.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>radius</i>—Use RADIUS accounting.</li> </ul> <p><i>authentication-method</i>—One or more authentication methods. When a client logs in, the software tries the authentication methods in the following order, from first to last.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>none</i>—Do not perform authentication.</li> <li>■ <i>password</i>—Verify the client using the information configured at the <code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i>]</code> hierarchy level.</li> <li>■ <i>radius</i>—Verify the client using RADIUS authentication services.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p><i>admin</i>—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p><i>admin-control</i>—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## override-nas-information

---

<b>Syntax</b>	override-nas-information;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the information that the RADIUS client includes in broadcast accounting packets. By default, AAA broadcast accounting packets include the NAS-IP-Address and NAS-Identifier attributes of the <b>logical-systems</b> <i>logical-system-name</i> <b>routing-instance</b> <i>routing-instance-name</i> statement that generates the accounting information. This statement configures the RADIUS client to override the default behavior and include RADIUS attribute 4 (NAS-IP-Address) and RADIUS attribute 32 (NAS-Identifier) of the <b>logical-systems</b> <i>logical-system-name</i> <b>routing-instance</b> <i>routing-instance-name</i> statement that authenticates the client.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## pap-password

---

<b>Syntax</b>	pap-password <i>password</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) password.
<b>Options</b>	<i>password</i> —PAP password.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PAP Password for an L2TP Profile” on page 444.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## pool

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>pool <i>pool-name</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the name of an address-assignment pool.
<b>Options</b>	<i>pool-name</i> —The name assigned to the address-assignment pool.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## port

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>port <i>port-number</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the port number on which to contact the RADIUS server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>port-number</i> —Port number on which to contact the RADIUS server. <b>Default:</b> 1812 (as specified in RFC 2865)
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450, “Configuring the RADIUS Disconnect Server for L2TP” on page 455, and “Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS” on page 425.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**ppp**

---

See the following sections:

- ppp (Group Profile) on page 525
- ppp (Profile) on page 526

**ppp (Group Profile)**

**Syntax** ppp {  
     cell-overhead;  
     encapsulation-overhead *bytes*;  
     framed-pool *framed-pool*;  
     idle-timeout *seconds*;  
     interface-id *interface-id*;  
     keepalive *seconds*;  
     primary-dns *primary-dns*;  
     primary-wins *primary-wins*;  
     secondary-dns *secondary-dns*;  
     secondary-wins *secondary-wins*;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access group-profile *profile-name*]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure PPP properties for a group profile.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**ppp (Profile)**

**Syntax**    ppp {  
               cell-overhead;  
               encapsulation-overhead *bytes*;  
               framed-ip-address *address*;  
               framed-pool *framed-pool*;  
               idle-timeout *seconds*;  
               interface-id *interface-id*;  
               keepalive *seconds*;  
               primary-dns *primary-dns*;  
               primary-wins *primary-wins*;  
               secondary-dns *secondary-dns*;  
               secondary-wins *secondary-wins*;  
               }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit access profile *profile-name* client *client-name*]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure PPP properties for a client profile.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**ppp-authentication**

---

**Syntax**    ppp-authentication (chap | pap);

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit access profile *profile-name* client *client-name* l2tp]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure PPP authentication.

- Options**    ■ chap— The Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.  
               ■ pap— The Password Authentication Protocol.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ppp-profile

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ppp-profile <i>profile-name</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> l2tp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the profile used to validate PPP session requests through L2TP tunnels.
<b>Options</b>	<i>profile-name</i> —Identifier for the PPP profile.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for an L2TP Client and Profile” on page 456.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## pre-shared-key

---

<b>Syntax</b>	pre-shared-key (ascii-text <i>character-string</i>   hexadecimal <i>hexadecimal-digits</i> );
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ike]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the key used to authenticate a dynamic peer during IKE phase 1 negotiation. Specify the key in either ASCII or hexadecimal format.
<b>Options</b>	ascii-text <i>character-string</i> —Authentication key in ASCII format.  hexadecimal <i>hexadecimal-digits</i> —Authentication key in hexadecimal format.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring an IKE Access Profile” on page 457.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## primary-dns

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>primary-dns <i>primary-dns</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the primary Domain Name System (DNS) server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>primary-dns</i> —An IPv4 address.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration

## primary-wins

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>primary-wins <i>primary-wins</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the primary Windows Internet name server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>primary-wins</i> —An IPv4 address.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



## profile

---

**Syntax** `profile profile-name {`

```

    authentication-order [ authentication-methods ];
    accounting {
        accounting-stop-on-access-deny;
        accounting-stop-on-failure;
        order [ accounting-method ];
        statistics (time);
        update-interval minutes;
    }
    authentication-order [ authentication-method ]
    client client-name {
        chap-secret chap-secret;
        group-profile profile-name;
        ike {
            allowed-proxy-pair {
                remote remote-proxy-address local local-proxy-address;
            }
            pre-shared-key (ascii-text character-string | hexadecimal hexadecimal-digits);
            ike-policy policy-name;
            interface-id string-value;
        }
        l2tp {
            interface-id interface-id;
            lcp-renegotiation;
            local-chap;
            maximum-sessions-per-tunnel number;
            multilink {
                drop-timeout milliseconds;
                fragmentation-threshold bytes;
            }
            ppp-authentication (chap | pap);
            ppp-profile profile-name;
            shared-secret shared-secret;
        }
        pap-password pap-password;
        ppp {
            cell-overhead;
            encapsulation-overhead bytes;
            framed-ip-address ip-address;
            framed-pool framed-pool;
            idle-timeout seconds;
            interface-id interface-id;
            keepalive seconds;
            primary-dns primary-dns;
            primary-wins primary-wins;
            secondary-dns secondary-dns;
            secondary-wins secondary-wins;
        }
        user-group-profile profile-name;
    }
    radius {

```

```

authentication-server [ ip-address ];
accounting-server [ ip-address ];
options {
    accounting-session-id-format (decimal | description);
    ethernet-port-type-virtual;
    interface-description-format (adapter | sub-interface);
    nas-identifier identifier-value;
    nas-port-extended-format {
        adapter-width width;
        port-width width;
        slot-width width;
        stacked-vlan-width width;
        vlan-width width;
    }
    override-nas-information;
    revert-interval interval;
    vlan-nas-port-stacked-format;
}
attributes {
    ignore {
        framed-ip-netmask;
        input-filter;
        logical-system-routing-instance;
        output-filter;
    }
    exclude
        accounting-authentic [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
        accounting-delay-time [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
        accounting-session-id [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off |
            accounting-stop ];
        accounting-terminate-cause [ accounting-off ];
        called-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        calling-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        class [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        dhcp-gi-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        dhcp-mac-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        output-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        event-timestamp [ accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start |
            accounting-stop ];
        framed-ip-address [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        framed-ip-netmask [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        input-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        input-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
        input-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
        interface-description [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-identifier [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start
            | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port-type [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        output-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
        output-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
    }
}
}
radius-server server-address {

```

```

    accounting-port port-number;
    port port-number;
    retry attempts;
    routing-instance routing-instance-name;
    secret password;
    source-address source-address;
    timeout seconds;
  }
}

```

<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure PPP CHAP, or a profile and its subscriber access, L2TP, or PPP properties.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>profile-name</i>—Name of the profile.</p> <p>For CHAP, the name serves as the mapping between peer identifiers and CHAP secret keys. This entity is queried for the secret key whenever a CHAP challenge or response is received.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Authentication Protocol” on page 423, “Configuring Access Profiles for L2TP or PPP Parameters” on page 436, “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441, “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445, and “Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 459.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## radius

---

```

Syntax  radius {
    authentication-server [ ip-address ];
    accounting-server [ ip-address ];
    options {
        accounting-session-id-format (decimal | description);
        ethernet-port-type-virtual;
        interface-description-format (adapter | sub-interface);
        nas-identifier identifier-value;
        nas-port-extended-format {
            adapter-width width;
            port-width width;
            slot-width width;
            stacked-vlan-width width;
            vlan-width width;
        }
        override-nas-information;
        revert-interval interval;
        vlan-nas-port-stacked-format;
    }
    attributes {
        ignore {
            framed-ip-netmask;
            input-filter;
            logical-system-routing-instance;
            output-filter;
        }
        exclude
        accounting-authentic [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
        accounting-delay-time [ accounting-on | accounting-off ];
        accounting-session-id [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off |
            accounting-stop ];
        accounting-terminate-cause [ accounting-off ];
        called-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        calling-station-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        class [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        dhcp-gi-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        dhcp-mac-address [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        output-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        event-timestamp [ accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start |
            accounting-stop ];
        framed-ip-address [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        framed-ip-netmask [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        input-filter [ accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        input-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
        input-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
        interface-description [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-identifier [ access-request | accounting-on | accounting-off | accounting-start
            | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port-id [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
        nas-port-type [ access-request | accounting-start | accounting-stop ];
    }
  }

```

```

        output-gigapackets [ accounting-stop ];
        output-gigawords [ accounting-stop ];
    }
}

```

<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the RADIUS parameters that the router uses for AAA authentication and accounting for subscribers.  The statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Parameters for AAA Subscriber Management” on page 463.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## radius-disconnect

---

```

Syntax  radius-disconnect {
        client-address {
            secret password;
        }
    }

```

<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a disconnect server that listens on a configured User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port for disconnect messages from a configured client and processes these disconnect messages.
<b>Options</b>	<i>client-address</i> —A valid IP address configured on one of the router interfaces.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the RADIUS Disconnect Server for L2TP” on page 455.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## radius-disconnect-port

---

**Syntax** `radius-disconnect-port port-number;`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Specify a port number on which to contact the RADIUS disconnect server. Most RADIUS servers use port number 1700.

**Options** *port-number*—The server port to which disconnect requests from the RADIUS client are sent. The L2TP network server, which accepts these disconnect requests, is the server.



**NOTE:** The JUNOS software accepts disconnect requests only from the client address configured at the [edit access radius-disconnect client *client-address*] hierarchy level.

---

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the RADIUS Disconnect Server for L2TP” on page 455.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## radius-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>radius-server server-address {     accounting-port port-number;     port port-number;     retry number;     routing-instance routing-instance-name;     secret password;     source-address source-address;     timeout seconds; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure RADIUS for subscriber access management, L2TP, or PPP.</p> <p>To configure multiple RADIUS servers, include multiple <b>radius-server</b> statements. The servers are tried in order and in a round-robin fashion until a valid response is received from one of the servers or until all the configured retry limits are reached.</p>
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>server-address</b>—Address of the RADIUS authentication server.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450, “Configuring the PPP Authentication Protocol” on page 423, “Configuring RADIUS Authentication” on page 83, and “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## range

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>range range-name {     low lower-limit high upper-limit; }</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a named address range used within an address-assignment pool.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>range-name</i>—The name assigned to the range of addresses.</p> <p>low <i>lower-limit</i>—The lower limit of an address range.</p> <p>high <i>upper-limit</i>—The upper limit of an address range.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## remote-id

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>remote-id value range named-range;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes option-match option-82]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the address-assignment pool named range to use based on the particular option 82 Agent Remote ID value.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>remote-id value</i>—The string for Agent Remote ID suboption (suboption 2) of the DHCP relay agent information option (option 82) in DHCP packets.</p> <p>range <i>named-range</i>—Name of the address-assignment pool range to use.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>



## retry

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>retry attempts;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Number of times that the router is allowed to attempt to contact a RADIUS authentication or accounting server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>attempts</i> —Number of times that the router is allowed to attempt to contact a RADIUS server. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 10 <b>Default:</b> 3
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450 or “Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS” on page 425.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	timeout

## revert-interval

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>revert-interval interval;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius options]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the amount of time the router waits after a server has become unreachable. The router rechecks the connection to the server when the <b>revert-interval</b> expires. If the server is then reachable, it is used in accordance with the order of the server list.
<b>Options</b>	<i>interval</i> —Amount of time to wait. <b>Range:</b> 60 through 4294967295 seconds <b>Default:</b> 3 seconds
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## router

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>router [ <i>hostnames</i> ];</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a list of the routers located on the client's subnet. This statement is the equivalent of DHCP option 3.
<b>Options</b>	<i>hostnames</i> —IP addresses of the routers.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## routing-instance

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>routing-instance <i>routing-instance-name</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the routing instance used to send RADIUS packets to the RADIUS server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>routing-instance-name</i> —Routing instance name.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Authentication Protocol” on page 423.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i>

## secondary-dns

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>secondary-dns secondary-dns;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the secondary DNS server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>secondary-dns</i> —An IPv4 address.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## secondary-wins

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>secondary-wins secondary-wins;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i> ppp], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> ppp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the secondary Windows Internet name server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>secondary-wins</i> —An IPv4 address.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the PPP Attributes for a Group Profile” on page 434 and “Configuring the PPP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 445.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**secret**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>secret password;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i> ] [edit access radius-disconnect <i>client-address</i> ], [edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i> ],
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the password to use with the RADIUS server. The secret password used by the local router must match that used by the server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>password</i> —Password to use; can include spaces.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450, “Configuring the RADIUS Disconnect Server for L2TP” on page 455, and “Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS” on page 425.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**shared-secret**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>shared-secret shared-secret;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i> l2tp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the shared secret.
<b>Options</b>	<i>shared-secret</i> —The shared secret key for authenticating the peer.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring L2TP Properties for a Client-Specific Profile” on page 441.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## source-address

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>source-address source-address;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access radius-server server-address],</code> <code>[edit access profile profile-name radius-server server-address]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a source address for each configured RADIUS server. Each RADIUS request sent to a RADIUS server uses the specified source address.
<b>Options</b>	<i>source-address</i> —A valid IPv4 address configured on one of the router interfaces. On M-series routers only, the source address can be an IPv6 address and the UDP source port is 514.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450 or “Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS” on page 425.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## statistics

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>statistics (time);</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access profile profile-name accounting]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the router to collect time statistics for the sessions being managed by AAA.
<b>Options</b>	<i>time</i> —Collect uptime statistics only.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## tftp-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>tftp-server ip-address;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server that the client uses to obtain the client configuration file. This is equivalent to DHCP option 150.
<b>Options</b>	<i>ip-address</i> —IP address of the TFTP server.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## timeout

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>timeout seconds;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i> ], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the amount of time that the local router waits to receive a response from a RADIUS server.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —Amount of time to wait. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 90 seconds <b>Default:</b> 3 seconds
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring RADIUS Authentication for L2TP” on page 450 or “Example: Configuring CHAP Authentication with RADIUS” on page 425.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## traceoptions

---

**Syntax** traceoptions {  
     file *filename* <files *number*> <match *regex*> <size *maximum-file-size*> <world-readable  
         | no-world-readable>;  
     flag all;  
     flag authentication;  
     flag chap;  
     flag configuration;  
     flag kernel;  
     flag radius;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure access tracing options.

**Options** file *filename*—Name of the file that receives the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name within quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory `/var/log`.

files *number*—(Optional) Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named *trace-file* reaches its maximum size, it is renamed *trace-file.0*, then *trace-file.1*, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.

If you specify a maximum number of files, you also must specify a maximum file size with the **size** option and a filename.

**Range:** 2 through 1000

**Default:** 3 files

flag—Tracing operation to perform. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple **flag** statements. You can include the following flags.

- all—All tracing operations
- authentication—All authentication module handling
- chap—All CHAP messages and handling
- configuration—Reading of configuration
- kernel—Send all configuration messages to the kernel
- radius—All RADIUS messages and handling

match *regex*—(Optional) Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.

size *size*—(Optional) Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB). When a trace file named *trace-file* reaches this size, it is

renamed *trace-file.0*. When the *trace-file* again reaches its maximum size, *trace-file.0* is renamed *trace-file.1* and *trace-file* is renamed *trace-file.0*. This renaming scheme continues until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.

If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the **files** option and filename.

**Syntax:** *xk* to specify KB, *xm* to specify MB, or *xg* to specify GB

**Range:** 10 KB through 1 GB

**Default:** 128 KB

**world-readable**—(Optional) Enable unrestricted file access.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Tracing Operations for Access Processes” on page 427.

**Required Privilege Level** **admin**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**admin-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.

## update-interval

---

**Syntax** `update-interval minutes;`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit access profile *profile-name* accounting]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.

**Description** Configure the amount of time, in minutes, that the router waits before sending a new accounting update.

**Options** *minutes*—Amount of time between updates, in minutes.

**Range:** 15 through 1440 minutes

**Default:** no updates

**Usage Guidelines** See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.

**Required Privilege Level** **admin**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**admin-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.



## user-group-profile

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>user-group-profile <i>profile-name</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i>]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	(M7i and M10i routers only) Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Apply a configured PPP group profile to PPP users.
<b>Options</b>	<i>profile-name</i> —Name of a PPP group profile configured at the <code>[edit access group-profile <i>profile-name</i>]</code> hierarchy level.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Applying a Configured PPP Group Profile to a Tunnel” on page 446.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## vlan-nas-port-stacked-format

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>vlan-nas-port-stacked-format;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius options]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.1.
<b>Description</b>	Configure RADIUS attribute 5 (NAS-Port) to include the S-VLAN ID, in addition to the VLAN ID, for subscribers on Ethernet interfaces.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “RADIUS Authentication and Accounting for Subscriber Access Management Overview” on page 460.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## wins-server

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>wins-server [<i>hostnames</i> ];</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet dhcp-attributes]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Specify one or more NetBIOS name servers (NBNS) that the client uses to resolve NetBIOS names. This is equivalent to DHCP option 44.
<b>Options</b>	<i>server-list</i> —IP addresses of the NetBIOS name servers, listed in order of preference.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Address-Assignment Pools for Subscriber Access Management” on page 475.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## **Part 4**

# **Security Services**

- Security Services Overview on page 549
- Security Services Configuration Guidelines on page 551
- Summary of Security Services Configuration Statements on page 607



## Chapter 15

# Security Services Overview

This chapter covers the following topics:

- IPSec Overview on page 549
- Security Associations Overview on page 549
- IKE Key Management Protocol Overview on page 550
- IPSec Requirements for JUNOS-FIPS Overview on page 550

## IPSec Overview

---

IPSec architecture provides a security suite for the IP version 4 (IPv4) and IP version 6 (IPv6) network layers. The suite provides such functionality as authentication of origin, data integrity, confidentiality, replay protection, and nonrepudiation of source. In addition to IPSec, the JUNOS software also supports the Internet Key Exchange (IKE), which defines mechanisms for key generation and exchange, and manages security associations (SAs).

IPSec also defines a security association and key management framework that can be used with any network layer protocol. The SA specifies what protection policy to apply to traffic between two IP-layer entities. IPSec provides secure tunnels between two peers.

For a complete description of the IPSec security suite, see the “IPSec” chapter of the *JUNOS Feature Guide*.

## Security Associations Overview

---

To use IPSec security services, you create SAs between hosts. An SA is a simplex connection that allows two hosts to communicate with each other securely by means of IPSec. There are two types of SAs: manual and dynamic.

- Manual SAs require no negotiation; all values, including the keys, are static and specified in the configuration. Manual SAs statically define the Security Parameter Index (SPI) values, algorithms, and keys to be used, and require matching configurations on both ends of the tunnel. Each peer must have the same configured options for communication to take place.
- Dynamic SAs require additional configuration. With dynamic SAs, you configure IKE first and then the SA. IKE creates dynamic security associations; it negotiates SAs for IPSec. The IKE configuration defines the algorithms and keys used to establish the secure IKE connection with the peer security gateway. This

connection is then used to dynamically agree upon keys and other data used by the dynamic IPsec SA. The IKE SA is negotiated first and then used to protect the negotiations that determine the dynamic IPsec SAs.

The JUNOS software implementation of IPsec supports two modes of security (transport and tunnel).

## **IKE Key Management Protocol Overview**

---

IKE is a key management protocol that creates dynamic SAs; it negotiates SAs for IPsec. An IKE configuration defines the algorithms and keys used to establish a secure connection with a peer security gateway.

IKE does the following:

- Negotiates and manages IKE and IPsec parameters
- Authenticates secure key exchange
- Provides mutual peer authentication by means of shared secrets (not passwords) and public keys
- Provides identity protection (in main mode)

IKE occurs over two phases. In the first phase, it negotiates security attributes and establishes shared secrets to form the bidirectional IKE SA. In the second phase, inbound and outbound IPsec SAs are established. The IKE SA secures the exchanges in the second phase. IKE also generates keying material, provides Perfect Forward Secrecy, and exchanges identities.

## **IPsec Requirements for JUNOS-FIPS Overview**

---

In a JUNOS-FIPS environment, hardware configurations with two Routing Engines must be configured to use IPsec and a private routing instance for all communications between the Routing Engines. IPsec communication between the Routing Engines and AS II FIPS PICs is also required.

## Chapter 16

# Security Services Configuration Guidelines

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Security Services Complete Configuration Statements on page 551
- Configuring IPsec for an ES PIC on page 554
- Using Digital Certificates for ES and AS PICs on page 573
- Configuring IPsec Tunnel Traffic on page 593
- ES Tunnel Interface Configuration for a Layer 3 VPN on page 598
- Configuring Tracing Operations for Security Services on page 598
- Configuring Tracing Operations for IPsec Events for Adaptive Services PICs on page 598
- Configuring the Authentication Key Update Mechanism for BGP and LDP Routing Protocols on page 599
- Configuring SSH Host Keys for Secure Copying of Data on page 601
- Importing SSL Certificates for JUNOScript Support on page 603
- Configuring Internal IPsec for JUNOS-FIPS on page 604
- Example: Configuring Internal IPsec on page 606

## Security Services Complete Configuration Statements

---

To configure security services, you can include the following configuration statements at the [edit security] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security]
authentication-key-chains {
  key-chain key-chain-name {
    key key {
      secret secret-data;
      start-time yyyy-mm-dd.hh:mm:ss;
    }
  }
}
certificates {
  cache-size bytes;
  cache-timeout-negative seconds;
```

```

certification-authority ca-profile-name {
    ca-name ca-identity;
    crl file-name;
    encoding (binary | pem);
    enrollment-url url-name;
    file certificate-filename;
    ldap-url url-name;
}
enrollment-retry attempts;
local certificate-filename {
    certificate-key-string;
    load-key-file key-file-name;
}
maximum-certificates number;
path-length certificate-path-length;
}
ike {
    proposal ike-proposal-name {
        authentication-algorithm (md5 | sha1);
        authentication-method (dsa-signatures | pre-shared-keys | rsa-signatures);
        description description;
        dh-group (group1 | group2);
        encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc | ase-128-cbc | ase-192-cbc |
            ase-256-cbc);
        lifetime-seconds seconds;
    }
    policy ike-peer-address {
        description description;
        encoding (binary | pem);
        identity identity-name;
        local-certificate certificate-filename;
        local-key-pair private-public-key-file;
        mode (aggressive | main);
        pre-shared-key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
        proposals [ proposal-names ];
    }
}
ipsec {
    security-association {
        manual {
            direction (bidirectional | inbound | outbound) {
                protocol esp;
                spi spi-value;
                encryption {
                    algorithm 3des-cbc;
                    key ascii-text ascii-text-string;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
proposal ipsec-proposal-name {
    authentication-algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
    description description;
    encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc);
    lifetime-seconds seconds;
    protocol (ah | esp | bundle);
}

```



```

}
policy ipsec-policy-name {
  description description;
  perfect-forward-secrecy {
    keys (group1 | group2);
  }
  proposals [ proposal-names ];
}
security-association sa-name {
  description description;
  dynamic {
    ipsec-policy policy-name;
    replay-window-size (32 | 64);
  }
  manual {
    direction (inbound | outbound | bidirectional) {
      authentication {
        algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
        key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
      }
      auxiliary-spi auxiliary-spi;
      encryption {
        algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);
        key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
      }
      protocol (ah | esp | bundle);
      spi spi-value;
    }
  }
  mode (tunnel | transport);
}
}
pki {
  ca-profile ca-profile-name {
    ca-identity ca-identity;
    enrollment {
      url url-name;
      retry number-of-attempts;
      retry-interval seconds;
    }
    revocation-check {
      disable;
      crl {
        disable on-download-failure;
        refresh-interval number-of-hours;
        url {
          url-name;
          password;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
}
ssh-known-hosts {
  host {
    dsa-key key;

```

```

        rsa-key key;
        rsa1-key key;
    }
}
traceoptions {
    file filename <files number> < size size>;
    flag all;
    flag database;
    flag general;
    flag ike;
    flag parse;
    flag policy-manager;
    flag routing-socket;
    flag timer;
}

```



**NOTE:** Most of the configuration statements do not have default values. If you do not specify an identifier for a statement that does not have a default value, you cannot commit the configuration.

For information about IP Security (IPSec) monitoring and troubleshooting, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

---

## Configuring IPSec for an ES PIC

---

- IPSec Configuration for an ES PIC Overview on page 554
- Configuring Minimum Manual Security Associations for IPSec on an ES PIC on page 555
- Configuring Minimum IKE Requirements for IPSec on an ES PIC on page 555
- Configuring Minimum Digital Certificates Requirements for IKE on an ES PIC on page 555
- Configuring Security Associations for IPSec on an ES PIC on page 556
- Configuring an IKE Proposal for Dynamic SAs on page 563
- Example: Configuring an IKE Proposal on page 566
- Configuring an IKE Policy for Preshared Keys on page 566
- Example: Configuring an IKE Policy on page 568
- Configuring an IPSec Proposal for an ES PIC on page 569
- Configuring the IPSec Policy for an ES PIC on page 571
- Example: Configuring an IPSec Policy on page 572

### ***IPSec Configuration for an ES PIC Overview***

IPSec provides a secure way to authenticate senders and encrypt IPv4 and IPv6 traffic between network devices, such as routing platforms and hosts. The following sections show how to configure IPSec for an ES PIC:

The key management process (kmd) provides IPsec authentication services for ES PICs. The key management process starts only when IPsec is configured on the router.

### **Configuring Minimum Manual Security Associations for IPsec on an ES PIC**

To define a manual security association (SA) configuration for an ES PIC, include at least the following statements at the [edit security ipsec] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec]
security-association sa-name {
  manual {
    direction (inbound | outbound | bidirectional) {
      authentication {
        algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
        key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
      }
      encryption {
        algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);
        key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
      }
      protocol (ah | esp | bundle);
      spi spi-value;
    }
  }
}
```

### **Configuring Minimum IKE Requirements for IPsec on an ES PIC**

To define an IKE configuration for an ES PIC, include at least the following statements at the [edit security] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike]
proposal ike-proposal-name {
  authentication-method (dsa-signatures | pre-shared-keys | rsa-signatures);
  dh-group (group1 | group2);
  encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc | ase-128-cbc | ase-192-cbc | ase-256-cbc);
}
policy ike-peer-address {
  proposals [ ike-proposal-names ];
  pre-shared-key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
}
```

### **Configuring Minimum Digital Certificates Requirements for IKE on an ES PIC**

To define a digital certificates configuration for IKE for an encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms, include at least the following statements at the [edit security certificates] and [edit security ike] hierarchy levels:

```
[edit security]
certificates {
  certification-authority ca-profile-name {
    ca-name ca-identity;
```

```

        crl filename;
        enrollment-url url-name;
        file certificate-filename;
        ldap-url url-name;
    }
}
ike {
    policy ike-peer-address {
        local-certificate certificate-filename;
        local-key-pair private-public-key-file;
        proposal [ ike-proposal-names ];
    }
    proposal ike-proposal-name {
        authentication-method rsa-signatures;
    }
}

```

## Configuring Security Associations for IPSec on an ES PIC

To use IPSec security services, you create an SA between hosts. An SA is a simplex connection that allows two hosts to communicate with each other securely by means of IPSec. You can configure two types of SAs:

- **Manual**—Requires no negotiation; all values, including the keys, are static and specified in the configuration. As a result, each peer must have the same configured options for communication to take place. For information about how to configure a manual SA, see “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558.
- **Dynamic**—Specifies proposals to be negotiated with the tunnel peer. The keys are generated as part of the negotiation and therefore do not need to be specified in the configuration. The dynamic SA includes one or more **proposal** statements, which allow you to prioritize a list of protocols and algorithms to be negotiated with the peer. For information about how to configure a dynamic SA, see “Associating the Configured Security Association with a Logical Interface” on page 584.



**NOTE:** The JUNOS software does not perform a commit check when an SA name referenced in the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) protocol section is not configured at the [edit security ipsec] hierarchy level.

---

We recommend that you configure no more than 512 dynamic security associations per ES Physical Interface Card (PIC).

To configure an SA for IPSec for an ES PIC, include the **security-association** statement at the [edit security ipsec] hierarchy level:

```

[edit security ipsec]
security-association sa-name;

```



**NOTE:** You configure a dynamic SA for the AS and MultiServices PICs at the [edit services ipsec-vpn rule *rule-name* term *term-name* then dynamic], [edit services ipsec-vpn ike], and [edit services ipsec-vpn ipsec] hierarchy levels.

For more information, see the “IPSec” chapter of the *JUNOS Feature Guide* and the “IPSec Services Configuration Guidelines” chapter of the *JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

Tasks to configure SAs for IPSec for an ES PIC are:

1. Configuring the Description for an SA on page 557
2. Configuring IPSec Transport Mode on page 557
3. Configuring IPSec Tunnel Mode on page 558
4. Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC on page 558
5. Configuring Dynamic IPSec Security Associations on page 563
6. Enabling Dynamic IPSec Security Associations on page 563

### Configuring the Description for an SA

To specify a description for an IPSec SA, include the **description** statement at the **edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name*** hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name]
description description;
```

### Configuring IPSec Transport Mode

In transport mode, the data portion of the IP packet is encrypted, but the IP header is not. Transport mode can be used only when the communication endpoint and cryptographic endpoint are the same. Virtual private network (VPN) gateways that provide encryption and decryption services for protected hosts cannot use transport mode for protected VPN communications. You configure manual SAs, and you must configure static values on both ends of the SA.



**NOTE:** When you use transport mode, the JUNOS software supports both BGP and OSPFv3 for manual SAs.

To configure IPSec security for transport mode, include the **mode** statement with the **transport** option at the **edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name*** hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name]
mode transport;
```

To apply tunnel mode, you configure manual SAs in transport mode and then reference the SA by name at the **[edit protocols bgp]** hierarchy level to protect a session with a given peer.



**NOTE:** You can configure BGP to establish a peer relationship over encrypted tunnels.

## Configuring IPsec Tunnel Mode

You use tunnel mode when you use preshared keys with IKE to authenticate peers, or digital certificates with IKE to authenticate peers. In tunnel mode, encryption services are performed on an ES PIC.

When you use preshared keys, you manually configure a preshared key, which must match that of its peer. With digital certificates, each router is dynamically or manually enrolled with a certificate authority (CA). When a tunnel is established, the public keys used for IPsec are dynamically obtained through IKE and validated against the CA certificate. This avoids the manual configuration of keys on routers within the topology. Adding a new router to the topology does not require any security configuration changes to existing routers.

To configure the IPsec in tunnel mode, include the `mode` statement with the `tunnel` option at the `edit security ipsec security-association sa-name` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name]
mode tunnel;
```



**NOTE:** Tunnel mode requires the ES PIC.

The JUNOS software supports both BGP and OSPFv3 in transport mode.

To enable tunnel mode, follow the steps in these sections:

- Configuring Security Associations for IPsec on an ES PIC on page 556
- Configuring an IKE Proposal for Dynamic SAs on page 563
- Associating the Configured Security Association with a Logical Interface on page 584
- IPsec Tunnel Traffic Configuration Overview on page 594

## Configuring Manual IPsec Security Associations for an ES PIC

To use IPsec security services, you create Security Associations (SAs) between hosts. An SA is a simplex connection that allows two hosts to communicate with each other securely by means of IPsec. There are two types of SAs: manual and dynamic.

Manual SAs require no negotiation; all values, including the keys, are static and specified in the configuration. As a result, peers can communicate only when they all share the same configured options.

To configure the manual IPsec SA for an ES PIC, include the `manual` statement at the `edit security ipsec security-association sa-name` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name]
manual {
  direction (inbound | outbound | bi-directional) {
    authentication {
      algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
      key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
    }
    auxiliary-spi auxiliary-spi-value;
    encryption {
      algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);
      key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
    }
    protocol (ah | esp | bundle);
    spi spi-value;
  }
}
```

Tasks to configure a manual SA are:

1. Configuring the Processing Direction on page 559
2. Configuring the Protocol for a Manual SA on page 560
3. Configuring the Security Parameter Index on page 560
4. Configuring the Auxiliary Security Parameter Index on page 561
5. Configuring the Authentication Algorithm and Key on page 561
6. Configuring the Encryption Algorithm and Key on page 562

### **Configuring the Processing Direction**

The `direction` statement sets inbound and outbound IPSec processing. If you want to define different algorithms, keys, or security parameter index (SPI) values for each direction, you configure the `inbound` and `outbound` options. If you want the same attributes in both directions, use the `bidirectional` option.

To configure the direction of IPSec processing, include the `direction` statement and specify the direction at the `[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual]
direction (inbound | outbound | bidirectional);
```

The following example shows how to define different algorithms, keys, and security parameter index values for inbound and outbound processing directions:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name]
manual {
  direction inbound {
    encryption {
      algorithm 3des-cbc;
      key ascii-text 23456789012345678901234;
    }
    protocol esp;
    spi 16384;
  }
}
```

```

direction outbound {
  encryption {
    algorithm 3des-cbc;
    key ascii-text 12345678901234567890abcd;
  }
  protocol esp;
  spi 24576;
}

```

The following example shows how to define the same algorithms, keys, and security parameter index values for bidirectional processing:

```

[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual]
direction bidirectional {
  authentication {
    algorithm hmac-md5-96;
    key ascii-text 123456789012abcd;
  }
  protocol ah;
  spi 20001;
}

```

### Configuring the Protocol for a Manual SA

IPSec uses two protocols to protect IP traffic: Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) and authentication header (AH). For transport mode SAs, both ESP and AH are supported. The AH protocol is used for strong authentication. The **bundle** option uses AH authentication and ESP encryption; it does not use ESP authentication because AH provides stronger authentication of IP packets.



**NOTE:** The AH protocol is supported only on M-series platforms.

---

To configure the IPSec protocol on an ES PIC, include the **protocol** statement at the `edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual direction (inbound | outbound | bidirectional)]` hierarchy level and specify the **ah**, **bundle**, or **esp** option:

```

[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual direction (inbound |
outbound | bi-directional)]
protocol (ah | bundle | esp);

```

### Configuring the Security Parameter Index

An SPI is an arbitrary value that uniquely identifies which SA to use at the receiving host. The sending host uses the SPI to identify and select which SA to use to secure every packet. The receiving host uses the SPI to identify and select the encryption algorithm and key used to decrypt packets.





**NOTE:** Each manual SA must have a unique SPI and protocol combination.

Use the auxiliary SPI when you configure the **protocol** statement to use the **bundle** option.

To configure the SPI on an ES PIC, include the **spi** statement and specify a value (256 through 16,639) at the [edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name* manual direction (inbound | outbound | bi-directional)] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual direction (inbound |
outbound | bidirectional)]
spi spi-value;
```

### Configuring the Auxiliary Security Parameter Index

When you configure the **protocol** statement to use the **bundle** option, the JUNOS software uses the auxiliary SPI for the ESP and the SPI for the AH.



**NOTE:** Each manual SA must have a unique SPI and protocol combination.

To configure the auxiliary SPI, include the **auxiliary-spi** statement at the [edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name* manual direction (inbound | outbound | bi-directional)] hierarchy level and set the value to an integer between 256 and 16,639:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual direction (inbound |
outbound | bidirectional)]
auxiliary-spi auxiliary-spi-value;
```

### Configuring the Authentication Algorithm and Key

To configure an authentication algorithm and key, include the **authentication** statement at the [edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name* manual direction (inbound | outbound | bi-directional)] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual direction (inbound | outbound
| bidirectional)]
authentication {
  algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
  key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
}
```

The algorithm can be one of the following:

- **hmac-md5-96**—Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. It produces a 128-bit authenticator value and 96-bit digest.
- **hmac-sha1-96**—Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. It produces a 160-bit authenticator value and a 96-bit digest.

The key can be one of the following:

- **ascii-text key**—ASCII text key. With the **hmac-md5-96** option, the key contains 16 ASCII characters. With the **hmac-sha1-96** option, the key contains 20 ASCII characters.
- **hexadecimal key**—Hexadecimal key. With the **hmac-md5-96** option, the key contains 32 hexadecimal characters. With the **hmac-sha1-96** option, the key contains 40 hexadecimal characters.

### **Configuring the Encryption Algorithm and Key**

To configure IPSec encryption, include the **encryption** statement and specify an algorithm and key at the [edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name* manual direction (inbound | outbound | bi-directional)] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name manual direction (inbound | outbound
| bi-directional)]
encryption {
  algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);
  key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
}
```

The algorithm can be one of the following:

- **des-cbc**—Encryption algorithm that has a block size of 8 bytes; its key size is 64 bits long.
- **3des-cbc**—Encryption algorithm that has a block size of 24 bytes; its key size is 192 bits long.



**NOTE:** For a list of Data Encryption Standard (DES) encryption algorithm weak and semiweak keys, see RFC 2409. For **3des-cbc**, we recommend that the first 8 bytes not be the same as the second 8 bytes, and that the second 8 bytes be the same as the third 8 bytes.

---

The key can be one of the following:

- **ascii-text**—ASCII text key. With the **des-cbc** option, the key contains 8 ASCII characters. With the **3des-cbc** option, the key contains 24 ASCII characters.
- **hexadecimal**—Hexadecimal key. With the **des-cbc** option, the key contains 16 hexadecimal characters. With the **3des-cbc** option, the key contains 48 hexadecimal characters.



**NOTE:** You cannot configure encryption when you use the AH protocol.

---

## Configuring Dynamic IPSec Security Associations

You configure dynamic SAs with a set of proposals that are negotiated by the security gateways. The keys are generated as part of the negotiation and do not need to be specified in the configuration. The dynamic SA includes one or more proposals, which allow you to prioritize a list of protocols and algorithms to be negotiated with the peer.

To configure a dynamic SA, include the `dynamic` statement at the `[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name]` hierarchy level. Specify an IPSec policy name, and optionally, a 32-packet or 64-packet replay window size.

```
[edit security ipsec security-association sa-name ]
dynamic {
    ipsec-policy policy-name ;
    replay-window-size (32 | 64);
}
```

## Enabling Dynamic IPSec Security Associations

To enable a dynamic SA, follow these steps:

1. Configure IKE proposals and IKE policies associated with these proposals.
2. Configure IPSec proposals and an IPSec policy associated with these proposals.
3. Associate an SA with an IPSec policy.



### NOTE:

- Dynamic tunnel SAs require an ES PIC.
- If you want to establish a dynamic SA, the attributes in at least one configured IPSec and IKE proposal must match those of its peer.

The replay window is not used with manual SAs.

---

## Configuring an IKE Proposal for Dynamic SAs

Dynamic Security Associations (SAs) require IKE configuration. The IKE configuration defines the algorithms and keys used to establish the secure IKE connection with the peer security gateway.

You can configure one or more IKE proposals. Each proposal is a list of IKE attributes to protect the IKE connection between the IKE host and its peer.

To configure an IKE proposal and define its properties, include the following statements at the `[edit security ike]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike]
proposal ike-proposal-name {
```

```

authentication-algorithm (md5 | sha1);
authentication-method (dsa-signatures | pre-shared-keys | rsa-signatures);
description description ;
dh-group (group1 | group2);
encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc | ase-128-cbc | ase-192-cbc | ase-256-cbc);
lifetime-seconds seconds;
}

```

For information about associating an IKE proposal with an IKE policy, see “Associating Proposals with an IKE Policy” on page 568.

Tasks for configuring the IKE Proposal are:

1. Configuring the Authentication Algorithm for an IKE Proposal on page 564
2. Configuring the Authentication Method for an IKE Proposal on page 564
3. Configuring the Description for an IKE Proposal on page 565
4. Configuring the Diffie-Hellman Group for an IKE Proposal on page 565
5. Configuring the Encryption Algorithm for an IKE Proposal on page 565
6. Configuring the Lifetime for an IKE SA on page 566

### Configuring the Authentication Algorithm for an IKE Proposal

To configure an IKE authentication algorithm, include the `authentication-algorithm` statement at the `[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name]
authentication-algorithm (md5 | sha1);

```

The authentication algorithm can be one of the following:

- `md5`—Produces a 128-bit digest.
- `sha1`—Produces a 160-bit digest.

### Configuring the Authentication Method for an IKE Proposal

To configure an IKE authentication method, include the `authentication-method` statement at the `[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name]
authentication-method (dsa-signatures | pre-shared-keys | rsa-signatures);

```

The authentication method can be one of the following:

- `dsa-signatures`—Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA)
- `pre-shared-keys`—Preshared keys; a key derived from an out-of-band mechanism is used to authenticate an exchange
- `rsa-signatures`—Public key algorithm that supports encryption and digital signatures

## Configuring the Description for an IKE Proposal

To specify a description for an IKE proposal, include the **description** statement at the [edit security ike proposal *ike-proposal-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name]  
description description;
```

## Configuring the Diffie-Hellman Group for an IKE Proposal

Diffie-Hellman is a public-key cryptography scheme that allows two parties to establish a shared secret over an insecure communications channel. It is also used within IKE to establish session keys.

To configure an IKE Diffie-Hellman group, include the **dh-group** statement at the [edit security ike proposal *ike-proposal-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name ]  
dh-group (group1 | group2);
```

The group can be one of the following:

- **group1**—Specifies that IKE use the 768-bit Diffie-Hellman prime modulus group when performing the new Diffie-Hellman exchange.
- **group2**—Specifies that IKE use the 1024-bit Diffie-Hellman prime modulus group when performing the new Diffie-Hellman exchange.

**group2** provides more security but requires more processing time.

## Configuring the Encryption Algorithm for an IKE Proposal

To configure an IKE encryption algorithm, include the **encryption-algorithm** statement at the [edit security ike proposal *ike-proposal-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name ]  
encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc);
```

The encryption algorithm can be one of the following:

- **3des-cbc**—Encryption algorithm that has a key size of 24 bytes; its key size is 192 bits long.
- **des-cbc**—Encryption algorithm that has a key size of 8 bytes; its key size is 56 bits long.
- **aes-128-cbc**—Advanced encryption algorithm that has a key size of 16 bytes; its key size is 128 bits long.
- **aes-192-cbc**—Advanced encryption algorithm that has a key size of 24 bytes; its key size is 192 bits long.
- **aes-256-cbc**—Advanced encryption algorithm that has a key size of 32 bytes; its key size is 256 bits long.

## Configuring the Lifetime for an IKE SA

The IKE lifetime sets the lifetime of an IKE SA. When the IKE SA expires, it is replaced by a new SA (and SPI) or is terminated. The default value IKE lifetime is 3600 seconds.

To configure the IKE lifetime, include the `lifetime-seconds` statement and specify the number of seconds (180 through 86,400) at the `[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike proposal ike-proposal-name ]
lifetime-seconds seconds;
```

### Example: Configuring an IKE Proposal

The following example shows how to configure an IKE proposal:

```
[edit security ike]
proposal ike-proposal {
  authentication-method pre-shared-keys;
  dh-group group1;
  authentication-algorithm sha1;
  encryption-algorithm 3des-cbc;
}
```

## Configuring an IKE Policy for Preshared Keys

An IKE policy defines a combination of security parameters (IKE proposals) to be used during IKE negotiation. It defines a peer address, the preshared key for the given peer, and the proposals needed for that connection. During the IKE negotiation, IKE looks for an IKE policy that is the same on both peers. The peer that initiates the negotiation sends all its policies to the remote peer, and the remote peer tries to find a match.

A match is made when both policies from the two peers have a proposal that contains the same configured attributes. If the lifetimes are not identical, the shorter lifetime between the two policies (from the host and peer) is used. The configured preshared key must also match its peer.

You can create multiple, prioritized proposals at each peer to ensure that at least one proposal will match a remote peer's proposal.

First, you configure one or more IKE proposals; then you associate these proposals with an IKE policy. You can also prioritize a list of proposals used by IKE in the `policy` statement by listing the proposals you want to use, from first to last.

To configure an IKE policy, include the `policy` statement at the `[edit security ike]` hierarchy level and specify a peer address:

```
[edit security ike]
policy ike-peer-address;
```



**NOTE:** The IKE policy peer address must be an IPSec tunnel destination address.

Tasks for configuring an IKE policy are:

1. Configuring the Description for an IKE Policy on page 567
2. Configuring the Mode for an IKE Policy on page 567
3. Configuring the Preshared Key for an IKE Policy on page 567
4. Associating Proposals with an IKE Policy on page 568

### Configuring the Description for an IKE Policy

To specify a description for an IKE policy, include the **description** statement at the [edit security ike policy *ike-peer-address*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]
description description;
```

### Configuring the Mode for an IKE Policy

IKE policy has two modes: aggressive and main. By default, main mode is enabled. Main mode uses six messages, in three exchanges, to establish the IKE SA. (These three steps are IKE SA negotiation, a Diffie-Hellman exchange, and authentication of the peer.) Main mode also allows a peer to hide its identity.

Aggressive mode also establishes an authenticated IKE SA and keys. However, aggressive mode uses half the number of messages, has less negotiation power, and does not provide identity protection. The peer can use the aggressive or main mode to start IKE negotiation; the remote peer accepts the mode sent by the peer.

To configure IKE policy mode, include the **mode** statement and specify **aggressive** or **main** at the [edit security ike policy *ike-peer-address*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address ]
mode (aggressive | main);
```

### Configuring the Preshared Key for an IKE Policy

IKE policy preshared keys authenticate peers. You must manually configure a preshared key, which must match that of its peer. The preshared key can be an ASCII text (alphanumeric) key or a hexadecimal key.

A local certificate is an alternative to the preshared key. Commit will fail if either pre-shared key or local certificate is not configured.

To configure an IKE policy preshared key, include the **pre-shared-key** statement at the [edit security ike policy *ike-peer-address*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]
pre-shared-key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
```

## Associating Proposals with an IKE Policy

The IKE policy proposal is a list of one or more proposals associated with an IKE policy.

To configure an IKE policy proposal, include the **proposals** statement at the `[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]` hierarchy level and specify one or more proposal names:

```
[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]  
proposals [ proposal-names ];
```

### Example: Configuring an IKE Policy

Define two IKE policies: policy 10.1.1.2 and policy 10.1.1.1. Each policy is associated with proposal-1 and proposal-2.

```
[edit security]  
ike {  
  proposal proposal-1 {  
    authentication-method pre-shared-keys;  
    dh-group group1;  
    authentication-algorithm sha1;  
    encryption-algorithm 3des-cbc;  
    lifetime-seconds 1000;  
  }  
  proposal proposal-2 {  
    authentication-method pre-shared-keys;  
    dh-group group2;  
    authentication-algorithm md5;  
    encryption-algorithm des-cbc;  
    lifetime-seconds 10000;  
  }  
  proposal proposal-3 {  
    authentication-method rsa-signatures;  
    dh-group group2;  
    authentication-algorithm md5;  
    encryption-algorithm des-cbc;  
    lifetime-seconds 10000;  
  }  
  policy 10.1.1.2 {  
    mode main;  
    proposals [ proposal-1 proposal-2 ];  
    pre-shared-key ascii-text example-pre-shared-key;  
  }  
  policy 10.1.1.1 {  
    local-certificate certificate-filename;  
    local-key-pair private-public-key-file;  
    mode aggressive;  
    proposals [ proposal-2 proposal-3 ]  
    pre-shared-key hexadecimal 0102030abcbd;  
  }  
}
```





**NOTE:** Updates to the current IKE proposal and policy configuration are not applied to the current IKE SA; updates are applied to new IKE SAs.

If you want the new updates to take immediate effect, you must clear the existing IKE security associations so that they will be reestablished with the changed configuration. For information about how to clear the current IKE security association, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

## Configuring an IPSec Proposal for an ES PIC

An IPSec proposal lists protocols and algorithms (security services) to be negotiated with the remote IPSec peer.

To configure an IPSec proposal and define its properties, include the following statements at the [edit security ipsec] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec]
proposal ipsec-proposal-name {
  authentication-algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
  description description ;
  encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc);
  lifetime-seconds seconds;
  protocol (ah | esp | bundle);
}
```

Tasks to configure an IPSec proposal for an ES PIC are:

- Configuring the Authentication Algorithm for an IPSec Proposal on page 569
- Configuring the Description for an IPSec Proposal on page 570
- Configuring the Encryption Algorithm for an IPSec Proposal on page 570
- Configuring the Lifetime for an IPSec SA on page 570
- Configuring the Protocol for a Dynamic IPSec SA on page 571

### Configuring the Authentication Algorithm for an IPSec Proposal

To configure an IPSec authentication algorithm, include the `authentication-algorithm` statement at the [edit security ipsec proposal *ipsec-proposal-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec proposal ipsec-proposal-name]
authentication-algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
```

The authentication algorithm can be one of the following:

- **hmac-md5-96**—Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. It produces a 128-bit digest. Only 96 bits are used for authentication.
- **hmac-sha1-96**—Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. It produces a 160-bit digest. Only 96 bits are used for authentication.

## Configuring the Description for an IPSec Proposal

To specify a description for an IPSec proposal, include the **description** statement at the [edit security ipsec proposal *ipsec-proposal-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike policy ipsec-proposal-name]
description description;
```

## Configuring the Encryption Algorithm for an IPSec Proposal

To configure the IPSec encryption algorithm, include the **encryption-algorithm** statement at the [edit security ipsec proposal *ipsec-proposal-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec proposal ipsec-proposal-name ]
encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc);
```

The encryption algorithm can be one of the following:

- **3des-cbc**—Encryption algorithm that has a block size of 24 bytes; its key size is 192 bits long.
- **des-cbc**—Encryption algorithm that has a block size of 8 bytes; its key size is 48 bits long.



**NOTE:** We recommend that you use the triple DES cipher block chaining (3DES-CBC) encryption algorithm.

---

## Configuring the Lifetime for an IPSec SA

The IPSec lifetime option sets the lifetime of an IPSec SA. When the IPSec SA expires, it is replaced by a new SA (and SPI) or is terminated. A new SA has new authentication and encryption keys, and SPI; however, the algorithms may remain the same if the proposal is not changed. If you do not configure a lifetime and a lifetime is not sent by a responder, the lifetime is 28,800 seconds.

To configure the IPSec lifetime, include the **lifetime-seconds** statement and specify the number of seconds (180 through 86,400) at the [edit security ipsec proposal *ipsec-proposal-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec proposal ipsec-proposal-name]
lifetime-seconds seconds;
```



**NOTE:** When a dynamic SA is created, two types of lifetimes are used: hard and soft. The hard lifetime specifies the lifetime of the SA. The soft lifetime, which is derived from the hard lifetime, informs the IPSec key management system that the SA is about to expire. This allows the key management system to negotiate a new SA before the hard lifetime expires. When you specify the lifetime, you specify a hard lifetime.

### Configuring the Protocol for a Dynamic IPSec SA

The **protocol** statement sets the protocol for a dynamic SA. The ESP protocol can support authentication, encryption, or both. The AH protocol is used for strong authentication. AH also authenticates the IP packet. The **bundle** option uses AH authentication and ESP encryption; it does not use ESP authentication because AH provides stronger authentication of IP packets.

To configure the protocol for a dynamic SA, include the **protocol** statement at the [edit security ipsec proposal *ipsec-proposal-name*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec proposal ipsec-proposal-name ] protocol (ah | esp | bundle);
```

### Configuring the IPSec Policy for an ES PIC

An IPSec policy defines a combination of security parameters (IPSec proposals) used during IPSec negotiation. It defines Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) and the proposals needed for the connection. During the IPSec negotiation, IPSec looks for an IPSec proposal that is the same on both peers. The peer that initiates the negotiation sends all its policies to the remote peer, and the remote peer tries to find a match.

A match is made when both policies from the two peers have a proposal that contains the same configured attributes. If the lifetimes are not identical, the shorter lifetime between the two policies (from the host and peer) is used.

You can create multiple, prioritized IPSec proposals at each peer to ensure that at least one proposal will match a remote peer's proposal.

First, you configure one or more IPSec proposals; then you associate these proposals with an IPSec policy. You can prioritize the proposals in the list by listing them in the order in which the IPSec policy uses them (first to last).

To configure an IPSec policy, include the **policy** statement at the [edit security ipsec] hierarchy level, specifying the policy name and one or more proposals you want to associate with this policy:

```
[edit security ipsec]
policy ipsec-policy-name {
  proposals [ proposal-names ];
}
```

1. Configuring Perfect Forward Secrecy on page 572

## Configuring Perfect Forward Secrecy

PFS provides additional security by means of a Diffie-Hellman shared secret value. With PFS, if one key is compromised, previous and subsequent keys are secure because they are not derived from previous keys. This statement is optional.

To configure PFS, include the `perfect-forward-secrecy` statement and specify a Diffie-Hellman group at the `[edit security ipsec policy ipsec-policy-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ipsec policy ipsec-policy-name]
perfect-forward-secrecy {
  keys (group1 | group2);
}
```

The key can be one of the following:

- **group1**—Specifies that IKE use the 768-bit Diffie-Hellman prime modulus group when performing the new Diffie-Hellman exchange.
- **group2**—Specifies that IKE use the 1024-bit Diffie-Hellman prime modulus group when performing the new Diffie-Hellman exchange.

**group2** provides more security than **group1**, but requires more processing time.

## Example: Configuring an IPSec Policy

The following example shows how to configure an IPSEC Policy:

```
[edit security ipsec]
proposal dynamic-1 {
  protocol esp;
  authentication-algorithm hmac-md5-96;
  encryption-algorithm 3des-cbc;
  lifetime-seconds 6000;
}
proposal dynamic-2 {
  protocol esp;
  authentication-algorithm hmac-sha1-96;
  encryption-algorithm 3des-cbc;
  lifetime-seconds 6000;
}
policy dynamic-policy-1 {
  perfect-forward-secrecy {
    keys group1;
  }
  proposals [ dynamic-1 dynamic-2 ];
}
security-association dynamic-sa1 {
  dynamic {
    replay-window-size 64;
    ipsec-policy dynamic-policy-1;
  }
}
```



**NOTE:** Updates to the current IPsec proposal and policy configuration are not applied to the current IPsec SA; updates are applied to new IPsec SAs.

If you want the new updates to take immediate effect, you must clear the existing IPsec security associations so that they will be reestablished with the changed configuration. For information about how to clear the current IPsec security association, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

## Using Digital Certificates for ES and AS PICs

- Complete Configuration Statements for Configuring Digital Certificates for an ES PIC on page 573
- Digital Certificates Overview on page 574
- Obtaining a Certificate from a Certificate Authority for an ES PIC on page 575
- Requesting a CA Digital Certificate for an ES PIC on an M-series or T-series Routing Platform on page 575
- Example: Requesting a CA Digital Certificate on page 576
- Generating a Private and Public Key Pair for Digital Certificates for an ES PIC on page 576
- Configuring Digital Certificates for an ES PIC on page 576
- Configuring an IKE Policy for Digital Certificates for an ES PIC on page 581
- Obtaining a Signed Certificate from the CA for an ES PIC on page 583
- Associating the Configured Security Association with a Logical Interface on page 584
- Configuring Digital Certificates for Adaptive Services Interfaces on page 584

### Complete Configuration Statements for Configuring Digital Certificates for an ES PIC

To define the digital certificate configuration for an encryption service interface, include the following statements at the [edit security certificates] and [edit security ike] hierarchy levels:

```
[edit security]
certificates {
  cache-size bytes;
  cache-timeout-negative seconds;
  certification-authority ca-profile-name {
    ca-name ca-identity;
    crl filename;
    encoding (binary | pem);
    enrollment-url url-name;
    file certificate-filename;
    ldap-url url-name;
  }
  enrollment-retry attempts;
  local certificate-filename {
```

```

        certificate-key-string;
        load-key-file key-file-name;
    }
    maximum-certificates number;
    path-length certificate-path-length;
}
ike {
    policy ike-peer-address {
        description policy;
        encoding (binary | pem);
        identity identity-name;
        local-certificate certificate-filename;
        local-key-pair private-public-key-file;
        mode (aggressive | main);
        pre-shared-key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
        proposals [ proposal-names ];
    }
}

```

The statements for configuring digital certificates differ for the AS and MultiServices PICs and the ES PIC.

For information about how to configure the **description** and **mode** statements, see “Configuring the Description for an IKE Policy” on page 567 and “Configuring the Mode for an IKE Policy” on page 567. For information about how to configure the IKE proposal, see “Associating Proposals with an IKE Policy” on page 568



**NOTE:** For digital certificates, the JUNOS software supports only VeriSign CAs for the ES PIC.

---

## Digital Certificates Overview

Digital certificates provide a way of authenticating users through a trusted third party called a certificate authority (CA). The CA validates the identity of a certificate holder and “signs” the certificate to attest that it has not been forged or altered.

A certificate includes the following information:

- The distinguished name (DN) of the owner. A DN is a unique identifier and consists of a fully qualified name including not only the common name (CN) of the owner, the owner’s organization, and other distinguishing information.
- The public key of the owner.
- The date on which the certificate was issued.
- The date on which the certificate expires.
- The distinguished name of the issuing CA.
- The digital signature of the issuing CA.

The additional information in a certificate allows recipients to decide whether to accept the certificate. The recipient can determine if the certificate is still valid based

on the expiration date. The recipient can check whether the CA is trusted by the site based on the issuing CA.

With a certificate, a CA takes the owner's public key, signs that public key with the its own private key, and returns this to the owner as a certificate. The recipient can extract the certificate (containing the CA's signature) with the owner's public key. By using the CA's public key and the CA's signature on the extracted certificate, the recipient can validate the CA's signature and owner of the certificate.

When you use digital certificates, your first send in a request to obtain a certificate from your CA. You then configure digital certificates and a digital certificate IKE policy. Finally, you obtain a digitally signed certificate from a CA.



**NOTE:** Certificates without an alternate subject name are not appropriate for IPSec services.

---

### ***Obtaining a Certificate from a Certificate Authority for an ES PIC***

Certificate authorities manage certificate requests and issue certificates to participating IPSec network devices. When you create a certificate request, you need to provide the information about the owner of the certificate. The required information and its format vary across certificate authorities.

Certificates use names in the X.500 format, a directory access protocol that provides both read and update access. The entire name is called a DN (distinguished name). It consists of a set of components, which often includes a CN (common name), an organization (O), an organization unit (OU), a country (C), a locality (L), and so on.



**NOTE:** For the dynamic registration of digital certificates, the JUNOS software supports only the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP).

---

### ***Requesting a CA Digital Certificate for an ES PIC on an M-series or T-series Routing Platform***

For an encryption interface on an M-series or T-series routing platform, issue the following command to obtain a public key certificate from a CA. The results are saved in the specified file in the `/var/etc/ikecert` directory. The CA public key verifies certificates from remote peers.

```
user@host> request security certificate enroll filename filename ca-name ca-name
parameters parameters
```

### Example: Requesting a CA Digital Certificate

Specify a URL to the SCEP server and the name of the certification authority whose certificate you want: **mycompany.com**. **filename 1** is name of the file that stores the result. The output, "Received CA certificate:" provides the signature for the certificate, which allows you to verify (offline) that the certificate is genuine.

```
user@host> request security certificate enroll filename ca_verisign ca-file verisign
ca-name xyzcompany url
http://pilotsiteipsec.verisign.com/cgi-bin/pkclient.exe
URL: http://pilotsiteipsec.verisign.com/cgi-bin/pkclient.exe CA name: juniper.net
CA file: verisign Encoding: binary
Certificate enrollment has started. To see the certificate enrollment status, check the
key management process (kmd) log file at /var/log/kmd. <-----
```



**NOTE:** Each router is initially manually enrolled with a certificate authority.

---

### Generating a Private and Public Key Pair for Digital Certificates for an ES PIC

To generate a private and public key, issue the following command:

```
user@host> request security key-pair name size key-size type ( rsa | dsa )
```

*name* specifies the filename in which to store the public and private keys.

*key-size* can be 512, 1024, 1596, or 2048 bytes. The default key size is 1024 bytes.

*type* can be *rsa* or *dsa*. The default is RSA.



**NOTE:** When you use SCEP, the JUNOS software only supports RSA.

---

#### Example: Generating a Key Pair

Generate a private and public key:

```
user@host> request security key-pair batt
Generated key pair, key size 1024, file batt Algorithm RSA
```

### Configuring Digital Certificates for an ES PIC

Digital certificates provide a way of authenticating users through a trusted third party called a certificate authority (CA). The CA validates the identity of a certificate holder and “signs” the certificate to attest that it has not been forged or altered.

To define the digital certificate configuration for an encryption service interface, include the following statements at the [edit security certificates] and [edit security ike] hierarchy levels:

```
[edit security]
certificates {
  cache-size bytes;
```



```

cache-timeout-negative seconds;
certification-authority ca-profile-name {
    ca-name ca-identity;
    crl filename;
    encoding (binary | pem);
    enrollment-url url-name;
    file certificate-filename;
    ldap-url url-name;
}
enrollment-retry attempts ;
local certificate-filename {
    certificate-key-string;
    load-key-file key-file-name;
}
maximum-certificates number;
path-length certificate-path-length;
}
ike {
    policy ike-peer-address {
        description policy;
        encoding (binary | pem);
        identity identity-name;
        local-certificate certificate-filename;
        local-key-pair private-public-key-file;
        mode (aggressive | main);
        pre-shared-key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
        proposals [ proposal-names ];
    }
}

```

Tasks to configure digital certificates for ES PICs are:

- Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties for an ES PIC on page 577
- Configuring the Cache Size on page 579
- Configuring the Negative Cache on page 580
- Configuring the Number of Enrollment Retries on page 580
- Configuring the Maximum Number of Peer Certificates on page 580
- Configuring the Path Length for the Certificate Hierarchy on page 581

### Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties for an ES PIC

A CA is a trusted third-party organization that creates, enrolls, validates, and revokes digital certificates.

To configure a certificate authority and its properties for an ES PIC, include the following statements at the [edit security certificates] hierarchy level:

```

[edit security certificates]
certification-authority ca-profile-name {
    ca-name ca-identity;
    crl filename;
    encoding (binary | pem);
    enrollment-url url-name;
}

```

```

    file certificate-filename;
    ldap-url url-name;
}

```

*ca-profile-name* is the CA profile name.

Tasks for configuring the CA properties are:

1. Specifying the Certificate Authority Name on page 578
2. Configuring the Certificate Revocation List on page 578
3. Configuring the Type of Encoding Your CA Supports on page 578
4. Specifying an Enrollment URL on page 579
5. Specifying a File to Read the Digital Certificate on page 579
6. Specifying an LDAP URL on page 579

### **Specifying the Certificate Authority Name**

If you are enrolling with a CA using simple certificate enrollment protocols (SCEP), you need to specify the CA name (CA identity) that is used in the certificate request, in addition to the URL for the SCEP server.

To specify the name of the CA identity, include the **ca-name** statement at the [edit security certificates certification-authority *ca-profile-name*] hierarchy level:

```

[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]
  ca-name ca-identity;

```

*ca-identity* specifies the CA identity to use in the certificate request. It is typically the CA domain name.

### **Configuring the Certificate Revocation List**

A certificate revocation list (CRL) contains a list of digital certificates that have been canceled before their expiration date. When a participating peer uses a digital certificate, it checks the certificate signature and validity. It also acquires the most recently issued CRL and checks that the certificate serial number is not on that CRL.

To configure the CA certificate revocation list, include the **crl** statement and specify the file from which to read the CRL at the [edit security certificates certification-authority *ca-profile-name*] hierarchy level:

```

[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]
  crl filename;

```

### **Configuring the Type of Encoding Your CA Supports**

By default, encoding is set to binary. Encoding specifies the file format used for the **local-certificate** and **local-key-pair** statements. By default, the binary (distinguished encoding rules) format is enabled. Privacy-enhanced mail (PEM) is an ASCII base 64 encoded format. Check with your CA to determine which file formats it supports.

To configure the file format that your CA supports, include the `encoding` statement and specify a binary or PEM format at the `[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]
encoding (binary | pem);
```

### **Specifying an Enrollment URL**

You specify the CA location where your router should send SCEP-based certificate enrollment requests. To specify the CA location by naming the CA URL, include the `enrollment-url` statement at the `[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]
enrollment-url url-name;
```

*url-name* is the CA location. The format is `http://CA_name`, where *CA\_name* is the CA host DNS name or IP address.

### **Specifying a File to Read the Digital Certificate**

To specify the file from which to read the digital certificate, include the `file` statement and specify the certificate filename at the `[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]
file certificate-filename;
```

### **Specifying an LDAP URL**

If your CA stores its current CRL at its Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, you can optionally check your CA CRL list before using a digital certificate. If the digital certificate appears on the CA CRL, your router cannot use it. To access your CA CRL, include the `ldap-url` statement at the `[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates certification-authority ca-profile-name]
ldap-url url-name;
```

*url-name* is the certification authority LDAP server name. The format is `ldap://server-name`, where *server-name* is the CA host DNS name or IP address.

### **Configuring the Cache Size**

By default, the cache size is 2 megabytes (MB). To configure total cache size for digital certificates, include the `cache-size` statement at the `[edit security certificates]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates]
cache-size bytes;
```

*bytes* is the cache size for digital certificates. The range can be from 64 through 4,294,967,295 bytes.



**NOTE:** We recommend that you limit your cache size to 4 MB.

---

### Configuring the Negative Cache

Negative caching stores negative results and reduces the response time for negative answers. It also reduces the number of messages that are sent to the remote server. Maintaining a negative cache state allows the system to quickly return a failure condition when a lookup attempt is retried. Without a negative cache state, a retry would require waiting for the remote server to fail to respond, even though the system already “ knows” that remote server is not responding.

By default, the negative cache is 20 seconds. To configure the negative cache, include the `cache-timeout-negative` statement at the `[edit security certificates]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates]
  cache-timeout-negative seconds;
```

*seconds* is the amount of time for which a failed CA or router certificate is present in the negative cache. While searching for certificates with a matching CA identity (domain name for certificates or CA domain name and serial for CRLs), the negative cache is searched first. If an entry is found in the negative cache, the search fails immediately.



**NOTE:** Configuring a large negative cache value can make you susceptible to a denial-of-service (DoS) attack.

---

### Configuring the Number of Enrollment Retries

By default, the number of enrollment retries is set to 0, an infinite number of retries. To specify how many times a router will resend a certificate request, include the `enrollment-retry` statement at the `[edit security certificates]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates]
  enrollment-retry attempts;
```

*attempts* is the number of enrollment retries (0 through 100).

### Configuring the Maximum Number of Peer Certificates

By default, the maximum number of peer certificates to be cached is 1024. To configure the maximum number of peer certificates to be cached, include the `maximum-certificates` statement at the `[edit security certificates]` hierarchy statement level:

```
[edit security certificates]
  maximum-certificates number;
```

*number* is the maximum number of peer certificates to be cached. The range is from 64 through 4,294,967,295 peer certificates.

## Configuring the Path Length for the Certificate Hierarchy

Certification authorities can issue certificates to other CAs. This creates a tree-like certification hierarchy. The highest trusted CA in the hierarchy is called the *trust anchor*. Sometimes the trust anchor is the root CA, which is usually signed by itself. In the hierarchy, every certificate is signed by the CA immediately above it. An exception is the root CA certificate, which is usually signed by the root CA itself. In general, a chain of multiple certificates may be needed, comprising a certificate of the public key owner (the end entity) signed by one CA, and zero or more additional certificates of CAs signed by other CAs. Such chains, called certification paths, are required because a public key user is only initialized with a limited number of assured CA public keys.

Path length refers to a path of certificates from one certificate to another certificate, based on the relationship of a CA and its “children.” When you configure the **path length** statement, you specify the maximum depth of the hierarchy to validate a certificate from the trusted root CA certificate to the certificate in question. For more information about the certificate hierarchy, see RFC 3280, *Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate and Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Profile*.

By default, the maximum certificate path length is set to 15. The root anchor is 1.

To configure path length, include the **path-length** statement at the [edit security certificates] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates]
path-length certificate-path-length;
```

*certificate-path-length* is the maximum number certificates for the certificate path length. The range is from 2 through 15 certificates.

## Configuring an IKE Policy for Digital Certificates for an ES PIC

An IKE policy for digital certificates defines a combination of security parameters (IKE proposals) to be used during IKE negotiation. It defines a peer address and the proposals needed for that connection. During the IKE negotiation, IKE looks for an IKE policy that is the same on both peers. The peer that initiates the negotiation sends all its policies to the remote peer, and the remote peer tries to find a match.

To configure an IKE policy for digital certificates for an ES PIC, include the following statements at the [edit security ike policy *ike-peer-address*] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike]
policy ike-peer-address{
  encoding (binary | pem);
  identity identity-name;
  local-certificate certificate-filename;
  local-key-pair private-public-key-file;
}
```

Tasks for configuring an IKE policy for Digital Certificates are:

1. Configuring the Type of Encoding Your CA Supports on page 582
2. Configuring the Identity to Define the Remote Certificate Name on page 582
3. Specifying the Certificate Filename on page 582
4. Specifying the Private and Public Key File on page 582

### Configuring the Type of Encoding Your CA Supports

By default, the encoding is set to binary. Encoding specifies the file format used for the `local-certificate` and `local-key-pair` statements. By default, the binary (distinguished encoding rules) format is enabled. PEM is an ASCII base 64 encoded format. Check with your CA to determine which file formats it supports.

To configure the file format that your CA supports, include the `encoding` statement and specify a binary or PEM format at the `[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address ]
encoding (binary | pem);
```

### Configuring the Identity to Define the Remote Certificate Name

To define the remote certificate name, include the `identity` statement at the `[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]
identity identity-name;
```

*identity-name* defines the identity of the remote certificate name if the identity cannot be learned through IKE (ID payload or IP address).

### Specifying the Certificate Filename

To configure the certificate filename from which to read the local certificate, include the `local-certificate` statement at the `[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]
local-certificate certificate-filename;
```

*certificate-filename* specifies the file from which to read the local certificate.

### Specifying the Private and Public Key File

To specify the filename from which to read the public and private key, include the `local-key-pair` statement at the `[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ike policy ike-peer-address ]
local-key-pair private-public-key-file;
```

*private-public-key-file* specifies the file from which to read the pair key.

## Obtaining a Signed Certificate from the CA for an ES PIC

To obtain signed certificate from the CA, issue the following command:

```
user@host> request security certificate enroll filename filename subject c=us,o=x
alternative-subject certificate-ip-address certification-authority certificate-authority
key-filekey-file-name domain-name domain-name
```

The results are saved in a specified file to the /var/etc/ikecert directory.

The following example shows how to obtain a CA signed certificate by referencing the configured *certification-authority* statement *local*. This statement is referenced by the *request security certificate enroll filename m subject c=us,o=x alternative subject 1.1.1.1 certification-authority* command.

```
[edit]
security {
  certificates {
    certification-authority local {
      ca-name xyz.company.com;
      file l;
      enrollment-url "http://www.xyzcompany.com";
    }
  }
}
```

To obtain a signed certificate from the CA, issue the following command:

```
user@host> request security certificate enroll filename l subject c=uk,o=london
alternative-subject 10.50.1.4 certification-authority verisign key-file host-1.prv
domain-name host.xyzcompany.com
CA name: xyz.company.com CA file: ca_verisign
local pub/private key pair: host.prv
subject: c=uk,o=london domain name: host.juniper.net
alternative subject: 10.50.1.4
Encoding: binary
Certificate enrollment has started. To see the certificate enrollment status, check the
key management process (kmd) log file at /var/log/kmd. <————
```

For information about how to use the operational mode commands to obtain a signed certificate, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

Another way to obtain a signed certificate from the CA is to reference the configured statements such as the URL, CA name, and CA certificate file by means of the *certification-authority* statement:

```
user@host> request security certificate enroll filename m subject c=us ,o=x
alternative-subject 1.1.1.1 certification-authority local key-file y domain-name
abc.company.com
```

## Associating the Configured Security Association with a Logical Interface

Configuring the ES PIC associates the configured SA with a logical interface. This configuration defines the tunnel itself (logical subunit, tunnel addresses, maximum transmission unit [MTU], optional interface addresses, and the name of the SA to apply to traffic).

The addresses configured as the tunnel source and destination are the addresses in the outer IP header of the tunnel.



**NOTE:** The tunnel source address must be configured locally on the router, and the tunnel destination address must be a valid address for the security gateway terminating the tunnel.

The M5, M10, M20, and M40 routers support the ES PIC.

The SA must be a valid tunnel-mode SA. The interface address and destination address listed are optional. The destination address allows the user to configure a static route to encrypt traffic. If a static route uses that destination address as the next hop, traffic is forwarded through the portion of the tunnel in which encryption occurs.

The following example shows how to configure an IPSec tunnel as a logical interface on the ES PIC. The logical interface specifies the tunnel through which the encrypted traffic travels. The `ipsec-sa` statement associates the security profile with the interface.

```
[edit interfaces]
es-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    tunnel {
      source tunnel 10.5.5.5; # tunnel source address
      destination 10.6.6.6; # tunnel destination address
    }
    family inet {
      ipsec-sa ipsec-sa; # name of security association to apply to packet
      address 10.1.1.8/32 { # local interface address inside local VPN
        destination 10.2.2.254; # destination address inside remote VPN
      }
    }
  }
}
```

## Configuring Digital Certificates for Adaptive Services Interfaces

A digital certificate implementation uses the public key infrastructure (PKI), which requires you to generate a key pair consisting of a public key and a private key. The keys are created with a random number generator and are used to encrypt and decrypt data. In networks that do not use digital certificates, an IPSec-enabled device encrypts data with the private key and IPSec peers decrypt the data with the public key.



With digital certificates, the key sharing process requires an additional level of complexity. First, you and your IPSec peers request a certificate authority (CA) to send you a CA certificate that contains the public key of the CA. Next you request the CA to enroll a local digital certificate that contains the public key and some additional information. When the CA processes your request, it signs your local certificate with the private key of the CA. Then you install the CA certificate and the local certificate in your routing platform and load the CA in the remote devices before you can establish IPSec tunnels with your peers.



**NOTE:** For digital certificates, the JUNOS software supports VeriSign, Entrust, Cisco Systems, and Microsoft Windows CAs for the AS and MultiServices PICs.

To define digital certificates configuration for J-series Services Routers and Adaptive Services (AS) and MultiServices PICs installed on M-series and T-series routing platforms, include the following statements at the [edit security pki] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security]
pki {
  ca-profile ca-profile-name {
    ca-identity ca-identity;
    enrollment {
      url-name;
      retry number-of-enrollment-attempts;
      retry-interval seconds;
    }
    revocation-check {
      disable;
      crl {
        disable on-download-failure;
        refresh-interval number-of-hours;
        url {
          url-name;
          password;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The following tasks enable you to implement digital certificates on J-series Services Routers and AS and MultiServices PICs installed on M-series and T-series routing platforms:

1. Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties on page 586
2. Configuring the Certificate Revocation List on page 587
3. Managing Digital Certificates on page 589
4. Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA on page 591

## Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties

A CA is a trusted third-party organization that creates, enrolls, validates, and revokes digital certificates.

To configure a certificate authority and its properties for the AS and MultiServices PICs, include the following statements at the [edit security pki] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki]
ca-profile ca-profile-name {
  ca-identity ca-identity;
  enrollment {
    url url-name;
    retry number-of-attempts;
    retry-interval seconds;
  }
}
```

Tasks for configuring the Certificate Authority properties are:

1. Specifying the CA Profile Name on page 586
2. Specifying an Enrollment URL on page 586
3. Specifying the Enrollment Properties on page 587

### Specifying the CA Profile Name

The CA profile contains the name and URL of the CA or RA, as well as some retry-timer settings. CA certificates issued by Entrust, VeriSign, Cisco Systems, and Microsoft are compatible with the J-series Services Routers and AS and MultiServices PICs installed in the M-series and T-series routing platforms.

To specify the CA profile name, include the **ca-profile** statement at the [edit security pki] security level:

```
[edit security pki]
ca-profile ca-profile-name;
```

You also need to specify the name of the CA identity used in the certificate request. This name is typically the domain name. To specify the name of the CA identity, include the **ca-identity** statement at the [edit security pki ca-profile *ca-profile-name*] level:

```
[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name]
ca-identity ca-identity;
```

### Specifying an Enrollment URL

You specify the CA location where your router should send the SCEP-based certificate enrollment requests. To specify the CA location by naming the CA URL, include the **url** statement at the [edit security pki enrollment] hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name enrollment]
url url-name;
```

*url-name* is the CA location. The format is `http://CA_name`, where *CA\_name* is the CA host DNS name or IP address.

### **Specifying the Enrollment Properties**

You can specify the number of times a router will resend a certificate request and the amount of time, in seconds, the router should wait between enrollment attempts.

By default, the number of enrollment retries is set to 0, an infinite number of retries. To specify how many times a router will resend a certificate request, include the `retry number-of-attempts` statement at the `[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name enrollment]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name enrollment]
retry number-of-attempts;
```

The range for *number-of-attempts* is from 0 through 100.

To specify the amount of time, in seconds that a router should wait between enrollment attempts, include the `retry-interval seconds` statement at the `[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name enrollment]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name enrollment]
retry-interval seconds;
```

The range for *seconds* is from 0 through 3600.

### **Configuring the Certificate Revocation List**

Tasks to configure the certificate revocation list are:

1. Specifying an LDAP URL on page 587
2. Configuring the Interval Between CRL Updates on page 588
3. Overriding Certificate Verification if CRL Download Fails on page 588

### **Specifying an LDAP URL**

You can specify the URL for the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server where your CA stores its current CRL. If the CA includes the Certificate Distribution Point (CDP) in the digital certificate, you do not need to specify a URL for the LDAP server. The CDP is a field within the certificate that contains information about how to retrieve the CRL for the certificate. The router uses this information to download the CRL automatically.

Configure an LDAP URL if you want to use a different CDP from the one specified in the certificate. Any LDAP URL you configure takes precedence over the CDP included in the certificate.

You can configure up to three URLs for each CA profile.

If the LDAP server requires a password to access the CRL, you need to include the `password` statement.

To configure the routing platform to retrieve the CRL from the LDAP server, include the `url` statement and specify the URL name at the `[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl]
url {
    url-name;
}
```

*url-name* is the certificate authority LDAP server name. The format is `ldap://server-name`, where *server-name* is the CA host DNS name or IP address.

To specify to use a password to access the CRL, include the `password` statement at the `[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl url]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl url]
password password;
```

*password* is the secret password that the LDAP server requires for access.

### **Configuring the Interval Between CRL Updates**

By default, the time interval between CRL updates is 24 hours. To configure the amount of time between CRL updates, include the `refresh-interval` statement at the `[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl]
refresh-interval number-of-hours;
```

The range for number of hours is from 0 through 8784.

### **Overriding Certificate Verification if CRL Download Fails**

By default, if the router either cannot access the LDAP URL or retrieve a valid certificate revocation list, certificate verification fails and the IPSec tunnel is not established. To override this behavior and permit the authentication of the IPSec peer when the CRL is not downloaded, include the `disable on-download-failure` statement at the `[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl]
disable on-download-failure;
```

## Managing Digital Certificates

After you configure the CA profile, you can request a CA certificate from the trusted CA. Next, you must generate a public/private key pair. When the key pair is available, you can generate a local certificate either online or manually.

Tasks to manage Digital Certificates are:

1. Requesting a CA Digital Certificate for AS and MultiServices PICs installed on M-series and T-series Routing Platforms on page 589
2. Generating a Public/Private Key Pair on page 589
3. Generating and Enrolling a Local Digital Certificate on page 590

### **Requesting a CA Digital Certificate for AS and MultiServices PICs installed on M-series and T-series Routing Platforms**

For J-series Services Routers and AS and MultiServices PICs installed on M-series and T-series routing platforms, issue the following command to obtain a digital certificate from a CA. Specify a configured *ca-profile-name* to request a CA certificate from the trusted CA.

```
user@host>request security pki ca-certificate enroll ca-profile ca-profile-name
```

For information about how to configure a CA profile see, “Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties” on page 586.

In this example, the certificate is enrolled online and installed into the routing platform automatically.

```
user@host> request security pki ca-certificate enroll ca-profile entrust
```

Received following certificates:

Certificate: C=us, O=juniper

Fingerprint:00:8e:6f:58:dd:68:bf:25:0a:e3:f9:17:70:d6:61:f3:53:a7:79:10

Certificate: C=us, O=juniper, CN=First Officer

Fingerprint:bc:78:87:9b:a7:91:13:20:71:db:ac:b5:56:71:42:ad:1a:b6:46:17

Certificate: C=us, O=juniper, CN=First Officer

Fingerprint:46:71:15:34:f0:a6:41:76:65:81:33:4f:68:47:c4:df:78:b8:e3:3f

Do you want to load the above CA certificate ? [yes,no] (no) yes



**NOTE:** If you obtain the CA certificate directly from the CA (for example, as an e-mail attachment or Web site download), you can install it with the `request security pki ca-certificate load` command. For more information, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

### **Generating a Public/Private Key Pair**

After obtaining a certificate for an AS PIC or MultiServices PIC, you must generate a public-private key before you can generate a local certificate. The public key is included in the local digital certificate and the private key is used to decrypt data

received from peers. To generate a public-private key pair, issue the **request security pki generate-key-pair certificate-id *certificate-id-name*** command.

The following example shows how to generate a public-private key for an AS PIC or MultiServices PIC:

```
user@host>request security pki generate-key-pair certificate-id local-entrust2
Generated key pair local-entrust2, key size 1024 bits
```

### **Generating and Enrolling a Local Digital Certificate**

You can generate and enroll local digital certificates either online or manually. To generate and enroll a local certificate online by using the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) for an AS PIC or MultiServices PIC, issue the **request security pki local-certificate enroll** command. To generate a local certificate request manually in the PKCS-10 format, issue the **request security pki generate-certificate-request** command.

If you create the local certificate request manually, you must also load the certificate manually. To manually install a certificate in your routing platform, issue the **request security pki local-certificate load** command.

The following example shows how to generate a local certificate request manually and send it to the CA for processing:

```
user@host> request security pki generate-certificate-request certificate-id
local-entrust2 domain-name router2.juniper.net filename entrust-req2
subject cn=router2.juniper.net
```

```
Generated certificate request
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBoTCCAQoCAQAwGjEYMBYGA1UEAxMPdHAXLmp1bm1wZXIubmVOMIGfMAOGCSqG
SIb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQCiUFk1Qws1Ud+AqN5DDxRs2kVyKEhh9qoVFnz+
Hz4c9v3B8E1wTJ1kmIt2cB3yiFB6zePd+6WYpf57Crwre7YqPkIXM31F6z3YjX
H+1BPNbCxNWYvyrnSyVYDbFj8o0Xyqog8ACDfVL2JBWrPNBYy7imq/K9soDBbAs6
5hZqqwIDAQABoEcwRQYJKoZIhvcNAQkOMTgwNjA0BgNVHQ8BAf8EBAMCB4AwJAYD
VR0RAQH/BBowGIIWdHAXLmVuZ2xhYi5qdW5pcGVyLm5ldDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQQF
AA0BgQBc2rq1v5S0QXH7LCb/FdqAL8ZM6GoaN5d6cGwq4bB6a7UQFgtH406gQ3G
3iH0Zfz4xMIBpJYuGd1dkqgvcDoH3AgTsLkfn7Wi3x5H2qeQVs9bvL4P5nvEZLND
EIMUHwteo1ZCiZ70f09Fer9cXWHSQs1UtXtgPqQJy2xIeImLgw==
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
Fingerprint:
0d:90:b8:d2:56:74:fc:84:59:62:b9:78:71:9c:e4:9c:54:ba:16:97 (sha1)
1b:08:d4:f7:90:f1:c4:39:08:c9:de:76:00:86:62:b8 (md5)
```

The trusted CA digitally signs the local certificate and returns it to you. Copy the certificate file into the routing platform and load the certificate:

```
user@host> request security pki local-certificate load filename /tmp/router2-cert
certificate-id local-entrust2
Local certificate local-entrust2 loaded successfully
```



**NOTE:** The name of the file sent to you by the CA might not match the name of the certificate identifier. However, the **certificate-id** name must always match the name of the key pair you generated for the routing platform.

After the local and CA certificates have been loaded, you can reference them in your IPsec configuration. Using default values in the AS and MultiServices PICs, you do not need to configure an IPsec proposal or an IPsec policy. However, you must configure an IKE proposal that specifies the use of digital certificates, reference the IKE proposal and locate the certificate in an IKE policy, and apply the CA profile to the service set.

### Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA

Use the **auto-re-enrollment** statement to configure automatic reenrollment of a specified existing router certificate before its existing expiration date. This function automatically reenrolls the router certificate. The reenrollment process requests the certificate authority (CA) to issue a new router certificate with a new expiration date. The date of auto-reenrollment is determined by the following parameters:

- **re-enroll-trigger-time**—The percentage of the difference between the router certificate start date/time (when the certificate was generated) and the validity period; used to specify how long auto-reenrollment should be initiated before expiration.
- **validity-period**—The number of days after issuance when the router certificate will expire, as set when a certificate is generated.



**NOTE:** By default, this feature is not enabled unless configured explicitly. This means that a certificate that does not have auto-reenrollment configured will expire on its normal expiration date.

The **ca-profile** statement specifies which CA will be contacted to reenroll the expiring certificate. This is the CA that issued the original router certificate.

The **challenge-password** statement provides the issuing CA with the router certificate's password, as set by the administrator and normally obtained from the SCEP enrollment Web page of the CA. The password is 16 characters in length.

Optionally, the router certificate key pair can be regenerated by using the **re-generate-keypair** statement.

To configure the **auto-re-enrollment** statement and its properties, include the following statements at the **[edit security pki]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki]
auto-re-enrollment {
  certificate-id {
    ca-profile ca-profile-name;
    challenge-password password;
```

```

        re-enroll-trigger-time percentage;
        re-generate-keypair;
        validity-period days;
    }
}

```

*percentage* is the percentage for the reenroll trigger time. The range can be from 1 through 99 percent.

*days* is the number of days for the validity period. The range can be from 1 through 4095.

Tasks to configure automatic re-enrollment of certificates are:

1. Specify the Certificate ID on page 592
2. Specify the CA Profile on page 592
3. Specify the Challenge Password on page 592
4. Specify the Reenroll Trigger Time on page 593
5. Specify the Regenerate Key Pair on page 593
6. Specify the Validity Period on page 593

### **Specify the Certificate ID**

Use the `certificate-id` statement to specify the name of the router certificate to configure for auto-reenrollment. To specify the certificate ID, include the statement at the `[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment]
certificate-id certificate-name;

```

### **Specify the CA Profile**

Use the `ca-profile` statement to specify the name of the CA profile from the router certificate previously specified by certificate ID. To specify the CA profile, include the statement at the `[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]` hierarchy level:

```

[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]
ca-profile ca-profile-name;

```



**NOTE:** The referenced `ca-profile` must have an enrollment URL configured at the `[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name enrollment url]` hierarchy level.

---

### **Specify the Challenge Password**

The challenge password is used by the CA specified by the PKI certificate ID for reenrollment and revocation. To specify the challenge password, include the following statement at the `[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]` hierarchy level:



```
[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]
challenge-password password;
```

### **Specify the Reenroll Trigger Time**

Use the `re-enroll-trigger-time` statement to set the percentage of the validity period before expiration at which reenrollment occurs. To specify the reenroll trigger time, include the following statement at the `[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]
re-enroll-trigger-time percentage;
```

*percentage* is the percentage for the reenroll trigger time. The range can be from 1 through 99 percent.

### **Specify the Regenerate Key Pair**

When a regenerate key pair is configured, a new key pair is generated during reenrollment. On successful reenrollment, a new key pair and new certificate replace the old certificate and key pair. To generate a new key pair, include the following statement at the `[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]
re-generate-keypair;
```

### **Specify the Validity Period**

The `validity-period` statement specifies the router certificate validity period, in number of days, that the specified router certificate remains valid. To specify the validity period, include the statement at the `[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id certificate-name]
validity-period days;
```

*days* is the number of days for the validity period. The range can be from 1 through 4095.

## **Configuring IPSec Tunnel Traffic**

---

This section covers the following topics:

- IPSec Tunnel Traffic Configuration Overview on page 594
- Example: Configuring an Outbound Traffic Filter on page 595
- Example: Applying an Outbound Traffic Filter on page 596
- Example: Configuring an Inbound Traffic Filter for Policy Check on page 596
- Example: Applying an Inbound Traffic Filter to an ES PIC for Policy Check on page 597

## IPSec Tunnel Traffic Configuration Overview

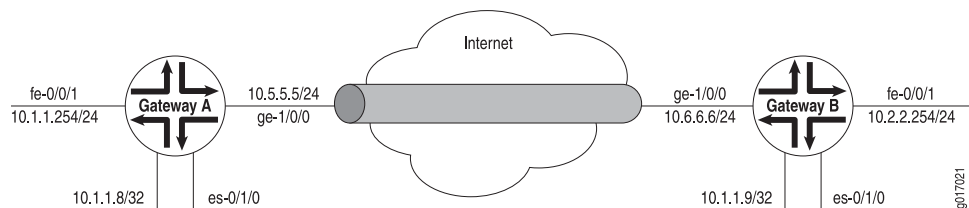
Traffic configuration defines the traffic that must flow through the IPSec tunnel. You configure outbound and inbound firewall filters, which identify and direct traffic to be encrypted and confirm that decrypted traffic parameters match those defined for the given tunnel. The outbound filter is applied to the LAN or WAN interface for the incoming traffic you want to encrypt off of that LAN or WAN. The inbound filter is applied to the ES PIC to check the policy for traffic coming in from the remote host. Because of the complexity of configuring a router to forward packets, no automatic checking is done to ensure that the configuration is correct. Make sure that you configure the router very carefully.



**NOTE:** The valid firewall filters statements for IPSec are destination-port, source-port, protocol, destination-address, and source-address.

In Figure 8 on page 594, Gateway A protects the network 10.1.1.0/24, and Gateway B protects the network 10.2.2.0/24. The gateways are connected by an IPSec tunnel.

**Figure 8: Example: IPSec Tunnel Connecting Security Gateways**



The SA and ES interface for security Gateway A are configured as follows:

```
[edit security ipsec]
security-association manual-sa1 {
  manual {
    direction bidirectional {
      protocol esp;
      spi 2312;
      authentication {
        algorithm hmac-md5-96;
        key ascii-text 1234123412341234;
      }
      encryption {
        algorithm 3des-cbc;
        key ascii-text 123456789009876543211234;
      }
    }
  }
}
[edit interfaces es-0/1/0]
unit 0 {
  tunnel {
    source 10.5.5.5;
```

```

        destination 10.6.6.6;
    }
    family inet {
        ipsec-sa manual-sa1;
        address 10.1.1.8/32 {
            destination 10.1.1.9;
        }
    }
}

```

The SA and ES interface for security Gateway B are configured as follows:

```

[edit security ipsec]
security-association manual-sa1 {
    manual {
        direction bidirectional {
            protocol esp;
            spi 2312;
            authentication {
                algorithm hmac-md5-96;
                key ascii-text 1234123412341234;
            }
            encryption {
                algorithm 3des-cbc;
                key ascii-text 123456789009876543211234;
            }
        }
    }
}
[edit interfaces es-0/1/0]
unit 0 {
    tunnel {
        source 10.6.6.6;
        destination 10.5.5.5;
    }
    family inet {
        ipsec-sa manual-sa1;
        address 10.1.1.9/32 {
            destination 10.1.1.8;
        }
    }
}

```

### **Example: Configuring an Outbound Traffic Filter**

Firewall filters for outbound traffic direct the traffic through the desired IPSec tunnel and ensure that the tunneled traffic goes out the appropriate interface (see Figure 8 on page 594). Here, an outbound firewall filter is created on security Gateway A; it identifies the traffic to be encrypted and adds it to the input side of the interface that carries the internal VPN traffic:

```

[edit firewall]
filter ipsec-encrypt-policy-filter {
    term term1 {
        from {

```

```

        source-address { # local network
            10.1.1.0/24;
        }
        destination-address { # remote network
            10.2.2.0/24;
        }
    }
    then ipsec-sa manual-sa1; # apply SA name to packet
    term default {
        then accept;
    }
}

```



**NOTE:** The source address, port, and protocol on the outbound traffic filter must match the destination address, port, and protocol on the inbound traffic filter. The destination address, port, and protocol on the outbound traffic filter must match the source address, port, and protocol on the inbound traffic filter.

### Example: Applying an Outbound Traffic Filter

After you have configured the outbound firewall filter, you apply it:

```

[edit interfaces]
fe-0/0/1 {
    unit 0 {
        family inet {
            filter {
                input ipsec-encrypt-policy-filter;
            }
            address 10.1.1.254/24;
        }
    }
}

```

The outbound filter is applied on the Fast Ethernet interface at the [edit interfaces fe-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet] hierarchy level. Any packet matching the IPSec action term (term 1) on the input filter (ipsec-encrypt-policy-filter), configured on the Fast Ethernet interface, is directed to the ES PIC interface at the [edit interfaces es-0/1/0 unit 0 family inet] hierarchy level. If a packet arrives from the source address 10.1.1.0/24 and goes to the destination address 10.2.2.0/24, the Packet Forwarding Engine directs the packet to the ES PIC interface, which is configured with the manual-sa1 SA. The ES PIC receives the packet, applies the manual-sa1 SA, and sends the packet through the tunnel.

The router must have a route to the tunnel endpoint; add a static route if necessary.

### Example: Configuring an Inbound Traffic Filter for Policy Check

Here, an inbound firewall filter, which performs the final IPSec policy check, is created on security Gateway A. This check ensures that only packets that match the traffic configured for this tunnel are accepted.

```

filter ipsec-decrypt-policy-filter {

```

```

term term1 { # perform policy check
from {
    source-address { # remote network
        10.2.2.0/24;
    }
    destination-address { # local network
        10.1.1.0/24;
    }
}
then accept;

```

### **Example: Applying an Inbound Traffic Filter to an ES PIC for Policy Check**

After you create the inbound firewall filter, apply it to the ES PIC. Here, the inbound firewall filter (`ipsec-decrypt-policy-filter`) is applied on the decrypted packet to perform the final policy check. The IPSec `manual-sa1` SA is referenced at the `[edit interfaces es-1/2/0 unit 0 family inet]` hierarchy level and decrypts the incoming packet.

```

[edit interfaces]
es-1/2/0 {
    unit 0 {
        tunnel {
            source 10.5.5.5; # tunnel source address
            destination 10.6.6.6; # tunnel destination address
        }
        family inet {
            filter {
                input ipsec-decrypt-policy-filter;
            }
            ipsec-sa manual-sa1; # SA name applied to packet
            address 10.1.1.8/32 { # local interface address inside local VPN
                destination 10.2.2.254; # destination address inside remote VPN
            }
        }
    }
}

```

The Packet Forwarding Engine directs IPSec packets to the ES PIC. It uses the packet's SPI, protocol, and destination address to look up the SA configured on one of the ES interfaces. The IPSec `manual-sa1` SA is referenced at the `[edit interfaces es-1/2/0 unit 0 family inet]` hierarchy level and is used to decrypt the incoming packet. When the packets are processed (decrypted, authenticated, or both), the input firewall filter (`ipsec-decrypt-policy-filter`) is applied on the decrypted packet to perform the final policy check. Term1 defines the decrypted (and verified) traffic and performs the required policy check.



**NOTE:** The inbound traffic filter is applied after the ES PIC has processed the packet, so the decrypted traffic is defined as any traffic that the remote gateway is encrypting and sending to this router. IKE uses this filter to determine the policy required for a tunnel. This policy is used during the negotiation with the remote gateway to find the matching SA configuration.

## ES Tunnel Interface Configuration for a Layer 3 VPN

---

To configure an ES tunnel interface for a Layer 3 VPN, you need to configure an ES tunnel interface on the provider edge (PE) router and on the customer edge (CE) router. You also need to configure IPSec on the PE and CE routers.

## Configuring Tracing Operations for Security Services

---

To configure trace options for security services, specify flags using the `traceoptions` statement:

```
[edit security]
traceoptions {
  file filename <files number> <size size>;
  flag all;
  flag database;
  flag general;
  flag ike;
  flag parse;
  flag policy-manager;
  flag routing-socket;
  flag timer;
}
```

You can include these statements at the following hierarchy levels:

- `[edit security]`
- `[edit services ipsec-vpn]`

You can specify one or more of the following security tracing flags:

- `all`—Trace all security events
- `database`—Trace database events
- `general`—Trace general events
- `ike`—Trace IKE module processing
- `parse`—Trace configuration processing
- `policy-manager`—Trace policy manager processing
- `routing-socket`—Trace routing socket messages
- `timer`—Trace internal timer events

## Configuring Tracing Operations for IPSec Events for Adaptive Services PICs

---

To configure trace options to trace IPSec events for Adaptive Services PICs, include the following statements at the `[edit services ipsec-vpn]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit services ipsec-vpn]
```

```

traceoptions {
  file filename <files number> <size size>;
  flag all;
  flag database;
  flag general;
  flag ike;
  flag parse;
  flag policy-manager;
  flag routing-socket;
  flag timer;
}

```

Trace option output is recorded in the `/var/log/kmd` file.

You can specify one or more of the following security tracing flags:

- **all**—Trace all security events
- **database**—Trace database events
- **general**—Trace general events
- **ike**—Trace IKE module processing
- **parse**—Trace configuration processing
- **policy-manager**—Trace policy manager processing
- **routing-socket**—Trace routing socket messages
- **timer**—Trace internal timer events

## Configuring the Authentication Key Update Mechanism for BGP and LDP Routing Protocols

---

You can configure an authentication key update mechanism for the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) and Label Distribution Protocol (LDP) routing protocols. This mechanism allows you to update authentication keys without interrupting associated routing and signaling protocols such as Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) and Resource Reservation Setup Protocol (RSVP).

To configure this feature, include the `authentication-key-chains` statement at the `[edit security]` level, and include the `authentication-key-chain` statement for the BGP or LDP routing protocols at the `[edit protocols]` level.

The following topics provide more details about configuring authentication key updates for BGP and Routing Protocols:

1. Configuring Authentication Key Updates on page 600
2. Configuring BGP and LDP for Authentication Key Updates on page 600

## Configuring Authentication Key Updates

To configure the authentication key update mechanism, include the **key-chain** statement at the **[edit security authentication-key-chains]** hierarchy level, and specify the **key** option to create a key-chain consisting of several authentication keys.

```
[edit security authentication-key-chains]
key-chain key-chain-name {
  key key {
    secret secret-data;
    start-time yyyy-mm-dd.hh:mm:ss;
  }
}
```

**key-chain**—Assigns a name to the key-chain mechanism. This name is also configured at the **[edit protocols bgp]** or the **[edit protocols ldp]** hierarchy levels to associate unique authentication key-chain attributes as specified using the following options:

- **key**—Each key within a key-chain is identified by a unique integer value. The range is from 0 through 63.
- **secret**—Each key must specify a secret in encrypted text or plain text format. Even if you enter the secret data in plain-text format, the secret always appears in encrypted format.
- **start-time**—Start times for authentication key updates are specified in UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), and must be unique within the key-chain.

## Configuring BGP and LDP for Authentication Key Updates

To configure the authentication key update mechanism for the BGP and LDP routing protocols, include the **authentication-key-chain** statement at the **[edit protocols (bgp | ldp)]** hierarchy level to associate each routing protocol with the **[edit security authentication-key-chains]** authentication keys.

```
[edit protocols (bgp | ldp)]
group groupname {
  neighbor address {
    authentication-key-chain key-chain-name;
  }
}
```



**NOTE:** Beginning with JUNOS Release 7.6, when configuring the authentication key update mechanism for BGP, you cannot commit the **0.0.0.0/allow** statement with authentication keys or key chains. The CLI issues a warning and fails to commit such configurations.

For information about the BGP protocol, see the *JUNOS Routing Protocols Configuration Guide*.

---



## Configuring SSH Host Keys for Secure Copying of Data

Secure Shell (SSH) uses encryption algorithms to generate a host, server, and session key system that ensures secure data transfer. You can configure SSH host keys to support secure copy (SCP) as an alternative to FTP for the background transfer of data such as configuration archives and event logs. To configure SSH support for SCP, you must complete the following tasks:

- Specify SSH known hosts by including hostnames and host key information in the Routing Engine configuration hierarchy.
- Set an SCP URL to specify the host from which to receive data. Setting this attribute automatically retrieves SSH host key information from the SCP server.
  - Verify that the host key is authentic.
  - Accept the secure connection. Accepting this connection automatically stores host key information in the local host key database. Storing host key information in the configuration hierarchy automates the secure handshake and allows background data transfer using SCP.

Tasks to configure SSH Hostkeys for secure copying of data are:

1. Configuring SSH Known Hosts on page 601
2. Configuring Support for SCP File Transfer on page 602
3. Updating SSH Host Key Information on page 602

### Configuring SSH Known Hosts

To configure SSH known hosts, include the `host` statement, and specify hostname and host key options for trusted servers at the `[edit security ssh-known-hosts]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security ssh-known-hosts]
host corporate-archive-server, ip-address {
    dsa-key key;
}
host archive-server-url {
    rsa-key key;
}
host server-with-ssh-version-1, ip-address {
    rsa1-key key;
}
```

Host keys are one of the following:

- `dsa-key`—Base64 encoded Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA) key.
- `rsa-key`—Base 64 encoded Rivest, Shamir and Adleman (RSA) public key algorithm, which supports encryption and digital signatures.
- `rsa1-key`—Base64 encoded RSA public key algorithm, which supports encryption and digital signatures for SSH version 1 and SSH version 2.

## Configuring Support for SCP File Transfer

To configure a known host to support background SCP file transfers, include the `archive-sites` statement at the `[edit system archival configuration]` hierarchy level.

```
[edit system archival configuration]
archive-sites {
  scp://username<:password>@host<:port>/url-path;
}
```



**NOTE:** When specifying a URL in a JUNOS statement using an IPv6 host address, you must enclose the entire URL in quotation marks (" ") and enclose the IPv6 host address in brackets ([ ]). For example,  
`"scp://username<:password>@[host]<:port>/url-path";`

Setting the `archive-sites` statement to point to an SCP URL triggers automatic host key retrieval. At this point, the JUNOS system software connects to the SCP host to fetch the SSH public key, displays the host key message digest or fingerprint as output to the console, and terminates the connection to the server.

```
user@host# set system archival configuration archive-sites "<scp-url-path>"
The authenticity of host <my-archive-server (<server_ip_address>)> can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is <ascii-text key>. Are you sure you want to continue connecting
(yes/no)?
```

To verify that the host key is authentic, compare this fingerprint with a fingerprint that you obtain from the same host using a trusted source. If the fingerprints are identical, accept the host key by entering **yes** at the prompt. The host key information is then stored in the Routing Engine configuration and supports background data transfers using SCP.

## Updating SSH Host Key Information

Typically, SSH host key information is automatically retrieved when you set a URL attribute for SCP using the `archival configuration archive-sites` statement at the `[edit system]` hierarchy level. However, if you need to manually update the host key database, use one of the following methods.

1. Retrieving Host Key Information Manually on page 602
2. Importing Host Key Information from a File on page 603

### Retrieving Host Key Information Manually

To manually retrieve SSH public host key information, use the `fetch-from-server` option with the `set security ssh-known-hosts` command. You must include a hostname attribute with the `set security ssh-known-hosts fetch-from-server` command to specify the host from which to retrieve the SSH public key.

```
user@host# set security ssh-known-hosts fetch-from-server <hostname>
```

## Importing Host Key Information from a File

To manually import SSH host key information from the known-hosts file located at `/var/tmp/known-hosts` on the server, include the `load-key-file` option with the `set security ssh-known-hosts` command. You must include the path to the known-hosts file with the `set security ssh-known-hosts load-key-file` command to specify the location from which to import host key information.

```
user@host# set security ssh-known-hosts load-key-file /var/tmp/known-hosts
```

## Importing SSL Certificates for JUNOScript Support

A JUNOScript client application can use one of four protocols to connect to the JUNOScript server on a router: clear-text (a JUNOScript-specific protocol for sending unencrypted text over a TCP connection), SSH, SSL, or Telnet. For clients to use the SSL protocol, you must copy an X.509 authentication certificate onto the router, as described in this topic. You must also include the `xnm-ssl` statement at the `[edit system services]` hierarchy level.



**NOTE:** The `xnm-ssl` statement does not apply to standard IPSec services.

After obtaining an X.509 authentication certificate and private key, copy it to the router by including the `local` statement at the `[edit security certificates]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security certificates]
local certificate-name {
  load-key-file (filename | url);
}
```

*certificate-name* is a name you choose to identify the certificate uniquely (for example, `junoscript-ssl-client-hostname`, where *hostname* is the computer where the client application runs).

*filename* is the pathname of the file on the local disk that contains the paired certificate and private key (assuming you have already used another method to copy them to the router's local disk).

*url* is the URL to the file that contains a paired certificate and private key (for instance, on the computer where the JUNOScript client application runs).



**NOTE:** The CLI expects the private key in the *URL-or-path* file to be unencrypted. If the key is encrypted, the CLI prompts you for the passphrase associated with it, decrypts it, and stores the unencrypted version.

The `load-key-file` statement acts as a directive that copies the contents of the certificate file into the configuration. When you view the configuration, the CLI displays the string of characters that constitute the private key and certificate, marking them as `SECRET-DATA`. The `load-key-file` keyword is not recorded in the configuration.

## Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS

In a JUNOS-FIPS environment, routers with two Routing Engines must use IPSec for internal communication between the Routing Engines. You configure internal IPSec after you install JUNOS-FIPS. You must be a Crypto Officer to configure internal IPSec.

To configure internal IPSec, include the `security-association` statement at the `[edit security]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit security]
ipsec {
  internal {
    security-association {
      manual {
        direction (bidirectional | inbound | outbound) {
          protocol esp;
          spi spi-value;
          encryption {
            algorithm 3des-cbc;
            key ascii-text ascii-text-string;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Tasks for configuring internal IPSec for JUNOS FIPS are:

1. Configuring the SA Direction on page 604
2. Configuring the IPSec SPI on page 605
3. Configuring the IPSec Key on page 605

### Configuring the SA Direction

To configure the IPSec SA direction, include the `direction` statement at the `[edit security ipsec internal security-association manual]` hierarchy level:

```
direction (bidirectional | inbound | outbound);
```

The value can be one of the following:

- **bidirectional**—Apply the same SA values in both directions between Routing Engines.
- **inbound**—Apply these SA properties only to the inbound IPsec tunnel.
- **outbound**—Apply these SA properties only to the outbound IPsec tunnel.

If you do not configure the SA to be bidirectional, you must configure SA parameters for IPsec tunnels in both directions. The following example uses an inbound and outbound IPsec tunnel:

```
[edit security]
ipsec {
  internal {
    security-association {
      manual {
        direction inbound {
          protocol esp;
          spi 512;
          encryption {
            algorithm 3des-cbc;
            key ascii-text "$.KL3rngIH7,theOPcn87Ixfpe9GJKdme";
          }
        }
        direction outbound {
          protocol esp;
          spi 513;
          encryption {
            algorithm 3des-cbc;
            key ascii-text ".n87IngIH7,thxefpe9GJKdme.KL3rOPc";
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Configuring the IPsec SPI

A security parameter index (SPI) is a 32-bit index identifying a security context between a pair of Routing Engines. To configure the IPsec Security Parameter Index (SPI) value, include the `spi` statement at the `[edit security ipsec internal security-association manual direction]` hierarchy level:

```
spi value;
```

The value must be from 256 through 16639.

### Configuring the IPsec Key

To configure the ASCII text key, include the `key` statement at the `[edit security ipsec internal security-association manual direction encryption]` hierarchy level:

```
key ascii-text ascii-text-string;
```

The value must be from **256** through **16639**. You must enter the key ASCII value twice and the strings entered must match, or the key will not be set. The ASCII text key is never displayed in plain text.

## Example: Configuring Internal IPsec

---

Configure a bidirectional IPsec SA with an SPI value of 512 and a key value conforming to the FIPS 140-2 rules:

```
[edit security]
ipsec {
  internal {
    security-association {
      manual {
        direction bidirectional {
          protocol esp;
          spi 512;
          encryption {
            algorithm 3des-cbc;
            key ascii-text "$9$90j.COlek8X7VevbYgoji1rh";
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

## Chapter 17

# Summary of Security Services Configuration Statements

The following configuration statement references explain each of the security services configuration statements. The statement references are organized alphabetically.

### algorithm

---

<b>Syntax</b>	algorithm 3des-cbc;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec internal security-association manual direction encryption]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Select the encryption algorithm for the internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine IPSec security association (SA) configuration.
<b>Options</b>	Only 3des-cbc is supported.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	Crypto Officer—To add and view this statement in the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS</i>

## authentication

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>authentication {   algorithm (hmac-md5-96   hmac-sha1-96);   key (ascii-text <i>key</i>   hexadecimal <i>key</i>); }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec security-association <i>sa-name</i> manual direction (inbound   outbound   bi-directional)]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure IP Security (IPSec) authentication parameters for manual security association (SA).
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>algorithm</b>—Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. It can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>hmac-md5-96</b>—Produces a 128-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>hmac-sha1-96</b>—Produces a 160-bit digest.</li> </ul> <p><b>key</b>—Type of authentication key. It can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>ascii-text key</b>—ASCII text key. For <b>hmac-md5-96</b>, the key is 16 ASCII characters; for <b>hmac-sha1-96</b>, the key is 20 ASCII characters.</li> <li>■ <b>hexadecimal key</b>—Hexadecimal key. For <b>hmac-md5-96</b>, the key is 32 hexadecimal characters; for <b>hmac-sha1-96</b>, the key is 40 hexadecimal characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p><b>admin</b>—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p><b>admin-control</b>—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>



## authentication-algorithm

---

- authentication-algorithm (IKE) on page 609
- authentication-algorithm (IPSec) on page 609

### authentication-algorithm (IKE)

<b>Syntax</b>	authentication-algorithm (md5   sha1);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike proposal <i>ike-proposal-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) authentication algorithm.
<b>Options</b>	authentication-algorithm—Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. It can be one of two algorithms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ md5—Produces a 128-bit digest.</li> <li>■ sha1—Produces a 160-bit digest.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Authentication Algorithm for an IKE Proposal” on page 564.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

### authentication-algorithm (IPSec)

<b>Syntax</b>	authentication-algorithm (hmac-md5-96   hmac-sha1-96);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec proposal <i>ipsec-proposal-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the IPSec authentication algorithm.
<b>Options</b>	authentication-algorithm—Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. It can be one of two algorithms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ hmac-md5-96—Produces a 128-bit digest.</li> <li>■ hmac-sha1-96—Produces a 160-bit digest.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Authentication Algorithm for an IPSec Proposal” on page 569.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## authentication-key-chains

---

**Syntax**

```
authentication-key-chains {
  key-chain key-chain-name {
    description text-string;
    key key {
      secret secret-data;
      start-time yyyy-mm-dd.hh:mm:ss;
    }
    tolerance seconds;
  }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.6.

**Description** Configure authentication key updates for the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) and Label Distribution Protocol (LDP) routing protocols. When an **authentication-key-chain** statement is configured at the [edit security] hierarchy level, and associated with the BGP and LDP protocols at the [edit protocols] hierarchy level, authentication key updates can occur without interrupting routing and signaling protocols such as Open Shortest Path First (OSPF), and Resource Reservation Setup Protocol (RSVP).

**Options** **key-chain**—Keychain name. This name is configured at the [edit protocols bgp] or the [edit protocols ldp] hierarchy level to associate unique **authentication key-chain** attributes with each protocol as specified using the following options:

- **description**—A text description of the **authentication-key-chain**. Put the text-string in quotes ("text description").
- **key**—Each key within a keychain is identified by a unique integer value.

**Range:** 0 through 63

- **secret**—Each key must specify a secret in encrypted text or plain text format. The secret always appears in encrypted format.
- **start-time**—Start times are specified in UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), and must be unique within the keychain.
- **tolerance**—Specify the clock skew tolerance, in seconds.

**Range:** 0 through 999999999

**Usage Guidelines** See "Configuring Authentication Key Updates" on page 600.

**Required Privilege Level** **admin**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**admin-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.

## authentication-method

---

<b>Syntax</b>	authentication-method (dsa-signatures   pre-shared-keys   rsa-signatures);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike proposal <i>ike-proposal-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the IKE authentication method.
<b>Options</b>	<p>dsa-signatures—Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA)</p> <p>rsa-signatures—A public key algorithm, which supports encryption and digital signatures</p> <p>pre-shared-keys—A key derived from an out-of-band mechanism; the key authenticates the exchange</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## auto-re-enrollment

---

**Syntax** auto-re-enrollment {  
     certificate-id {  
         ca-profile *ca-profile-name*;  
         challenge-password *password*;  
         re-enroll-trigger-time *percentage*;  
         re-generate-keypair;  
         validity-period *days*;  
     }  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security pki]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.

**Description** Specify auto-reenrollment parameters for a certificate authority (CA) issued router certificate. Auto-reenrollment requests that the issuing CA replace a router certificate before its specified expiration date.

**Options** The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA” on page 591.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** Configuring Digital Certificates for Adaptive Services Interfaces on page 584

## auxiliary-spi

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>auxiliary-spi <i>auxiliary-spi-value</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec security-association <i>sa-name</i> manual direction (JUNOS Software) (inbound   outbound   bi-directional)]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the auxiliary Security Parameter Index (SPI) for a manual SA. Use the auxiliary SPI when you configure the <b>protocol</b> statement to use the <b>bundle</b> option.
<b>Options</b>	<i>auxiliary-spi-value</i> —Arbitrary value that uniquely identifies which SA to use at the receiving host (the destination address in the packet). <b>Range:</b> 256 through 16,639
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558. For information about SPI, see “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558 and <b>spi</b> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ca-identity

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>ca-identity <i>ca-identity</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security pki ca-profile <i>ca-profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the certificate authority (CA) identity to use in requesting digital certificates for J-series Services Routers and Adaptive Services (AS) and MultiServices PICs installed in M-series and T-series routing platforms.
<b>Options</b>	<i>ca-identity</i> —The name of the CA identity. This name is typically the domain name of the CA.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying the CA Profile Name” on page 586.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ca-name

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ca-name <i>ca-identity</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security certificates certification-authority]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Specify the certificate authority (CA) identity to use in the certificate request.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying the Certificate Authority Name” on page 578.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## ca-profile

---

**Syntax**

```
ca-profile ca-profile-name {
  ca-identity ca-identity;
  enrollment {
    url url-name;
    retry number-of-enrollment-attempts;
    retry-interval seconds;
  }
  revocation-check {
    disable:
    crl {
      disable on-download-failure;
      refresh-interval number-of-hours;
      url {
        url-name;
        password;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security pki]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.  
revocation-check and crl statements added in JUNOS Release 8.1.

**Description** Specify the name of the certificate authority (CA) profile for J-series Services Routers and Adaptive Services (AS) and MultiServices PICs installed on M-series and T-series routing platforms.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Options** *ca-profile-name*—Name of trusted CA.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Specifying the CA Profile Name” on page 586.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## cache-size

---

**Syntax** cache-size *bytes*;

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security certificates]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** (Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Configure the cache size for digital certificates.

**Options** bytes—Cache size for digital certificates.  
**Range:** 64 through 4,294,967,295  
**Default:** 2 megabytes (MB)



**NOTE:** We recommend that you limit your cache size to 4 MB.

---

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Cache Size” on page 579.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration

## cache-timeout-negative

---

**Syntax** cache-timeout-negative *seconds*;

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security certificates]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** (Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Configure a negative cache for digital certificates.

**Options** seconds—Negative time to cache digital certificates, in seconds.  
**Range:** 10 through 4,294,967,295  
**Default:** 20



**CAUTION:** Configuring a large negative cache value can lead to a denial-of-service attack.

---

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Negative Cache” on page 580.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration



**certificate-id**

---

**Syntax**    certificate-id {  
               ca-profile *ca-profile-name*;  
               challenge-password *password*;  
               re-enroll-trigger-time *percentage*;  
               re-generate-keypair;  
               validity-period *days*;  
               }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit security auto-re-enrollment]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.

**Description**    Specify a router certificate for auto-reenrollment. The ID is the same as that used to get the end entity's certificate from the issuing Certificate Authority.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA” on page 591

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                       admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**    auto-re-enrollment

## certificates

---

**Syntax**

```

certificates {
  cache-size bytes;
  cache-timeout-negative seconds;
  certification-authority ca-profile-name {
    ca-name ca-identity;
    crl file-name;
    encoding (binary | pem);
    enrollment-url url-name;
    file certificate-filename;
    ldap-url url-name;
  }
  enrollment-retry attempts;
  local certificate-name {
    certificate-key-string;
    load-key-file URL-or-path;
  }
  maximum-certificates number;
  path-length certificate-path-length;
}

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** (Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Configure the digital certificates for IPsec.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Digital Certificates for an ES PIC” on page 576.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## certification-authority

---

<b>Syntax</b>	certification-authority <i>ca-profile-name</i> { ca-name <i>ca-identity</i> ; crl <i>file-name</i> ; encoding (binary   pem); enrollment-url <i>url-name</i> ; file <i>certificate-filename</i> ; ldap-url <i>url-name</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security certificates]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Configure a certificate authority profile name. The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties for an ES PIC” on page 577.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration

## challenge-password

---

<b>Syntax</b>	challenge-password <i>password</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the challenge password used by the Certificate Authority (CA) for router certificate enrollment and revocation. This challenge password must be the same used when the router certificate was originally configured.
<b>Options</b>	<i>password</i> —The password required by the CA.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA” on page 591.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	auto-re-enrollment

**crl**

---

- **crl** (Encryption Interface on M-series and T-series Routing Platforms Only) on page 620
- **crl** (Adaptive Services Interfaces Only) on page 621

***crl (Encryption Interface on M-series and T-series Routing Platforms Only)***

**Syntax** `crl file-name;`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security certificates]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure the certificate revocation list (CRL). A CRL is a time-stamped list identifying revoked certificates, which is signed by a CA and made available to the participating IPSec peers on a regular periodic basis.

**Options** *file-name*—Specifies the file from which to read the CRL.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Certificate Authority Properties for an ES PIC” on page 577.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration

**crl (Adaptive Services Interfaces Only)**

**Syntax**   crl {  
               disable on-download-failure;  
               refresh-interval *number-of-hours*;  
               url {  
                   *url-name*;  
                   password;  
               }  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**   [edit security pki ca-profile *ca-profile-name* revocation-check]

**Release Information**   Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.1.

**Description**   Configure the certificate revocation list (CRL). A CRL is a time-stamped list identifying revoked certificates, which is signed by a CA and made available to the participating IPSec peers on a regular periodic basis.

**Options**   disable on-download-failure—Permits the authentication of the IPSec peer when the CRL is not downloaded.

refresh-interval *hours*—Time interval, in hours, between CRL updates.

**Range:** 0 through 8784

**Default:** 24

url *url-name*—Location from which to retrieve the CRL through the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). You can configure as many as three URLs for each configured CA profile.

**Usage Guidelines**   See “Configuring the Certificate Revocation List” on page 587.

**Required Privilege Level**   admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration

## description

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>description <i>description</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike policy <i>ike-peer-address</i> ], [edit security ike proposal <i>ike-proposal-name</i> ], [edit security ipsec policy <i>ipsec-policy-name</i> ], [edit security ipsec proposal <i>ipsec-proposal-name</i> ], [edit security ipsec security-association <i>sa-name</i> ]
<b>Description</b>	Specify a text description for an IKE proposal or policy, or an IPSec proposal, policy, or SA.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Security Associations for IPSec on an ES PIC” on page 556, “Configuring the Description for an IKE Proposal” on page 565, “Configuring the Description for an IKE Policy” on page 567, “Configuring an IPSec Proposal for an ES PIC” on page 569, and “Configuring the IPSec Policy for an ES PIC” on page 571.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## dh-group

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>dh-group (group1   group2);</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike proposal <i>ike-proposal-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the IKE Diffie-Hellman group.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>dh-group</b>—Type of Diffie-Hellman prime modulus group when performing the new Diffie-Hellman exchange. It can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>group1</b>—768-bit.</li> <li>■ <b>group2</b>—1024-bit.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Diffie-Hellman Group for an IKE Proposal” on page 565.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## direction

---

### *direction (JUNOS Software)*

**Syntax** direction (inbound | outbound | bidirectional) {  
     authentication {  
         algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);  
         key (ascii-text *key* | hexadecimal *key*);  
     }  
     auxiliary-spi *auxiliary-spi-value*;  
     encryption {  
         algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);  
         key (ascii-text *key* | hexadecimal *key*);  
     }  
     protocol (ah | esp | bundle);  
     spi *spi-value*;  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name* manual]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Define the direction of IPSec processing.

**Options** inbound—Inbound SA.  
           outbound—Outbound SA.  
           bidirectional—Bidirectional SA.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                               system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**direction (JUNOS-FIPS Software)**

**Syntax**    direction (bidirectional | inbound | outbound) {  
               protocol esp;  
               spi (JUNOS Software) *spi-value*;  
               encryption {  
                   algorithm 3des-cbc;  
                   key ascii-text *ascii-text-string*;  
               }  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit security ipsec internal security-association manual]

**Description**        Establish a manual security association (SA) for internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine communication.

**Options**            bidirectional—Apply the same SA values in both directions between Routing Engines.

                        inbound—Apply these SA properties only to the inbound IPSec tunnel.

                        outbound—Apply these SA properties only to the outbound IPSec tunnel.

                        The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.

**Required Privilege Level**    Crypto Officer—To view and add this statement in the configuration.

**Related Topics**        *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*



## dynamic

---

<b>Syntax</b>	dynamic { ipsec-policy <i>ipsec-policy-name</i> ; replay-window-size (32   64); }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec security-association <i>name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Define a dynamic IPSec SA.
<b>Options</b>	<p>ipsec-policy <i>ipsec-policy-name</i>—Name of the IPSec policy.</p> <p>replay-window-size—(Optional) Antireplay window size. It can be one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ 32—32-packet window size.</li> <li>■ 64—64-packet window size.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Dynamic IPSec Security Associations” on page 563 and “Associating the Configured Security Association with a Logical Interface” on page 584.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## encoding

---

<b>Syntax</b>	encoding (binary   pem);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit security ike policy <i>ike-peer-address</i>],</p> <p>[edit security certificates certification-authority <i>ca-profile-name</i>]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Specify the file format used for the <code>local-certificate</code> and <code>local-key-pair</code> statements.
<b>Options</b>	<p>binary—Binary file format.</p> <p>pem—Privacy-enhanced mail (PEM), an ASCII base 64 encoded format.  <b>Default:</b> :binary</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Type of Encoding Your CA Supports” on page 578 and “Configuring the Type of Encoding Your CA Supports” on page 582.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## encryption

---

### encryption (JUNOS Software)

**Syntax** encryption {  
     algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);  
     key (ascii-text *key* | hexadecimal *key*);  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name* manual direction (inbound | outbound | bidirectional)]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure an encryption algorithm and key for manual SA.

**Options** algorithm—Type of encryption algorithm. It can be one of the following:

- des-cbc—Has a block size of 8 bytes (64 bits); its key size is 48 bits long.
- 3des-cbc—Has block size of 8 bytes (64 bits); its key size is 192 bits long.



**NOTE:** For 3des-cbc, we recommend that the first 8 bytes be different from the second 8 bytes, and the second 8 bytes be the same as the third 8 bytes.

---

key—Type of encryption key. It can be one of the following:

- ascii-text—ASCII text key. For the **des-cbc** option, the key contains 8 ASCII characters; for **3des-cbc**, the key contains 24 ASCII characters.
- hexadecimal—Hexadecimal key. For the **des-cbc** option, the key contains 16 hexadecimal characters; for the **3des-cbc** option, the key contains 48 hexadecimal characters.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**encryption (JUNOS-FIPS Software)**

<b>Syntax</b>	encryption { algorithm 3des-cbc; key ascii-text <i>ascii-text-string</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec internal security-association manual direction]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Define the encryption parameters for internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine communication. The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	Crypto Officer—To view and add this statement in the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS</i>

**encryption-algorithm**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc   des-cbc   ase-128-cbc   ase-192-cbc   ase-256-cbc);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike proposal <i>ike-proposal-name</i> ], [edit security ipsec proposal <i>ipsec-proposal-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure an IKE or IPSec encryption algorithm.
<b>Options</b>	<p>3des-cbc—Encryption algorithm with key size of 24 bytes; its key size is 192 bits long.</p> <p>des-cbc—Encryption algorithm with key size of 8 bytes; its key size is 48 bits long.</p> <p>aes-128-cbc—Advanced encryption algorithm that has a key size of 16 bytes; its key size is 128 bits long.</p> <p>aes-192-cbc—Advanced encryption algorithm that has a key size of 24 bytes; its key size is 192 bits long.</p> <p>aes-256-cbc—Advanced encryption algorithm that has a key size of 32 bytes; its key size is 256 bits long.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Encryption Algorithm for an IKE Proposal” on page 565 and “Configuring the Encryption Algorithm for an IPSec Proposal” on page 570.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## enrollment

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> enrollment {   url <i>url-name</i>;   retry <i>number-of-enrollment-attempts</i>;   retry-interval <i>seconds</i>; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security pki ca-profile <i>ca-profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.
<b>Description</b>	Specify the URL and enrollment parameters of the certificate authority (CA) for J-series Services Routers and Adaptive Services (AS) and MultiServices PICs installed on M-series and T-series routing platforms.
<b>Options</b>	<p>url <i>url-name</i>—Location of CA to which the router sends the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol-based (SCEP-based) certificate enrollment requests for the configured CA profile. Use the CA host DNS name or IP address.</p> <p>retry <i>number-of-enrollment-attempts</i>—Number of enrollment retries.  <b>Range:</b> 0 through 100  <b>Default:</b> 0</p> <p>retry-interval <i>seconds</i>—Amount of time, in seconds, a router should wait between enrollment attempts.  <b>Range:</b> 0 through 3600  <b>Default:</b> 0</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying an Enrollment URL” on page 586 and “Specifying the Enrollment Properties” on page 587.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## enrollment-retry

---

<b>Syntax</b>	enrollment-retry <i>attempts</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security certificates]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Specify how many times a router can resend a digital certificate request.
<b>Options</b>	<i>attempts</i> —Number of enrollment retries. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 100 <b>Default:</b> 0
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Number of Enrollment Retries” on page 580.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## enrollment-url

---

<b>Syntax</b>	enrollment-url <i>url-name</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security certificates certification-authority <i>ca-profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Specify where your router should send Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol-based (SCEP-based) certificate enrollment requests (certificate authority URL).
<b>Options</b>	<i>url-name</i> —Certificate authority URL.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying an Enrollment URL” on page 579.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## file

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>file <i>certificate-filename</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security certificates certification-authority <i>ca-profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Specify the file from which to read the digital certificate.
<b>Options</b>	<i>certificate-filename</i> —File from which to read the digital certificate.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying a File to Read the Digital Certificate” on page 579.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## identity

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>identity <i>identity-name</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Define the identity of the remote certificate name if the identity cannot be learned through IKE (ID payload or IP address).
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Identity to Define the Remote Certificate Name” on page 582.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**ike**

---

**Syntax**   ike {  
               policy *ike-peer-address* {  
                   description *policy-description*;  
                   encoding (binary | pem);  
                   identity *identity-name*;  
                   local-certificate *certificate-filename*;  
                   local-key-pair *private-public-key-file*;  
                   mode (aggressive | main);  
                   pre-shared-key (ascii-text *key* | hexadecimal *key*);  
                   proposals [ *proposal-names* ];  
               }  
               proposal *ike-proposal-name* {  
                   authentication-algorithm (md5 | sha1);  
                   authentication-method (dsa-signatures | pre-shared-keys | rsa-signatures);  
                   dh-group (group1 | group2);  
                   encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc);  
                   lifetime-seconds *seconds*;  
               }  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**   [edit security]

**Release Information**   Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**   (Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Configure IKE.

The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**   See “Configuring an IKE Proposal for Dynamic SAs” on page 563 and “Configuring an IKE Policy for Preshared Keys” on page 566.

**Required Privilege Level**   system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## internal

---

```

Syntax  internal {
            security-association {
            manual {
            direction (bidirectional | inbound | outbound) {
            protocol esp;
            spi spi-value;
            encryption {
            algorithm 3des-cbc;
            key ascii-text ascii-text-string;
            }
            }
            }
            }
            }

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ipsec]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** (JUNOS-FIPS only) Define an internal security association (SA) for internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine communication. The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.

**Required Privilege Level** Crypto Officer—To view and add this statement in the configuration.

**Related Topics** *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*



**ipsec**

```

Syntax  ipsec {
            security-association {
                manual {
                    direction (bidirectional | inbound | outbound) {
                        protocol esp;
                        spi spi-value;
                        encryption {
                            algorithm 3des-cbc;
                            key ascii-text ascii-text-string;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            policy ipsec-policy-name {
                perfect-forward-secrecy {
                    keys (group1 | group2);
                }
                proposals [ proposal-names ];
            }
            proposal ipsec-proposal-name {
                authentication-algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
                encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc);
                lifetime-seconds seconds;
                protocol (ah | esp | bundle);
            }
            security-association name {
                dynamic {
                    ipsec-policy policy-name;
                    replay-window-size (32 | 64);
                }
                manual {
                    direction (inbound | outbound | bi-directional) {
                        authentication {
                            algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);
                            key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
                        }
                        auxiliary-spi auxiliary-spi-value;
                        encryption {
                            algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);
                            key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
                        }
                        protocol (ah | esp | bundle);
                        spi spi-value;
                    }
                }
                mode (tunnel | transport);
            }
            traceoptions {
                file <files number> < size size>;
                flag all;
                flag database;
            }
        }

```

```

    flag general;
    flag ike;
    flag parse;
    flag policy-manager;
    flag routing-socket;
    flag timer;
  }
}

```

<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Configure IPSec.  The statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Security Associations for IPSec on an ES PIC” on page 556.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## key

---

<b>Syntax</b>	key ascii-text <i>ascii-text-string</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec internal security-association manual direction encryption]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	The key used for the internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine IPSec security association (SA) configuration.
<b>Options</b>	Only ascii-text is supported.  <i>ascii-text-string</i> —The encrypted ASCII text key.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	Crypto Officer—To add and view this statement in the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS</i>

## ldap-url

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ldap-url <i>url-name</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security certificates certification-authority <i>ca-profile-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platform only) (Optional) Specify the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) URL for digital certificates.
<b>Options</b>	<i>url-name</i> —Name of the LDAP URL.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying an LDAP URL” on page 579.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## lifetime-seconds

---

<b>Syntax</b>	lifetime-seconds <i>seconds</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike proposal <i>ike-proposal-name</i> ], [edit security ipsec proposal <i>ipsec-proposal-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Optional) Configure the lifetime of IKE or IPSec SA. When the SA expires, it is replaced by a new SA (and SPI) or terminated.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —Lifetime, in seconds. <b>Range:</b> 180 through 86,400
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Lifetime for an IKE SA” on page 566 and “Configuring the Lifetime for an IPSec SA” on page 570.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## local

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>local <i>certificate-name</i> {     <i>certificate-key-string</i>;     load-key-file <i>URL-or-path</i>; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security certificates]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Import a paired X.509 private key and authentication certificate, to enable JUNOScript client applications to establish Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) connections to the router.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>certificate-key-string</i>—String of alphanumeric characters that constitute the private key and certificate.</p> <p><i>certificate-name</i>—Name that uniquely identifies the certificate.</p> <p><i>load-key-file</i>—File that contains the private key and certificate. It can be one of two types of values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Pathname of a file on the local disk (assuming you have already used another method to copy the certificate file to the router's local disk)</li> <li>■ URL to the certificate file location (for instance, on the computer where the JUNOScript client application runs)</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Importing SSL Certificates for JUNOScript Support” on page 603.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## local-certificate

---

<b>Syntax</b>	local-certificate <i>certificate-filename</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike policy <i>ike-peer-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the certificate filename from which to read the local certificate.
<b>Options</b>	<i>certificate-filename</i> —File from which to read the local certificate.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying the Certificate Filename” on page 582.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## local-key-pair

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>local-key-pair <i>private-public-key-file</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit security ike policy <i>ike-peer-address</i>]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Specify private and public keys.
<b>Options</b>	<i>private-public-key-file</i> —Specifies the file from which to read the private and public key pair.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying the Private and Public Key File” on page 582.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## manual

---

See the following sections:

- manual (JUNOS Software) on page 638
- manual (JUNOS-FIPS Software) on page 639

### ***manual (JUNOS Software)***

**Syntax**    manual {  
                   direction (inbound | outbound | bi-directional) {  
                     authentication {  
                       algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);  
                       key (ascii-text *key* | hexadecimal *key*);  
                     }  
                     auxiliary-spi *auxiliary-spi-value*;  
                     encryption {  
                       algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);  
                       key (ascii-text *key* | hexadecimal *key*);  
                     }  
                     protocol (ah | esp | bundle);  
                     spi *spi-value*;  
                   }  
                 }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit security ipsec security-association]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Define a manual IPSec SA.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**manual (JUNOS-FIPS Software)**

```

Syntax  manual {
            direction (bidirectional | inbound | outbound) {
                protocol esp;
                spi spi-value;
                encryption {
                    algorithm 3des-cbc;
                    key ascii-text ascii-text-string;
                }
            }
        }

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ipsec internal security-association]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Define a manual security association (SA) for internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine communication.

**Options** The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.

**Required Privilege Level** Crypto Officer—To view and add this statement in the configuration.

**Related Topics** *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*

**maximum-certificates**

---

```

Syntax  maximum-certificates number;

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security certificates]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** (Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platforms only) Configure the maximum number of peer digital certificates to be cached.

**Options** *number*—Maximum number of peer digital certificates to be cached.  
**Range:** 64 through 4,294,967,295 peer certificates  
**Default:** 1024 peer certificates

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Maximum Number of Peer Certificates” on page 580.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## mode

---

See the following sections:

- mode (IKE) on page 640
- mode (IPSec) on page 641

### **mode (IKE)**

<b>Syntax</b>	mode (aggressive   main);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike policy <i>ike-peer-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Define the IKE policy mode.
<b>Default</b>	main
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>aggressive</b>—Takes half the number of messages of main mode, has less negotiation power, and does not provide identity protection.</p> <p><b>main</b>—Uses six messages, in three peer-to-peer exchanges, to establish the IKE SA. These three steps include the IKE SA negotiation, a Diffie-Hellman exchange, and authentication of the peer. Also provides identity protection.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Mode for an IKE Policy” on page 567.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>



**mode (IPSec)**

<b>Syntax</b>	mode (transport   tunnel);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec security-association <i>name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Define the mode for the IPSec security association.
<b>Default</b>	tunnel
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>transport</b>— Protects traffic when the communication endpoint and cryptographic endpoint are the same. The data portion of the IP packet is encrypted, but the IP header is not. Virtual Private Network (VPN) gateways that provide encryption and decryption services for protected hosts cannot use transport mode for protected VPN communications.</p> <p><b>tunnel</b>—Protects traffic using preshared keys with IKE to authenticate peers or digital certificates with IKE to authenticate peers.</p>



**NOTE:** Tunnel mode requires the ES Physical Interface Card (PIC).

The JUNOS software supports only encapsulating security payload (ESP) when you use tunnel mode.

In transport mode, the JUNOS software does not support authentication header (AH) and ESP header bundles.

In transport mode, the JUNOS software supports only Border Gateway Protocol (BGP).

---

<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring IPSec Tunnel Mode” on page 558 and “Configuring IPSec Transport Mode” on page 557.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## path-length

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>path-length <i>certificate-path-length</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security certificates]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Encryption interface on M-series and T-series routing platform only) Configure the digital certificate path length.
<b>Options</b>	<i>certificate-path-length</i> —Digital certificate path length. <b>Range:</b> 2 through 15 certificates <b>Default:</b> 15 certificates
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Path Length for the Certificate Hierarchy” on page 581.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## perfect-forward-secretcy

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>perfect-forward-secretcy {     keys (group1   group2); }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec policy <i>ipsec-policy-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Optional) Define the Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) protocol. Creates single-use keys.
<b>Options</b>	keys—Type of Diffie-Hellman prime modulus group that IKE uses when performing the new Diffie-Hellman exchange.  The key can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ group1—768-bit.</li> <li>■ group2—1024-bit.</li> </ul>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Perfect Forward Secrecy” on page 572.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**pki**

```

Syntax  pki {
            ca-profile ca-profile-name {
              ca-identity ca-identity;
              enrollment {
                url url-name;
                retry number-of-enrollment-attempts;
                retry-interval seconds;
              }
              revocation-check {
                disable;
                crl {
                  disable on-download-failure;
                  refresh-interval hours;
                  url {
                    url-name;
                    password;
                  }
                }
              }
            }
          }

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.  
revocation-check and crl statements added in JUNOS Release 8.1.

**Description** Configure an IPSec profile to request digital certificates for J-series Services Routers and Adaptive Services (AS) and MultiServices PICs installed in M-series and T-series routing platforms.

The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Digital Certificates for Adaptive Services Interfaces” on page 584.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** *JUNOS Feature Guide* and the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*

## policy

---

See the following sections:

- policy (IKE) on page 644
- policy (IPSec) on page 645

### **policy (IKE)**

**Syntax**    `policy ike-peer-address {  
                   description policy-description;  
                   encoding (binary | pem);  
                   identity identity-name;  
                   local-certificate certificate-filename;  
                   local-key-pair private-public-key-file;  
                   mode (aggressive | main);  
                   pre-shared-key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);  
                   proposals [ proposal-names ];  
                   }`

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit security ike]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Define an IKE policy.

**Options**    *ike-peer-address*—A tunnel address configured at the [edit interfaces *es*] hierarchy level.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring an IKE Policy for Preshared Keys” on page 566 and “Configuring an IKE Policy for Digital Certificates for an ES PIC” on page 581.

**Required Privilege Level**    admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                       admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**policy (IPSec)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> policy ipsec-policy-name {     perfect-forward-secrecy {         keys (group1   group2);     }     proposals [ proposal-names ]; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Define an IPSec policy.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>ipsec-policy-name</i>—Specify an IPSec policy name.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the IPSec Policy for an ES PIC” on page 571.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

**pre-shared-key**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	pre-shared-key (ascii-text <i>key</i>   hexadecimal <i>key</i> );
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike policy <i>ike-peer-address</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the key used to authenticate a dynamic peer during IKE phase 1 negotiation. Specify the key in either ASCII or hexadecimal format.
<b>Options</b>	<p>ascii-text <i>key</i>—Authentication key in ASCII format.</p> <p>hexadecimal <i>key</i>—Authentication key in hexadecimal format.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Preshared Key for an IKE Policy” on page 567.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## proposal

---

See the following sections:

- proposal (IKE) on page 646
- proposal (IPSec) on page 647

### ***proposal (IKE)***

**Syntax** `proposal ike-proposal-name {  
     authentication-algorithm (md5 | sha1);  
     authentication-method (dsa-signatures | pre-shared-keys | rsa-signatures);  
     description description;  
     dh-group (group1 | group2);  
     encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | des-cbc);  
     lifetime-seconds seconds;  
 }`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ike]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Define an IKE proposal for a dynamic SA.

**Options** *ike-proposal-name*—Specifies an IKE proposal name.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring an IKE Proposal for Dynamic SAs” on page 563.

**Required Privilege Level** admin—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**proposal (IPSec)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>proposal ipsec-proposal-name {     authentication-algorithm (hmac-md5-96   hmac-sha1-96);     encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc   des-cbc);     lifetime-seconds seconds;     protocol (ah   esp   bundle); }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Define an IPSec proposal for a dynamic SA.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>ipsec-proposal-name</i>—Specifies an IPSec proposal name.</p> <p>The statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring an IPSec Proposal for an ES PIC” on page 569.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

**proposals**


---

<b>Syntax</b>	proposals [ <i>proposal-names</i> ];
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ike policy <i>ike-peer-address</i> ], [edit security ipsec policy <i>ipsec-policy-name</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Associate one or more proposals with an IKE or IPSec policy.
<b>Options</b>	<i>proposal-names</i> —Name of one or more proposals.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Associating Proposals with an IKE Policy” on page 568 and “Configuring the IPSec Policy for an ES PIC” on page 571.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## protocol

---

See the following sections:

- protocol (JUNOS Software) on page 648
- protocol (JUNOS-FIPS Software) on page 648

### ***protocol (JUNOS Software)***

<b>Syntax</b>	protocol (ah   esp   bundle);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec proposal <i>ipsec-proposal-name</i> ], [edit security ipsec security-association <i>sa-name</i> manual direction (inbound   outbound   bidirectional)]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Define the IPSec protocol for a manual or dynamic SA.
<b>Options</b>	ah—Authentication Header protocol  bundle—AH and ESP protocols  esp—ESP protocol (the tunnel statement must be included at the [edit security ipsec security-association <i>sa-name</i> mode hierarchy level])
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558 and “Configuring the Protocol for a Dynamic IPSec SA” on page 571.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

### ***protocol (JUNOS-FIPS Software)***

<b>Syntax</b>	protocol esp;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ipsec internal security-association manual direction]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	The protocol used for the internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine IPSec security association (SA) configuration.
<b>Options</b>	Only esp is supported.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	Crypto Officer—To add and view this statement in the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS</i>



## re-enroll-trigger-time

---

<b>Syntax</b>	re-enroll-trigger-time <i>percentage</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.
<b>Description</b>	Percentage of the router certificate <b>validity-period</b> statement value, in days, when auto-reenrollment should start before expiration.
<b>Options</b>	<i>percentage</i> —Percentage for the reenroll trigger time. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 99
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA” on page 591.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	auto-re-enrollment

## re-generate-keypair

---

<b>Syntax</b>	re-generate-keypair;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.
<b>Description</b>	(Optional) Automatically generate a new key pair when auto-reenrolling a router certificate. If this statement is not configured, the current key pair is used.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA” on page 591.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	auto-re-enrollment

## refresh-interval

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>refresh-interval <i>hours</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit security pki ca-profile <i>ca-profile-name</i> revocation-check crl]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.1.
<b>Description</b>	(Adaptive services interfaces only) Specify the amount of time between certificate revocation list (CRL) updates.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number-of-hours</i> —Time interval, in hours, between CRL updates. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 8784 <b>Default:</b> 24
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	“Configuring the Certificate Revocation List” on page 587.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	crl

## retry

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>retry <i>number-of-attempts</i>;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit security pki ca-profile <i>ca-profile-name</i> enrollment]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.
<b>Description</b>	(Adaptive services interfaces only) Specify how many times a router can resend a digital certificate request.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number-of-attempts</i> —Number of enrollment retries. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 100 <b>Default:</b> 0
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying the Enrollment Properties” on page 587.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	enrollment

## retry-interval

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>retry-interval seconds;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit security pki ca-profile <i>ca-profile-name</i> enrollment]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.
<b>Description</b>	(Adaptive services interfaces only) Specify the amount of time the router should wait between enrollment retries.
<b>Options</b>	<i>seconds</i> —Time interval, in seconds, between enrollment retries. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 3600 <b>Default:</b> 0
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Specifying the Enrollment Properties” on page 587.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	enrollment

## revocation-check

---

**Syntax**

```

revocation-check {
  disable;
  crl {
    refresh-interval number-of-hours;
    url {
      url-name;
    }
  }
}
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security pki ca-profile *ca-profile-name*]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.1.

**Description** Specify the method to verify revocation status of digital certificates for J-series Services Routers and Adaptive Services (AS) and MultiServices PICs installed in M-series and T-series routing platforms.

**Options** **disable**—Disable verification of status of digital certificates.

**crl**—Only certificate revocation list (CRL) is supported. A CRL is a time-stamped list identifying revoked certificates, which is signed by a CA and made available to the participating IPsec peers on a regular periodic basis. By default, **crl** is enabled.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the Certificate Revocation List” on page 587.

**Required Privilege Level** **admin**—To view this statement in the configuration.  
**admin-control**—To add this statement to the configuration.

## security-association

---

See the following sections:

- security-association (JUNOS Software) on page 653
- security-association (JUNOS-FIPS Software) on page 654

### **security-association (JUNOS Software)**

**Syntax** security-association *sa-name* {  
     dynamic {  
         ipsec-policy *policy-name*;  
         replay-window-size (32 | 64);  
     }  
     manual {  
         direction (JUNOS Software) (inbound | outbound | bi-directional) {  
             authentication {  
                 algorithm (hmac-md5-96 | hmac-sha1-96);  
                 key (ascii-text *key* | hexadecimal *key*);  
             }  
             auxiliary-spi *auxiliary-spi-value*;  
             encryption {  
                 algorithm (des-cbc | 3des-cbc);  
                 key (ascii-text *key* | hexadecimal *key*);  
             }  
             protocol ( ah | esp | bundle);  
             spi *spi-value*;  
         }  
         mode (tunnel | transport);  
     }  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ipsec]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure an IPSec security association.

**Options** *name*—Name of the security association.

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Security Associations for IPSec on an ES PIC” on page 556.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**security-association (JUNOS-FIPS Software)**

**Syntax** security-association {  
     manual {  
         direction (bidirectional | inbound | outbound) {  
             protocol esp;  
             spi *spi-value*;  
             encryption {  
                 algorithm 3des-cbc;  
                 key ascii-text *ascii-text-string*;  
             }  
         }  
     }  
 }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ipsec internal]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Define a security association (SA) for internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine communication.

**Options** The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.

**Required Privilege Level** Crypto Officer—To view and add this statement in the configuration.

**Related Topics** *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*

**spi**

---

See the following sections:

- spi (JUNOS Software) on page 655
- spi (JUNOS-FIPS Software) on page 655

**spi (JUNOS Software)**

**Syntax** spi *spi-value*;

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ipsec security-association *sa-name* manual direction (inbound | outbound | bi-directional)]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure SPI for an SA.

**Options** *spi-value*—An arbitrary value that uniquely identifies which SA to use at the receiving host (the destination address in the packet).  
**Range:** 256 through 16639



**NOTE:** Use the auxiliary SPI when you configure the **protocol** statement to use the bundle option.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Manual IPSec Security Associations for an ES PIC” on page 558.

**Required Privilege Level** system—To view this statement in the configuration.  
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**spi (JUNOS-FIPS Software)**

**Syntax** spi *spi-value*;

**Hierarchy Level** [edit security ipsec internal security-association manual direction]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** The Security Parameter Index (SPI) value used for the internal Routing-Engine-to-Routing-Engine IPSec security association (SA) configuration.

**Options** *spi-value*—Integer to use for this SPI.  
**Range:** 256 through 16639

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Internal IPSec for JUNOS-FIPS” on page 604.

**Required Privilege Level** Crypto Officer—To add and view this statement in the configuration.

**Related Topics** *Secure Configuration Guide for Common Criteria and JUNOS-FIPS*

## ssh-known-hosts

---

<b>Syntax</b>	ssh-known-hosts { host { dsa-key key; rsa-key key; rsa1-key key; } }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security ssh-known-hosts]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.
<b>Description</b>	Configure SSH support for known hosts and for administering for SSH host key updates.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>dsa-key</b>—Base64 encoded Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA) key for SSH version 2.</p> <p><b>rsa-key</b>—Base64 encoded public key algorithm that supports encryption and digital signatures for SSH version 1 and SSH version 2.</p> <p><b>rsa1-key</b>—Base64 encoded RSA public key algorithm, which supports encryption and digital signatures for SSH version 1.</p> <p><b>fetch-from-server</b>—Retrieve SSH public host key information from a specified server.</p> <p><b>load-key-file</b>—Import SSH host key information from the <code>/var/tmp/ssh-known-hosts</code> file.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring SSH Host Keys for Secure Copying of Data” on page 601.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>admin—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>



## traceoptions

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> traceoptions {     file <i>filename</i> &lt;files <i>number</i>&gt; &lt;size <i>size</i>&gt;;     flag all;     flag database;     flag general;     flag ike;     flag parse;     flag policy-manager;     flag routing-socket;     flag timer; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit security], [edit services ipsec-vpn]</p> <p>Trace options can be configured at either the [edit security] or the [edit services ipsec-vpn] hierarchy level, but not at both levels.</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Configure security trace options.</p> <p>To specify more than one trace option, include multiple <b>flag</b> statements. Trace option output is recorded in the <code>/var/log/kmd</code> file.</p>
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>files <i>number</i></b>—(Optional) Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file (for example, <code>kmd</code>) reaches its maximum size, it is renamed <code>kmd.0</code>, then <code>kmd.1</code>, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.</p> <p>If you specify a maximum number of files, you must also specify a maximum file size with the <b>size</b> option.  <b>Range:</b> 2 through 1000 files  <b>Default:</b> 0 files</p> <p><b>size <i>size</i></b>—(Optional) Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB). When a trace file (for example, <code>kmd</code>) reaches this size, it is renamed, <code>kmd.0</code>, then <code>kmd.1</code> and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.  <b>Default:</b> 1024 KB</p> <p><b>flag</b>—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple <b>flag</b> statements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>all</b>—Trace all security events.</li> <li>■ <b>database</b>—Trace database events.</li> <li>■ <b>general</b>—Trace general events.</li> </ul>

- `ike`—Trace IKE module processing.
- `parse`—Trace configuration processing.
- `policy-manager`—Trace policy manager processing.
- `routing-socket`—Trace routing socket messages.
- `timer`—Trace internal timer events.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring Tracing Operations for Security Services” on page 598.

**Required Privilege Level** `admin`—To view the configuration.  
`admin-control`—To add this statement to the configuration.

## url

---

**Syntax** `url url-name;`

**Hierarchy Level** `[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name enrollment],`  
`[edit security pki ca-profile ca-profile-name revocation-check crl]`

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.

**Description** (Adaptive services interfaces only) Specify the certificate authority (CA) URL to use in requesting digital certificates or the URL for the Lightweight Access Directory Protocol (LDAP) location from which retrieve the certificate revocation list (CRL).

**Options** `url-name`—URL of CA or URL of LDAP location of CRL.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Specifying an Enrollment URL” on page 586 and “Specifying an LDAP URL” on page 587.

**Required Privilege Level** `admin`—To view the configuration.  
`admin-control`—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics**

- `enrollment`
- `crl`

## validity-period

---

<b>Syntax</b>	validity-period <i>days</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.5.
<b>Description</b>	(Optional) Certificate validity period, in days, from the enrollment start date. If not specified, the issuing certificate authority (CA) sets this time as per its own policy. The start time is when auto-reenrollment is initiated.
<b>Options</b>	<i>days</i> —Number of days that the certificate is valid. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 4095 days <b>Default:</b> Per CA policy
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the Auto-Reenrollment Properties for Automatic Renewal of the Router Certificate from the CA” on page 591
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	admin—To view this statement in the configuration. admin-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	auto-re-enrollment



## **Part 5**

# **Router Chassis**

- Router Chassis Configuration Guidelines on page 663
- Summary of Router Chassis Configuration Statements on page 743



## Chapter 18

# Router Chassis Configuration Guidelines

The configuration mode commands described in this

- Router Chassis Complete Configuration Statements on page 664
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make a Flexible PIC Concentrator Stay Offline on page 667
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make an SFM Stay Offline on page 668
- Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices on page 669
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Use ATM Cell-Relay Accumulation Mode on an ATM1 PIC on page 671
- Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on page 671
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Determine the Conditions That Trigger Alarms on page 674
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Service Packages on Adaptive Services Interfaces on page 708
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs on page 709
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support an External Clock Synchronization Interface for the M320, M40e, and M120 Routing Platforms on page 710
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the Sparse DLCI Mode on Channelized STM1 or Channelized DS3 PICs on page 712
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a SONET PIC to Operate in the Channelized (Multiplexed) Mode on page 712
- Configuring Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming on page 713
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Eight Queues on IQ Interfaces for T-Series and M320 Routing Platforms on page 715
- Configuring Channel Groups and Time Slots for a Channelized E1 Interface on page 716
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized STM1 Interface Virtual Tributary Mapping on page 718
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable ATM2 Intelligent Queuing Layer 2 Circuit Transport Mode on page 718
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support ILMI for Cell Relay Encapsulation on an ATM2 IQ PIC on page 719

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Tunnel Interfaces on MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers on page 720
- Example: Configuring Tunnel Interfaces on a Gigabit Ethernet 40-Port DPC on page 721
- Example: Configuring Tunnel Interfaces on a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-Port DPC on page 721
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable an M160 Router to Operate in Packet Scheduling Mode on page 722
- Configuring the Link Services PIC for Multilink Protocol Support on page 722
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Idle Cell Format and Payload Patterns for ATM Devices on page 723
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable MTU Path Check for a Routing Instance on M-series Routers on page 724
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Redundancy on Routers Having Multiple Routing Engines or Switching Boards on page 725
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support FPC to FEB Connectivity on M120 Routers on page 726
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a Routing Engine to Reboot on Hard Disk Errors on page 728
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Prevent the Resetting of the Factory Default or Rescue Configuration During Current Configuration Failure on J-Series Routers on page 728
- Configuring Larger Delay Buffers to Prevent Congestion And Packet Dropping on page 729
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Entry-Level Configuration on an M320 Router With a Minimum Number of SIBs and PIMs on page 731
- Configuring the uPIM Mode to Run in the Switching or Routing Modes on J-Series Routers on page 732
- Configuring the IP and Ethernet Services Mode in MX-series Routers on page 733
- Configuring J-series Services Router Switching Interfaces on page 734
- Example: Configuring J-series Services Router Switching Interfaces on page 735
- TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Guidelines on page 735

## Router Chassis Complete Configuration Statements

---

You can configure properties of the router chassis, including conditions that activate the red and yellow alarm LEDs on the router craft interface and SONET/SDH framing and concatenation properties for individual Physical Interface Cards (PICs).

To configure router chassis properties, include the following statements at the [edit chassis] hierarchy level:





**NOTE:** Statements at the [edit chassis redundancy] hierarchy level are described in the *JUNOS High Availability Configuration Guide*.

```
chassis {
  aggregated-devices {
    ethernet {
      device-count number;
      lacp {
        system-priority;
        link-protection;
      }
    }
    sonet {
      device-count number;
    }
  }
  alarm {
    interface-type {
      alarm-name (red | yellow | ignore);
    }
  }
  config-button {
    no-clear;
    no-rescue;
    craft-lockout;
  }
  fpc slot-number {
    port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name;
    power (off | on);
    pic pic-number {
      port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name;
      framing (t1 | e1);
      adaptive-services {
        service-package (layer-2 | layer-3);
      }
      aggregate-ports;
      atm-cell-relay-accumulation;
      atm-l2circuit-mode (cell | aal5 | trunk trunk);
      vtmapping number;
      ce1 {
        e1 port-number {
          channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;
        }
      }
      ct3 {
        port port-number {
          t1 link-number {
            channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;
          }
        }
      }
    }
    framing (sdh | sonet);
    idle-cell-format {
```

```

        itu-t;
        payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;
    }
    max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);
    mlfr-uni-nni-bundles number;
    no-concatenate;
    q-pic-large-buffer {
        large-scale;
        small-scale;
    }
    red-buffer-occupancy {
        weighted-averaged [ instant-usage-weight-exponent weight-value ];
    }
    }
    sparse-dlcis;
    traffic-manager {
        ingress-shaping-overhead number;
        mode session-shaping;
        tunnel-services {
            bandwidth (1g | 10g);
            vtmapping (itu-t | klm);
        }
    }
}
fpc-feb-connectivity {
    fpc slot-number feb (slot-number | none);
}
lcc number {
    fpc number {
        pic number {
            atm-cell-relay-accumulation;
            atm-l2circuit-mode (cell | aal5 | trunk trunk);
            framing (sdh | sonet);
            idle-cell-format {
                itu-t;
                payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;
            }
            max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);
            no-concatenate;
        }
    }
    offline;
    online-expected;
}
(packet-scheduling | no-packet-scheduling);
pem {
    minimum number;
}
no-concatenate;
redundancy {
    cfeb slot (always | preferred);
    failover {
        on-disk-failure
        on-loss-of-keepalives;
    }
    feb {
        redundancy-group group-name {
            feb slot-number (backup | primary);
        }
    }
}

```

```

        description description;
        no-auto-failover;
    }
}
port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name;
graceful-switchover;
keepalive-time seconds;
routing-engine slot-number (master | backup | disabled);
sfm slot-number (always | preferred);
ssb slot-number (always | preferred);
}
}
network-services (ethernet | ip);
routing-engine {
    on-disk-failure {
        disk-failure-action (halt | reboot);
    }
}
sfm slot-number {
    power off;
}
sib {
    minimum number;
}
vrf-mtu-check;
vtmapping (km | itu-t);
synchronization {
    signal-type (e1 | t1);
    switching-mode (revertive | non-revertive);
    y-cable-line-termination;
    transmitter-enable;
    validation-interval seconds;
    primary (external-a | external-b);
    secondary (external-a | external-b);
}

```



**NOTE:** The configuration statements at the [edit chassis lcc] hierarchy level apply only to a routing matrix. For information about a routing matrix, see “TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview” on page 735 and the *TX Matrix Platform Hardware Guide*.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make a Flexible PIC Concentrator Stay Offline

By default, a Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC) is configured to restart after a system reboot. To configure an FPC to stay offline and prevent it from restarting, include the `power off` statement at the [edit chassis fpc *slot-number*] hierarchy level:

```

[edit chassis fpc slot-number]
power off;

```



**NOTE:** You can use the `request chassis fpc` operational mode command to take an FPC offline, but the FPC attempts to restart when you enter a `commit` CLI command.

To bring an FPC online that is configured to stay offline and configure it to stay online, include the `power on` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number]
power on;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make an SFM Stay Offline

By default, if you use the `request chassis sfm` CLI command to take an SFM offline, the SFM attempts to restart when you enter a `commit` CLI command. To prevent a restart, you can configure an SFM to stay offline. This feature is useful for repair situations.

To configure an SFM to stay offline, include the `sfm` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
sfm slot-number {
  power off;
}
```

- *slot number*—Slot number in which the SFM is installed.
- *power off*—Take the SFM offline and configure it to remain offline.

For example, the following statement takes an SFM in slot 3 offline:

```
[edit chassis]
sfm 3 power off;
```

Use the `show chassis sfm` CLI command to confirm the offline status:

```
user@host# show chassis sfm
```

Slot	State	Temp (C)	CPU Utilization (%)		Memory Utilization (%)		
			Total	Interrupt	DRAM (MB)	Heap	Buffer
0	Online	34	2	0	64	16	47
1	Online	38	2	0	64	16	47
2	Online	42	2	0	64	16	47
3	Offline	--- Configured power off ---					

To bring the SFM back online, delete the `edit chassis sfm` statement and then commit the configuration.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices

JUNOS software supports the aggregation of physical devices into defined virtual links, such as the link aggregation of Ethernet interfaces defined by the IEEE 802.3ad standard.

Tasks for configuring aggregated devices are:

1. Configuring Virtual Links for Aggregated Devices on page 669
2. Configuring LACP Link Protection at the Chassis Level on page 669
3. Enabling LACP Link Protection on page 670
4. Configuring System Priority on page 671

### Configuring Virtual Links for Aggregated Devices

To define the virtual links, you need to specify the associations between physical and logical devices within the `[edit interfaces]` hierarchy, and assign the correct number of logical devices by including the `device-count` statement at the `[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet]` and `[edit chassis aggregated-devices sonet]` hierarchy levels:

```
[edit chassis]
aggregated-devices {
  ethernet {
    device-count number;
  }
  sonet {
    device-count number;
  }
}
```

The maximum number of Ethernet logical interfaces you can configure is 128. The aggregated Ethernet interfaces are numbered from `ae0` through `ae127`. The maximum number of SONET/SDH logical interfaces is 16. The aggregated SONET/SDH interfaces are numbered from `as0` through `as15`.

### Configuring LACP Link Protection at the Chassis Level

Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) is one method of bundling several physical interfaces to form one logical interface. You can configure both VLAN-tagged and untagged aggregated Ethernet with or without LACP enabled. LACP exchanges are made between actors and partners. An actor is the local interface in an LACP exchange. A partner is the remote interface in an LACP exchange.

LACP link protection enables you to force active and standby links within an aggregated Ethernet. You configure LACP link protection by configuring the `link-protection` and `system-priority` statements at either the chassis or interface level and by configuring port priority at the interface level using the `port-priority` statement. Configuring LACP parameters at the chassis level results in all aggregated Ethernet

interfaces using these values unless overridden by LACP configuration on a specific interface.

```
[edit chassis]
aggregated-devices {
  ethernet {
    lacp {
      link-protection {
        non-revertive;
      }
      system-priority priority;
    }
  }
}
```

You configure LACP link protection by using the **link-protection** and **system-priority** statements and define port priority at the port level using the **port-priority** statement. Configuring LACP parameters at the chassis level results in all aggregated Ethernet interfaces using the defined configuration unless overridden on a specific interface.



**NOTE:** LACP link protection also uses port priority. You can configure port priority at the Ethernet interface **[gigether-options]** hierarchy level using the **port-priority** statement. If you choose not to configure port priority, LACP link protection uses the default value for port priority (127). See the *JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide* for detailed information about LACP and how to configure it on individual aggregated Ethernet interfaces.

---

## Enabling LACP Link Protection

To enable LACP link protection for aggregated Ethernet interfaces on the chassis, use the **link-protection** statement at the **[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet lacp]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet lacp]
link-protection {
  non-revertive;
}
```

By default, LACP link protection reverts to a higher-priority (lower-numbered) link when that higher-priority link becomes operational or a link is added to the aggregator that is determined to be higher in priority. However, you can suppress link calculation by adding the **non-revertive** statement to the LACP link protection configuration. In non-revertive mode, once a link is active and collecting and distributing packets, the subsequent addition of a higher-priority (better) link does not result in a switch, and the current link remains active.



**CAUTION:** If both ends of an aggregator have LACP link protection enabled, make sure to configure both ends of the aggregator to use the same mode. Mismatching LACP link protection modes can result in lost traffic.

---

## Configuring System Priority

To configure LACP system priority for aggregated Ethernet interfaces on the chassis, use the `system-priority` statement at the `[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet lacp]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet lacp]
system-priority priority;
```

The system priority is a 2-octet binary value that is part of the LACP system ID. The LACP system ID consists of the system priority as the two most-significant octets and the interface MAC address as the six least-significant octets. The system with the numerically lower value for system priority has the higher priority. By default, system priority is 127, with a range of 0 to 65535.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Use ATM Cell-Relay Accumulation Mode on an ATM1 PIC

You can configure an Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) 1 PIC to use cell-relay accumulation mode. In this mode, the incoming cells (one to eight cells) are packaged into a single packet and forwarded to the label-switched path (LSP). At the edge router, this packet is divided into individual cells and transmitted over the ATM interface.



**NOTE:** When you configure an ATM PIC to use cell-relay accumulation, all ports on the ATM PIC use cell-relay accumulation mode.

To configure an ATM PIC to use cell-relay accumulation mode, include the `atm-cell-relay-accumulation` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ]
atm-cell-relay-accumulation;
```

On a TX Matrix platform, include the `atm-cell-relay-accumulation` statement at the `[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
atm-cell-relay-accumulation;
```

## Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances

- Port-Mirroring Instances Overview on page 672
- Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on MX-series Routers on page 672
- Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on M320 Routers on page 673
- Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on M120 Routers on page 674

## Port-Mirroring Instances Overview

You can configure port mirroring for IPv4 and IPv6 traffic on all M-series, T-series, and MX-series routing platforms. In addition, on the M7i, M10i, M120, M320, and MX-series routers, you can configure port mirroring for Layer 2 VPLS traffic.

You configure global port mirroring by including the **port-mirroring** statement at the **[edit forwarding-options]** hierarchy level. Configuring port-mirroring properties globally results in the properties being applied system-wide to all the Packet Forwarding Engines and their respective ports.

On MX-series, M320, and M120 routers, you can configure named port-mirroring instances for Layer 2 VPLS traffic. Configuring port-mirroring instances enables you to customize each instance with different properties for input-sampling and port-mirroring output destinations, instead of having to use a single system-wide configuration for port mirroring.

You configure multiple port-mirroring instances by including the **instance port-mirroring-instance-name** statement at the **[edit forwarding-options port-mirroring]** hierarchy level. You can then associate individual port-mirroring instances with an FPC, PIC, or FEB (depending on the routing platform).

For more information about configuring port mirroring on all routing platforms, see the *JUNOS Policy Framework Configuration Guide*. For more information on configuring port mirroring for Layer 2 VPLS traffic on MX-series routers, see the *JUNOS MX-series Layer 2 Configuration Guide*.

- Related Topics**
- Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on MX-series Routers on page 672
  - Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on M320 Routers on page 673
  - Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on M120 Routers on page 674

## Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on MX-series Routers

You can configure port-mirroring instances both at the DPC level and at the PIC level on MX-series routers, as described in the following topics:

- Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances at the DPC Level on page 672
- Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances at the PIC Level on page 673

### Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances at the DPC Level

A port-mirroring instance configured at the FPC level for the DPC is bound to all the Packet Forwarding Engines on the DPC.

To associate a port-mirroring instance with a specific DPC and its Packet Forwarding Engines, include the **port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name** statement at the **[edit chassis fpc slot-number]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
  fpc slot-number {
```



```
port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name;  
}
```

The properties of the port-mirroring instance associated with the DPC override any global port-mirroring properties (configured by including the **port-mirroring** statement at the [edit forwarding-options] hierarchy level).

### Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances at the PIC Level

For MX-series routers, there is a one-to-one mapping of Packet Forwarding Engines and PICs. Therefore, a port-mirroring instance configured at the PIC level is bound to its Packet Forwarding Engines and ports.

To associate a port-mirroring instance with a specific Packet Forwarding Engine, include the **port-mirror-instance** *port-mirroring-instance-name* statement at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number pic slot-number] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]  
fpc slot-number {  
  port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name-a;  
  pic slot-number {  
    port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name-b;  
  }  
}
```

The properties of the port-mirroring instance associated with the PIC override the properties of the port-mirroring instance associated with the DPC (configured by including the **port-mirroring** *port-mirroring-instance-name* statement at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number] hierarchy level).

For more information about configuring port mirroring for Layer 2 VPLS traffic on MX-series routers, see the *JUNOS MX-series Layer 2 Configuration Guide*.

### Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on M320 Routers

You can associate only one port-mirroring instance with a specific FPC on an M320 router.

To associate a port-mirroring instance with a specific FPC, include the **port-mirror-instance** *port-mirroring-instance-name* statement at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]  
fpc slot-number {  
  port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name;  
}
```

The properties of the port-mirroring instance associated with an FPC override any global port-mirroring properties (configured by including the **port-mirroring** statement at the [edit forwarding-options] hierarchy level.)

**NOTE:**

- Layer 2 VPLS port mirroring is supported only for Enhanced III FPCs on M320 routers.
- Ensure that the *port-mirroring-instance-name* specified at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number] hierarchy level matches the *port-mirroring-instance-name* configured at the [edit forwarding-options port-mirroring instance *port-mirroring-instance-name*] hierarchy level.

**Related Topics** ■ Port-Mirroring Instances Overview on page 672

## Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on M120 Routers

You can associate only one port-mirroring instance with a specific FEB on an M120 router.

To associate a port-mirroring instance with a FEB, include the *port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name* statement at the [edit chassis feb slot-number] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
feb slot-number {
  port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name;
}
```

The properties of the port-mirroring instance associated with the FEB override any global port-mirroring properties (configured by including the *port-mirroring* statement at the [edit forwarding-options] hierarchy level.)



**NOTE:** In a FEB redundancy group, you must associate a port-mirroring instance only with the primary FEB. During failover or switchover, the port-mirroring instance is automatically associated with the backup FEB that fails over or switches over as the primary FEB.

For information about configuring FPC-to-FEB connectivity on an M120 router, see “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support FPC to FEB Connectivity on M120 Routers” on page 726.

**Related Topics** ■ Port-Mirroring Instances Overview on page 672

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Determine the Conditions That Trigger Alarms

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Determine Conditions That Trigger Alarms on Different Interface Types on page 675
- System-Wide Alarms and Alarms for Each Interface Type on page 675
- Chassis Conditions That Trigger Alarms on page 677

- Silencing External Devices Connected to the Alarm Relay Contacts on page 707
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Physical Operation of the Craft Interface on page 707

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Determine Conditions That Trigger Alarms on Different Interface Types

For the different types of PICs, you can configure which conditions trigger alarms and whether they trigger a red or yellow alarm. Red alarm conditions light the RED ALARM LED on the router's craft interface and trigger an audible alarm if one is connected to the contacts on the craft interface. Yellow alarm conditions light the YELLOW ALARM LED on the router's craft interface and trigger an audible alarm if one is connected to the craft interface.



**NOTE:** By default, any failure condition on the integrated-services interface (Adaptive Services PIC) triggers a red alarm.

To configure conditions that trigger alarms and that can occur on any interface of the specified type, include the `alarm` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level.

```
[edit chassis]
alarm {
  interface-type {
    alarm-name (red | yellow | ignore);
  }
}
```

*alarm-name* is the name of an alarm.

## System-Wide Alarms and Alarms for Each Interface Type

Table 37 on page 676 lists the system-wide alarms and the alarms for each interface type.

**Table 37: Configurable PIC Alarm Conditions**

Interface/System	Alarm Condition	Configuration Option
<b>SONET/SDH and ATM</b>	Link alarm indication signal	ais-l
	Path alarm indication signal	ais-p
	Signal degrade (SD)	ber-sd
	Signal fail (SF)	ber-sf
	Loss of cell delineation (ATM only)	locd
	Loss of framing	lof
	Loss of light	lol
	Loss of pointer	lop-p
	Loss of signal	los
	Phase locked loop out of lock	pll
	Synchronous transport signal (STS) payload label (C2) mismatch	plm-p
	Line remote failure indication	rfl-l
	Path remote failure indication	rfl-p
	STS path (C2) unequipped	uneq-p
<b>E3/T3</b>	Alarm indicator signal	ais
	Excessive numbers of zeros	exz
	Failure of the far end	ferf
	Idle alarm	idle
	Line code violation	lcv
	Loss of frame	lof
	Loss of signal	los
	Phase locked loop out of lock	pll
	Yellow alarm	ylw
<b>Ethernet</b>	Link has gone down	link-down
<b>DS1</b>	Alarm indicator signal	ais
	Yellow alarm	ylw

**Table 37: Configurable PIC Alarm Conditions** *(continued)*

Interface/System	Alarm Condition	Configuration Option
<b>Integrated-services</b>	Hardware or software failure	failure
<b>Management-Ethernet</b>	Link has gone down	link-down

## Chassis Conditions That Trigger Alarms

Various conditions related to the chassis components trigger yellow and red alarms. You cannot configure these conditions. Table 38 on page 677 through “Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M5 or M10 Router” on page 677 list the alarms that the chassis components can generate. For information about chassis alarms for J-series Services Routers, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*. For information about chassis alarms for the TX Matrix platform, see the *TX Matrix Platform Hardware Guide*.

### Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M5 or M10 Router

Table 38 on page 677 lists the alarms that the chassis components can generate on an M5 or M10 Internet router.

**Table 38: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M5 or M10 Router**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Alternative media</b>	The router boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/">www.juniper.net/</a>  or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Craft interface</b>	The craft interface has failed.	Replace failed craft interface.	Red
<b>Fan trays</b>	One fan tray has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Yellow
	Two or more fan trays have been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan trays.	Red
	One fan in the chassis is not spinning or is spinning below required speed.	Replace failed fan tray.	Red

**Table 38: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M5 or M10 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Forwarding Engine Board (FEB)</b>	The control board has failed. If this occurs, the board attempts to reboot.	Replace failed FEB.	Red
<b>Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC)</b>	An FPC has failed. If this occurs, the FPC attempts to reboot. If the FEB sees that an FPC is rebooting too often, it shuts down the FPC.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
<b>Hot swapping</b>	Too many hot-swap interrupts are occurring. This message generally indicates that a hardware component that plugs into the router's backplane from the front (generally, an FPC) is broken.	Replace failed component.	Red
<b>Routing Engine</b>	Error in reading or writing CompactFlash card.	Reformat CompactFlash card and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from hard disk.	Install bootable image on CompactFlash card. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	CompactFlash card missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Hard disk missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
<b>Power supplies</b>	A power supply has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing power supply.	Yellow
	A power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply.	Red

**Table 38: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M5 or M10 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Temperature</b>	The chassis temperature has exceeded 55 degrees C (131 degrees F), the fans have been turned on to full speed, and one or more fans have failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and the fans have been turned on to full speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and a fan has failed. If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 75 degrees C (167 degrees F). If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The temperature sensor has failed.	<p>Open a support case using the Case Manager link at</p> <p><a href="http://www.juniper.net/">www.juniper.net/</a></p> <p>or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).</p>	Red

Table 39 on page 680 lists the alarms that the chassis components can generate on an M7i or M10i Internet router.

**Table 39: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M7i or M10i Router**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Alternative media</b>	The router boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
	For an M7i router, CFEB has failed. If this occurs, the board attempts to reboot.	Replace failed CFEB.	Red
	For an M10i router, both control boards have been removed or have failed.	Replace failed or missing CFEB.	Red
	Too many hard errors in CFEB memory.	Replace failed CFEB.	Red
	Too many soft errors in CFEB memory.	Replace failed CFEB.	Red
<b>Fan trays</b>	A CFEB microcode download has failed.	Replace failed CFEB.	Red
	A fan has failed.	Replace failed fan tray.	Red
	For an M7i router, a fan tray has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Red
<b>Hot swapping</b>	For an M10i router, both fan trays are absent from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Red
	Too many hot-swap interrupts are occurring. This message generally indicates that a hardware component that plugs into the router's midplane from the front is broken.	Replace failed component.	Red



**Table 39: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M7i or M10i Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Power supplies</b>	A power supply has been removed.	Insert missing power supply.	Yellow
	A power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply.	Red
	For an M10i router, only one power supply is operating.	Insert or replace secondary power supply.	Red
<b>Routing Engine</b>	Error in reading or writing hard disk.	Reformat hard disk and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	Error in reading or writing CompactFlash card.	Reformat CompactFlash card and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from hard disk. This alarm only applies, if you have an optional CompactFlash card.	Install bootable image on CompactFlash card. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	CompactFlash card missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Hard disk missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Routing Engine failed to boot.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red

**Table 39: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions on an M7i or M10i Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Temperature</b>	The chassis temperature has exceeded 55 degrees C (131 degrees F), the fans have been turned on to full speed, and one or more fans have failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and the fans have been turned on to full speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and a fan has failed. If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 75 degrees C (167 degrees F). If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The temperature sensor has failed.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Red

## Chassis Components Alarm Conditions for an M20 Router

Table 40 on page 683 lists the alarms that the chassis components can generate on an M20 Internet router.

**Table 40: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions for an M20 Router**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Alternative media</b>	The router boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Craft interface</b>	The craft interface has failed.	Replace failed craft interface.	Red
<b>Fan trays</b>	One fan tray has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Yellow
	Two or more fan trays have been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan trays.	Red
	One fan in the chassis is not spinning or is spinning below requires speed.	Replace fan tray.	Red
<b>FPC</b>	An FPC has failed. If this occurs, the FPC attempts to reboot. If the System and Switch Board (SSB) sees that an FPC is rebooting too often, it shuts down the FPC.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
<b>Hot swapping</b>	Too many hot-swap interrupts are occurring. This message generally indicates that a hardware component that plugs in to the router's backplane from the front (generally, an FPC) is broken.	Replace failed component.	Red

**Table 40: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions for an M20 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Routing Engine</b>	Error in reading or writing hard disk.	Reformat hard disk and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	Error in reading or writing CompactFlash card.	Reformat CompactFlash card and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from default backup Routing Engine. If you manually switched mastership, ignore this alarm condition.	Install bootable image on default master Routing Engine. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from hard disk.	Install bootable image on CompactFlash . If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	CompactFlash card missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Hard disk missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Routing Engine failed to boot.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
<b>Power supplies</b>	A power supply has been removed from the chassis.	Insert power supply into empty slot.	Yellow
	A power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply.	Red
<b>SSB</b>	The control board has failed. If this occurs, the board attempts to reboot.	Replace failed control board.	Red

**Table 40: Chassis Components Alarm Conditions for an M20 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Temperature</b>	The chassis temperature has exceeded 55 degrees C (131 degrees F), the fans have been turned on to full speed, and one or more fans have failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and the fans have been turned on to full speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and a fan has failed. If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 75 degrees C (167 degrees F). If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The temperature sensor has failed.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Red

## Chassis Component alarm Conditions for an M120 Router

Table 41 on page 686 lists the alarms that the chassis components can generate on an M120 router.

**Table 41: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M120 Router**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Air filters</b>	Change air filter.	Change air filter.	Yellow
<b>Alternative media</b>	The router boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Control Board (CB)</b>	A CB Ethernet switch has failed.	Replace failed CB.	Yellow
	A CB has been removed.	Insert CB into empty slot.	Red
	A CB has failed.	Replace failed CB.	Red
<b>Craft interface</b>	The craft interface has failed.	Replace failed craft interface.	Red
<b>Fan trays</b>	One fan tray has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Yellow
	Two or more fan trays have been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan trays.	Red
	One fan in the chassis is not spinning or is spinning below required speed.	Replace fan tray.	Red
<b>Forwarding Engine Boards (FEBs)</b>	A spare FEB has failed.	Replace failed FEB.	Yellow
	A spare FEB has been removed.	Insert FEB into empty slot.	Yellow
	A FEB is offline.	Check FEB. Remove and reinsert the FEB. If this fails, replace failed FEB.	Yellow
	A FEB has failed.	Replace failed FEB.	Red
	A FEB has been removed.	Insert FEB into empty slot.	Red

**Table 41: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M120 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Host subsystem</b>	A host subsystem has failed.	Replace the host subsystem.	Yellow
	A host subsystem has been removed.	Insert host subsystem into empty slot.	Red
<b>Hot swapping</b>	Too many hot-swap interrupts are occurring. This message generally indicates that a hardware component that plugs into the router's backplane from the front (generally, an FPC) is broken.	Replace failed component.	Red
<b>Power supplies</b>	A power supply has been removed from the chassis.	Insert power supply into empty slot.	Yellow
	A power supply has a high temperature.	Replace failed power supply or power entry module.	Red
	A power supply input has failed.	Check power supply input connection.	Red
	A power supply output has failed.	Check power supply output connection.	Red
	A power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply.	Red

**Table 41: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M120 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Routing Engine</b>	Error in reading or writing hard disk.	Reformat hard disk and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	Error in reading or writing CompactFlash card.	Reformat CompactFlash and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from default backup Routing Engine. If you manually switched mastership, ignore this alarm condition.	Install bootable image on default master Routing Engine. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from hard disk.	Install bootable image on CompactFlash card. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	CompactFlash card missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Hard disk missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Routing Engine failed to boot.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red



**Table 41: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M120 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Temperature</b>	The chassis temperature has exceeded 55 degrees C (131 degrees F), the fans have been turned on to full speed, and one or more fans have failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and the fans have been turned on to full speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and a fan has failed. If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	Chassis temperature has exceeded 75 degrees C (167 degrees F). If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The temperature sensor has failed.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Red

## Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40 Router

Table 42 on page 690 lists the alarms that the chassis components can generate on an M40 Internet router.

**Table 42: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40 Router**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Air filter</b>	Change air filter.	Change air filter.	Yellow
<b>Alternative media</b>	The router boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Craft interface</b>	The craft interface has failed.	Replace failed craft interface.	Red
<b>Fan trays</b>	One fan tray has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Yellow
	Two or more fan trays have been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan trays.	Red
	One fan in the chassis is not spinning or is spinning below required speed.	Replace fan tray.	Red
<b>FPC</b>	An FPC has an out of range or invalid temperature reading.	Replace failed FPC.	Yellow
	An FPC microcode download has failed.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	An FPC has failed. If this occurs, the FPC attempts to reboot. If the SCB sees that an FPC is rebooting too often, it shuts down the FPC.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	Too many hard errors in FPC memory.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	Too many soft errors in FPC memory.	Replace failed FPC.	Red

**Table 42: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Hot swapping</b>	Too many hot-swap interrupts are occurring. This message generally indicates that a hardware component that plugs into the router's backplane from the front (generally, an FPC) is broken.	Replace failed component.	Red
<b>Power supplies</b>	A power supply has been removed from the chassis.	Insert power supply into empty slot.	Yellow
	A power supply temperature sensor has failed.	Replace failed power supply or power entry module.	Yellow
	A power supply fan has failed.	Replace failed power supply fan.	Yellow
	A power supply has high temperature.	Replace failed power supply or power entry module.	Red
	A 5-V power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply or power entry module.	Red
	A 3.3-V power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply or power entry module.	Red
	A 2.5-V power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply or power entry module.	Red
	A power supply input has failed.	Check power supply input connection.	Red
	A power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply or power entry module.	Red

**Table 42: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Routing Engine</b>	Error in reading or writing hard disk.	Reformat hard disk and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	Error in reading or writing CompactFlash card.	Reformat CompactFlash and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from default backup Routing Engine. If you manually switched mastership, ignore this alarm condition.	Install bootable image on default master Routing Engine. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from hard disk.	Install bootable image on CompactFlash card. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	CompactFlash card missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Hard disk missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Routing Engine failed to boot.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
<b>SCB</b>	The System Control Board (SCB) has failed. If this occurs, the board attempts to reboot.	Replace failed SCB.	Red

**Table 42: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Temperature</b>	The chassis temperature has exceeded 55 degrees C (131 degrees F), the fans have been turned on to full speed, and one or more fans have failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and the fans have been turned on to full speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and a fan has failed. If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 75 degrees C (167 degrees F). If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The temperature sensor has failed.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Red

### Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40e or M160 Router

Table 43 on page 694 lists the alarms that the chassis components can generate on an M40e or M160 Internet router.

**Table 43: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40e or M160 Router**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Air filter</b>	Change air filter.	Change air filter	Yellow
<b>Alternative media</b>	The router boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Connector Interface Panel (CIP)</b>	A CIP is missing.	Insert CIP into empty slot.	Red
<b>Craft interface</b>	The craft interface has failed.	Replace failed craft interface.	Red
<b>Fan trays</b>	One fan tray has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Yellow
	Two or more fan trays have been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan trays.	Red
	One fan in the chassis is not spinning or spinning below required speed.	Replace fan tray.	Red
<b>FPC</b>	An FPC has an out of range or invalid temperature reading.	Replace failed FPC.	Yellow
	An FPC microcode download has failed.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	An FPC has failed. If this occurs, the FPC attempts to reboot. If the MCS sees that an FPC is rebooting too often, it shuts down the FPC.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	Too many hard errors in FPC memory.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	Too many soft errors in FPC memory.	Replace failed FPC.	Red

**Table 43: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40e or M160 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Hot swapping</b>	Too many hot-swap interrupts are occurring. This message generally indicates that a hardware component that plugs into the router's backplane from the front (generally, an FPC) is broken.	Replace failed component.	Red
<b>Miscellaneous Control Subsystem (MCS)</b>	An MCS has an out of range or invalid temperature reading.	Replace failed MCS.	Yellow
	MCS0 has been removed.	Reinstall MCS0.	Yellow
	An MCS has failed.	Replace failed MCS.	Red
<b>Packet Forwarding Engine Clock Generator (PCG)</b>	A backup PCG is offline.	Set backup PCG online.	Yellow
	A PCG has an out of range or invalid temperature reading.	Replace failed PCG.	Yellow
	A PCG has been removed.	Insert PCG into empty slot.	Yellow
	A PCG has failed to come online.	Replace failed PCG.	Red

**Table 43: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40e or M160 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Routing Engine</b>	Error in reading or writing hard disk.	Reformat hard disk and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	Error in reading or writing CompactFlash card.	Reformat CompactFlash and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from default backup Routing Engine. If you manually switched mastership, ignore this alarm condition.	Install bootable image on default master Routing Engine. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from hard disk.	Install bootable image on CompactFlash card. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	CompactFlash card missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Hard disk missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Routing Engine failed to boot.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
<b>Power supplies</b>	A power supply has been removed from the chassis.	Insert power supply into empty slot.	Yellow
	A power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply.	Red
<b>Switching and Forwarding Module (SFM)</b>	An SFM has an out of range or invalid temperature reading on SPP.	Replace failed SFM.	Yellow
	An SFM has an out of range or invalid temperature reading on SPR.	Replace failed SFM.	Yellow
	An SFM is offline.	Set SFM online.	Yellow
	An SFM has failed.	Replace failed SFM.	Red
	An SFM has been removed from the chassis.	Insert SFM into empty slot.	Red
	All SFMs are offline or missing from the chassis.	Insert SFMs into empty slots or set all SFMs online.	Red



**Table 43: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M40e or M160 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Temperature</b>	The chassis temperature has exceeded 55 degrees C (131 degrees F), the fans have been turned on to full speed, and one or more fans have failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and the fans have been turned on to full speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and a fan has failed. If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 75 degrees C (167 degrees F). If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The temperature sensor has failed.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Red

## Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M320 Router

Table 44 on page 698 lists the alarms that the chassis components can generate on an M320 Internet router.

**Table 44: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M320 Router**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Air filters</b>	Change air filter.	Change air filter.	Yellow
<b>Alternative media</b>	The router boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Control Board (CB)</b>	A CB has been removed.	Insert CB into empty slot.	Yellow
	A CB temperature sensor alarm has failed.	Replace failed CB.	Yellow
	A CB has failed.	Replace failed CB.	Red
<b>CIP</b>	A CIP is missing.	Insert CIP into empty slot.	Red
<b>Craft interface</b>	The craft interface has failed.	Replace failed craft interface.	Red
<b>Fan trays</b>	One fan tray has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Yellow
	Two or more fan trays have been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan trays.	Red
	One fan in the chassis is not spinning or is spinning below required speed.	Replace fan tray.	Red

**Table 44: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M320 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>FPC</b>	An FPC has an out of range or invalid temperature reading.	Replace failed FPC.	Yellow
	An FPC microcode download has failed.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	An FPC has failed. If this occurs, the FPC attempts to reboot. If the CB sees that an FPC is rebooting too often, it shuts down the FPC.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	Too many hard errors in FPC memory.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
	Too many soft errors in FPC memory.	Replace failed FPC.	Red
<b>Hot swapping</b>	Too many hot-swap interrupts are occurring. This message generally indicates that a hardware component that plugs into the router's backplane from the front (generally, an FPC) is broken.	Replace failed component.	Red
<b>Power supplies</b>	A power supply has been removed from the chassis.	Insert power supply into empty slot.	Yellow
	A power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply.	Red

**Table 44: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M320 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Routing Engine</b>	Error in reading or writing hard disk.	Reformat hard disk and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	Error in reading or writing CompactFlash card.	Reformat CompactFlash and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from default backup Routing Engine. If you manually switched mastership, ignore this alarm condition.	Install bootable image on default master Routing Engine. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from hard disk.	Install bootable image on CompactFlash card. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	CompactFlash card missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Hard disk missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Routing Engine failed to boot.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
<b>Switch Interface Board (SIB)</b>	A spare SIB is missing.	Insert spare SIB in to empty slot.	Yellow
	A SIB has failed.	Replace failed SIB.	Yellow
	A spare SIB has failed.	Replace failed SIB.	Yellow
	A SIB has an out of range or invalid temperature reading.	Replace failed SIB.	Yellow
	A SIB is missing.	Insert SIB into empty slot.	Red
	A SIB has failed.	Replace failed SIB.	Red

**Table 44: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an M320 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Temperature</b>	The chassis temperature has exceeded 55 degrees C (131 degrees F), the fans have been turned on to full speed, and one or more fans have failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and the fans have been turned on to full speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and a fan has failed. If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	Chassis temperature has exceeded 75 degrees C (167 degrees F). If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The temperature sensor has failed.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Red

## Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an MX240, MX480, or MX960 Router

Table 45 on page 702 lists the alarms that the chassis components can generate on an MX-series router.

**Table 45: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an MX240, MX480, or MX960 Router**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Air filters</b>	Change air filter.	Change air filter.	Yellow
<b>Alternative media</b>	The router boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Craft interface</b>	The craft interface has failed.	Replace failed craft interface.	Red
<b>Dense Port Concentrators (DPC)s</b>	A DPC is offline.	Check DPC. Remove and reinsert the DPC. If this fails, replace failed DPC.	Yellow
	A DPC has failed.	Replace failed DPC.	Red
	A DPC has been removed.	Insert DPC into empty slot.	Red
<b>Fan trays</b>	A fan tray has been removed from the chassis.	Install missing fan tray.	Red
	One fan in the chassis is not spinning or is spinning below required speed.	Replace fan tray.	Red
<b>Host subsystem</b>	A host subsystem has been removed.	Insert host subsystem into empty slot.	Yellow
	A host subsystem has failed.	Replace failed host subsystem.	Red
<b>Hot swapping</b>	Too many hot-swap interrupts are occurring. This message generally indicates that a hardware component that plugs into the router's backplane from the front (generally, an FPC) is broken.	Replace failed component.	Red

**Table 45: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an MX240, MX480, or MX960 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Power supplies</b>	A power supply has been removed from the chassis.	Insert power supply into empty slot.	Yellow
	A power supply has a high temperature.	Replace failed power supply or power entry module.	Red
	A power supply input has failed.	Check power supply input connection.	Red
	A power supply output has failed.	Check power supply output connection.	Red
	A power supply has failed.	Replace failed power supply.	Red
	Invalid AC power supply configuration.	When two AC power supplies are installed, insert one power supply into an odd-numbered slot and the other power supply into an even-numbered slot.	Red
	Invalid DC power supply configuration.	When two DC power supplies are installed, insert one power supply into an odd-numbered slot and the other power supply into an even-numbered slot.	Red
	Mix of AC and DC power supplies.	Do not mix AC and DC power supplies. For DC power, remove the AC power supply. For AC power, remove the DC power supply.	Red
	Not enough power supplies.	Install an additional power supply.	Red

**Table 45: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an MX240, MX480, or MX960 Router** *(continued)*

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Routing Engine</b>	Error in reading or writing hard disk.	Reformat hard disk and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	Error in reading or writing CompactFlash card.	Reformat CompactFlash and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from default backup Routing Engine. If you manually switched mastership, ignore this alarm condition.	Install bootable image on default master Routing Engine. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	System booted from hard disk.	Install bootable image on CompactFlash card. If this fails, replace failed Routing Engine.	Yellow
	CompactFlash card missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Hard disk missing in boot list.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
	Routing Engine failed to boot.	Replace failed Routing Engine.	Red
<b>System Control Board (SCB)</b>	An SCB has been removed.	Insert SCB into empty slot.	Yellow
	An SCB temperature sensor alarm has failed.	Replace failed SCB.	Yellow
	An SCB has failed.	Replace failed SCB.	Red



**Table 45: Chassis Component Alarm Conditions for an MX240, MX480, or MX960 Router** (continued)

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Temperature</b>	The chassis temperature has exceeded 55 degrees C (131 degrees F), the fans have been turned on to full speed, and one or more fans have failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and the fans have been turned on to full speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Yellow
	The chassis temperature has exceeded 65 degrees C (149 degrees F), and a fan has failed. If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	Chassis temperature has exceeded 75 degrees C (167 degrees F). If this condition persists for more than 4 minutes, the router shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check room temperature.</li> <li>■ Check air filter and replace it.</li> <li>■ Check airflow.</li> <li>■ Check fan.</li> </ul>	Red
	The temperature sensor has failed.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Red

## Backup Routing Engine Alarms

For routers with master and backup Routing Engines, a master Routing Engine can generate alarms for events that occur on a backup Routing Engine. Table 46 on page 706 lists chassis alarms generated for a backup Routing Engine.



**NOTE:** Because the failure occurs on the backup Routing Engine, alarm severity for some events (such as Ethernet interface failures) is yellow instead of red.



**NOTE:** For information about configuring redundant Routing Engines, see the *JUNOS High Availability Configuration Guide*.

**Table 46: Backup Routing Engine Alarms**

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>Alternative media</b>	The backup Routing Engine boots from an alternate boot device, the hard disk. The CompactFlash card is typically the primary boot device. The Routing Engine boots from the hard disk when the primary boot device fails.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Boot Device</b>	The boot device (CompactFlash or hard disk) is missing in boot list on the backup Routing Engine.	Replace failed backup Routing Engine.	Red
<b>Ethernet</b>	The Ethernet management interface (fxp0) on the backup Routing Engine is down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check the interface cable connection.</li> <li>■ Reboot the system.</li> <li>■ If the alarm recurs, open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States)</li> </ul>	Yellow

**Table 46: Backup Routing Engine Alarms** (continued)

Chassis Component	Alarm Condition	Remedy	Alarm Severity
<b>FRU Offline</b>	The backup Routing Engine has stopped communicating with the master Routing Engine.	Open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">http://www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).	Yellow
<b>Hard Disk</b>	Error in reading or writing hard disk on the backup Routing Engine.	Reformat hard disk and install bootable image. If this fails, replace failed backup Routing Engine.	Yellow
<b>Multibit Memory ECC</b>	The backup Routing Engine reports a multibit ECC error.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Reboot the system with the board reset button on the backup Routing Engine.</li> <li>■ If the alarm recurs, open a support case using the Case Manager link at <a href="http://www.juniper.net/support/">www.juniper.net/support/</a> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States)</li> </ul>	Yellow

### Silencing External Devices Connected to the Alarm Relay Contacts

You can manually silence external devices connected to the alarm relay contacts. To silence the external devices, press the alarm cutoff button located on the craft interface front panel.

Silencing the device does not remove the alarm messages from the display (if present on the router) or extinguish the alarm LEDs. In addition, new alarms that occur after an external device is silenced reactivate the external device.

### Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Physical Operation of the Craft Interface

You can disable the physical operation of the craft interface front panel on the routing platform. When you disable the operation of the craft interface, the buttons on the front panel, such as the alarm cutoff button, no longer function. To disable the craft interface operation, include the `craft-lockout` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
```

```
craft-lockout;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Service Packages on Adaptive Services Interfaces

---

For Adaptive Services (AS) PICs, MultiServices PICs, and the internal Adaptive Services Module (ASM) in the M7i platform, there are two service packages: Layer 2 and Layer 3. Both service packages are supported on all adaptive services interfaces, but you can enable only one service package per PIC, with the exception of the combined package supported on the ASM. On a single routing platform, you can enable both service packages by installing two or more PICs on the platform.

You enable service packages per PIC, not per port. For example, if you configure the Layer 2 service package, the entire PIC uses the configured package. To enable a service package, include the `service-package` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number adaptive-services]` hierarchy level, and specify `layer-2` or `layer-3`:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number adaptive-services]
service-package (layer-2 | layer-3);
```

To determine which package an AS PIC supports, issue the `show chassis hardware` command: if the PIC supports the Layer 2 package, it is listed as **Link Services II**, and if it supports the Layer 3 package, it is listed as **Adaptive Services II**. To determine which package a MultiServices PIC supports, issue the `show chassis pic fpc-slot slot-number pic-slot slot-number` command. The **Package** field displays the value `Layer-2` or `Layer-3`.



**NOTE:** The ASM has a default option that combines the features available in the Layer 2 and Layer 3 service packages.

---

After you commit a change in the service package, the PIC is taken offline and then brought back online immediately. You do not need to manually take the PIC offline and online.



**NOTE:** Changing the service package causes all state information associated with the previous service package to be lost. You should change the service package only when there is no active traffic going to the PIC.

---

The services supported in each package differ by PIC and platform type.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs

---

In JUNOS Release 8.4 and later, the family of next-generation SONET Phase I PICs includes Type 2 and Type 1 PICs. Each PIC type has three varieties.

Type 1 PICs include:

- 4-port OC3
- 2-port OC3
- 1-port OC12

Type 2 PICs include:

- 1-port OC48
- 4-port OC12
- 4-port OC3

The support both type 1 and type 2 FPC interfaces. Hot-pluggable SFPs are used as optical transponders. The PICs provide unprecedented flexibility by allowing the user to configure a variety of modes on them through the configuration of concatenation/nonconcatenation and speed.

The 4-port OC48 PIC with SFP installed, the next-generation SONET/SDH PICs with SFP, and the 4-port OC192 PIC on M-series and T-series routing platforms, support SONET or SDH framing on a per-port basis. This functionality allows you to mix SONET and SDH modes on interfaces on a single PIC.

For information about configuring SONET/SDH framing, see “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs” on page 709.

For information about configuring port speed for concatenate mode on a next-generation PIC, see the *JUNOS Hardware Network Operations Guide*.

By default, SONET/SDH PICs use SONET framing. For a discussion of the differences between the two standards, see the *JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

To configure a PIC to use SDH framing, include the **framing** statement at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number] hierarchy level, specifying the **sdh** option:

```
[edit chassis]
user@host# set fpc slot-number pic pic-number framing sdh
[edit chassis]
user@host# show
fpc slot-number {
  pic pic-number {
    framing sdh;
  }
}
```

On a TX Matrix platform, include the **framing** statement at the [edit chassis lcc *number* fpc *slot-number* pic *pic-number*] hierarchy level, specifying the **sdh** option:

```
[edit chassis lcc number]
user@host# set fpc slot-number pic pic-number framing sdh
[edit chassis lcc number]
user@host# show
fpc slot-number {
  pic pic-number {
    framing sdh;
  }
}
```

To explicitly configure a PIC to use SONET framing, include the **framing** statement at the [edit chassis fpc *slot-number* pic *pic-number*] hierarchy level, specifying the **sonet** option:

```
[edit chassis]
user@host# set fpc slot-number pic pic-number framing sonet
[edit chassis]
user@host# show
fpc slot-number {
  pic pic-number {
    framing sonet;
  }
}
```

On a TX Matrix platform, include the **framing** statement at the [edit chassis lcc *number* fpc *slot-number* pic *pic-number*] hierarchy level, specifying the **sonet** option:

```
user@host# set fpc slot-number pic pic-number framing sonet
[edit chassis lcc number]
user@host# show
fpc slot-number {
  pic pic-number {
    framing sonet;
  }
}
```

For information about configuring a TX Matrix platform, see “TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview” on page 735.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support an External Clock Synchronization Interface for the M320, M40e, and M120 Routing Platforms

---

The M320, M40e, and M120 routing platforms support an external synchronization interface that can be configured to synchronize the internal Stratum 3 clock to an external source, and then synchronize the chassis interface clock to that source.

This feature can be configured for external primary and secondary interfaces that use Building Integrated Timing System (BITS), SDH Equipment Timing Source (SETS) timing sources, or an equivalent quality timing source. When internal timing is set for SONET/SDH, Plesiochronous Digital Hierarchy (PDH), or digital hierarchy (DS-1)

interfaces on the Physical Interface Cards (PICs), the transmit clock of the interface is synchronized to BITS/SETS timing and is traceable to timing within the network.

To configure external synchronization on the M320, M40e, or M120 router, include the `synchronization` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
synchronization {
  signal-type (t1 | e1);
  switching-mode (revertive | non-revertive);
  y-cable-line-termination;
  transmitter-enable;
  validation-interval seconds;
  primary (external-a | external-b);
  secondary (external-a | external-b);
}
```

Use the `synchronization` statement options to specify a primary and secondary timing source. To do this, configure the following options:

- For the M320 router, specify a signal type mode for interfaces, either `t1` or `e1`. For the M40e router, only the `t1` signal type mode is supported. The default setting is `t1`.
- Specify the switching mode as `revertive` if a lower-priority synchronization can be switched to a valid, higher-priority synchronization.
- For the M320 router, specify that a single signal should be wired to both Control Boards (CBs) using a Y-cable. For the M40e router, the signal is wired to the CIP and Y-cable functionality is embedded in this system.

The `y-cable-line-termination` option is not available on the M40e and M120 routers.

- Control whether the diagnostic timing signal is transmitted.

The `transmitter-enable` option is not available on the M120 routers.

- Set a validation interval. The `validation-interval` option validates the synchronized deviation of the synchronization source. If revertive switching is enabled and a higher-priority clock is validated, the clock module is directed to the higher-priority clock, and all configured and active synchronizations are validated. The validation timer resumes after the current validation interval expires. The validation interval can be a value from 90 through 86400 seconds. The default value is 90 seconds. For the M120 router, the range for the `validation-interval` option is 30 through 86400 and the default value is 30.
- Specify the primary external timing source using the `primary (external-a | external-b)` statement.
- Specify the secondary external timing source using the `secondary (external-a | external-b)` statement.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the Sparse DLCI Mode on Channelized STM1 or Channelized DS3 PICs

By default, original channelized DS3 and original channelized STM1-to-E1 (or T1) interfaces can support a maximum of 64 data-link connection identifiers (DLCIs) per channel—as many as 1792 DLCIs per DS3 interface or 4032 DLCIs per STM1 interface (0 through 63).

In sparse DLCI mode, the full DLCI range (1 through 1022) is supported. This allows you to use circuit cross-connect (CCC) and translation cross-connect (TCC) features by means of Frame Relay on T1 and E1 interfaces.



**NOTE:** Sparse DLCI mode requires a Channelized STM1 or Channelized DS3 PIC.

DLCI 0 is reserved for Local Management Interface (LMI) signaling.

Channelized T3 (CT3) intelligent queuing (IQ) and STM1 IQ interfaces support a maximum of 64 DLCIs, numbered 0 through 1022, and therefore do not require sparse mode.

The CT3 PIC must use field-programmable gate array (FPGA) hardware revision 17 to run sparse DLCI mode.

To configure the router to use sparse DLCI mode, include the **sparse-dlcis** statement at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ]
sparse-dlcis;
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a SONET PIC to Operate in the Channelized (Multiplexed) Mode

By default, SONET PICs (interfaces with names *so-fpc/pic/port*) operate in concatenated mode, a mode in which the bandwidth of the interface is in a single channel.

To configure a PIC to operate in channelized (multiplexed) mode, include the **no-concatenate** statement at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
user@host# set fpc slot-number pic pic-number no-concatenate
[edit chassis]
user@host# show
fpc slot-number {
  pic pic-number {
    no-concatenate;
  }
}
```



On a TX Matrix platform, include the `no-concatenate` statement at the `[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number]
user@host# set fpc slot-number pic pic-number no-concatenate
[edit chassis lcc number]
user@host# show
fpc slot-number {
  pic pic-number {
    no-concatenate;
  }
}
```

When configuring and displaying information about interfaces that are operating in channelized mode, you must specify the channel number in the interface name (*physical:channel*); for example, `so-2/2/0:0` and `so-2/2/0:1`.



**NOTE:** On SONET OC48 interfaces that are configured for channelized (multiplexed) mode, the bytes `e1-quiet` and bytes `f1` options in the `sonet-options` statement have no effect. The bytes `f2`, bytes `z3`, bytes `z4`, and `path-trace` options work correctly on channel 0. These bytes work in the transmit direction only on channels 1, 2, and 3.

The M160 four-port SONET/SDH OC12 PIC can run each of the OC12 links in concatenated mode only and requires a Type 2 M160 FPC. Similarly, the four-port SONET/SDH OC3 PIC cannot run in nonconcatenated mode on any platform.

---

## Configuring Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming

---

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots on page 713
- Ranges for Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Configuration on page 715

### Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots

You can configure 28 T1 channels per T3 interface. Each T1 link can have up to eight channel groups, and each channel group can hold any combination of DS0 time slots. To specify the T1 link and DS0 channel group number in the name, use colons (:) as separators. For example, a Channelized DS3-to-DS0 PIC might have the following physical and virtual interfaces:

```
ds-0/0/0:x:y
```

where `x` is a T1 link ranging from 0 through 27 and `y` is a DS0 channel group ranging from 0 through 7. (See Table 47 on page 715 for more information about ranges.)

You can use any of the values within the range available for `x` and `y`; you do not have to configure the links sequentially. The software applies the interface options you configure according to the following rules:

- You can configure **t3-options** for **t1** link 0 and channel group 0 only; for example, `ds-0/0/0:0:0`.
- You can configure **t1-options** for any **t1** link value, but only for channel group 0; for example, `ds-0/0/0:x:0`.
- There are no restrictions on changing the default **ds0-options**.
- If you delete a configuration you previously committed for channel group 0, the options return to the default values.

To configure the channel groups and time slots for a channelized DS3 interface, include the **channel-group** and **timeslots** statements at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ct3 port port-number t1 link-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ct3 port port-number t1 link-number]
channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;
```



**NOTE:** If you commit the interface name but do not include the `[edit chassis]` configuration, the Channelized DS3-to-DS0 PIC behaves like a Channelized DS3-to-DS1 PIC: none of the DS0 functionality is accessible.

---



**NOTE:** The FPC slot range depends on the platform. The maximum range of 0 through 7 applies to M40 routers; for M20 routers, the range is 0 through 3; for M10 routers the range is 0 through 1; for M5 routers, the only applicable value is 0. The Multichannel DS3 (Channelized DS3-to-DS0) PIC is not supported on M160 routers.

---

Bandwidth limitations restrict the interface to a maximum of 128 channel groups per T3 port, rather than the theoretical maximum of  $8 \times 28 = 224$ .

There are 24 time slots on a T1 interface. You can designate any combination of time slots for usage, but you can use each time slot number on only one channel group within the same T1 link.

To use time slots 1 through 10, designate *slot-number* as follows:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ct3 port port-number t1 link-number]
channel-group group-number timeslots 1-10;
```

To use time slots 1 through 5, time slot 10, and time slot 24, designate *slot-number* as follows:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ct3 port port-number t1 link-number]
channel-group group-number timeslots 1-5,10,24;
```

Note that spaces are not allowed when you specify time slot numbers.

## Ranges for Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Configuration

Table 47 on page 715 shows the ranges for each of the quantities in the preceding configuration.

**Table 47: Ranges for Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Configuration**

Item	Variable	Range
FPC slot	<i>slot-number</i>	0 through 7 (see note below)
PIC slot	<i>pic-number</i>	0 through 3
Port	<i>port-number</i>	0 through 1
T1 link	<i>link-number</i>	0 through 27
DS0 channel group	<i>group-number</i>	0 through 7
time slot	<i>slot-number</i>	1 through 24

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Eight Queues on IQ Interfaces for T-Series and M320 Routing Platforms

By default, IQ PICs on T-series and M320 routing platforms are restricted to a maximum of four egress queues per interface. To configure a maximum of eight egress queues on IQ interfaces, include the `max-queues-per-interface` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);
```

On a TX Matrix platform, include the `max-queues-per-interface` statement at the `[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);
```



**NOTE:** The configuration at the `[edit class-of-service]` hierarchy level must also support eight queues per interface.

The maximum number of queues per IQ PIC can be 4 or 8. If you include the `max-queues-per-interface` statement, all ports on the IQ PIC use configured mode and all interfaces on the IQ PIC have the same maximum number of queues.

If you include the `max-queues-per-interface 4` statement, you can configure all four ports and configure up to four queues per port.

For 4-port OC3c/STM1 Type I and Type II PICs on M320 and T-series platforms, when you include the **max-queues-per-interface 8** statement, you can configure up to eight queues on ports 0 and 2. After you commit the configuration, the PIC goes offline and comes back online with only ports 0 and 2 operational. No interfaces can be configured on ports 1 and 3.

For Quad T3 and Quad E3 PICs, when you include the **max-queues-per-interface 8** statement, you can configure up to eight queues on ports 0 and 2. After you commit the configuration, the PIC goes offline and comes back online with only ports 0 and 2 operational. No interfaces can be configured on ports 1 and 3.

When you include the **max-queues-per-interface** statement and commit the configuration, all physical interfaces on the IQ PIC are deleted and readded. Also, the PIC is taken offline and then brought back online immediately. You do not need to take the PIC offline and online manually. You should change modes between four queues and eight queues only when there is no active traffic going to the IQ PIC.

## Configuring Channel Groups and Time Slots for a Channelized E1 Interface

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channel Groups and Time Slots for Channelized E1 PICs on page 716
- Ranges for Channelized E1 Configuration on page 717

### **Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channel Groups and Time Slots for Channelized E1 PICs**

Each Channelized E1 PIC has 10 E1 ports that you can channelize to the NxDS0 level. Each E1 interface has 32 time slots (DS0), in which time slot 0 is reserved. You can combine one or more of these timeslots (DS-0) to create a channel group (NxDS-0). There can be a maximum of 32 channel groups per E1 interface. Thus, you can configure as many as 320 channel groups per PIC (10 ports x 32 channel groups per port).

To specify the DS0 channel group number in the interface name, include a colon (:) as a separator. For example, a Channelized E1 PIC might have the following physical and virtual interfaces:

```
ds-0/0/0:x
```

where x is a DS0 channel group ranging from 0 through 23. (See Table 48 on page 718 for more information about ranges.)

You can use any of the values within the range available for x; you do not have to configure the links sequentially. The software applies the interface options you configure according to the following rules:

- You can configure the **e1-options** statement for channel group 0 only; for example, **ds-0/0/0:0**.
- There are no restrictions on changing the default **ds0-options**.
- If you delete a configuration you previously committed for channel group 0, the options return to the default values.

To configure the channel groups and time slots for a Channelized E1 interface, include the `channel-group` and `timeslots` statements at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ce1 e1 port-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ce1 e1 port-number]
channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;
```



**NOTE:** If you commit the interface name but do not include the `[edit chassis]` configuration, the Channelized E1 PIC behaves like a standard E1 PIC: none of the DS0 functionality is accessible.



**NOTE:** The FPC slot range depends on the platform. The maximum range of 0 through 7 applies to M40 routers; for M20 routers, the range is 0 through 3; for M10 routers the range is 0 through 1; for M5 routers, the only applicable value is 0. The Channelized E1 PIC is not supported on M160 routers.

The theoretical maximum number of channel groups possible per PIC is  $10 \times 24 = 240$ . This is within the maximum bandwidth available.

There are 32 time slots on an E1 interface. You can designate any combination of time slots for usage.

To use time slots 1 through 10, designate *slot-number* as follows:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ce1 e1 port-number]
channel-group group-number timeslots 1-10;
```

To use time slots 1 through 5, time slot 10, and time slot 24, designate *slot-number* as follows:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ce1 e1 port-number]
channel-group group-number timeslots 1-5,10,24;
```

Note that spaces are not allowed when you specify time slot numbers.

For further information about these interfaces, see the *JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

## Ranges for Channelized E1 Configuration

Table 48 on page 718 shows the ranges for each of the quantities for Channelized E1 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots.

**Table 48: Ranges for Channelized E1 Configuration**

Item	Variable	Range
FPC slot	<i>slot-number</i>	0 through 7 (see note below)
PIC slot	<i>pic-number</i>	0 through 3
E1 port	<i>port-number</i>	0 through 9
DS0 channel group	<i>group-number</i>	0 through 23
time slot	<i>slot-number</i>	1 through 32

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized STM1 Interface Virtual Tributary Mapping

By default, virtual tributary mapping uses KLM mode. You can configure virtual tributary mapping to use KLM or ITU-T mode. On the original Channelized STM1 PIC, to configure virtual tributary mapping, include the `vtmapping` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
  vtmapping (klm | itu-t);
```

For the Channelized STM1 PIC with IQ, you can configure virtual tributary mapping by including the `vtmapping` statement at the `[edit interfaces cau4 fpc slot-number pic pic-number sonet-options]` hierarchy level.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable ATM2 Intelligent Queuing Layer 2 Circuit Transport Mode

On ATM2 IQ PICs only, you can configure Layer 2 circuit cell relay, Layer 2 circuit ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5), or Layer 2 circuit trunk mode.

Layer 2 circuit cell relay and Layer 2 circuit AAL5 are defined in the Internet draft `draft-martini-l2circuit-encap-mpls-04.txt`, *Encapsulation Methods for Transport of Layer 2 Frames Over IP and MPLS Networks*.

Layer 2 circuit trunk mode allows you to send ATM cells over Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) trunking.

The four transport modes are defined as follows:

- To tunnel IP packets over an ATM backbone, use the default standard AAL5 transport mode.
- To tunnel a stream of AAL5-encoded ATM segmentation-and-reassembly protocol data units (SAR-PDUs) over an MPLS or IP backbone, use Layer 2 circuit AAL5 transport mode.

- To tunnel a stream of ATM cells over an MPLS or IP backbone, use Layer 2 circuit cell-relay transport mode.
- To transport ATM cells over an MPLS core network that is implemented on some other vendor switches, use Layer 2 circuit trunk mode.



**NOTE:** You can transport AAL5-encoded traffic with Layer 2 circuit cell-relay transport mode, because Layer 2 circuit cell-relay transport mode ignores the encoding of the cell data presented to the ingress interface.

When you configure AAL5 mode Layer 2 circuits, the control word carries cell loss priority (CLP) information by default.

By default, ATM2 IQ PICs are in standard AAL5 transport mode. Standard AAL5 allows multiple applications to tunnel the protocol data units of their Layer 2 protocols over an ATM virtual circuit. To configure the Layer 2 circuit transport modes, include the `atm-l2circuit-mode` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
atm-l2circuit-mode (cell | aal5 | trunk trunk);
```

On a TX Matrix platform, include the `atm-l2circuit-mode` statement at the `[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
atm-l2circuit-mode (cell | aal5 | trunk trunk);
```

`aal5` tunnels a stream of AAL5-encoded ATM cells over an IP backbone.

`cell` tunnels a stream of ATM cells over an IP backbone.

`trunk` transports ATM cells over an MPLS core network that is implemented on some other vendor switches. Trunk mode can be user-to-network interface (UNI) or network-to-network interface (NNI).



**NOTE:** To determine which vendors support Layer 2 circuit trunk mode, contact Juniper Networks customer support.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support ILMI for Cell Relay Encapsulation on an ATM2 IQ PIC

Integrated Local Management Interface (ILMI) is supported on AAL5 interfaces, regardless of transport mode. To enable ILMI on interfaces with cell-relay encapsulation, you must configure an ATM2 IQ PIC to use Layer 2 circuit trunk transport mode.

To configure ILMI on an interface with cell-relay encapsulation, include the following statements:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
atm-l2circuit-mode trunk trunk;
[edit interfaces at-fpc/pic/port]
encapsulation atm-ccc-cell-relay;
atm-options {
    ilmi;
    pic-type atm2;
}
unit logical-unit-number {
    trunk-id number;
}
```

For an example on how to enable ILMI for cell relay, see the *JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Tunnel Interfaces on MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers

The MX-series routing platforms do not use FPCs. The DPC combines the functions of four FPCs and the PICs. The MX960 has 12 DPC slots. The MX480 has 7 DPC slots. The MX240 has 4 DPC slots. Each DPC has either 40 Gigabit Ethernet ports or 4 10-Gigabit Ethernet ports.

Because the MX-series routers do not support Tunnel PICs, you configure a DPC and corresponding Packet Forwarding Engine to use for tunneling services at the [edit chassis] hierarchy level. You also configure the amount of bandwidth reserved for tunnel services. The JUNOS software creates tunnel interfaces on the Packet Forwarding Engine. To create tunnel interfaces on MX-series routers, include the following statements at the [edit chassis] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
fpc slot-number {
    pic number {
        tunnel-services {
            bandwidth (1g | 10g);
        }
    }
}
```

**fpc slot-number** is the slot number of the DPC. If two SCBs are installed, the range is 0 through 11. If three SCBs are installed, the range is 0 through 5 and 7 through 11.

**pic number** is the number of the Packet Forwarding Engine on the DPC. The range is 0 through 3.

**bandwidth (1g | 10g)** is the amount of bandwidth to reserve for tunnel traffic on each Packet Forwarding Engine.

**1g** indicates that 1 Gbps of bandwidth is reserved for tunnel traffic. Configure this option only for a Packet Forwarding Engine on a Gigabit Ethernet 40-port DPC.



**10g** indicates that 10 Gbps of bandwidth is reserved for tunnel traffic. Configure this option only for a Packet Forwarding Engine on a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port DPC.

If you specify a bandwidth that is not compatible with the type of DPC and Packet Forwarding Engine, tunnel services are not activated. For example, you cannot specify a bandwidth of 1 Gbps for a Packet Forwarding Engine on a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port DPC.

When you configure tunnel interfaces on the Packet Forwarding Engine of a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port DPC, the Ethernet interfaces for that port are removed from service and are no longer visible in the CLI. The Packet Forwarding Engine of a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port DPC supports either tunnel interfaces or Ethernet interfaces, but not both. Each port on the 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port DPC includes two LEDs, one for tunnel services and one for Ethernet services, to indicate which type of service is being used. On the Gigabit Ethernet 40-port DPC, you can configure both tunnel and Ethernet interfaces at the same time.

To verify that the tunnel interfaces have been created, issue the **show interfaces terse** operational mode command. For more information, see the *JUNOS Interfaces Command Reference*.

### Example: Configuring Tunnel Interfaces on a Gigabit Ethernet 40-Port DPC

The following example shows how to create tunnel interfaces on Packet Forwarding Engine 1 of DPC 4 with 1 Gbps of bandwidth reserved for tunnel services. On a Gigabit Ethernet 40-port DPC, tunnel interfaces coexist with Ethernet interfaces. With this configuration, the Gigabit Ethernet interfaces are **ge-4/1/0** through **ge-4/1/9**. The tunnel interfaces created are **gr-4/1/10**, **pe-4/1/10**, **pd-4/1/10**, **vt-4/1/10** and so on.

```
[edit chassis]
fpc 4 pic 1 {
  tunnel-services {
    1g;
  }
}
```

### Example: Configuring Tunnel Interfaces on a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-Port DPC

In this example, you create tunnel interfaces on Packet Forwarding Engine 0 of

DPC 4 with 10 Gbps of bandwidth reserved for tunnel traffic. Ethernet and tunnel interfaces cannot coexist on the same Packet Forwarding Engine of a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port DPC. With this configuration, the tunnel interfaces created are **gr-4/0/0**, **pe-4/0/0**, **pd-4/0/0**, **vt-4/0/0** and so on.

```
[edit chassis]
fpc 4 pic 0 {
  tunnel-services {
    10g;
  }
}
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable an M160 Router to Operate in Packet Scheduling Mode

---

By default, packet scheduling is disabled on M160 Routers. To configure a router to operate in packet-scheduling mode, include the `packet-scheduling` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
packet-scheduling;
```

To explicitly disable the `packet-scheduling` statement, include the `no-packet-scheduling` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
no-packet-scheduling;
```

When you enable packet-scheduling mode, the Packet Director application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC) schedules packet dispatches to compensate for transport delay differences. This preserves the interpacket gaps as the packets are distributed from the Packet Director ASIC to the Packet Forwarding Engine.

Whenever you change the configuration for packet-scheduling, the system stops all SFMs and FPCs and restarts them in the new mode.



**NOTE:** Packet scheduling is for M160 routers only.

---

## Configuring the Link Services PIC for Multilink Protocol Support

---

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the Link Services PIC on page 722
- Multiclass Extension for Multiple Classes of Service Using MLPPP (RFC 2686) on page 723

### Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the Link Services PIC

The Multilink Protocol enables you to split, recombine, and sequence datagrams across multiple logical data links. The goal of multilink operation is to coordinate multiple independent links between a fixed pair of systems, providing a virtual link with greater bandwidth than any of the members.

The Link Services PIC supports the following Multilink Protocol encapsulation types at the logical unit level:

- Multilink Point-to-Point Protocol (MLPPP)
- Multilink Frame Relay (MLFR FRF.15)

The Link Services PIC also supports the Multilink Frame Relay UNI and NNI (MLFR FRF.16) encapsulation type at the physical interface level.

MLFR (FRF.16) is supported on a channelized interface, `ls-fpc/pic/port:channel`, which denotes a single MLFR (FRF.16) bundle. For MLFR (FRF.16), multiple links are combined to form one logical link. Packet fragmentation and reassembly occur on a per-virtual circuit (VC) basis. Each bundle can support multiple VCs. The physical connections must be E1, T1, channelized DS3 to DS1, channelized DS3 to DS0, channelized E1, channelized STM 1, or channelized IQ interfaces.

The default number of bundles per Link Services PIC is 16, ranging from `ls-fpc/pic/port:0` to `ls-fpc/pic/port:15`.

To configure the number of bundles on a Link Services PIC, include the `mlfr-uni-nni-bundles` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
mlfr-uni-nni-bundles number;
```

The maximum number of MLFR UNI NNI bundles each Link Services PIC can accommodate is 128. A link can associate with one link services bundle only.



**NOTE:** The Link Services PIC is not compatible with the M160 or T-series routing platforms.

---

### **Multiclass Extension for Multiple Classes of Service Using MLPPP (RFC 2686)**

The Multiclass extension to MLPPP extension enables multiple classes of service using MLPPP. For more information, see RFC 2686, *The Multi-Class Extension to Multi-Link PPP*. The JUNOS software PPP implementation does not support the negotiation of address field compression and protocol field compression PPP NCP options. The software always send a full 4-byte PPP header.

### **Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Idle Cell Format and Payload Patterns for ATM Devices**

---

ATM devices send idle cells to enable the receiving ATM interface to recognize the start of each new cell. The receiving ATM device does not act on the contents of idle cells and does not pass them up to the ATM layer in the ATM protocol stack.

By default, the idle cell format for ATM cells is (4 bytes): 0x00000000. For ATM 2 PICs only, you can configure the format of the idle cell header and payload bytes.

To configure the idle cell header to use the International Telecommunications Union (ITU-T) standard of 0x00000001, include the `itu-t` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic number idle-cell-format]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number idle-cell-format]
itu-t;
```

On a TX Matrix platform, include the `itu-t` statement at the `[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number idle-cell-format]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number idle-cell-format]
itu-t;
```

By default, the payload pattern is cell payload (48 bytes). To configure the idle cell payload pattern, include the `payload-pattern` statement at the `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic number idle-cell-format]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number idle-cell-format]
payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;
```

On a TX Matrix platform, include the `payload-pattern` statement at the `[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number idle-cell-format]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number idle-cell-format]
payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;
```

The payload pattern byte can range from 0x00 through 0xff.

For information about the TX Matrix platform, see “TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview” on page 735.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable MTU Path Check for a Routing Instance on M-series Routers

By default, the maximum transmission unit (MTU) check for routing instance is disabled on M-series routers (except the M320), and enabled for all T-series, and J-series routers.



**NOTE:** The MTU check is automatically present for interfaces belonging to the main router.

---

On M-series routers (except the M320 router) you can configure MTU path checks on the outgoing interface for unicast traffic routed on a virtual private network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) routing instance. When you enable MTU check, the routing platform sends an Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) message when the size of a unicast packet traversing a VRF routing instance or virtual-router routing instance has exceeded the MTU size and when an IP packet is set to "do not fragment". The ICMP message uses the routing instance local address as its source address.

For an MTU check to work in a routing instance, you must include the `vrf-mtu-check` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level and assign at least one interface containing an IP address to the routing instance.

To configure path MTU checks, complete the following tasks:

1. Enabling MTU Check for a Routing Instance on page 725
2. Assigning an IP Address to an Interface in the Routing Instance on page 725

## Enabling MTU Check for a Routing Instance

To enable MTU check for a routing instance, include the `vrf-mtu-check` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
vrf-mtu-check;
```

## Assigning an IP Address to an Interface in the Routing Instance

To assign an IP address to an interface in the VRF or virtual-router routing instance, configure the local address for that routing instance. A local address is any IP address derived from an interface that is assigned to the routing instance.

To assign an interface to a routing instance, include the `interface` statement at the `[edit routing-instances routing-instance-name]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit routing-instances routing-instance-name]
interface interface-name;
```

To configure an IP address for a loopback interface, include the `address` statement at the `[edit interfaces interface-name unit logical-unit-number family inet]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit interfaces interface-name unit logical-unit-number family inet]
address address;
```



**NOTE:** If you are assigning Internet Protocol Security (IPSec) or generic routing encapsulation (GRE) tunnel interfaces without IP addresses in the routing instance, include a loopback interface to the routing instance. To do this, include the `lo0.n` option at the `[edit routing-instances routing-instance-name interface]` hierarchy level. *n* cannot be 0, because `lo0.0` is reserved for the main router (and not appropriate for use with routing instances). Also, an IP address must be assigned to this loopback interface in order to work. To set an IP address for a loopback interface, include the `address` statement at the `[edit interfaces lo0 unit logical-unit-number family inet]` hierarchy level.

---

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Redundancy on Routers Having Multiple Routing Engines or Switching Boards

For routers that have multiple Routing Engines or these multiple switching control boards: Switching and Forwarding Modules (SFMs), System and Switch Boards (SSBs), Forwarding Engine Boards (FEBs), or Compact Forwarding Engine Boards (CFEBs), you can configure redundancy properties.

To configure redundancy, include the following redundancy statements at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
redundancy {
  cfeb slot (always | preferred);
```

```

failover {
    on-disk-failure
    on-loss-of-keepalives;
}
feb {
    redundancy-group group-name {
        feb slot-number (backup | primary);
        description description;
        no-auto-failover;
    }
}
graceful-switchover;
keepalive-time seconds;
routing-engine slot-number (master | backup | disabled);
srm slot-number (always | preferred);
ssb slot-number (always | preferred);
}

```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support FPC to FEB Connectivity on M120 Routers

---

The M120 router supports six Forwarding Engine Boards (FEBs) and six Flexible PIC Concentrators (FPCs). The supported FPCs include:

- Two compact FPCs:
  - OC192 compact FPC (supported only on the D4 chip-based compact FPC)
  - 10-Gigabit Ethernet compact FPC
- Up to four Type 1, Type 2, or Type 3 FPCs

On the M120 router, you can map a connection between any FPC and any FEB. This capability allows you to configure resources for a chassis that contains empty slots, supporting configurations where the FPC and FEB pairs are not in slot order. You do not have to populate every empty slot position, but you must configure a FEB for every FPC.

If you do not want to map a connection between an FPC and a FEB, you must explicitly configure the FPC not to connect to the FEB. To do so, include the **none** option at the **[edit chassis fpc-feb-connectivity fpc *number* feb]** hierarchy level. If you do not configure FPC and FEB connectivity, it is automatically assigned in the following order: FPC 0 to FEB 0, FPC 1 to FEB 1, and so on.

For each FEB, you can map a maximum of two Type 1 FPCs or one Type 2, Type 3, or compact FPC.

The following restrictions apply when you configure FPC and FEB connectivity:

- When an FPC is configured not to connect to any FEB, interfaces on that FPC are not created.
- If a PIC comes online, but the FEB to which the FPC is configured to connect is not online, the physical interfaces for the PIC are not created. For example, PIC 1 on FPC 2 comes online. The configuration specifies that FPC 2 connects to FEB

3. If FEB 3 is not online at the time PIC 1 comes online, the physical interfaces corresponding to PIC 1 on FPC 2 are not created. If FEB 3 subsequently comes online, the physical interfaces are created.

- If a FEB is brought offline or removed, any interfaces on the FPCs connected to the FEB are deleted. If the FEB is subsequently brought back online, the interfaces are restored.
- FPCs and FEBs might reboot following a change in the FPC and FEB connectivity configuration. If an FPC connects to a different FEB as a result of the configuration change, the FPC is rebooted following the commit. As a result of the reboot, interfaces on the FPC are deleted.
- If a FEB connects to a different FPC or set of FPCs after a connectivity configuration change, the FEB is rebooted. The exception is if the FEB is already connected to one or two Type 1 FPCs and the change only results in the FEB being connected either to one additional or one fewer Type 1 FPC.

To configure a connection between an FPC and a FEB, include the **fpc-feb-connectivity** statement at the **[edit chassis]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
fpc-feb-connectivity {
  fpc number feb (slot-number | none);
}
```

For **fpc number**, enter a value from 0 through 5. For **feb slot-number**, enter a value from 0 through 5 or **none**. The **none** option disconnects the FPC from the FEB.

To view the current FPC and FEB mapping and the status of each FPC and FEB, issue the **show chassis fpc-feb-connectivity** operational mode command. For more information, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.



**NOTE:** FPC-to-FEB connectivity is supported only on the M120 router.

---

In this example, FPC 3 is already mapped to FEB 3 by default. You are also mapping a connection between FPC 2 and FEB 3.

```
[edit chassis]
fpc-feb-connectivity {
  fpc 2 feb 3;
}
```

However, this configuration results in a mismatch between the FPC type and the FEB type. For example, FPC 3 is not a Type 1 FPC. You can map only one FPC that is not a Type 1 FPC to a FEB. Use the **fpc-feb-connectivity** statement to explicitly disconnect FPC 3 from FEB 3. To do so, include the **none** option at the **[edit chassis fpc-feb-connectivity fpc number feb]** hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
fpc-feb-connectivity {
  fpc 2 feb 3;
  fpc 3 feb none;
}
```

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a Routing Engine to Reboot on Hard Disk Errors

---

When a hard disk error occurs, a Routing Engine might enter a state in which it responds to local pings and interfaces remain up, but no other processes are responding.

To recover from this situation, you can configure a single Routing Engine to reboot automatically when a hard disk error occurs. To enable this feature, include the `on-disk-failure reboot` statement at the `[edit chassis routing-engine]` hierarchy level.

```
[edit chassis routing-engine]
on-disk-failure reboot;
```

For dual Routing Engine environments, you can configure a backup Routing Engine to assume mastership automatically, if it detects a hard disk error on the master Routing Engine. To enable this feature, include the `on-disk-failure` statement at the `[edit chassis redundancy failover]` hierarchy level. For information about this statement, see the *JUNOS High Availability Configuration Guide*.

For M71 and M10i routers, you can configure the Routing Engine to halt (instead of rebooting) when the hard disk fails on the Routing Engine. To configure this feature, include the `disk-failure-action (halt | reboot)` statement at the `[edit chassis routing-engine on-disk-failure]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis routing-engine]
on-disk-failure {
    disk-failure-action (halt | reboot);
}
```

Use `halt` to configure the Routing Engine to halt when the hard disk fails. Use `reboot` to configure the Routing Engine to reboot when the hard disk fails.

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Prevent the Resetting of the Factory Default or Rescue Configuration During Current Configuration Failure on J-Series Routers

---

On J-series Services Routers, if the current configuration fails, you can load a rescue configuration or the factory default configuration by pressing the **CONFIG (Reset)** button:

- **Rescue configuration**—When you press and quickly release the **CONFIG** button, the configuration LED blinks green and the rescue configuration is loaded and committed. The rescue configuration is user defined and must be set previously for this operation to be successful.
- **Factory defaults**—When you hold the **CONFIG** button for more than 15 seconds, the configuration LED blinks red and the router is set back to the factory default configuration.





**CAUTION:** When you set the router back to the factory default configuration, the current committed configuration and all previous revisions of the router's configuration are deleted.

To limit how the CONFIG button resets a router configuration, include one or both of the following statements at the [edit chassis] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
config-button {
  no-clear;
  no-rescue;
}
```

**no-clear**—Prevents resetting the router to the factory default configuration. You can still press and quickly release the button to reset to the rescue configuration (if one was set previously).

**no-rescue**—Prevents resetting the router to the rescue configuration. You can still press and hold the button for more than 15 seconds to reset to the factory default configuration.

When both the **no-clear** and **no-rescue** statements are present, the CONFIG button does not reset to either configuration.

## Configuring Larger Delay Buffers to Prevent Congestion And Packet Dropping

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Larger Delay Buffers for T1, E1, and DS0 Interfaces Configured on Channelized IQ PICs on page 729
- Maximum Delay Buffer with q-pic-large-buffer Statement Enabled on page 730

### Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Larger Delay Buffers for T1, E1, and DS0 Interfaces Configured on Channelized IQ PICs

By default, T1, E1, and NxDS0 interfaces configured on Channelized IQ PICs are limited to 100,000 microseconds of delay buffer. (The default average packet size on the IQ PIC is 40 bytes.) For these interfaces, it might be necessary to configure a larger buffer size to prevent congestion and packet dropping.

To ensure traffic is queued and transmitted properly, you can configure a buffer size larger than the default maximum. Include the **q-pic-large-buffer large-scale** statement at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number]
q-pic-large-buffer {
  large-scale;
}
```



**NOTE:** When you commit the configuration after including the `q-pic-large-buffer` statement for a PIC, the JUNOS software temporarily takes the PIC offline and brings it back online before the new configuration is activated and becomes the current operational configuration.

This statement sets the maximum buffer size. (See Table 49 on page 730.)

For information on configuring the buffer size, see the *JUNOS Class of Service Configuration Guide*.

### Maximum Delay Buffer with `q-pic-large-buffer` Statement Enabled

Table 49 on page 730 lists the maximum delay buffer that can be configured for T1, E1, and DS0 Interfaces Configured on Channelized IQ PICs:

**Table 49: Maximum Delay Buffer with `q-pic-large-buffer` Statement Enabled**

Platform, PIC, or Interface Type	Maximum Buffer Size
<b>With Large Buffer Sizes Not Enabled</b>	
T-series and M320	50,000 microseconds
Other M-series	200,000 microseconds
IQ PICs on all platforms	100,000 microseconds
Channelized T1/E1 interface on J-series Services Routers	400,000 microseconds
<b>With Large Buffer Sizes Enabled</b>	
Channelized T3 and channelized OC3 DLCIs—Maximum sizes vary by shaping rate:	
With shaping rate from 64,000 through 255,999 bps	4,000,000 microseconds
With shaping rate from 256,000 through 511,999 bps	2,000,000 microseconds
With shaping rate from 512,000 through 1,023,999 bps	1,000,000 microseconds
With shaping rate from 1,024,000 through 2,048,000 bps	500,000 microseconds
With shaping rate from 2,048,001 bps through 10 mbps	400,000 microseconds
With shaping rate from 10,000,001 bps through 20 mbps	300,000 microseconds
With shaping rate from 20,000,001 bps through 30 mbps	200,000 microseconds

**Table 49: Maximum Delay Buffer with q-pic-large-buffer Statement Enabled** (*continued*)

Platform, PIC, or Interface Type	Maximum Buffer Size
With shaping rate from 30,000,001 bps through 40 mbps	150,000 microseconds
With shaping rate up to 40,000,001 bps or higher	100,000 microseconds
NxDSO IQ Interfaces—Maximum sizes vary by channel size:	
1xDSO through 3xDSO	4,000,000 microseconds
4xDSO through 7xDSO	2,000,000 microseconds
8xDSO through 15xDSO	1,000,000 microseconds
16xDSO through 32xDSO	500,000 microseconds
Other IQ interfaces	500,000 microseconds

## Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Entry-Level Configuration on an M320 Router With a Minimum Number of SIBs and PIMs

An M320 router can include an entry-level configuration with a minimum number of SIBs and PEMs. With this configuration, the router may have fewer than four SIBs or four PEMs.

To prevent unwanted alarms from occurring with this entry-level configuration, include the `pem minimum` and `sib minimum` statements at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
pem {
  minimum number;
}
sib {
  minimum number;
}
```

`minimum number` can be 0 through 3. With this configuration, SIB absent or PEM absent alarms are generated only if the SIB or PEM count falls below the minimum specified. For example, set this number to 2 for an entry-level configuration with 2 Switch Interface Boards and 2 Power Entry Modules.

## Configuring the uPIM Mode to Run in the Switching or Routing Modes on J-Series Routers

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the uPIM Mode on J-series Routers on page 732
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set a PIM Offline on J-Series Routers on page 732
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable Power Management on the J-series Chassis on page 733

### Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the uPIM Mode on J-series Routers

The 6-port, 8-port, and 16-port Gigabit Ethernet uPIMs used on the J-series routers (J2320, J2350, J4350, and J6350) support Layer 2 switching and can forward traffic at both Layer 2 (switching) and Layer 3 (routing). You can configure a uPIM to run in either routing mode (the default) or switching mode.

Routing mode provides the standard routing services. Switching mode allows traffic forwarding at both Layer 2 and Layer 3. At Layer 2, a uPIM can switch intra-LAN traffic from one LAN host to another, such as from one port on a uPIM to another on the same uPIM. At Layer 3, a uPIM can route traffic to WAN interfaces and other PIMs present on the chassis.

To configure the PIM mode, include the following statements at the [edit chassis fpc] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
fpc fpc-slot {
  pic pim-slot {
    ethernet {
      pic-mode (switching | routing);
    }
  }
}
```

### Configuring the JUNOS Software to Set a PIM Offline on J-Series Routers

On J-series routers, the system monitors the PIMs and verifies that a newly inserted PIM falls within the power capacity of the chassis. PIMs that fall outside of acceptable power ranges can be taken offline or disabled for power management purposes.

This operation differs from the **power-off** option used on non-J-series products.

To take a PIM offline, include the **offline** statement at the [edit chassis fpc slot-number] hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis fpc slot-number]
offline;
```

## **Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable Power Management on the J-series Chassis**

Instead of setting a PIM offline, the power management feature on a chassis can be disabled. The `disable-power-management` statement disables power management on the chassis and, when used, causes any PIMs disabled because of exceeding chassis power limits to come online.

It is important to consider power management carefully before enabling disabled PIMs. If the PIMs have been disabled because they exceeded power limits, they should not be enabled.

To disable power on the J-series chassis, include the `disable-power-management` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
disable-power-management;
```

## **Configuring the IP and Ethernet Services Mode in MX-series Routers**

---

- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Run in the IP and Ethernet Services Mode in MX-series Routers on page 733
- Restrictions on JUNOS Features for MX-series Routers on page 734

## **Configuring the JUNOS Software to Run in the IP and Ethernet Services Mode in MX-series Routers**

MX-series Ethernet services routers can be configured to run in IP Services mode or in Ethernet Services mode. The default IP Services mode provides complete functionality, while the Ethernet Services mode only provides support for Layer 2.5 functions.

Operating in Ethernet Services mode restricts certain BGP protocol functions and does not support Layer 3 VPN, unicast RPF, and source and destination class usage (SCU and DCU) functions. In addition, the number of externally configured filter terms are restricted to 64K. The details of Layer 2.5 support for Ethernet Services are shown in Table 50 on page 734.

To configure the network services mode of an MX-series router, include the `network-services` statement with the appropriate option at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
network-services (ethernet | ip);
```

If DPCs in Ethernet Services mode are up and running, the system cannot be set to IP services mode. You must set any Ethernet mode DPCs offline before switching to IP Services mode.

## Restrictions on JUNOS Features for MX-series Routers

The following features contain restrictions when running in Ethernet Services mode.

**Table 50: Restricted Software Features in Ethernet Services Mode**

Software Feature	Restriction in Ethernet Services Mode
BGP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ BGP allows only family L2 VPN to provide IP control plane support.</li> <li>■ Data plane support applies only for Ethernet and MPLS.</li> <li>■ BGP in Ethernet Services mode does not support inet, inet6, inet-vpn and inet-6vpn</li> </ul>
L3VPN	Layer 3 VPN is not available in Ethernet Services mode.
Unicast RPF	Unicast reverse-path forwarding is disabled when running Ethernet Services mode.
Source and destination class usage (SCU and DCU)	Source and Destination Class Usage is disabled when running Ethernet Services mode.
Filter terms	When running Ethernet Services mode, the number of externally configured filter terms is restricted to 64 KB.

## Configuring J-series Services Router Switching Interfaces

In access switching mode, only one physical interface is configured for the entire Gigabit Ethernet uPIM. The single physical interface serves as a Virtual Router Interface (VRI). Configuration of the physical port characteristics is done under the single physical interface.

To configure Gigabit Ethernet uPIM physical Ethernet interface properties, include the `switch-port-parameters` statement at the `[edit interfaces ge-pim/0/0]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit interfaces ge-pim /0/0]
{
  switch-port port-number {
    (auto-negotiation | no-auto-negotiation);
    speed (10m | 100m | 1g);
    link-mode (full-duplex | half-duplex);
  }
}
```

## Example: Configuring J-series Services Router Switching Interfaces

---

Configure a single physical interface for the uPIM and set the port parameters for port 0 and port 1:

```
[edit interfaces]
ge-2/0/0 {
  {
    switch-port 0 {
      no-auto-negotiation;
      1g;
      link-mode full-duplex;
    }
    port 1 {
      no-auto-negotiation;
      10m;
      link-mode half-duplex;
    }
  }
}
```

## TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Guidelines

---

- TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735
- Using the JUNOS software to Configure a T640 Routing Node Within a Routing Matrix on page 738
- TX Matrix Platform Chassis and Interface Names on page 739
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Upgrade and Downgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform on page 741
- Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the TX Matrix Platform to Generate an Alarm if a T640 Routing Node Stays Offline on page 742

## TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview

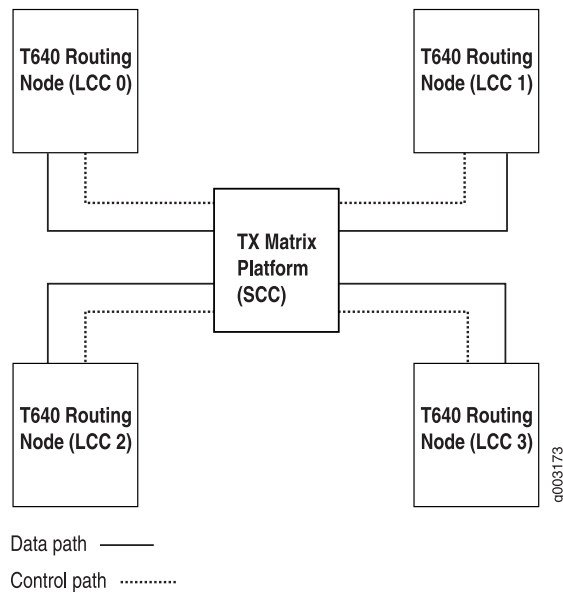
This topic provides you an overview of configuring the TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Nodes.

- Routing Matrix Overview on page 736
- Running Different JUNOS Software Releases on the TX Matrix Platform and the T640 Routing Nodes on page 737
- TX Matrix Platform Software Upgrades and Reinstallation on page 737
- TX Matrix Platform Rebooting Process on page 737
- Committing Configurations on the TX Matrix Platform on page 737
- Routing Matrix Configuration Groups on page 738
- Routing Matrix System Log Messages on page 738

## Routing Matrix Overview

A routing matrix is a multichassis architecture that consists of a TX Matrix platform and from one to four T640 routing nodes. From the perspective of the user interface, the routing matrix appears as a single router. The TX Matrix platform controls all the T640 routing nodes in the routing matrix, as shown in Figure 9 on page 736.

**Figure 9: Routing Matrix**



You configure and manage the TX Matrix platform and its T640 routing nodes in the routing matrix through the CLI on the TX Matrix platform. This means that the configuration file on the TX Matrix platform is used for the entire routing matrix.

Because all configuration, troubleshooting, and monitoring is performed through the TX Matrix platform, we do not recommend accessing its T640 routing nodes directly (through the console port or management Ethernet [fxp0]). If you do, the following messages appear when you first start the CLI through a T640 routing node:

```
% cli
warning: This chassis is a Line Card Chassis (LCC) in a multichassis system.
warning: Use of interactive commands should be limited to debugging.
warning: Normal CLI access is provided by the Switch Card Chassis (SCC).
warning: Use 'request routing-engine login scc' to log into the SCC.
{master}
```

These messages appear because any configuration you commit on a T640 routing node is not propagated to the TX Matrix platform or other T640 routing nodes. For details, see “Committing Configurations on the TX Matrix Platform” on page 737.



## Running Different JUNOS Software Releases on the TX Matrix Platform and the T640 Routing Nodes

On a routing matrix, if you elect to run different JUNOS software releases on the TX Matrix platform and T640 Routing Engines, a change in Routing Engine mastership can cause one or all T640 routing nodes to be logically disconnected from the TX Matrix platform.



**NOTE:** The routing matrix supports Release 7.0 and later versions of the JUNOS software. All the master Routing Engines on the routing matrix must use the same software version. For information about hardware and software requirements, see the *TX Matrix Platform Hardware Guide*.

## TX Matrix Platform Software Upgrades and Reinstallation

By default, when you upgrade or reinstall software on the TX Matrix platform, the new software image is distributed to the connected T640 routing nodes. Software installed on a primary TX Matrix platform is distributed to all connected primary T640 nodes and the backup is distributed to all connected backup nodes.

## TX Matrix Platform Rebooting Process

When you reboot the TX Matrix platform master Routing Engine, all the master Routing Engines in the connected T640 routing nodes reboot. In addition, you can selectively reboot the master Routing Engine or any of the connected T640 routing nodes.

## Committing Configurations on the TX Matrix Platform

In a routing matrix, all configuration must be performed on the TX Matrix platform. Any configuration you commit on a T640 routing node is not propagated to the TX Matrix platform or other T640 routing nodes. Only configuration changes you commit on the TX Matrix platform are propagated to all T640 routing nodes. A commit on a TX Matrix platform overrides any changes you commit on a T640 routing node.

If you issue the `commit` command, you commit the configuration to all the master Routing Engines in the routing matrix.

```
user@host# commit
scc-re0:
configuration check succeeds
lcc0-re0:
commit complete
lcc1-re0:
commit complete
scc-re0:
commit complete
```



**NOTE:** If a commit operation fails on any node, then the commit operation is not completed for the entire TX Matrix platform.

If you issue the `commit synchronize` command on the TX Matrix platform, you commit the configuration to all the master and backup Routing Engines in the routing matrix.

```
user@host# commit synchronize
scc-re0:
configuration check succeeds
lcc0-re1:
commit complete
lcc0-re0:
commit complete
lcc1-re1:
commit complete
lcc1-re0:
commit complete
scc-re1:
commit complete
scc-re0:
commit complete
```

### Routing Matrix Configuration Groups

For routers that include two Routing Engines, you can specify two special group names—`re0` and `re1`. These two special group names apply to the Routing Engines in slots 0 and 1 of the TX Matrix platform. In addition, the routing matrix supports group names for the Routing Engines for each T640 routing node: `lcc n-re0` and `lcc n-re1`. *n* identifies a T640 routing node from 0 through 3.

### Routing Matrix System Log Messages

You configure the T640 routing nodes to forward their system log messages to the TX Matrix platform at the `[edit system syslog host scc-master]` hierarchy level. For information about how to configure system log messages in a routing matrix, see “JUNOS Software System Log Configuration Overview” on page 117 and “Configuring System Logging for a Routing Matrix” on page 143.

## Using the JUNOS software to Configure a T640 Routing Node Within a Routing Matrix

A routing matrix supports the same chassis configuration statements as a standalone routing platform (except `ce1`, `ct3`, `mlfr-uni-nni-bundles`, `sparse-dlci`s, and `vtmapping`). By including the `lcc` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level, you configure PIC-specific features, such as framing, on specific T640 routing nodes. In addition, a routing matrix has two more chassis configuration statements, `online-expected` and `offline`.

To configure a T640 routing node that is connected to a TX Matrix platform, include the `lcc` statement at the `[edit chassis]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis]
```

*lcc number*;

*number* can be 0 through 3.

To configure a T640 routing node within a routing matrix, include the following statements at the `[edit chassis lcc number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number]
fpc slot-number { # Use the hardware FPC slot number
pic pic-number {
  atm-cell-relay-accumulation;
  atm-l2circuit-mode (cell | aal5 | trunk trunk);
  framing (sdh | sonet);
  idle-cell-format {
    itu-t;
    payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;
  }
  max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);
  no-concatenate;
}
offline;
online-expected;
```



**NOTE:** For the FPC slot number, specify the actual hardware slot number (numbered 0 through 7) as labeled on the T640 routing node chassis. Do not use the corresponding software FPC number shown in the Table 51 on page 740.

For information about how to configure the `online-expected` and `offline` configuration statements, see “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the TX Matrix Platform to Generate an Alarm if a T640 Routing Node Stays Offline” on page 742.

## TX Matrix Platform Chassis and Interface Names

The output from some CLI commands uses the terms SCC and `scc` (for *switch-card chassis*) to refer to the TX Matrix platform. Similarly the terms LCC, and `lcc` as a prefix (for *line-card chassis*) refer to a T640 routing node in a routing matrix.

T640 routing nodes are assigned LCC index numbers, 0 through 3, depending on the hardware setup to the TX Matrix platform. A routing matrix can have up to four T640 routing nodes, and each T640 routing node has up to eight FPCs. Therefore, the routing matrix can have up to 32 FPCs (0 through 31). The FPCs are configured at the `[edit chassis lcc number]` hierarchy level.

In the JUNOS CLI, an interface name has the following format:

`type-fpc/pic/port`

When you specify the FPC number, the JUNOS software determines which T640 routing node contains the specified FPC based on the following assignment:

- On LCC 0, FPC hardware slots 0 through 7 correspond to FPC software numbers 0 through 7.
- On LCC 1, FPC hardware slots 0 through 7 correspond to FPC software numbers 8 through 15.
- On LCC 2, FPC hardware slots 0 through 7 correspond to FPC software numbers 16 through 23.
- On LCC 3, FPC hardware slots 0 through 7 correspond to FPC software numbers 24 through 31.

To convert FPC numbers in the T640 routing nodes to the correct FPC in a routing matrix, use the conversion chart shown in Table 51 on page 740. You can use the converted FPC number to configure the interfaces on the TX Matrix platform in your routing matrix.

**Table 51: T640 to Routing Matrix FPC Conversion Chart**

FPC Numbering	T640 Routing Nodes							
LCC 0								
T640 FPC Slots	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Routing Matrix FPC Slots Equivalent	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
LCC 1								
T640 FPC Slots	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Routing Matrix FPC Slots Equivalent	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
LCC 2								
T640 FPC Slots	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Routing Matrix FPC Slots Equivalent	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
LCC 3								
T640 FPC Slots	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Routing Matrix FPC Slots Equivalent	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31

Some examples include:

- In a routing matrix that contains lcc 0 through lcc 2, so-20/0/1 refers to FPC slot 4 of lcc 2.
- If you have a Gigabit Ethernet interface installed in FPC slot 7, PIC slot 0, port 0 of T640 routing node LCC 3, you can configure this interface on the TX Matrix platform by including the `ge-31/0/0` statement at the [edit interfaces] hierarchy level.

```
[edit]
interfaces {
  ge-31/0/0 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address ip-address;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### **Configuring the JUNOS Software to Upgrade and Downgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform**

The JUNOS software does not support mixed mode operation of switch interface boards (SIBs). To successfully upgrade 1.0 SIBs to 2.0 SIBs in a TX Matrix environment, you must force all newly installed 2.0 SIBs to operate in 1.0 mode until the upgrade is complete.

1. Configuring the JUNOS Software to Upgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform on page 741
2. Configuring the JUNOS Software to Downgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform on page 742

### **Configuring the JUNOS Software to Upgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform**

To configure the TX Matrix to support a SIB upgrade, include the **fabric upgrade-mode** statement at the **[edit chassis]** hierarchy level and commit the changes to update the configuration. Configuration changes that you commit on the TX Matrix platform are propagated to all T640 routing nodes.

```
[edit chassis]
user@host# set chassis fabric upgrade-mode
user@host# commit
```

The **fabric upgrade-mode** statement instructs the newly installed 2.0 boards to operate in 1.0 mode. When all 1.0 boards have been replaced by 2.0 boards, remove the **fabric upgrade-mode** statement from the configuration hierarchy, and commit the changes again.

```
[edit chassis]
user@host# delete chassis fabric upgrade-mode
user@host# commit
```

Use the **request chassis sib (offline | online)** command sequence to power cycle the newly installed 2.0 SIBs.

```
user@host> request chassis sib offline slot slot-number
user@host> request chassis sib online slot slot-number
```

As the system discovers each new board, the 2.0 ASIC enables 2.0 features, and the upgrade is complete.

### Configuring the JUNOS Software to Downgrade Switch Interface Boards on a TX Matrix Platform

To downgrade your 2.0 SIBs to 1.0 SIBs, follow the upgrade procedure. When you replace the first 2.0 SIB with a 1.0 SIB, the system operates in a downgraded 1.0 mode until all 2.0 SIBs are replaced, and the newly installed 1.0 SIBs are power cycled using a `request chassis sib (offline | online)` command sequence.



**NOTE:** The TX Matrix switch fabric supports 2.0 SIBs for enabling Gigabit FPC-4 and Type 4 PICs. Gigabit FPC-4 devices are not compatible with 1.0 SIBs. Therefore, if you are planning to downgrade from 2.0 SIBs to 1.0 SIBs, you must take all Gigabit FPC-4 devices offline to ensure that the link between the new SIBs and the FPC does not fail.

---

### Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the TX Matrix Platform to Generate an Alarm if a T640 Routing Node Stays Offline

By default, the JUNOS software allows all the T640 routing nodes in the routing matrix to come online. The JUNOS software also allows you to configure all the T640 routing nodes so that if they do not come online, an alarm is sent by the TX Matrix platform.

To configure this alarm, include the `online-expected` statement at the `[edit chassis lcc number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number]
online-expected;
```

If you do not want a T640 routing node to be part of the routing matrix, you can configure it to be offline. This is useful when you are performing maintenance on a T640 routing node. When the T640 routing is ready to come back online, delete the `offline` configuration statement.

To configure a T640 routing so that it is offline, include the `offline` statement at the `[edit chassis lcc number]` hierarchy level:

```
[edit chassis lcc number]
offline;
```



**NOTE:** If you do not configure the `online-expected` or `offline` statement, any T640 routing node that is part of the routing matrix is allowed to come online. However, if a T640 routing node does not come online, the TX Matrix platform does not generate an alarm.

---

## Chapter 19

# Summary of Router Chassis Configuration Statements

The following topics explain each of the chassis configuration statements. The statements are organized alphabetically.

### adaptive-services

---

**Syntax** adaptive-services {  
         (layer-2 | layer-3);  
         }

**Hierarchy Level** [edit chassis fpc *slot-number* pic *pic-number*]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Enable a service package on adaptive services interfaces.

**Options** The statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Service Packages on Adaptive Services Interfaces” on page 708.

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                              interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** *JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide* and *JUNOS Feature Guide*

## aggregate-ports

---

<b>Syntax</b>	aggregate-ports;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.1.
<b>Description</b>	For T-series routers only, specify OC768-over-OC192 mode on the 4-port OC192C PIC. Four OC192 links are aggregated into one OC768 link with one logical interface.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See <i>JUNOS Interfaces Network Operations Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## aggregated-devices

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> aggregated-devices {   ethernet {     device-count <i>number</i>;     lacp {       link-protection {         non-revertive;       }       system-priority;     }   }   sonet {     device-count <i>number</i>;   } } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4. Support for LACP link protection and system priority introduced in JUNOS Release 9.3.
<b>Description</b>	Configure properties for aggregated devices on the router.
<b>Options</b>	The statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices” on page 669.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**alarm**

---

**Syntax**    alarm {  
               *interface-type* {  
                   *alarm-name* (red | yellow | ignore);  
               }  
           }

**Hierarchy Level**    [edit chassis]

**Release Information**    Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description**    Configure the chassis alarms and whether they trigger a red or yellow alarm, or whether they are ignored. Red alarm conditions light the **RED ALARM** LED on the router's craft interface and trigger an audible alarm if one is connected to the contact on the craft interface. Yellow alarm conditions light the **YELLOW ALARM** LED on the router's craft interface and trigger an audible alarm if one is connected to the craft interface.

To configure more than one alarm, include multiple *alarm-name* lines.

**Options**    *alarm-name*—Alarm condition. For a list of conditions, see Table 37 on page 676.

*ignore*—The specified alarm condition does not set off any alarm.

*interface-type*—Type of interface on which you are configuring the alarm. It can be one of the following: **atm**, **ethernet**, **sonet**, or **t3**.

**red**—The specified alarm condition sets off a red alarm.

**yellow**—The specified alarm condition sets off a yellow alarm.

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Chassis Conditions That Trigger Alarms” on page 677.

**Required Privilege Level**    interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                   interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.


## atm-cell-relay-accumulation

---

<b>Syntax</b>	atm-cell-relay-accumulation;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ], [edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure an Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) Physical Interface Card (PIC) in cell-relay accumulation mode.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Use ATM Cell-Relay Accumulation Mode on an ATM1 PIC” on page 671.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735.

## atm-l2circuit-mode

---

<b>Syntax</b>	atm-l2circuit-mode (cell   aal5   trunk <i>trunk</i> );
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ], [edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the ATM2 intelligent queuing (IQ) Layer 2 circuit transport mode.
<b>Default</b>	aal5
<b>Options</b>	<p>aal5—Tunnel a stream of ATM cells encoded with ATM Adaptation Layer (AAL5) over an IP Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) backbone.</p> <p>cell—Tunnel a stream of ATM cells over an IP MPLS backbone.</p> <p>trunk <i>trunk</i>—Transport ATM cells over an MPLS core network that is implemented on some other vendor switches. Trunk mode can be UNI or NNI.</p>
	<p><b>NOTE:</b> To determine which vendors support Layer 2 circuit trunk mode, contact Juniper Networks Customer Support.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable ATM2 Intelligent Queuing Layer 2 Circuit Transport Mode” on page 718</li> </ul>
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735.

---

## bandwidth

---

**Syntax**    `bandwidth (1g | 10g);`

**Hierarchy Level**    `[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic number tunnel-services]`

**Release Information**    Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.2.

**Description**    On the MX-series Ethernet Services routers only, specify the amount of bandwidth to reserve for tunnel services.

**Options**    **1g**—Specify a bandwidth of 1 Gbps on the Packet Forwarding Engine connected to a Gigabit Ethernet 40-port Dense Port Concentrator (DPC).

**10g**—Specify a bandwidth of 10 Gbps on the Packet Forwarding Engine connected to 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port DPC.



**NOTE:** If you specify a bandwidth that is not compatible with the type of DPC and Packet Forwarding Engine, tunnel services are not activated. For example, you cannot specify a bandwidth of 1 Gbps for a Packet Forwarding Engine on a 10-Gigabit Ethernet 4-port DPC.

---

**Usage Guidelines**    See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Tunnel Interfaces on MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers” on page 720.

**Required Privilege Level**    `interface`—To view this statement in the configuration.  
                                          `interface-control`—To add this statement to the configuration.

**ce1**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>ce1 {   e1 port-number {     channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;   } }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure channelized E1 port and channel specifications.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>port-number</i>—Any valid E1 port number on the host system.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channel Groups and Time Slots for Channelized E1 PICs” on page 716.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

**channel-group**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	channel-group <i>group-number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ce1 e1 <i>port-number</i>],</p> <p>[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ct3 port <i>port-number</i> t1 <i>link-number</i>]</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the DS0 channel number.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>group-number</i>—DS0 channel group.</p> <p><b>Range:</b> 0 through 7 for DS0 naming, and 0 through 23 for E1 naming.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots” on page 713 and “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channel Groups and Time Slots for Channelized E1 PICs” on page 716.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## chassis

---

<b>Syntax</b>	chassis { ... }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure router chassis properties.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Router Chassis Configuration Guidelines” on page 663.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## config-button

---

<b>Syntax</b>	config-button { no-clear; no-rescue; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(J-series Services Routers only) Configure the <b>CONFIG</b> button on the router to prevent resetting the router to the factory default or rescue configuration.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>no-clear</b>—Prevent resetting the router to the factory default configuration. You can still press and quickly release the button to reset to the rescue configuration (if one was set previously).</p> <p><b>no-rescue</b>—Prevent resetting the router to the rescue configuration. You can still press and hold the button for more than 15 seconds to reset to the factory default configuration.</p> <p>When both the <b>no-clear</b> and <b>no-rescue</b> statements are present, the <b>CONFIG</b> button is deactivated for all types of reset.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Prevent the Resetting of the Factory Default or Rescue Configuration During Current Configuration Failure on J-Series Routers” on page 728.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**craft-lockout**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>craft-lockout;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit chassis]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.1.
<b>Description</b>	Disable the physical operation of the craft interface front panel.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Disable the Physical Operation of the Craft Interface” on page 707.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**ct3**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>ct3 {   port <i>port-number</i> {     t1 <i>link-number</i> {       channel-group <i>group-number</i> timeslots <i>slot-number</i>;     }   } }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i>]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure channelized T3 port and channel specifications.
<b>Options</b>	<p><code>port <i>port-number</i></code>—Any valid T3 port number on the host system.</p> <p><code>t1 <i>link-number</i></code>—T1 link.  <b>Range:</b> 0 through 27</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots” on page 713.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## device-count

---

<b>Syntax</b>	device-count <i>number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the number of aggregated logical devices available to the router.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices” on page 669.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## disk-failure-action

---

<b>Syntax</b>	disk-failure-action (halt   reboot);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis routing-engine on-disk-failure]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	On M7i and M10i routers only, configure the Routing Engine to halt or reboot when the Routing Engine hard disk fails.
<b>Options</b>	halt—Specify the Routing Engine to halt.  reboot—Specify the Routing Engine to reboot.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a Routing Engine to Reboot on Hard Disk Errors” on page 728.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**e1**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>e1 <i>port-number</i> {     channel-group <i>group-number</i> timeslots <i>slot-number</i>; }</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ce1]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the channelized E1 port number on the PIC.  Range: 0 through 9
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channel Groups and Time Slots for Channelized E1 PICs” on page 716.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**ethernet**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>ethernet {     device-count <i>number</i>;     lACP {         link-protection {             non-revertive;         }     system-priority; }</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit chassis aggregated-devices]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure properties for Ethernet aggregated devices on the router.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices” on page 669.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## **fabric upgrade-mode**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	fabric { upgrade-mode; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.5.
<b>Description</b>	Configure upgrade mode for SIBs and forces them to operate in the same mode until the upgrade is complete.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview” on page 735.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**fpc**

---

See the following topics:

- fpc (M320, T320, T640 Routing Platforms) on page 756
- fpc (MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers) on page 757
- fpc (TX Matrix Platform) on page 758

**fpc (M320, T320, T640 Routing Platforms)**

```

Syntax  fpc slot-number {
            pic pic-number {
              ce1 {
                e1 port-number {
                  channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;
                }
              }
              ct3 {
                port port-number {
                  t1 link-number {
                    channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;
                  }
                }
              }
            }
            framing (sdh | sonet);
            idle-cell-format {
              itu-t;
              payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;
            }
            max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);
            no-concatenate;
            q-pic-large-buffer <large-scale | small-scale>;
          }

```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit chassis]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure properties for the PICs in individual Flexible PIC Concentrators (FPCs).

**Options** *slot-number*—Slot number in which the FPC is installed.  
**Range:** 0 through 7

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs” on page 709 and “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a SONET PIC to Operate in the Channelized (Multiplexed) Mode” on page 712.

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**fpc (MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>fpc slot-number {     pic number {         port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name-pic-level;         tunnel-services {             bandwidth (1g   10g)         }     }     port-mirror-instance port-mirroring-instance-name-fpc-level; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.2. port-mirror-instance option introduced in JUNOS Release 9.3.
<b>Description</b>	<p>On MX-series Ethernet Services Routers only, configure properties for the DPC and corresponding Packet Forwarding Engines to create tunnel interfaces.</p> <p>Configure a port-mirroring instance for the DPC and its corresponding Packet Forwarding Engines.</p>
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>slot-number</i>—Specify the slot number of the DPC. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 11</p> <p><i>pic number</i>—Specify the number of the Packet Forwarding Engine. Each DPC includes four Packet Forwarding Engines. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 4</p> <p><i>port-instance-name port-mirroring-instance-name-fpc-level</i>—Associate a port-mirroring instance with the DPC and its corresponding PICs. The port-mirroring instance is configured under the [edit forwarding-options port-mirroring] hierarchy level.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Tunnel Interfaces on MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers” on page 720 and “Configuring Port-Mirroring Instances on MX-series Routers” on page 672.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

**fpc (TX Matrix Platform)**

**Syntax** `fpc slot-number {  
     pic pic-number {  
         atm-cell-relay-accumulation;  
         atm-l2circuit-mode (cell | aal5 | trunk trunk);  
         framing (sdh | sonet);  
         idle-cell-format {  
             itu-t;  
             payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;  
         }  
         max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);  
         no-concatenate;  
         q-pic-large-buffer <large-scale | small-scale>;  
     }  
}`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit chassis lcc *number*]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** On a TX Matrix platform, configure properties for the PICs in individual FPCs.

**Options** *slot-number*—Slot number in which the FPC is installed.  
**Range:** 0 through 7

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs” on page 709 and “TX Matrix Platform Chassis and Interface Names” on page 739.

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** ■ TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735

## fpc-feb-connectivity

---

<b>Syntax</b>	fpc-feb-connectivity { fpc <i>number</i> feb ( <i>slot-number</i>   none); }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.0.
<b>Description</b>	On the M120 router only, configure a connection between any Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC) and any Forwarding Engine Board (FEB).
<b>Options</b>	<p>fpc <i>number</i>—Specify the FPC slot number.     <b>Range:</b> 0 through 5</p> <p>feb <i>slot-number</i>—Specify the FEB slot number.     <b>Range:</b> : 0 through 5</p> <p>none—Disconnects the FPC from the FEB.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support FPC to FEB Connectivity on M120 Routers” on page 726.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## framing

---

<b>Syntax</b>	framing (sdh   sonet);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<p>[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i>],</p> <p>[edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i>] (Routing Matrix)</p>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	On SONET/SDH PICs only, configure the framing type.
<b>Default</b>	sonet
<b>Options</b>	<p>sdh—SDH framing.</p> <p>sonet—SONET framing.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs” on page 709.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

## idle-cell-format

---

<b>Syntax</b>	idle-cell-format { itu-t; payload-pattern <i>payload-pattern-byte</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> idle-cell-format], [edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> idle-cell-format]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For ATM2 PICs only, configure the format of the idle cell header and payload bytes.
<b>Options</b>	<p>itu-t—Configure the idle cell header to use the International Telecommunications Union (ITU-T) standard of 0x00000001.  <b>Default:</b> (4 bytes): 0x00000000</p> <p><i>payload-pattern-byte</i>—Configure the idle cell payload pattern. The payload pattern byte can range from 0x00 through 0xff.  <b>Default:</b> cell payload (48 bytes)</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Idle Cell Format and Payload Patterns for ATM Devices” on page 723.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735.

## lACP

---

<b>Syntax</b>	lACP { link-protection { non-revertive; } system-priority <i>priority</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.3.
<b>Description</b>	For aggregated Ethernet interfaces only, configure Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) parameters at the global level for use by LACP at the interface level.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices on page 669.



**lcc**

**Syntax** `lcc number {  
     fpc slot-number {  
         pic pic-number {  
             atm-cell-relay-accumulation;  
             atm-l2circuit-mode (cell | aal5 | trunk trunk);  
             framing (sdh | sonet);  
             idle-cell-format {  
                 itu-t;  
                 payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;  
             }  
             max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);  
             no-concatenate;  
         }  
     }  
     online-expected;  
     offline;  
}`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit chassis]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure a T640 routing node on a routing matrix.

**Options** *number*—Specifies a T640 routing node on a routing matrix.  
**Range:** 0 through 3

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview” on page 735 and “Using the JUNOS software to Configure a T640 Routing Node Within a Routing Matrix” on page 738.

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** *TX Matrix Platform Hardware Guide*

## link-protection

---

<b>Syntax</b>	link-protection { non-revertive; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet lacp]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.3.
<b>Description</b>	Enable LACP link protection at the global (chassis) level.
<b>Options</b>	The statements are explained separately.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	■ Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices on page 669

## max-queues-per-interface

---

<b>Syntax</b>	max-queues-per-interface (8   4);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ], [edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	On M320, T320, and T640 routing platforms, and TX Matrix platforms, configure eight egress queues on IQ interfaces.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Eight Queues on IQ Interfaces for T-Series and M320 Routing Platforms” on page 715.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	■ TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735

## mlfr-uni-nni-bundles

---

<b>Syntax</b>	mlfr-uni-nni-bundles <i>number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure link services management properties.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Number of Multilink Frame Relay user-to-network interface network-to-network interface (UNI-NNI) (FRF.16) bundles to allocate on a Link Services PIC. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 128 <b>Default:</b> 16
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the Link Services PIC” on page 722. See also the <i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	chassis—To view this statement in the configuration. chassis-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## network-services

---

<b>Syntax</b>	network-services (ethernet   ip);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 8.5.
<b>Description</b>	Use the <b>set network-services</b> statement to set the router’s network services to either Ethernet or to Internet Protocol (IP).
<b>Options</b>	ethernet—Set the router’s network services to Ethernet.  ip—Set the router’s network services to Internet Protocol.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Run in the IP and Ethernet Services Mode in MX-series Routers” on page 733.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	chassis—To view this statement in the configuration. chassis-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## no-concatenate

---

<b>Syntax</b>	no-concatenate;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ], [edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ] (Routing Matrix)
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>Do not concatenate (multiplex) the output of a SONET/SDH PIC (an interface with a name <i>so-fpc/pic/port</i>).</p> <p>When configuring and displaying information about interfaces that are operating in channelized mode, you must specify the channel number in the interface name (<i>physical:channel</i>); for example, <i>so-2/2/0:0</i> and <i>so-2/2/0:1</i>.</p> <p>On SONET OC48 interfaces that are configured for channelized (multiplexed) mode, the <b>bytes e1-quiet</b> and <b>bytes f1</b> options in the <b>sonet-options</b> statement have no effect. The <b>bytes f2</b>, <b>bytes z3</b>, <b>bytes z4</b>, and <b>path-trace</b> options work correctly on channel 0. They work in the transmit direction only on channels 1, 2, and 3.</p>
<b>Default</b>	Output is concatenated (multiplexed).
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a SONET PIC to Operate in the Channelized (Multiplexed) Mode” on page 712.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735</li> </ul>

## non-revertive

---

<b>Syntax</b>	non-revertive;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet lacp link-protection]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.3.
<b>Description</b>	Disable the ability to switch to a better priority link (if one is available) once a link is established as active and a collection or distribution is enabled.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	■ Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices on page 669

## offline

---

<b>Syntax</b>	offline;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Routing matrix only) Configure a T640 routing node so that it is not part of the routing matrix.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the TX Matrix Platform to Generate an Alarm if a T640 Routing Node Stays Offline” on page 742.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	■ online-expected ■ TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735

## on-disk-failure

---

<b>Syntax</b>	on-disk-failure { disk-failure-action (halt   reboot); }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis routing-engine]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4. The disk-failure-action statement added in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Instruct the router to halt or reboot if it detects hard disk errors on the Routing Engine.
<b>Options</b>	The remaining statement is explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a Routing Engine to Reboot on Hard Disk Errors” on page 728.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## online-expected

---

<b>Syntax</b>	online-expected;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	(Routing matrix only) Configure a T640 routing node so that if it does not come online, an alarm is sent to the TX Matrix platform.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable the TX Matrix Platform to Generate an Alarm if a T640 Routing Node Stays Offline” on page 742.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ offline</li> <li>■ TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735</li> </ul>

## packet-scheduling

---

**Syntax** (packet-scheduling | no-packet-scheduling);

**Hierarchy Level** [edit chassis]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Enable packet-scheduling mode, in which the Packet Director application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC) schedules packet dispatches to compensate for transport delay differences. This preserves the interpacket gaps as the packets are distributed from the Packet Director ASIC to the Packet Forwarding Engine.

**Default** no-packet-scheduling



**NOTE:** The packet-scheduling feature is available on M1 60 routers only.

---

**Options** no-packet-scheduling—Do not schedule packets.

packet-scheduling—Schedule packets to preserve interpacket gaps.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable an M1 60 Router to Operate in Packet Scheduling Mode” on page 722.

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## pem

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>pem {     minimum <i>number</i>; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the minimum number of PEMs on an M320 router. With this configuration, PEM absent alarms are generated only if the PEM count falls below the minimum specified.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Minimum number of PEMs on the router. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 3
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Entry-Level Configuration on an M320 Router With a Minimum Number of SIBs and PIMs” on page 731.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	sib



**pic**

See the following topics:

- `pic` (M-series and T-series Routing Platforms) on page 769
- `pic` (TX Matrix Platform) on page 770

***pic (M-series and T-series Routing Platforms)***

```
Syntax  pic pic-number {
            ce1 {
                e1 port-number {
                    channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;
                }
            }
            ct3 {
                port port-number {
                    t1 link-number {
                        channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;
                    }
                }
            }
            framing (sdh | sonet);
            idle-cell format {
                itu-t;
                payload-pattern payload-pattern-byte;
            }
            max-queues-per-interface (8 | 4);
            no-concatenate;
        }
```

**Hierarchy Level** [edit chassis fpc *slot-number*]

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure properties for an individual PIC.

**Options** *pic-number*—Slot number in which the PIC is installed.  
**Range:** 0 through 3

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs” on page 709, “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a SONET PIC to Operate in the Channelized (Multiplexed) Mode” on page 712, “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots” on page 713, and “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channel Groups and Time Slots for Channelized E1 PICs” on page 716.

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**pic (TX Matrix Platform)**

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre> pic <i>pic-number</i> {     atm-cell-relay-accumulation;     atm-l2circuit-mode (cell   aal5   trunk <i>trunk</i>);     framing (sdh   sonet);     idle-cell-format {         itu-t;         payload-pattern <i>payload-pattern-byte</i>;     }     max-queues-per-interface (8   4);     no-concatenate;     q-pic-large-buffer &lt;large-scale   small-scale&gt;; } </pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> fpc <i>slot-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	On a TX Matrix platform, configure properties for an individual PIC.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>pic-number</i>—Slot number in which the PIC is installed.</p> <p><b>Range:</b> 0 through 3</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable SONET/SDH Framing for SONET/SDH PICs” on page 709.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	■ TX Matrix Platform and T640 Routing Node Configuration Overview on page 735

**port**

<b>Syntax</b>	port <i>port-number</i> ;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ct3]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the channelized T3 port number on the PIC.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>pic-number</i>—Port number.</p> <p><b>Range:</b> 0 through 1</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots” on page 713.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>


**power**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	power (off   on);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC) to stay offline or to come online automatically.
<b>Default</b>	on
<b>Options</b>	<p>off—Take the FPC offline, and configure it to stay offline, as, for example, after a system reboot.</p> <p>on—Bring the FPC online, and configure it to come online automatically, as, for example, after a system reboot.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make a Flexible PIC Concentrator Stay Offline” on page 667.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## q-pic-large-buffer

---

<b>Syntax</b>	q-pic-large-buffer <large-scale   small-scale>; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure delay buffers.
<hr/>	
	<b>NOTE:</b> When you commit the configuration after including the <b>q-pic-large-buffer</b> statement for a PIC, the JUNOS software temporarily takes the PIC offline and brings it back online before the new configuration is activated and becomes the current operational configuration.
<hr/>	
<b>Default</b>	small-scale
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>large-scale</b>—(Optional) Set the average packet size used to calculate the number of notification queue entries in the IQ PIC to 256 bytes. Useful for slower interfaces (T1, E1, and NxDS0 interfaces configured on Channelized IQ PICs and Gigabit Ethernet VLANs configured on Gigabit Ethernet IQ PICs).</p> <p><b>small-scale</b>—(Optional) Set the average packet size used to calculate the number of notification queue entries in the IQ PIC to 40 bytes.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Larger Delay Buffers for T1, E1, and DS0 Interfaces Configured on Channelized IQ PICs” on page 729.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS Class of Service Configuration Guide</i>

## red-buffer-occupancy

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>red-buffer-occupancy {     weighted-averaged &lt;instant-usage-weight-exponent weight-value&gt;; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ], [edit chassis lcc <i>number</i> fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ] (Routing Matrix)
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.
<b>Description</b>	Configure computation of buffer occupancy weighted RED (WRED) based on weighted-averaging of buffer occupancy on an IQ PIC.
<b>Options</b>	<p><i>instant-usage-weight-exponent</i>—Establish a value to use for weighted average calculations of buffer occupancy.</p> <p><i>weight-value</i>—Establish an exponent to use for weighted average calculations of buffer occupancy.</p> <p><b>Range:</b> For IQ PICs, 1 through 31.</p> <p>Values in excess of 31 are configurable, and appear in <b>show</b> commands, but are replaced with the operational maximum value of 31 on IQ PICs.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>JUNOS Class of Service Configuration Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## routing-engine

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>routing-engine {   on-disk-failure {     disk-failure-action (halt   reboot);   } }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4. The <code>disk-failure-action</code> statement added in JUNOS Release 9.0.
<b>Description</b>	Configure a Routing Engine to halt or reboot automatically when a hard disk error occurs. A hard disk error may cause a Routing Engine to enter a state in which it responds to local pings and interfaces remain up, but no other processes are responding. Rebooting or halting prevents this.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable a Routing Engine to Reboot on Hard Disk Errors” on page 728.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS High Availability Configuration Guide.</i>

**sfm**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>sfm slot-number power off;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	<p>For routers with SFMs, configure an SFM to stay offline.</p> <p>By default, if you use the <code>request chassis sfm</code> CLI command to take an SFM offline, the SFM will attempt to restart when you enter a <code>commit</code> CLI command. To prevent a restart, configure an SFM to stay offline. This feature is useful for repair situations. The SFM remains offline until you delete this statement.</p>
<b>Options</b>	<p><code>slot-number</code>—Slot number in which the SFM is installed.</p> <p><code>power off</code>—Take the SFM offline and configure it to remain offline.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Make an SFM Stay Offline” on page 668.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS High Availability Configuration Guide.</i>

**service-package**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>service-package (layer-2   layer-3);</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number adaptive-services]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For adaptive services interfaces, enable a service package on the specified Physical Interface Card (PIC).
<b>Options</b>	<p><code>layer-2</code>—Enable a Layer 2 service package on the specified PIC.</p> <p><code>layer-3</code>—Enable a Layer 3 service package on the specified PIC.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable Service Packages on Adaptive Services Interfaces” on page 708.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	<p>interface—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> and <i>JUNOS Feature Guide</i> .

**sib**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	sib { minimum <i>number</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure the minimum number of SIBs on an M320 router. With this configuration, SIB absent alarms are generated only if the SIB count falls below the minimum specified.
<b>Options</b>	<i>number</i> —Minimum number of SIBs on the router. <b>Range:</b> 0 through 3
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Entry-Level Configuration on an M320 Router With a Minimum Number of SIBs and PIMs” on page 731.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	pem

**sonet**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	sonet { device-count <i>number</i> ; }
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis aggregated-devices]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure properties for SONET/SDH aggregated devices on the router.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices” on page 669.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.



**sparse-dlcis**

---

<b>Syntax</b>	sparse-dlcis;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ];
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Support a full data-link connection identifier (DLCI) range (1 through 1022). This allows you to use circuit cross-connect (CCC) and translation cross-connect (TCC) features by means of Frame Relay on T1 and E1 interfaces.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support the Sparse DLCI Mode on Channelized STM1 or Channelized DS3 PICs” on page 712.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## synchronization

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>synchronization {   signal-type (t1   e1);   switching-mode (revertive   non-revertive);   y-cable-line-termination;   transmitter-enable;   validation-interval seconds;   primary (external-a   external-b);   secondary (external-a   external-b); }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	<p>Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 7.6.</p> <p>Statement introduced on the M120 router in JUNOS Release 9.3.</p>
<b>Description</b>	(M320, M40e, and M120 routers only) Configure an external synchronization interface to synchronize the internal Stratum 3 clock to an external source, and then synchronize the chassis interface clock to that source.
<b>Options</b>	<p><b>signal-type</b>—Specify the line encoding mode for interfaces: either <b>t1</b> or <b>e1</b>. For the M40e router, only the <b>t1 signal-type</b> mode is supported.  <b>Default:</b> t1</p> <p><b>switching-mode</b>—Specify <b>revertive</b> if a lower-priority synchronization can be switched to a valid, higher-priority synchronization.  <b>Default:</b> non-revertive</p> <p><b>y-cable-line-termination</b>—(M320 routers only) Specify that a single signal be wired to both Control Boards (CBs) using a Y-cable.</p> <p><b>transmitter-enable</b>— (M320 routers only) Control whether the diagnostic timing signal is transmitted.</p> <p><b>validation-interval</b>—Validate the synchronized deviation. If revertive switching is enabled and a higher-priority clock is validated, the clock module is directed to the higher-priority clock, and all configured and active synchronizations are validated. The validation timer resumes after the current validation interval expires.  <b>Range:</b> (M320 and M40e routers) <b>90</b> through <b>86400</b> seconds (M120 routers) 30 through 86400 seconds  <b>Default:</b> (M320 and M40e routers): <b>90 seconds</b> (M120 routers):<b>30 seconds</b></p> <p><b>primary</b>—First external timing source specified in the configuration hierarchy.</p> <p><b>secondary</b>—Second external timing source specified in the configuration hierarchy.</p>
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support an External Clock Synchronization Interface for the M320, M40e, and M120 Routing Platforms” on page 710.

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## system-priority

---

**Syntax** `system-priority priority;`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit chassis aggregated-devices ethernet lacp]

**Release Information** Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 9.3.

**Description** Define LACP system priority for aggregated Ethernet interfaces at the global (chassis) level.

**Options** *priority*—Priority for the aggregated Ethernet system. A smaller value indicates a higher priority.  
**Range:** 0 through 65535  
**Default:** 127

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

**Related Topics** ■ Configuring the JUNOS Software for Supporting Aggregated Devices on page 669

## t1

---

**Syntax** `t1 link-number {  
     channel-group group-number timeslots slot-number;  
 }`

**Hierarchy Level** [edit chassis fpc *slot-number* pic *pic-number* ct3 port *port-number*];

**Release Information** Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.

**Description** Configure channelized T1 port and channel specifications.

**Options** *link-number*—T1 link.  
**Range:** 0 through 27 for DS0 naming

The remaining statements are explained separately.

**Usage Guidelines** See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots” on page 713.

**Required Privilege Level** interface—To view this statement in the configuration.  
 interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## timeslots

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<code>timeslots slot-number;</code>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ct3 port port-number t1 link-number channel-group channel-number],</code> <code>[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number ce1 e1link-number channel-group channel-number]</code> <code>[edit chassis lcc lcc-index fpc slot-number pic pic-number ct3 port port-number t1 link-number channel-group channel-number],</code> <code>[edit chassis lcc lcc-index fpc slot-number pic pic-number ce1 e1link-number channel-group channel-number]</code>
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	For E1 or T1 interfaces, allocate the specific time slots by number.
<b>Options</b>	<i>slot-number</i> —Actual time slot number(s) allocated. <b>Range:</b> 1 through 24 for T1 and 1 through 32 for E1 <b>Default:</b> All time slots for T1 and all time slots for E1
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized DS3-to-DS0 Naming for Channel Groups and Time Slots” on page 713 and “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channel Groups and Time Slots for Channelized E1 PICs” on page 716.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## traffic-manager

---

<b>Syntax</b>	<pre>traffic-manager {     ingress-shaping-overhead number;     mode session-shaping; }</pre>
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	<code>[edit chassis fpc slot-number pic pic-number],</code> <code>[edit chassis lcc number fpc slot-number pic pic-number]</code> (Routing Matrix)
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.3.
<b>Description</b>	Enable shaping on an L2TP session.  The remaining statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See the <i>JUNOS Class of Service Configuration Guide</i> .
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## tunnel-services

---

<b>Syntax</b>	tunnel-services { bandwidth (1g   10g);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced in JUNOS Release 8.2.
<b>Description</b>	For MX-series Ethernet Services Routers, configure the amount of bandwidth for tunnel services.
<b>Options</b>	The statements are explained separately.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Tunnel Interfaces on MX-Series Ethernet Services Routers” on page 720.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## vrf-mtu-check

---

<b>Syntax</b>	vrf-mtu-check;
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	On M-series routers (except the M320 router), configure path maximum transmission unit (MTU) checks on the outgoing interface for unicast traffic routed on a virtual private network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) instance.
<b>Default</b>	Disabled.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Enable MTU Path Check for a Routing Instance on M-series Routers” on page 724.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
<b>Related Topics</b>	<i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i>

## vtmapping

---

<b>Syntax</b>	vtmapping (klm   itu-t);
<b>Hierarchy Level</b>	[edit chassis fpc <i>slot-number</i> pic <i>pic-number</i> ]
<b>Release Information</b>	Statement introduced before JUNOS Release 7.4.
<b>Description</b>	Configure virtual tributary mapping.
<b>Default</b>	klm
<b>Options</b>	klm—KLM standard.  itu-t—International Telephony Union standard.
<b>Usage Guidelines</b>	See “Configuring the JUNOS Software to Support Channelized STM1 Interface Virtual Tributary Mapping” on page 718.
<b>Required Privilege Level</b>	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

## **Part 6**

# **Index**

- Index on page 785
- Index of Statements and Commands on page 803





# Index

## Symbols

!	regular expression operator.....78, 81 system logging.....140
#	comments in configuration statements.....xlvi
\$	regular expression operator.....78, 81 system logging.....140
()	regular expression operator.....78, 81 system logging.....140
( ), in syntax descriptions.....	xlvi
*	regular expression operator.....81 system logging.....140
+	regular expression operator.....81 system logging.....140
.	regular expression operator.....81 system logging.....139
/altconfig directory.....	37
/altroot directory.....	37
/config directory	location of configuration files.....37
/var directory.....	37
/var/db/config directory.....	37
/var/home directory.....	37
/var/log directory.....	37
< >, in syntax descriptions.....	xlvi
?	regular expression operator system logging.....140
[ ]	regular expression operator system logging.....140
[ ], in configuration statements.....	xlvi
\	regular expression operator.....78, 81
^	regular expression operator.....78, 81 system logging.....140
{ }, in configuration statements.....	xlvi

	regular expression operator system logging.....140
(pipe), in syntax descriptions.....	xlvi

## A

AAA Service Framework.....	459
access	tracing operations.....427
access privilege levels	login classes.....72 user accounts.....67
access, router remotely.....	29
accounting	order.....438
accounting statement.....	252, 483
authentication	usage guidelines.....209, 212
accounting-order statement.....	484
usage guidelines.....	438
accounting-port statement.....	484
RADIUS server.....	253
usage guidelines.....	450
accounting-server statement.....	485
accounting-session-id-format statement.....	485
accounting-stop-on-access-deny statement.....	486
accounting-stop-on-failure statement.....	486
activating a configuration.....	28
adaptive-services statement.....	743
usage guidelines.....	708
address statement.....	487
usage guidelines.....	433
address-assignment pool	tracing operations.....479
address-assignment statement.....	488
usage guidelines.....	475
address-pool statement.....	489
usage guidelines.....	432
address-range statement.....	489
usage guidelines.....	433
addresses	IP addresses.....53 router source addresses.....156, 281
aggregate-ports statement.....	744
aggregated devices, configuring.....	669

aggregated-devices statement.....	744	ATM2 IQ interfaces	
usage guidelines.....	669	Layer 2 circuit transport mode.....	718
aging timer		attributes statement.....	491
ARP.....	220	authentication	
alarm conditions.....	675	diagnostics port.....	204
backup Routing Engine.....	706	diagnostics port password.....	292
chassis alarm conditions.....	677	NTP authentication keys.....	112
silencing alarm devices.....	707	order.....	95, 99, 437
alarm cutoff button.....	707	protocol.....	40
alarm statement.....	745	RADIUS.....	40, 83, 91, 92
usage guidelines.....	675	root password.....	58, 60
alert (system logging severity level 1).....	137	shared user accounts.....	91, 92
algorithm statement.....	607, 608	TACACS+ .....	40, 87, 91, 92
usage guidelines.....	604	user.....	30
alias option for static-host-mapping statement.....	381	users.....	40
alias statement.....	381	authentication key update mechanism.....	599
all (tracing flag)		authentication statement.....	260, 608
VRRP.....	219, 220	login.....	260
allow-commands statement.....	253	subscriber access management.....	261
usage guidelines.....	74	usage guidelines.....	67, 69, 561
allow-configuration statement.....	254	authentication-algorithm statement	
usage guidelines.....	74	IKE.....	609
allow-transients statement.....	254	usage guidelines.....	564
allowed-proxy-pair statement.....	490	IPSec.....	609
usage guidelines.....	457	usage guidelines.....	569
allowing commands to login classes.....	74	authentication-key statement.....	262
alternative media.....	683	usage guidelines.....	112
announcement statement.....	255	authentication-key-chains statement.....	610
usage guidelines.....	203	authentication-method statement	
announcements		IKE.....	611
system login.....	203	usage guidelines.....	564
any (system logging facility).....	124	authentication-order statement.....	263, 492
any (system logging severity level).....	124	usage guidelines.....	95, 99, 437
archival statement.....	255	authentication-server statement.....	492
usage guidelines.....	207	authorization (system logging facility).....	124
archive router configuration.....	207	option to facility-override statement.....	131
archive statement.....	256	auto-re-enrollment statement.....	612
usage guidelines.....	133	autoinstallation statement.....	264
archive-sites statement		auxiliary port	
configuration files.....	257	properties.....	154
system log files.....	258	auxiliary statement.....	265
system logging		usage guidelines.....	154
usage guidelines.....	133	auxiliary-spi statement.....	613
usage guidelines.....	208	usage guidelines.....	561
ARP			
aging timer.....	220		
arp statement.....	259		
usage guidelines.....	219		
ASCII file, JUNOS software, configuring using.....	18		
ATM.....	719		
ATM interfaces			
PIC alarm conditions.....	676		
atm-cell-relay-accumulation statement.....	746		
usage guidelines.....	671		
atm-l2circuit-mode statement.....	747		
usage guidelines.....	718, 719		
		<b>B</b>	
		backup router configuration.....	207
		backup routers.....	55, 265
		backup-router statement.....	265
		usage guidelines.....	55
		bandwidth statement.....	748
		usage guidelines.....	720
		BGP	
		security configuration example.....	234

- boot server
  - NTP.....107
- boot-file statement.....266, 493
  - usage guidelines.....160
- boot-server statement.....493
  - DHCP.....267
  - NTP.....268
  - usage guidelines.....107
- BOOTP relay agent.....156
- braces, in configuration statements.....xlvi
- brackets
  - angle, in syntax descriptions.....xlvi
  - square, in configuration statements.....xlvi
- brief statement
  - system logging.....382
  - usage guidelines.....126
- broadcast
  - NTP.....108, 109, 110
  - synchronizing NTP.....112
- broadcast messages, synchronizing NTP.....270
- broadcast statement.....269
  - usage guidelines.....110
- broadcast-client statement.....270
  - usage guidelines.....112
- bucket-size statement.....270
- C**
- ca-identity statement.....613
  - usage guidelines.....586
- ca-name statement.....614
  - usage guidelines.....578
- ca-profile statement.....615
  - usage guidelines.....586
- cables
  - console port, connecting.....102
  - Ethernet rollover, connecting.....102
- cache-size statement.....616
  - usage guidelines.....579
- cache-timeout-negative statement.....616
  - usage guidelines.....580
- ce1 statement.....749
  - usage guidelines.....716
- cell-overhead statement.....494
  - usage guidelines
    - client profile.....445
    - group profile.....434
- certificate-id statement.....617
- certificates statement.....618
  - usage guidelines.....603
- certification-authority statement.....619
  - usage guidelines.....577
- cfeb statement.....666, 725
- challenge-password statement.....619
- change-log (system logging facility).....124
- change-type statement.....271
  - usage guidelines.....60
- channel-group statement.....749
  - usage guidelines.....713
- channelized DS3-to-DS0 naming.....713
- channelized E1 naming.....716
- channelized mode.....712
- chap-secret statement.....494
  - usage guidelines.....423
- chassis
  - configuration
    - alarm conditions.....675
- chassis interface names.....739
- chassis statement.....750
  - usage guidelines.....663
- circuit-id statement.....495
- circuit-type statement.....272
- class statement.....273
  - usage guidelines.....66, 67, 69
- CLI
  - JUNOS software, configuring using.....18, 19
- client address statement
  - usage guidelines.....455
- client mode, NTP.....108, 109
- client statement.....496
  - usage guidelines.....423, 439
- client-identifier statement.....274
  - usage guidelines.....169
- commands
  - allowing or denying to login classes.....74
  - filenames, specifying.....36
  - URLs, specifying.....36
- comments, in configuration statements.....xlvi
- commit scripts
  - JUNOS software, configuring using.....18, 20
- commit statement.....275
- commit synchronize command.....25
- commit synchronize statement.....276
  - usage guidelines.....63
- Common Criteria
  - system logging.....122
- CompactFlash cards
  - mirroring to hard disk.....57
- compress-configuration-files statement.....277
  - usage guidelines.....63, 64
- compressing configuration files.....63, 277
- concatenated mode.....712
- config-button statement.....750
  - usage guidelines.....728
- configuration
  - activating.....28
  - aggregated devices.....669
  - files *See* configuration files

configuration files	
compressing.....	63, 277
filename, specifying.....	36
URL, specifying.....	36
configuration statement.....	278
configuration statements	
specifying IP addresses in.....	35
usage guidelines.....	207
configuration-servers statement.....	278
conflict-log (system logging facility).....	124
connection-limit statement.....	279
usage guidelines.....	159
connectivity	
FPC to FEB, M120 routers.....	726
console port	
adapter.....	102
properties.....	154
console statement	
physical port.....	280
usage guidelines.....	154
system logging.....	281
usage guidelines.....	127
conventions	
text and syntax.....	xlvi
core dump files	
usage guidelines.....	205
viewing.....	205
craft interface	
alarm conditions	
chassis.....	677
M20 router.....	683
M40 router.....	690
M40e and M160 routers.....	694
overview.....	675
alarm cutoff button.....	707
disabling.....	707
craft-lockout statement.....	751
usage guidelines.....	707
critical (system logging severity level 2).....	137
crl statement	
AS and MultiServices PICs.....	621
ES PIC.....	620
usage guidelines (AS and MultiServices PICs).....	587
usage guidelines (ES PIC).....	578
Crypto Officer.....	71
user configuration.....	71
ct3 statement.....	751
usage guidelines.....	713
curly braces, in configuration statements.....	xlvi
customer support.....	xlvi
contacting JTAC.....	xlvi

**D**

daemon (system logging facility).....	124
option to facility-override statement.....	131
database (tracing flag).....	219, 220
debug (system logging severity level 7).....	137
default-address-selection statement.....	281
usage guidelines.....	156
default-lease-time statement.....	282
usage guidelines.....	169
delay buffers.....	729
delimiter statement.....	283
deny-commands statement.....	284
usage guidelines.....	74
deny-configuration statement.....	285
usage guidelines.....	74
denying commands to login classes.....	74
description statement	
IKE policy.....	622
usage guidelines.....	567
IKE proposal.....	622
usage guidelines.....	565
IPSec policy.....	622
usage guidelines.....	571
IPSec proposal.....	622
usage guidelines.....	570
IPSec SA.....	622
usage guidelines.....	557
usage guidelines.....	557, 565, 570
destination option.....	265
destination statement.....	286
usage guidelines.....	209, 212
device-count statement.....	752
usage guidelines.....	669
dfc (system logging facility).....	124
dh-group statement.....	622
usage guidelines.....	565
DHCP	
tracing operations.....	176
DHCP statement	
usage guidelines.....	160
dhcp statement	
usage guidelines.....	288
dhcp-attributes statement.....	497
dhcp-local-server statement.....	290
usage guidelines.....	180
DHCP/BOOTP relay agent.....	156
diag-port-authentication statement.....	292
usage guidelines.....	204
diagnostics port password.....	204, 292
direction statement.....	623
usage guidelines.....	559, 604
direction, IPSec.....	604
directories	
JUNOS software.....	37
disk space, available	
managing.....	28

disk-failure-action statement.....752  
 DNS name servers.....55  
 documentation set  
     comments on.....xlvii  
 domain names on routers.....54  
 domain-name statement.....293, 498  
     subscriber access management.....294  
     usage guidelines.....54  
 domain-search statement.....295  
     usage guidelines.....54  
 domains to be searched.....54, 295  
 DPC  
     bound to a Layer 2 port-mirroring instance.....672  
 drop-timeout statement.....498  
     usage guidelines.....442  
 DS1 interfaces, PIC alarm conditions.....676  
 dump-device statement.....296  
 dynamic security associations.....563  
 dynamic security associations (IPSec).....563  
 dynamic service activation.....214  
 dynamic statement.....625  
     usage guidelines.....563

## E

e1 statement.....753  
     usage guidelines.....716  
 E3 interfaces  
     PIC alarm conditions.....676  
 emergency (system logging severity level 0).....137  
 encapsulation-overhead statement.....499  
     usage guidelines  
         client profile.....445  
         group profile.....434  
 encoding statement.....625  
     usage guidelines  
         certificate authority.....578  
         IKE policy.....582  
 encrypted passwords.....58, 60  
 encrypted-password option.....58, 60  
 encryption statement.....626  
     usage guidelines.....562, 604  
 encryption-algorithm statement.....627  
     usage guidelines  
         IKE.....565  
         IPSec.....570  
 encryption-algorithm statement (IKE)  
     usage guidelines.....565  
 enrollment statement.....628  
     usage guidelines.....586  
 enrollment-retry statement.....629  
     usage guidelines.....580  
 enrollment-url statement.....629  
     usage guidelines.....579  
 error (system logging severity level 3).....137  
 ES PIC.....584

Ethernet  
     PIC alarm conditions.....676, 677  
 Ethernet rollover cable, connecting the router to a  
     management device.....102  
 ethernet statement.....753  
     usage guidelines.....669  
 Ethernet switching interfaces.....732, 734  
 ethernet-port-type-virtual statement.....499  
 event policy  
     all (tracing flag).....429  
     configuration (tracing flag).....429  
     database (tracing flag).....429  
     events (tracing flag).....429  
     policy (tracing flag).....429  
     server (tracing flag).....429  
     timer-events (tracing flag).....429  
 events statement.....297  
     usage guidelines.....210, 212  
 exclude statement.....500  
 explicit-priority statement.....297  
     usage guidelines  
         routing matrix.....147  
         single-chassis system.....135  
 export routing policies.....14  
 external synchronization interface.....778  
     usage guidelines.....710

## F

fabric upgrade-mode statement.....754  
 facilities (system logging)  
     alternate for remote machine.....131  
     default for remote machine.....131  
     for local machine.....124  
     mapping of codes to names.....136  
 facility-override statement.....298  
     system logging  
         usage guidelines.....129  
 failover statement.....666, 726  
     usage guidelines.....204  
 failover, configuring.....204  
 fan alarm conditions  
     M120 routers.....686  
     M20 routers.....683  
     M320 routers.....698  
     M40 routers.....690  
     M40e and M160 routers.....694  
     M5 and M10 routers.....677  
     M7i and M10i routers.....680  
     MX240 routers.....702  
     MX480 routers.....702  
     MX960 routers.....702  
 FEB alarm condition.....678  
     M120 routers.....686  
 feb statement.....666

FEBs	
connectivity.....	726
file statement.....	299
security	
usage guidelines.....	579
system logging.....	300
usage guidelines.....	125
filenames, specifying in commands.....	36
files	
configuration files, compressing.....	277
configuration, compressing.....	63
system log messages, archiving.....	133
files statement.....	301
system logging	
usage guidelines.....	133
finger statement.....	301
usage guidelines.....	194
FIPS.....	72
user configuration.....	72
<i>See also</i> JUNOS-FIPS	
firewall (system logging facility).....	124
firewall filters.....	32
security configuration example.....	239
first-time router configuration.....	21
flow-tap-dtcp statement.....	302
usage guidelines.....	193
font conventions.....	xlvi
format statement.....	303
forwarding table.....	13
FPC alarm condition	
M20 routers.....	683
M320 routers.....	699
M40 routers.....	690
M40e and M160 routers.....	694
M5 and M10 routers.....	678
fpc statement.....	755
usage guidelines.....	712
FPC, configuring to stay offline.....	667
fpc-feb-connectivity statement.....	759
usage guidelines.....	726
FPC-to-FEB connectivity	
configuring, M120 routers.....	726
example, M120 routers.....	726
fragmentation-threshold statement.....	502
usage guidelines.....	442
framed-ip-address statement.....	502
usage guidelines.....	445
framed-pool statement.....	503
usage guidelines.....	434
client profile.....	445
group profile.....	434
framing statement	
usage guidelines.....	709
ftp (system logging facility).....	124
option to facility-override statement.....	131
FTP service, configuring.....	195

ftp statement.....	303
usage guidelines.....	195
full names, in user accounts.....	67
full-name statement.....	304
usage guidelines.....	67, 69

## G

general (tracing flag).....	219, 220
global tracing operations.....	38
grace-period statement.....	503
graceful-switchover statement.....	667, 726
gre-path-mtu-discovery statement.....	304
usage guidelines.....	217
group statement.....	305
usage guidelines.....	180
group-profile statement.....	504
usage guidelines.....	433, 441

## H

hard disk	
mirroring CompactFlash cards.....	57
hard disk errors.....	728
hardware components.....	7
hardware-address statement.....	505
HMAC-MD5 authentication.....	40
host statement.....	306, 506
system logging	
usage guidelines for routing matrix.....	149
usage guidelines for single-chassis	
system.....	127
host-name statement.....	307
usage guidelines.....	52
hot-swapping alarm condition.....	678
http statement.....	307
https statement.....	308

## I

icmpv4-rate-limit statement.....	309
usage guidelines.....	214
icmpv6-rate-limit statement.....	309
usage guidelines.....	215
icons defined, notice.....	xlvi
identity statement.....	630
usage guidelines.....	582
idle timeout values	
login classes.....	81
idle-cell-format statement.....	760
usage guidelines.....	723
idle-timeout statement.....	310, 506
usage guidelines.....	81
group profile.....	434
ignore statement.....	507

- IKE.....550, 563
  - authentication algorithm.....564
  - authentication method.....564
  - DH group
    - usage guidelines.....565
  - Diffie-Hellman group.....565
  - dynamic SAs.....563
  - encryption algorithm.....565
  - encryption-algorithm statement
    - usage guidelines.....565
  - lifetime statement
    - usage guidelines.....566
  - policy configuration, example.....568
  - policy description.....567
  - policy mode.....567
  - policy statement
    - usage guidelines.....566
  - preshared key.....567
  - proposal description.....565
  - proposals associated with policy.....568
  - SA lifetime.....566
- ike statement.....508, 631
  - usage guidelines .....563
- ILMI with cell relay.....719
- immediate-update statement.....509
- import routing policies.....14
- inet statement.....381
  - usage guidelines.....52
- inet6-backup-router statement.....310
  - usage guidelines.....55
- info (system logging severity level 6).....137
- initial configuration
  - JUNOS software.....21
- initiate-dead-peer-detection-statement.....509
- insecure statement.....280
  - usage guidelines.....155
- interactive-commands (system logging facility).....124
- interface naming
  - routing matrix.....739
  - TX Matrix platform.....739
- interface statement.....312
  - usage guidelines.....180
- interface-description-format statement.....510
- interface-id statement.....510
  - usage guidelines.....435, 441
  - client profile.....445
- interfaces
  - tracing operations.....39
- interfaces (tracing flag).....219, 220
- interfaces statement.....313
- internal statement.....632
  - usage guidelines.....604
- internet-options statement.....314
  - usage guidelines.....214, 215, 217, 218, 219, 387
- IP addresses.....52
  - router mapping.....53
  - router names, mapping.....52
  - specifying in configuration statements.....35
- IP packets
  - router source addresses.....156, 281
- ip-address statement.....511
- ip-address-first statement.....315
  - usage guidelines.....180
- ipip-path-mtu-discovery statement.....315
  - usage guidelines.....215
- IPSec
  - algorithm.....607
  - authentication.....561
  - authentication algorithm.....569
  - auxiliary security parameter index.....561
  - configuring internal.....604
  - digital certificates, configuring (AS and MultiServices PICs).....584
  - digital certificates, configuring (ES PIC).....576
  - direction.....559, 604
  - direction of processing.....559
  - dynamic security associations.....563
  - encryption.....562, 604, 627
  - encryption algorithm.....570, 604
  - ES PIC.....584
  - example.....606
    - inbound traffic filter, applying.....597
    - inbound traffic filter, configuring.....596
    - outbound traffic filter, applying.....596
    - outbound traffic filter, configuring.....595
  - example configuration
    - outbound traffic.....595
  - IKE.....550
  - internal.....604
  - key.....605
  - lifetime of SA.....570
  - manual.....558, 604
  - minimum configurations
    - dynamic SA .....555
    - manual SA .....555
  - overview.....549
  - Perfect Forward Secrecy.....572
  - policy.....571
  - proposal.....569
  - proposal description.....570
  - SA description.....557
  - security associations.....549
  - security parameter index.....560
  - security services overview.....549
  - SPI.....605
  - statements.....654
- ipsec statement.....633
  - usage guidelines.....556
- ipsec-policy statement.....625
  - usage guidelines.....563

ipv6-duplicate-addr-detection-transmits	
statement.....	316
usage guidelines.....	217
ipv6-path-mtu-discovery statement.....	316
usage guidelines.....	216
ipv6-path-mtu-discovery-timeout statement.....	317
ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit statement.....	317
usage guidelines.....	217
IS-IS	
security configuration example.....	235

## J

J-series routers.....	732, 734
J-series Services Routers.....	5
J-Web graphical user interface (GUI)	
JUNOS software, configuring using.....	18, 19
Juniper Networks VSAs	
subscriber access management.....	471
Juniper-Allow-Commands attribute (RADIUS).....	86
Juniper-Allow-Configuration attribute (RADIUS).....	86
Juniper-Configuration-Change attribute (RADIUS).....	87
Juniper-Deny-Commands attribute (RADIUS).....	86
Juniper-Deny-Configuration attribute (RADIUS).....	86
Juniper-Interactive-Command attribute (RADIUS).....	86
Juniper-Interface-ID attribute (RADIUS for L2TP).....	452
Juniper-IP-Pool-Name attribute (RADIUS for	
L2TP).....	452
Juniper-Keep-Alive attribute (RADIUS for L2TP).....	452
Juniper-Local-User-Name attribute (RADIUS).....	86
Juniper-Primary-DNS attribute (RADIUS for	
L2TP).....	451
Juniper-Primary-WINS attribute (RADIUS for	
L2TP).....	451
Juniper-Secondary-DNS attribute (RADIUS for	
L2TP).....	451
Juniper-Secondary-WINS attribute (RADIUS for	
L2TP).....	451
Juniper-User-Permissions attribute (RADIUS).....	87
juniper.conf file, compressing.....	63, 277
JUNOS software.....	21
directories stored in.....	37
methods for configuring.....	18
ASCII file.....	18, 19
CLI.....	18, 19
CLI, ASCII file, J-Web GUI.....	18
commit scripts.....	18, 20
J-Web GUI.....	18, 19
JUNOScript API.....	18, 20
NETCONF API.....	18, 20
monitoring tools.....	28
passwords, plain-text, requirements.....	31
redundant Routing Engines, initial	
configuration.....	25
security, default settings.....	27
software properties, configuring.....	27

JUNOS-FIPS	
dual Routing Engines.....	7
IPSec requirements.....	7, 550
password requirements.....	40, 59, 69
remote services.....	159
system logging.....	122
user accounts.....	71
JUNOScript API	
JUNOS software, configuring using.....	18, 20
JUNOScript SSL service.....	160
JUNOScript xml-ssl service.....	603

## K

keepalive statement.....	511
usage guidelines	
client profile.....	446
keepalive-time statement.....	667, 726
kernel (system logging facility).....	124
option to facility-override statement.....	131
key statement.....	634
usage guidelines.....	605
key, IPSec.....	605

## L

l2tp statement.....	512
usage guidelines.....	433, 441
lacp statement.....	760
laptop <i>See</i> management device	
large delay buffers.....	729
LCC	
prefix.....	739
T640 routing node.....	738
TX Matrix platform.....	736
lcc statement.....	761
usage guidelines.....	738
lcp-negotiation statement	
usage guidelines.....	442
lcp-renegotiation statement.....	513
usage guidelines.....	433, 441
ldap-url statement.....	635
usage guidelines.....	579
license requirements	
address-assignment pool.....	475
lifetime-seconds statement.....	635
usage guidelines	
IKE.....	566
IPSec.....	570
limits statement.....	318
line-card chassis <i>See</i> LCC	
link protection	
non-revertive statement.....	765
Link Services PIC.....	722



- link-protection statement
  - LACP
    - chassis.....762
- lo0 interface.....156, 281
- load-key-file command
  - usage guidelines.....59, 67, 69
- load-key-file statement.....318
  - usage guidelines.....58, 60, 67, 69
- local password authentication.....92
- local statement.....636
  - usage guidelines.....603
- local user
  - template accounts.....92
- local-certificate statement.....319, 636
  - usage guidelines.....582
- local-chap statement.....514
  - usage guidelines.....442
- local-key-pair statement.....637
  - usage guidelines.....582
- local0 - local7 (options to facility-override statement).....131
- location statement.....320
  - usage guidelines.....57
- log files
  - specifying properties.....133
- log-out-on-disconnect statement.....280
  - usage guidelines.....155
- log-prefix statement
  - system logging.....321
    - usage guidelines.....133
- logging in as root.....196
- logging operations
  - security configuration example.....226
  - tracing operations.....38
- logical devices.....669
- logical-system-name statement.....322
- login announcements, system.....203
- login classes
  - access privilege levels.....72
  - commands, allowing or denying.....74
  - defining.....66
  - idle timeout values.....81
  - security configuration example.....224
- login messages, system.....202
- login statement.....323
  - usage guidelines.....66, 67, 69, 70
- login-alarms statement.....324
  - usage guidelines.....221
- login-tip statement.....324
- M**
- mac-address statement.....325
- management device
  - connecting through the CLI.....103
  - connecting to console port.....103
  - recovering root password from.....102
- management Ethernet interface
  - PIC alarm conditions.....677
- manual security association.....558
- manual statement.....638
  - usage guidelines.....558, 604
- manuals
  - comments on.....xlvii
- martian addresses.....27
- match statement.....326
  - usage guidelines.....138
- max-configurations-on-flash statement.....326
  - usage guidelines.....209
- max-queues-per-interface statement.....762
  - usage guidelines.....715
- maximum-certificates statement.....639
  - usage guidelines.....580
- maximum-lease-time statement.....327, 514
  - usage guidelines.....160, 169
- maximum-length statement.....327
  - usage guidelines.....60
- maximum-sessions-per-tunnel statement.....515
  - usage guidelines.....441
- MD5 authentication.....40
- message statement.....328
  - usage guidelines.....202
- messages
  - broadcast messages, NTP.....112, 270
  - multicast, NTP.....113
  - redirect.....155
  - system login.....202
- minimum-changes statement.....328
  - usage guidelines.....60
- minimum-length statement.....329
  - usage guidelines.....60
- mirror-flash-on-disk statement.....330
  - usage guidelines.....57
- mlfr-uni-nni-bundles statement.....763
  - usage guidelines.....723
- mode statement
  - IKE.....640
    - usage guidelines.....567
  - IPSec.....641
- monitoring tools
  - tracing operations.....38
- monitoring tools for JUNOS software.....28
- MPLS routing table.....14
- ms-chapv2
  - changing password ms-chapv2.....84
- multicast
  - NTP messages.....113
- multicast routing table.....14

multicast-client statement.....	331
usage guidelines.....	113
multilink statement.....	515
usage guidelines.....	442
multiplexed mode.....	712

**N**

name servers, DNS.....	55
name-server statement.....	331, 516
usage guidelines.....	55
names	
domain names on routers.....	54
names.....	53
router .....	52
nas-identifier statement.....	516
nas-port-extended-format statement.....	517
netbios-node-type statement.....	518
NETCONF API	
JUNOS software, configuring using.....	18, 20
network	
masks.....	35
network statement.....	518
network-services.....	763
Next-generation SONET/SDH PICs	
configuring.....	709
no-auto-failover statement.....	667, 726
no-compress-configuration-files statement.....	277
no-compression-configuration-files statement	
usage guidelines.....	63
no-concatenate statement.....	764
usage guidelines.....	712
no-gre-path-mtu-discovery statement.....	304
no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery statement.....	315
no-multicast-echo statement.....	332
usage guidelines.....	157
no-packet-scheduling statement.....	767
usage guidelines.....	722
no-path-mtu-discovery statement.....	346
no-ping-record-route statement.....	333
no-ping-time-stamp statement.....	333
no-redirects statement.....	334
usage guidelines.....	155
no-saved-core-context statement.....	365
usage guidelines.....	205
no-source-quench statement.....	378
no-tcp-rfc1323 statement.....	335
usage guidelines.....	218, 219
no-tcp-rfc1323-paws statement.....	335
no-world-readable statement	
system logging.....	415
usage guidelines.....	133
non-revertive statement.....	765
nonconcatenated mode.....	712
normal (tracing flag).....	219, 220
notice (system logging severity level 5).....	137

notice icons defined.....	xlvi
NTP	

authentication keys.....	112
boot server.....	107
broadcast mode.....	108, 109, 110
client mode.....	108, 109
configuring.....	106, 107
listening	
for broadcast messages.....	112, 270
for multicast messages.....	113
security configuration example.....	227
server mode.....	111
symmetric active mode.....	108, 109, 110
ntp statement.....	336
usage guidelines.....	106, 107

**O**

offline statement.....	742, 765
usage guidelines.....	742
on-disk-failure statement.....	666, 726, 766
usage guidelines.....	728
on-loss-of-keepalives statement.....	666, 726
online-expected statement.....	766
usage guidelines.....	742
operators, regular expression.....	78, 81
system logging.....	139
option statement.....	519
option-60 statement.....	337
option-82 statement.....	338, 521
extended DHCP local server.....	338
subscriber access management.....	339
usage guidelines.....	180
option-match statement.....	521
optional statement.....	340
options statement.....	520
order statement	
accounting.....	522
authentication.....	522
other-routing-engine option to host statement.....	306
usage guidelines	
routing matrix.....	149
single-chassis system.....	127
outbound-ssh	
router-initiated ssh.....	341
outbound-ssh service	
configuring.....	197
outbound-ssh statement.....	341
usage guidelines.....	197
override-nas-information statement.....	523

**P**

Packet Forwarding Engine.....	6
bound to a Layer 2 port-mirroring instance.....	673
packet scheduling.....	722

- packet-rate statement.....343
- packet-scheduling statement.....767
  - usage guidelines.....722
- packets
  - router source addresses.....156, 281
- packets (tracing flag).....219, 220
- pap-password statement.....523
  - usage guidelines.....444
- parentheses, in syntax descriptions.....xlvi
- passive ARP learning
  - VRRP.....219
- password statement.....344
  - login.....344
  - subscriber access management.....345
- passwords
  - diagnostics port .....204, 292
  - RADIUS.....83
  - root.....58, 60
  - root password, recovering.....102
  - shared user.....92
- passwords statement
  - usage guidelines.....60
- path-length statement.....642
  - usage guidelines.....581
- path-mtu-discovery statement.....346
  - usage guidelines.....218
- PC *See* management device
- peer statement.....347
- pem statement.....768
  - usage guidelines.....731
- perfect-forward-secrecy statement.....642
  - usage guidelines.....572
- permissions statement.....348
  - usage guidelines.....72
- pfe (system logging facility).....124
- physical devices, aggregating.....669
- physical interfaces framing modes.....709
- pic statement.....769
  - usage guidelines.....712
- pic-console-authentication statement.....349
  - usage guidelines.....201
- pki statement.....643
- plain-text password
  - requirements.....31
- plain-text passwords.....58
  - for a diagnostic port.....204
  - for user accounts.....68
  - root password.....58, 60
- plain-text-password option.....58, 60
- policy statement
  - IKE.....644
    - usage guidelines, digital certificates (ES  
PIC).....581
    - usage guidelines, preshared keys.....566
  - IPSec.....645
    - usage guidelines.....571
- pool statement.....350, 524
  - usage guidelines.....160
- pool-match-order statement.....351
  - usage guidelines.....180
- port mirroring.....672
- port mirroring, Layer 2
  - MX-series
    - for a specific DPC.....672
    - for a specific PFE.....673
- port statement.....524, 770
  - HTTP/HTTPS.....352
  - RADIUS.....352
  - SRC.....353
  - TACACS + .....353
    - usage guidelines.....87
  - usage guidelines.....83, 214, 450
- port-mirroring instance, Layer 2
  - binding to a specific PFE.....673
  - M120 routers
    - associating with an FEB.....674
  - M320 routers
    - associating with an FPC.....673
  - MX-series
    - binding to a specific DPC.....672
- port-mirroring instances
  - overview.....672
- ports
  - auxiliary port properties.....154
  - console port properties.....154
  - diagnostics port.....204, 292
  - insecure.....155
  - log-out-on-disconnect.....155
  - RADIUS server.....83
- ports statement.....354
  - usage guidelines.....154
- power statement (fpc).....771
  - usage guidelines.....667
- power supply alarm conditions.....678
- ppp statement.....525
  - usage guidelines.....445
- ppp-authentication statement.....526
  - usage guidelines.....442, 444
- ppp-profile statement.....527
  - usage guidelines.....456
- pre-shared-key statement.....527, 645
  - usage guidelines.....567
- prefixes
  - specifying in configuration statements.....35
- primary-dns statement.....528
  - usage guidelines.....446
    - group profile.....435
- primary-wins statement.....528
  - usage guidelines
    - client profile.....446
    - group profile.....435

priorities	
system logging, including in log message	
for routing matrix.....	147
for single-chassis system.....	135
processes	
configuring failover.....	204, 355
processes statement.....	355
profile statement.....	529
usage guidelines.....	423, 436
proposal statement.....	646
IKE	
usage guidelines.....	563
IPSec	
usage guidelines.....	569
proposals statement.....	647
usage guidelines	
IKE.....	568
IPSec.....	571
protocol	
for dynamic SA.....	571
for internal SA.....	604, 648
for manual SA.....	560
protocol statement.....	648
usage guidelines	
dynamic SA.....	571
internal SA.....	604
manual SA.....	560
protocol-specific tracing operations.....	38
protocol-version statement.....	356
usage guidelines.....	196
protocols	
authentication.....	40
redirect messages.....	155

## Q

q-pic-large-buffer statement.....	772
usage guidelines.....	729

## R

RADIUS accounting.....	209
subscriber access management.....	460
RADIUS attributes	
subscriber access management.....	468
RADIUS authentication.....	40, 83
in a private network.....	425
L2TP.....	450, 456
security configuration example.....	224
subscriber access management.....	460
TACACS + .....	92
RADIUS authorization <i>See</i> RADIUS authentication	
RADIUS servers	
configuring interaction with.....	460
radius statement.....	532

RADIUS templates	
security configuration example.....	225
radius-disconnect statement.....	533
usage guidelines.....	455
radius-disconnect-port statement.....	534
usage guidelines.....	455
radius-options statement .....	357
radius-server statement.....	358, 535
usage guidelines.....	83, 450
range statement.....	536
rate-limit statement.....	359
usage guidelines.....	159
re-enroll-trigger-time statement.....	649
re-generate-keypair statement.....	649
red alarm conditions.....	675
red-buffer-occupancy statement.....	773
redirect messages	
disabling.....	155
redundancy	
configuring failover.....	204, 355
redundancy statement.....	666, 725
redundancy-group statement.....	726
refresh statement.....	359
refresh-from statement.....	360
refresh-interval statement.....	650
usage guidelines.....	588
regular expression operators.....	78, 81
system logging.....	139
remote	
access, configuring.....	159
template account.....	92
remote access, router, establishing.....	29
remote-id statement.....	536
replay-window-size statement.....	625
usage guidelines.....	563
request security certificate command.....	575
usage guidelines.....	575
request security key-pair	
usage guidelines.....	576
retry statement.....	360, 537, 650
usage guidelines.....	83, 587
retry-interval statement.....	651
usage guidelines.....	587
retry-options statement.....	361
usage guidelines.....	70
revert-interval statement.....	537
revocation-check statement.....	652
RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter.....	102
rlogin service, configuring.....	372
rollover cable, connecting the console port.....	102
root password.....	58, 60
root password recovery.....	102
root-authentication statement.....	362
usage guidelines.....	58, 60
root-login statement.....	363
usage guidelines.....	196

- route prefixes.....35
  - router chassis *See* chassis
  - router security.....29
    - access.....29
    - firewall filters.....32
    - JUNOS software, security, default settings.....27
    - routing protocol security features.....31
    - system log messages.....32
    - user authentication.....30
  - router statement.....363, 538
  - routers
    - backup.....55, 265
    - DNS name servers, configuring.....55
    - domain names.....54
    - domains to be searched.....54, 295
    - failover, configuring.....204, 355
    - hardware components.....7
    - initial configuration.....21
    - JUNOS software
      - initial configuration for redundant Routing Engines.....25
    - login classes.....66
    - names
      - configuring.....53
      - mapping to IP addresses.....52, 53
    - NTP.....106, 107
    - Packet Forwarding Engine.....6
    - physical system location.....57
    - ports
      - auxiliary port properties.....154
      - console port properties.....154
      - diagnostics port.....204, 292
      - RADIUS server.....83
    - redirect .....155
    - remote access, establishing.....29
    - root login, controlling.....196
    - Routing Engine.....6
    - security features.....29
    - source addresses.....156, 281
    - system services, configuring.....159
    - time zone setting.....105
    - user accounts.....67, 69
  - Routing Engines
    - available disk space, managing.....28
    - overview.....6
    - redundant
      - JUNOS software, initial configuration.....25
    - single
      - JUNOS software, initial configuration.....22
  - routing matrix.....738
    - configuring T640 routing nodes offline.....742
    - interface naming.....739
    - LCC.....738
    - online expected alarm.....742
    - overview.....736
    - system logging.....142
  - routing protocol process
    - IPv6 routing protocols.....13
    - routing policy.....14
    - routing tables.....13
  - routing protocol security features.....31
  - routing tables.....13
  - routing-engine statement
    - reboot on disk failure.....774
    - redundancy.....726
    - usage guidelines.....728
  - routing-instance statement.....538
    - usage guidelines.....83, 425
  - routing-instance-name statement.....364
- S**
- saved-core-context statement.....365
    - usage guidelines.....205
  - saved-core-files statement.....365
    - usage guidelines.....205
  - SCB alarm condition.....678
  - SCC.....739
  - scc-master option to host statement.....306
    - usage guidelines.....144
  - scheduling packets.....722
  - SCP.....601
  - scripts statement.....366
  - SDH
    - interfaces
      - framing mode.....709
  - SDH interfaces
    - framing.....709
    - PIC alarm conditions.....676
  - secondary-dns statement.....539
    - usage guidelines
      - client profile.....446
      - group profile.....435
  - secondary-wins statement.....539
    - usage guidelines
      - client profile.....446
      - group profile.....435
  - secret statement
    - access.....540
      - usage guidelines, RADIUS
        - authentication.....451
        - usage guidelines, RADIUS disconnect.....455
      - authentication.....367
        - usage guidelines, RADIUS.....83
        - usage guidelines, TACACS + .....87
  - secure copy *See* SCP
  - security
    - configuration example.....223
    - router, features.....29
    - router, JUNOS software default settings.....27
    - tracing operations.....598

security association statement		
usage guidelines.....	604	
security services configuration guidelines.....	551	
security-association statement.....	653	
usage guidelines.....	556	
server mode, usage guidelines.....	111	
server statement		
usage guidelines.....	109	
server-identifier statement.....	370	
usage guidelines.....	160	
servers statement.....	371	
usage guidelines.....	214	
service-deployment statement.....	371	
usage guidelines.....	214	
service-package statement.....	775	
usage guidelines.....	708	
services statement.....	372	
usage guidelines.....	159	
session statement.....	373	
severity levels for system logging.....	137	
sfm (offline) statement.....	775	
usage guidelines.....	668	
sfm statement.....	726	
SFMs		
alarm condition.....	678	
offline.....	668	
shared-secret statement.....	540	
usage guidelines.....	441	
sib statement.....	776	
usage guidelines.....	731	
simple authentication.....	40	
single-connection statement.....	374	
usage guidelines.....	87	
size statement.....	374	
system logging		
usage guidelines.....	133	
SNMP		
security configuration example.....	229	
software processes		
configuring failover.....	204, 355	
SONET		
interfaces		
framing.....	709	
framing mode.....	709	
PIC alarm conditions.....	676	
sonet statement.....	776	
usage guidelines.....	669	
source statement.....	375	
source-address statement.....	376	
NTP		
usage guidelines.....	107	
NTP, RADIUS, system logging, TACACS + .....	376	
RADIUS		
usage guidelines.....	85	
RADIUS and TACACS + .....	376	
SDX		
usage guidelines.....	214	
SRC.....	377	
system logging.....	376	
usage guidelines for routing matrix.....	149	
usage guidelines for single-chassis		
system.....	128	
usage guidelines		
usage guidelines, RADIUS.....	83	
source-port statement.....	377	
usage guidelines.....	219, 221	
source-quench statement.....	378	
usage guidelines.....	218	
sparse-dlci statement.....	777	
usage guidelines.....	712	
SPI		
IPSec.....	605	
spi statement.....	655	
usage guidelines .....	560, 605	
SRC software.....	214, 371	
SSB		
alarm condition.....	678, 692	
ssb statement.....	667, 726	
ssh key files.....	58, 60	
ssh service		
configuring.....	195	
limiting login attempts.....	70	
root login.....	196	
ssh protocol version.....	196	
ssh statement.....	378	
usage guidelines.....	195	
ssh-known-hosts statement.....	656	
usage guidelines.....	601	
SSL.....	160	
start-time.....	379	
start-time statement		
system logging		
usage guidelines.....	133	
state (tracing flag).....	219, 220	
static-binding statement.....	380	
usage guidelines.....	160	
static-host-mapping statement.....	381	
usage guidelines.....	53	
statistics statement.....	541	
structured-data statement.....	382	
usage guidelines.....	126	
subnet masks.....	35	
subscriber access		
configuring.....	459	
subscriber access management		
configuring RADIUS parameters.....	463	
overview.....	459	
RADIUS server options.....	463	
specifying RADIUS servers.....	463	
supported Juniper Networks VSAs.....	471	

- supported RADIUS attributes.....468
- using RADIUS attributes.....464
- support, technical *See* technical support
- symmetric active mode, NTP
  - configuring.....110
  - defined.....108, 109
- synchronization statement.....778
- synchronized timing.....778
- syntax conventions.....xlv
- sysid statement.....381
  - usage guidelines.....53
- syslog statement
  - system processes.....383
    - usage guidelines.....118
- system authentication
  - authentication order.....95, 99
  - RADIUS
    - configuring.....83
  - remote template accounts.....92
  - TACACS + .....87
- system identifier, IS-IS
  - configuring.....53
- system log messages.....32
- system logging
  - Common Criteria.....122
  - different on each node in routing matrix.....150
  - disabling.....140
  - examples.....141
  - facilities
    - alternate for remote machine.....131
    - default for remote machine.....131
    - for local machine.....124
    - mapping of codes to names.....136
  - files, archiving.....133
  - forwarding messages in routing matrix.....144
  - JUNOS-FIPS.....122
  - regular expression filtering.....138
  - regular expression operators.....139
  - routing matrix.....142
  - severity levels.....137
  - single-chassis system.....122
  - timestamp, modifying.....137
- system login.....202, 203
- system services
  - DHCP.....160
  - DHCP local server.....180
  - finger .....194
  - ftp .....195
  - outbound-ssh.....197
  - ssh.....195
  - telnet.....201
- system statement.....384
  - usage guidelines.....43
- system-priority statement
  - LACP
    - interface.....779

## T

- t1 statement.....779
  - usage guidelines.....714
- T3 interfaces
  - PIC alarm conditions.....676
- T640 routing nodes.....739
  - role in routing matrix.....736
- TACACS + accounting.....212
  - usage guidelines, TX Matrix platform.....213
- TACACS + authentication
  - configuring.....87
  - overview.....40
- tacplus-options statement
  - no-cmd-attribute-value option.....385
  - usage guidelines.....89
- tacplus-server statement.....386
  - usage guidelines.....87
- tcp-drop-synfin-set statement.....386
  - usage guidelines.....218
- tcp-mss statement
  - usage guidelines.....215, 387
- technical support
  - contacting JTAC.....xlvi
- telnet
  - service, configuring.....201
  - service, limiting login attempts.....70
- telnet statement.....388
  - usage guidelines.....201
- temperature alarm conditions.....679
- template accounts.....92
- terminal type.....155, 280
- tftp-server statement.....542
- time
  - security configuration example.....227
- time zone setting, routers.....105
- time-format statement.....389
  - usage guidelines.....137
- time-zone statement.....391
  - usage guidelines.....105
- timeout statement.....390
  - access.....542
    - usage guidelines.....451
  - authentication
    - usage guidelines, RADIUS.....83
    - usage guidelines, TACACS + .....87
- timer (tracing flag).....219, 220
- timeslots statement.....780
  - usage guidelines.....713
- trace operations
  - VRRP.....219, 220
- traceoptions statement.....394
  - access.....543
    - usage guidelines.....427
  - address-assignment pool.....395
    - usage guidelines.....479

DHCP.....	399	offline.....	742
usage guidelines.....	176	online expected alarm.....	742
DHCP local server.....	402	overview.....	736
SBC configuration process		rebooting process.....	737
border signaling gateways.....	404	reinstallation.....	737
security.....	657	software upgrades.....	737
usage guidelines.....	598	system logging.....	142
usage guidelines.....	180	type statement	
VRRP		auxiliary port	
usage guidelines.....	219, 220	usage guidelines.....	155
tracing.....	406	console port	
destination-override.....	406	usage guidelines.....	155
tracing flags			
event policy		<b>U</b>	
all.....	429	uid statement.....	409
configuration.....	429	usage guidelines.....	67, 69
database.....	429	UIDs.....	67
events.....	429	unicast routing table.....	13
policy.....	429	update-interval statement.....	544
server.....	429	uPIM Ethernet interfaces.....	732, 734
timer-events.....	429	url statement.....	658
tracing operations.....	38	URLs, specifying in commands.....	36
access.....	427	user (system logging facility).....	124
address-assignment pool.....	479	option to facility-override statement.....	132
DHCP.....	176	user access	
DVMRP.....	543	login classes.....	66
security.....	598	user accounts.....	67, 69, 71
traffic		user accounts	
inbound (application of filter).....	597	configuring.....	67, 69
inbound (decryption).....	596	in JUNOS-FIPS.....	71
outbound (application of filter).....	596	security configuration example.....	225
outbound (encryption).....	595	shared user accounts.....	92
traffic-manager statement.....	780	user authentication	
transfer-interval		methods.....	30
usage guidelines.....	207	methods for.....	40
transfer-interval statement.....	407	protocols for central authentication.....	30
configuration.....	407	router security.....	30
system log.....	407	user identifiers <i>See</i> UIDs	
system logging		user statement	
usage guidelines.....	133	access.....	410
transfer-on-commit statement.....	408	usage guidelines.....	67, 69
usage guidelines.....	208	system logging.....	411
transferring router configuration to archive site.....	207	usage guidelines.....	126
troubleshooting		user-group-profile statement.....	545
root password recovery.....	102	usage guidelines.....	446
trusted-key statement.....	408	user-prefix statement.....	413
usage guidelines.....	112	username-include statement.....	412
tunnel interfaces		using outbound-ssh	
configuring, MX-series routers.....	720	connect routers behind firewalls.....	341
tunnel-services statement.....	781		
usage guidelines.....	720	<b>V</b>	
TX Matrix platform		validity-period statement.....	659
chassis and interface names.....	739	virtual links	
committing configurations.....	737	aggregated devices.....	669
configure a T640 routing node.....	738		
interface naming.....	739		



vlan-nas-port-stacked-format statement.....	545
VPNs.....	15
vrf-mtu-check statement.....	781
usage guidelines.....	724
VRRP	
passive ARP learning.....	219
trace operations.....	219, 220
tracing flag.....	219, 220
vtmapping statement.....	782
usage guidelines.....	718

## W

warning (system logging severity level 4).....	137
web-management statement.....	414
wins-server statement.....	415, 546
usage guidelines.....	160
world-readable statement	
system logging.....	415
usage guidelines.....	133

## X

xnm-clear-text statement.....	416
usage guidelines.....	159
xnm-ssl statement.....	416
usage guidelines.....	160

## Y

yellow alarm condition.....	675
-----------------------------	-----



# Index of Statements and Commands

## A

accounting statement.....	252, 483
accounting-order statement.....	484
accounting-port statement.....	484
RADIUS server.....	253
accounting-server statement.....	485
accounting-session-id-format statement.....	485
accounting-stop-on-access-deny statement.....	486
accounting-stop-on-failure statement.....	486
adaptive-services statement.....	743
address statement.....	487
address-assignment statement.....	488
address-pool statement.....	489
address-range statement.....	489
aggregate-ports statement.....	744
aggregated-devices statement .....	744
alarm statement.....	745
algorithm statement.....	607, 608
allow-commands statement.....	253
allow-configuration statement.....	254
allow-transients statement.....	254
allowed-proxy-pair statement.....	490
announcement statement.....	255
archival statement.....	255
archive statement.....	256
archive-sites statement	
configuration files.....	257
system log files.....	258
arp statement.....	259
atm-cell-relay-accumulation statement .....	746
atm-l2circuit-mode statement .....	747
attributes statement.....	491
authentication statement.....	260, 608
login.....	260
subscriber access management.....	261
authentication-algorithm statement	
IKE.....	609
IPSec.....	609
authentication-key statement.....	262
authentication-key-chains statement.....	610
authentication-method statement	
IKE.....	611
authentication-order statement.....	263, 492
authentication-server statement.....	492

auto-re-enrollment statement.....	612
autoinstallation statement.....	264
auxiliary statement.....	265
auxiliary-spi statement.....	613

## B

backup-router statement.....	265
bandwidth statement.....	748
boot-file statement.....	266, 493
boot-server statement.....	493
DHCP.....	267
NTP.....	268
brief statement	
system logging.....	382
broadcast statement.....	269
broadcast-client statement.....	270
bucket-size statement.....	270

## C

ca-identity statement.....	613
ca-name statement.....	614
ca-profile statement.....	615
cache-size statement.....	616
cache-timeout-negative statement .....	616
ce1 statement .....	749
cell-overhead statement.....	494
certificate-id statement.....	617
certificates statement.....	618
certification-authority statement.....	619
cfcb statement.....	666, 725
challenge-password statement.....	619
change-type statement.....	271
channel-group statement .....	749
chap-secret statement.....	494
chassis statement.....	750
circuit-id statement.....	495
circuit-type statement.....	272
client statement.....	496
client-identifier statement.....	274
commit statement.....	275
commit synchronize statement.....	276
compress-configuration-files statement.....	277
config-button statement.....	750
configuration statement.....	278

configuration-servers statement.....	278
connection-limit statement.....	279
console statement	
physical port.....	280
system logging.....	281
craft-lockout statement.....	751
crl statement	
AS and MultiServices PICs.....	621
ES PIC.....	620
ct3 statement.....	751

**D**

default-address-selection statement.....	281
default-lease-time statement.....	282
delimiter statement.....	283
deny-commands statement.....	284
deny-configuration statement.....	285
description statement	
IKE policy.....	622
destination statement.....	286
device-count statement.....	752
dh-group statement.....	622
dhcp statement	
usage guidelines.....	288
dhcp-attributes statement.....	497
dhcp-local-server statement.....	290
diag-port-authentication statement.....	292
direction statement.....	623
disk-failure-action statement.....	752
domain-name statement.....	293, 498
subscriber access management.....	294
domain-search statement.....	295
drop-timeout statement.....	498
dump-device statement.....	296
dynamic statement.....	625

**E**

e1 statement .....	753
encapsulation-overhead statement.....	499
encoding statement.....	625
encryption statement.....	626
encryption-algorithm statement.....	627
enrollment statement.....	628
enrollment-retry statement.....	629
enrollment-url statement.....	629
ethernet statement.....	753
ethernet-port-type-virtual statement.....	499
events statement.....	297
exclude statement.....	500
explicit-priority statement.....	297

**F**

fabric upgrade-mode statement.....	754
------------------------------------	-----

facility-override statement.....	298
failover statement.....	666, 726
FEBs	
connectivity.....	726
file statement.....	299
system logging.....	300
files statement.....	301
finger statement.....	301
flow-tap-dtcp statement.....	302
format statement.....	303
fpc statement .....	755
fpc-feb-connectivity statement.....	759
fragmentation-threshold statement.....	502
framed-ip-address statement.....	502
framed-pool statement.....	503
ftp statement.....	303
full-name statement.....	304

**G**

grace-period statement.....	503
graceful-switchover statement.....	667, 726
gre-path-mtu-discovery statement.....	304
group statement.....	305
group-profile statement.....	504

**H**

hardware-address statement.....	505
host statement.....	306, 506
host-name statement.....	307
http statement.....	307
https statement.....	308

**I**

icmpv4-rate-limit statement.....	309
icmpv6-rate-limit statement.....	309
identity statement.....	630
idle-cell-format statement.....	760
idle-timeout statement.....	310, 506
ignore statement.....	507
ike statement.....	508, 631
immediate-update statement.....	509
inet6-backup-router statement.....	310
initiate-dead-peer-detection-statement.....	509
interface statement.....	312
interface-description-format statement.....	510
interface-id statement.....	510
interfaces statement.....	313
internal statement.....	632
internet-options statement.....	314
ip-address statement.....	511
ip-address-first statement.....	315
ipip-path-mtu-discovery statement.....	315
ipsec statement.....	633

ipv6-duplicate-addr-detection-transmits  
statement.....316  
ipv6-reject-zero-hop-limit statement.....317

**K**

keepalive statement.....511  
keepalive-time statement.....667, 726  
key statement.....634

**L**

l2tp statement.....512  
lACP statement.....760  
lcc statement.....761  
lcp-renegotiation statement.....513  
ldap-url statement.....635  
lifetime-seconds statement.....635  
limits statement.....318  
link-protection statement  
    LACP  
        chassis.....762  
load-key-file statement.....318  
local statement.....636  
local-certificate statement.....319, 636  
local-chap statement.....514  
local-key-pair statement.....637  
location statement.....320  
log-prefix statement  
    system logging.....321  
logical-system-name statement.....322  
login statement.....323  
login-alarms statement.....324  
login-tip statement.....324

**M**

mac-address statement.....325  
manual statement.....638  
match statement.....326  
max-configurations-on-flash statement.....326  
max-queues-per-interface statement.....762  
maximum-certificates statement.....639  
maximum-lease-time statement.....327, 514  
maximum-length statement.....327  
maximum-sessions-per-tunnel statement.....515  
message statement.....328  
minimum-changes statement.....328  
minimum-length statement.....329  
mirror-flash-on-disk statement.....330  
mlfr-uni-nni-bundles statement.....763  
mode statement  
    IKE.....640  
    IPSec.....641  
multicast-client statement.....331  
multilink statement.....515

**N**

name-server statement.....331, 516  
nas-identifier statement.....516  
nas-port-extended-format statement.....517  
netbios-node-type statement.....518  
network statement.....518  
no-auto-failover statement.....667, 726  
no-compress-configuration-files statement.....277  
no-concatenate statement.....764  
no-gre-path-mtu-discovery statement.....304  
no-ipip-path-mtu-discovery statement.....315  
no-multicast-echo statement.....332  
no-path-mtu-discovery statement.....346  
no-ping-record-route statement.....333  
no-ping-time-stamp statement.....333  
no-redirects statement.....334  
no-saved-core-context statement.....365  
no-source-quench statement.....378  
no-tcp-rfc1323 statement.....335  
no-tcp-rfc1323-paws statement.....335  
non-revertive statement.....765  
ntp statement.....336

**O**

offline statement.....742, 765  
on-disk-failure statement.....666, 726, 766  
on-loss-of-keepalives statement.....666, 726  
online-expected statement.....766  
option statement.....519  
option-60 statement.....337  
option-82 statement.....338, 521  
    extended DHCP local server.....338  
    subscriber access management.....339  
option-match statement.....521  
optional statement.....340  
options statement.....520  
order statement  
    accounting.....522  
    authentication.....522  
outbound-ssh statement.....341  
override-nas-information statement.....523

**P**

packet-rate statement.....343  
packet-scheduling statement.....767  
pap-password statement.....523  
password statement  
    login.....344  
    subscriber access management.....345  
path-length statement.....642  
path-mtu-discovery statement.....346  
peer statement.....347  
pem statement.....768  
perfect-forward-secrecy statement.....642

permissions statement.....	348
pic statement.....	769
pic-console-authentication statement.....	349
pki statement.....	643
policy statement	
IKE.....	644
IPSec.....	645
pool statement.....	350, 524
pool-match-order statement.....	351
port statement.....	524, 770
HTTP/HTTPS.....	352
RADIUS.....	352
SRC.....	353
TACACS + .....	353
ports statement.....	354
power statement (fpc).....	771
ppp statement.....	525
ppp-authentication statement.....	526
ppp-profile statement.....	527
pre-shared-key statement.....	527, 645
primary-dns statement.....	528
primary-wins statement.....	528
processes statement.....	355
profile statement.....	529
proposal statement.....	646
proposals statement.....	647
protocol statement.....	648
protocol-version statement.....	356

## Q

q-pic-large-buffer statement .....	772
------------------------------------	-----

## R

radius statement.....	532
radius-disconnect statement.....	533
radius-options statement .....	357
radius-server statement.....	358, 535
range statement.....	536
rate-limit statement.....	359
re-enroll-trigger-time statement.....	649
re-generate-keypair statement.....	649
red-buffer-occupancy statement.....	773
redundancy statement.....	666, 725
redundancy-group statement.....	726
refresh statement.....	359
refresh-from statement.....	360
refresh-interval statement.....	650
remote-id statement.....	536
retry statement.....	360, 537, 650
retry-interval statement.....	651
retry-options statement.....	361
revert-interval statement.....	537
revocation-check statement.....	652
root-authentication statement.....	362

root-login statement.....	363
router statement.....	363, 538
routing-engine statement	
reboot on disk failure.....	774
redundancy.....	726
routing-instance statement.....	538
routing-instance-name statement.....	364

## S

saved-core-context statement.....	365
saved-core-files statement.....	365
scripts statement.....	366
secondary-dns statement.....	539
secondary-wins statement.....	539
secret statement	
access.....	540
authentication.....	367
security-association statement.....	653
server-identifier statement.....	370
servers statement.....	371
service-deployment statement.....	371
service-package statement.....	775
services statement.....	372
session statement.....	373
sfm (offline) statement.....	775
sfm statement.....	726
shared-secret statement.....	540
sib statement .....	776
single-connection statement.....	374
size statement.....	374
sonet statement.....	776
source statement.....	375
source-address statement.....	376
NTP, RADIUS, system logging, TACACS + .....	376
SRC.....	377
source-port statement.....	377
source-quench statement.....	378
sparse-dlcls statement.....	777
spl statement.....	655
ssb statement.....	667, 726
ssh statement.....	378
ssh-known-hosts statement.....	656
start-time.....	379
static-binding statement.....	380
static-host-mapping statement.....	381
statistics statement.....	541
structured-data statement.....	382
synchronization statement.....	778
syslog statement	
system processes.....	383
system statement.....	384
system-priority statement	
LACP	
interface.....	779

**T**

t1 statement .....	779
tacplus-options statement	
no-cmd-attribute-value option.....	385
tacplus-server statement.....	386
tcp-drop-synfin-set statement.....	386
telnet statement.....	388
tftp-server statement.....	542
time-format statement.....	389
time-zone statement.....	391
timeout statement.....	390
access.....	542
timeslots statement .....	780
traceoptions statement.....	394
access.....	543
address-assignment pool.....	395
DHCP.....	399
DHCP local server.....	402
SBC configuration process	
border signaling gateways.....	404
security.....	657
tracing.....	406
destination-override.....	406
traffic-manager statement.....	780
transfer-interval statement.....	407
configuration.....	407
system log.....	407
transfer-on-commit statement.....	408
trusted-key statement.....	408
tunnel-services statement.....	781

**U**

uid statement.....	409
update-interval statement.....	544
url statement.....	658
user statement	
access.....	410
system logging.....	411
user-group-profile statement.....	545
user-prefix statement.....	413
username-include statement.....	412

**V**

validity-period statement.....	659
vlan-nas-port-stacked-format statement.....	545
vrf-mtu-check statement.....	781
vtmapping statement.....	782

**W**

web-management statement.....	414
wins-server statement.....	415, 546
world-readable statement	
system logging.....	415

**X**

xnm-clear-text statement.....	416
xnm-ssl statement.....	416

